

Echinosoma venosum coela

Went Garmann
Gaskin
Junction

Apr. 17. th 1895.





CLARENCE GARMAN

A
LATIN GRAMMAR

FOR
SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES

BY
ALBERT HARKNESS, PH. D., LL. D.,
PROFESSOR IN BROWN UNIVERSITY.

REVISED STANDARD EDITION.

NEW YORK :: CINCINNATI :: CHICAGO:
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY.

COPYRIGHT, 1864, 1874, 1881,
BY D. APPLETON AND COMPANY.

COPYRIGHT, 1892,
BY ALBERT HARKNESS.

HARK. LAT. GRAM.

W. P. 7

P R E F A C E

T O T H E R E V I S E D E D I T I O N .

THE last quarter of a century has revealed many important facts in the development of language. During this period philological research has thrown new light upon Latin forms and inflections, upon the laws of phonetic change, upon the use of cases, moods, and tenses, and upon the origin and history of numerous constructions. The student of Latin grammar is now entitled to the full benefit of the important practical results which these labors in the field of linguistic study have brought within the proper sphere of the school. In securing this advantage, however, care must be taken not to divert the attention of the learner from the one object before him—the attainment of a full and accurate knowledge of the language.

The volume now offered to the public has been prepared in view of these facts. It is the result of a thorough and complete revision of the author's Latin Grammar published in 1864. To a large extent, indeed, it is a new and independent work; yet the paradigms, rules of construction, and in general all parts intended for recitation, have been only slightly changed. The aim of the work in its present form is threefold.

1. It is designed to present a clear, simple, and convenient outline of Latin grammar for the beginner. It

accordingly contains, in large type, a systematic arrangement of the leading facts and laws of the language, exhibiting not only grammatical forms and constructions, but also those vital principles which underlie, control, and explain them. The laws of construction are put in the form of definite rules, and illustrated by carefully selected examples. To secure convenience of reference, and to give completeness and vividness to the general outline, these rules, after having been separately discussed, are collected in a body at the close of the Syntax. Topics which require the fullest illustration are first presented in their completeness in general outline, before the separate points are explained in detail. Thus a single page often foreshadows the leading features of an extended discussion, imparting, it is believed, a completeness and vividness to the impression of the learner impossible under any other treatment.

2. It is intended to be an adequate and trustworthy grammar for the advanced student. By brevity and conciseness of phraseology, and by compactness in the arrangement of forms and topics, an ample collection of the most important grammatical facts, intended for reference, has been compressed within the limits of a convenient manual. Care has been taken to explain and illustrate, with the requisite fullness, all difficult and intricate subjects. The Subjunctive Mood and the Indirect Discourse have received special attention.

3. In a series of foot-notes it aims to bring within the reach of the student some of the more important results of recent linguistic research. Brief explanations are given of the working of phonetic laws, of the nature of inflection, of the origin of special idioms, and of various facts in the growth of language. But the distinguishing feature of this part of the work consists in the abundant

references which are made to some of the latest and best authorities upon the numerous linguistic questions naturally suggested by the study of Latin grammar.¹

An attempt has been made to indicate, as far as practicable, the natural quantity of vowels before two consonants or a double consonant.²

With this brief statement of its design and plan, this volume is now respectfully committed to the hands of classical teachers.

In conclusion the author is happy to express his grateful acknowledgments to the numerous friends who have favored him with valuable suggestions.

¹ See page xv. It is hardly necessary to add that an acquaintance with the authorities here cited is by no means to be regarded as an indispensable qualification for the work of classical instruction. The references are intended especially for those who adopt the historical method in the study of language.

² See page 4, foot-note 4; also page 9, note 3.

BROWN UNIVERSITY, PROVIDENCE, R. I.,

July, 1881.

CONTENTS.

PART FIRST.

ORTHOGRAPHY.

	PAGE
Alphabet	1
Roman Method of Pronunciation	3
English Method	5
Continental Method	8
Quantity	8
Accentuation	9
Phonetic Changes	10
I. Changes in Vowels	11
II. Changes in Consonants	16

PART SECOND.

ETYMOLOGY.

CHAPTER I.

NOUNS.

Gender	21
Person, Number, and Case	22
Declension	23
First Declension	24
Greek Nouns	26
Second Declension	26
Greek Nouns	29
Third Declension	30
Class I.—Consonant-Stems	30
Stems in a Labial	30
Stems in a Dental	31
Stems in a Guttural	32
Stems in a Liquid or a Nasal	33
Stems in <i>S</i>	34
Class II.—I-Stems	35
Special Paradigms	39
Greek Nouns	40
Synopsis of the Third Declension	41
Gender	46
Fourth Declension	48

	PAGE
Fifth Declension	50
General Table of Gender	51
Declension of Compound Nouns	52
Irregular Nouns	53
I. Indeclinable	53
II. Defective	53
III. Heteroclites	55
IV. Heterogeneous	56

CHAPTER II.

ADJECTIVES.

First and Second Declensions	57
Third Declension	59
Irregular Adjectives	62
Comparison	63
I. Terminational Comparison	63
II. Adverbial Comparison	65
Numerals	65

CHAPTER III.

PRONOUNS.

I. Personal Pronouns	70
II. Possessive Pronouns	71
III. Demonstrative Pronouns	72
IV. Relative Pronouns	74
V. Interrogative Pronouns	75
VI. Indefinite Pronouns	76
Table of Correlatives	77

CHAPTER IV.

VERBS.

Voices, Moods	78
Tenses	80
Numbers, Persons	81
Infinitive, Gerund, Supine	81
Participle	82
Conjugation	82
Paradigms of Verbs	84
Comparative View of Conjugations	102
Verbs in <i>iō</i> : Conjugation III.	106
Verbal Inflections	108
Synopsis of Conjugation	110
Deponent Verbs	114
Periphrastic Conjugation	114
Peculiarities in Conjugation	115
Analysis of Verbal Endings	117
I. Tense-signs	117
II. Mood-signs	117
III. Personal Endings	118

	PAGE
Formation of Stems	119
I. Present Stem	119
II. Perfect Stems	121
III. Supine Stem	122
Classification of Verbs	122
First Conjugation	122
Second Conjugation	124
Third Conjugation	127
Fourth Conjugation	134
Irregular Verbs	135
Defective	141
Impersonal	143

CHAPTER V.

PARTICLES.

Adverbs	144
Table of Correlatives	147
Comparison	149
Prepositions	149
Conjunctions	150
Interjections	152

CHAPTER VI.

FORMATION OF WORDS.

I. Roots, Stems, Suffixes	152
Primary Suffixes	155
II. Derivation of Words	158
Derivative Nouns	158
Derivative Adjectives	165
Derivative Verbs	169
III. Composition of Words	172
Compound Nouns	173
Compound Adjectives	174
Compound Verbs	175

PART THIRD.

SYNTAX.

CHAPTER I.

SYNTAX OF SENTENCES.

I. Classification of Sentences	179
II. Elements of Sentences	182

CHAPTER II.

SYNTAX OF NOUNS.

	PAGE
I. Agreement of Nouns	184
Predicate Nouns	184
Appositives	185
II. General View of Cases	186
III. Nominative, Vocative	187
I. Nominative	187
II. Vocative	188
IV. Accusative	189
I. Direct Object	189
Two Accusatives	191
II. Accusative in an Adverbial Sense	193
Accusative of Specification	193
Accusative of Time and Space	194
Accusative of Limit	195
III. Accusative in Exclamations	196
V. Dative	196
Dative with Verbs—Indirect Object	197
Dative with Special Verbs	199
Dative with Compounds	201
Dative of Possessor	202
Dative of Apparent Agent	202
Ethical Dative	203
Two Datives	204
Dative with Adjectives	204
Dative with Nouns and Adverbs	205
VI. Genitive	206
Genitive with Nouns	206
Genitive with Adjectives	210
Predicate Genitive	212
Genitive with Special Verbs	213
Accusative and Genitive	215
VII. Ablative	217
I. Ablative Proper	218
Ablative of Place from which	218
Ablative of Separation, Source, Cause	218
Ablative with Comparatives	222
II. Instrumental Ablative	223
Ablative of Accompaniment	223
Ablative of Means	224
Ablative in Special Constructions	225
Ablative of Price	226
Ablative of Difference	226
Ablative of Specification	227
III. Locative Ablative	227
Ablative of Place	227
Ablative of Time	229
Ablative Absolute	231
VIII. Cases with Prepositions	232

CHAPTER III.

SYNTAX OF ADJECTIVES.

PAGE

Agreement of Adjectives	239
Use of Adjectives	241

CHAPTER IV.

SYNTAX OF PRONOUNS.

Agreement of Pronouns	244
Use of Pronouns	246
Personal, Possessive	246
Reflexive	247
Demonstrative	248
Relative	251
Interrogative	252
Indefinite	252

CHAPTER V.

SYNTAX OF VERBS.

I. Agreement of Verbs—Use of Voices	254
II. Indicative and its Tenses	257
Tenses of Indicative	257
Use of Indicative	262
III. General View of the Subjunctive and its Tenses	264
IV. Subjunctive in Principal Clauses	265
Subjunctive of Desire	265
Potential Subjunctive	266
V. Imperative and its Tenses	268
VI. Moods in Subordinate Clauses	269
I. Tenses of Subjunctive in Subordinate Clauses	269
II. Subjunctive in Clauses of Purpose	273
III. Subjunctive in Clauses of Result	276
IV. Moods in Conditional Sentences	280
V. Moods in Concessive Clauses	287
VI. Moods in Causal Clauses	289
VII. Moods in Temporal Clauses	291
VIII. Indirect Discourse	296
Moods and Tenses in Indirect Discourse	296
Persons and Pronouns in Indirect Discourse	299
Conditional Sentences in Indirect Discourse	299
Indirect Clauses	301
VII. Infinitive — Substantive Clauses	306
I. Infinitive	306
Infinitive with Verbs	306
Accusative and Infinitive with Verbs	308
Subject of Infinitive	310
Tenses of Infinitive	311
Infinitive in Special Constructions	313
II. Substantive Clauses	314

	PAGE
VIII. Gerunds, Gerundives, Supines, and Participles	314
I. Gerunds	314
II. Gerundives	316
III. Supines	317
IV. Participles	318

CHAPTER VI.

SYNTAX OF PARTICLES.

Adverbs	320
Conjunctions	321
Interjections	324

CHAPTER VII.

Rules of Syntax	324
---------------------------	-----

CHAPTER VIII.

ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS AND CLAUSES.

Arrangement of Words	333
Arrangement of Clauses	336

PART FOURTH.

PROSODY

CHAPTER I.

QUANTITY.

I. General Rules of Quantity	338
II. Quantity in Final Syllables	339
III. Quantity in Increments	342
Increments of Declension	342
Increments of Conjugation	344
IV. Quantity of Derivative Endings	344
V. Quantity of Stem-Syllables	346

CHAPTER II.

VERSIFICATION.

I. General View of the Subject	349
Feet	350
Verses	351
Figures of Prosody	353

	PAGE
II. Varieties of Verse	354
I. Dactylic Hexameter	354
II. Other Dactylic Verses	358
III. Trochaic Verse	359
IV. Iambic Verse	360
V. Ionic Verse	361
VI. Logaoedic Verse	362
III. Versification of the Principal Latin Poets	364
Vergil, Juvenal, Ovid, Horace	364
Lyric Metres of Horace	364
Index to Lyric Metres of Horace	368
Catullus, Martial, Seneca, Plautus, Terence	368

APPENDIX.

I. Figures of Speech	370
II. Latin Language and Literature	374
III. Roman Calendar	376
IV. Roman Money, Weights, and Measures	378
V. Roman Names	380
Abbreviations	380
VI. Vowels before Two Consonants or a Double Consonant	381

Index of Verbs	383
General Index	390

TITLES OF WORKS CITED

IN THE FOOT-NOTES OF THIS GRAMMAR

- Acta Societatis Philologiae Lipsiensis.* Lipsiae, 1870-1888.
- ALLEN, F. D. *Remnants of Early Latin.* Boston, 1880.
- BOPP, F. *Vergleichende Grammatik.* Berlin, 3d ed., 1870.
- BOUTERWEK, R., und TEGGE, AUG. *Die altsprachliche Orthoepie und die Praxis.* Berlin, 1878.
- BRAMBACH, W. *Hülfsbüchlein für lateinische Rechtschreibung,* Leipzig, 3d ed., 1887.
- BRAMBACH, W. *Die Neugestaltung der lateinischen Orthographie.* Leipzig, 1868.
- BRUGMANN, K. *Grundriss der vergleichenden Grammatik.* Strassburg, 1886.
- BÜCHELER, F. *Grundriss der lateinischen Declination.* Leipzig, 1866; Bonn, 1879.
- BÜNGER, C. *Die lateinische Quantität in positionslangen Silben.* Strassburg, 1881.
- CHRIST, W. *Metrik der Griechen und Römer.* Leipzig, 1874.
- CORSSEN, W. *Aussprache, Vocalismus, und Betonung der lateinischen Sprache.* Leipzig, 2d ed., 1868.
- CORSSEN, W. *Kritische Beiträge.* Leipzig, 1863.
- CURTIVS, G. *Zur Chronologie der indo-germanischen Sprachforschung.* Leipzig, 2d ed., 1873.
- CURTIVS, G. *Das Verbum der griechischen Sprache.* Leipzig, 2d ed., 1880.
- DELBRÜCK, B. *Ablativ, Localis, Instrumentalis.* Berlin, 1867.
- DELBRÜCK, B. *Der Gebrauch des Conjunctivs und Optativs im Sanskrit und Griechischen.* Halle, 1871.
- DELBRÜCK, B. *Einleitung in das Sprachstudium.* Leipzig, 1880.
- DRAEGER, A. *Historische Syntax der lateinischen Sprache.* Leipzig, 2d ed., 1881.
- ELLIS, A. J. *Quantitative Pronunciation of Latin.* London, 1874.
- FOERSTER, W. *Bestimmung der lateinischen Quantität aus dem Romanischen.* Rheinisches Museum, xxxiii., pp. 291-299. Frankfurt am Main.
- HARTUNG, J. A. *Die Casus, ihre Bildung und Bedeutung.* Erlangen, 1831.
- HOFFMANN, E. *Die Construction der lateinischen Zeitpartikeln.* Wien, 1873.
- HOLZWEISSIG, FR. *Localistische Casustheorie.* Leipzig, 1877.
- HÜBSCHMANN, H. *Zur Casuslehre.* München, 1875.
- JOLLY, J. *Geschichte des Infinitivs im Indo-germanischen.* München, 1873.
- KUHN, A. *Zeitschrift für vergleichende Sprachforschung.* Berlin, 1851-1888.

- KÜHNER, R. *Ausführliche Grammatik der lateinischen Sprache*. Hannover, 1879.
- LÜBBERT, E. *Die Syntax von Quom.* Breslau, 1870.
- MARX, A. *Die Aussprache der lateinischen Vocale in positionslangen Silben*. Berlin, 1888.
- MERGUET, H. *Lateinische Formenbildung*. Berlin, 1870.
- MEYER, G. *Griechische Grammatik*. Leipzig, 2d ed., 1886.
- MÜLLER, L. *Orthographiae et Prosodiae Latinae Summarium*. Lipsiae, 1878.
- MÜLLER, L. *De Re Metrica Poetarum Latinorum libri VII.* Lipsiae, 1861.
- MÜLLER, MAX. *The Science of Language*. New York, 2d ed., 1868.
- MUNRO, H. A. J. *The Pronunciation of Latin*. Cambridge, 1874.
- NÄGELSBACH, C. F. *Lateinische Stilistik*. Nürnberg, 6th ed., 1876.
- OSTHOFF, H. *Zur Geschichte des Perfects im Indo-germanischen*. Strassburg, 1884.
- PAPILLON, T. L. *A Manual of Comparative Philology*. Oxford, 3d ed., 1887.
- PEILE, J. *Greek and Latin Etymology*. London, 2d ed., 1872.
- PENKA, K. *Die Nominalflexion der Indo-germanischen Sprachen*. Wien, 1878.
- PRISCIANUS, C. *Institutionum Grammaticarum libri XVIII.* Lipsiae, 1855.
- RAMSAY, W. *Latin Prosody*. London, 6th ed., 1887.
- RITSCHL, FR. *Unsere heutige Aussprache des Latein*. Rheinisches Museum, xxxi., pp. 481-492.
- ROBY, H. J. *A Grammar of the Latin Language*. London, 2d ed., 1886.
- RUMPEL, TH. *Die Casuslehre*. Halle, 4th ed., 1876.
- SCHLEICHER, AUG. *Compendium der vergleichenden Grammatik*. Weimar, 1866.
- SCHMIDT, J. H. H. *Leitfaden in der Rhythmik und Metrik der classischen Sprachen*. Leipzig, 1869. A translation by Professor White. Boston, 1878.
- SCHMITZ, W. *Beiträge zur lateinischen Sprachkunde*. Leipsig, 1877.
- SCHÖLL, F. *Veterum Grammaticorum de Accentu Linguae Latinae Testimonia*. Acta Societatis Philologiae Lipsiensis, vi., pp. 71-215.
- SEELMANN, E. *Die Aussprache des Latein*. Heilbronn, 1885.
- SIEVERS, E. *Grundzüge der Phonetik*. Leipzig, 3d ed., 1885.
- SPENGLER, A. *Plautus, Kritik, Prosodie, Metrik*. Göttingen, 1865.
- STOLZ, F. *Lateinische Grammatik*. Handbuch der classischen Altertumswissenschaft von I. Müller. Nördlingen, 1885.
- Transactions of the American Philological Association*. Hartford, 1889-1888.
- VANICEK, A. *Etymologisches Wörterbuch der lateinischen Sprache*. Leipzig, 1881.
- VANICEK, A. *Griechisch-lateinisches etymologisches Wörterbuch*. Leipzig, 1877.
- WHITNEY, W. D. *The Life and Growth of Language*. New York, 1875.
- WIGGERT, J. *Studien zur lateinischen Orthoepie*. Stargard, 1880.
- WORDSWORTH, J. *Fragments and Specimens of Early Latin*. Oxford, 1874.

LATIN GRAMMAR.

1. LATIN GRAMMAR treats of the principles of the Latin language. It comprises four parts :

I. ORTHOGRAPHY, which treats of the letters and sounds of the language.

II. ETYMOLOGY, which treats of the classification, inflection, and derivation of words.

III. SYNTAX, which treats of the construction of sentences.

IV. PROSODY, which treats of quantity and versification.

PART FIRST.

ORTHOGRAPHY.

ALPHABET.

2. The Latin alphabet is the same as the English with the omission of *w*.¹

¹ The Romans derived their alphabet from the Greek colony at Cumae. In its original form it contained twenty-one letters: A, B, C, D, E, F, H, I, K, L, M, N, O, P, Q, R, S, T, U, X, Z. *C* was a modification of the Greek gamma, and *F* of the digamma. *Q* was the Greek koppa, which early disappeared from the Greek alphabet. *C* had the sound afterward denoted by *g*; *K*, the sound afterward denoted by *c*. *Z* early disappeared from the Latin alphabet, but was subsequently restored, though only in foreign words. Throughout the classical period only capital letters were used. On the *Alphabet*, see Whitney, pp. 59-70; Papillon, pp. 28-48; Wordsworth, pp. 5-10; Roby, I., pp. 21-62; Sievers, pp. 24-108; Corssen, I., pp. 1-346; Kühner, I., pp. 35-49.

II. CONSONANTS.

	GUTTURALS.	DENTALS.	LABIALS.
1. SEMIVOWELS, <i>sonant</i>	i or j = y		v = w
2. NASALS, <i>sonant</i>	n ¹	n	m
3. ASPIRATE, <i>surd</i>	h		
4. FRICATIVES, comprising			
1. <i>Liquids, sonant</i>		l, r	
2. <i>Spirants, surd</i>		s	f
5. MUTES, comprising			
1. <i>Sonant Mutes</i>	g	d	b
2. <i>Surd Mutes</i>	c, k, q	t	p

NOTE 1.—Observe that the consonants are divided,

- I. According to the ORGANS chiefly employed in their production, into
 1. Gutturals—*throat letters*, also called Palatals;
 2. Dentals—*teeth letters*, also called Linguals;
 3. Labials—*lip letters*.

II. According to the MANNER in which they are uttered, into

1. Sonants, or *voiced letters*;
2. Surds, or *voiceless letters*.²

NOTE 2.—*X* = *cs*,³ and *z* = *ds*, are double consonants, formed by the union of a mute with the spirant *s*.

4. DIPHTHONGS are formed by the union of two vowels in one syllable.

NOTE.—The most common diphthongs are *ae*, *oe*, *au*, and *eu*. *Ei*, *oi*, and *ui* are rare.⁴

ROMAN METHOD OF PRONUNCIATION.⁵

5. VOWELS.—The vowel sounds are the following :

¹ With the sound of *n* in *concord*, *linger*. It occurs before gutturals: *congrēssus*, meeting.

² The distinction between a *sonant* and a *surd* will be appreciated by observing the difference between the sonant *b* and its corresponding surd *p* in such words as *bad*, *pad*. *B* is vocalized, *p* is not.

³ *X* often represents the union of *g* and *s*, but in such cases *g* is probably first assimilated to *c*; see 30, 33, 1.

⁴ Proper diphthongs were formed originally by the union of an open or medial vowel, *a*, *e*, or *o*, with a close vowel, *i* or *u*, as *ai*, *ei*, *oi*, *au*, *eu*, *ou*. An improper diphthong was also formed by the union of the two close vowels, as *ui*. For the weakening of these original diphthongs, see 23, note.

⁵ In this country three distinct methods are recognized in the pronunciation of Latin. They are generally known as the *Roman*, the *English*, and the *Continental Methods*. The researches of Corssen and others have revealed laws of phonetic change of great value in tracing the history of Latin words. Accordingly, whatever method of pronunciation may be adopted for actual use in the class-room, the pupil should sooner or later be made familiar with the leading features of the Roman Method, which is at least an approximation to the ancient pronunciation of the language.

LONG.	
ā like <i>ā</i> in <i>father</i> :	ā'-rīs. ¹
ē " <i>e</i> " <i>prey</i> : ²	ē'-dī.
ī " <i>ī</i> " <i>machine</i> : ²	ī'-rī.
ō " <i>ō</i> " <i>old</i> :	ō'-rās.
ū " <i>ū</i> " <i>rule</i> : ²	ū'-nō.

SHORT.	
a like <i>a</i> in <i>Cuba</i> : ³	a'-met.
e " <i>e</i> " <i>net</i> :	re'-get.
i " <i>i</i> " <i>cigar</i> :	vi'-det.
o " <i>o</i> " <i>obey</i> :	mo'-net.
u " <i>u</i> " <i>full</i> :	su'-mus.

1. A short vowel in a long syllable is pronounced short: *sunt*,⁴ *u* as in *sum*, *su'-mus*. But see 16, note 2.

2. **Y**, found only in Greek words, is in sound intermediate between the Latin *i* and *u*, similar to the French *u* and the German *ü*. *My sa*

3. *i* preceded by an accented *a*, *e*, *o*, or *y*, and followed by another vowel, is a semivowel with the sound of *y* in *yet* (7): *A-chā-ia* (Ā-kā-yā).

4. **U** in *qu*, and generally in *gu* and *su* before a vowel, has the sound of *w*: *quī* (kwē), *lin'-gua* (lin'-gwā), *suā'-sit* (swā'-sit).

6. **DIPHTHONGS**.—In diphthongs each vowel retains its own sound:

ae (for *ai*) like the English **ay** (yes): *mēn'-sae*.⁵

au like *ow* in **how**: *cau'-sa*.

oe (for *oi*) like *oi* in **coin**: *foe'-dus*.

1. **Ei** as in *veil*, **eu** with the sound of *e* and *u* combined, and **oi** = *oe*, occur in a few words: *dein*,⁷ *neu-ter*, *proin*.

7. **CONSONANTS**.—Most of the consonants are pronounced nearly as in English, but the following require special notice:

c like *k* in *king*: *cē'-lēs* (kay-lace), *cī'-vī* (kē-wē).

g " *g* " *get*: *re'-gunt*, *re'-gis*, *ge'-nus*.

¹ The Latin vowels marked with the sign $\bar{}$ are *long in quantity*, i. e., in the duration of the sound (16); those not marked are *short in quantity*; see 16, note 3.

² Or \bar{e} like \bar{a} in *made*, \bar{i} like \bar{e} in *me*, and \bar{u} like *oo* in *moon*.

³ The short vowels can be only imperfectly represented by English equivalents. In theory they have the same sounds as the corresponding long vowels, but occupy only half as much time in utterance.

⁴ Observe the difference between the *length* or *quantity* of the vowel and the *length* or *quantity* of the syllable. Here the vowel *u* is short, but the syllable *sunt* is long; see 16, I. In syllables long irrespective of the length of the vowels contained in them, it is often difficult and sometimes absolutely impossible to determine the *natural quantity* of the vowels; but it is thought advisable to treat vowels as short in all situations where there are not good reasons for believing them to be long.

⁵ This is sometimes called the parasitic *u*, as having been developed in many instances by the preceding consonant, and as being dependent upon it. See Papillon, p. 50; Peile, p. 388; Corssen, I., pp. 69, 70, and 85.

⁶ Combining the sounds of *a* and *i*.

⁷ When pronounced as monosyllables in poetry (608, III.); otherwise as dissyllables *de'-in*, *pro'-in*.

j like *y* in yet: *jū'-stum* (yoo-stum), *ja'-cet*.

s " *s* " son: *sa'-cer*, *so'-ror*, *A'-si-a*.

t " *t* " time: *tī'-mor*, *tō'-tus*, *āc'-ti-ō*.

v " *w* " we: *va'-dum*, *vī'-cī*, *vī'-ti-um*.¹

NOTE.—Before *s* and *t*, *b* has the sound of *p*: *urbs*, *sub'-ter*, pronounced *urps*, *sup'-ter*.² *Ch* has the sound of *k*: *cho'-rus* (ko'-rus).

8. SYLLABLES.—In dividing words into syllables,

1. Make as many syllables as there are vowels and diphthongs: *mō'-re*, *per-suā'-dē*, *mēn'-sae*.

2. Join to each vowel as many of the consonants which precede it—one or more—as can be conveniently pronounced at the beginning of a word or syllable:³ *pa'-ter*, *pa'-trēs*, *ge'-ne-rī*, *do'-mi-nus*, *nō'-scit*, *sī'-stis*, *clau'-stra*, *mēn'-sa*, *bel'-lum*, *tem'-plum*, *ēmp'-tus*. But—

3. Compound words must be separated into their component parts, if the first of these parts ends in a consonant: *ab'-es*, *ob-ī'-re*.

ENGLISH METHOD OF PRONUNCIATION.⁴

9. VOWELS.—Vowels generally have their long or short English sounds.⁵

10. LONG SOUNDS.—Vowels have their long English sounds—**a** as in *fate*, **e** in *mete*, **i** in *pine*, **o** in *note*, **u** in *tube*, **y** in *type*—in the following situations:

1. In final syllables ending in a vowel:

Se, *sī*, *ser'-vi*, *ser'-vo*, *cor'-nu*, *mī'-sy*.

2. In all syllables, before a vowel or diphthong:

De'-us, *de-o'-rum*, *de'-ae*, *di-e'-i*, *nī'-hi-lum*.⁶

¹ There is some uncertainty in regard to the sound of *v*. Corssen gives it at the beginning of a word the sound of the English *v*, in all other situations the sound of *w*.

² On *Assimilation in Sound* in this and similar cases, see p. 17, foot note 1.

³ By some grammarians any combination of consonants which can begin either a Latin or a Greek word is always joined to the following vowel, as *o'-mnis*, *i'-pse*. Roby, on the contrary, thinks that the Romans pronounced with each vowel as many of the following consonants as could be readily combined with it.

⁴ Scholars in different countries generally pronounce Latin substantially as they pronounce their own languages. Accordingly in England and in this country the English Method has in general prevailed, though of late the Roman pronunciation has gained favor in many quarters.

⁵ These sounds in Latin, as in English, are somewhat modified by the consonants which accompany them. Thus, before *r*, when *final*, or followed by another consonant, *e*, *i*, and *u* are scarcely distinguishable, while *a* and *o* are pronounced as in *far*, *for*. Between *qu* and *dr*, or *rt*, *a* approaches the sound of *o*: *quar'tus*, as in *quarter*.

⁶ In these rules no account is taken of the aspirate *h*: hence the first *i* in *nilum* is treated as a vowel before another vowel; for the same reason, *ch*, *ph*, and *th* are treated as single mutes; thus *th* in *Athos* and *Othrys*.

3. In penultimate' syllables before a single consonant, or before a mute followed by a liquid :

Pa'-ter, pa'-tres, ho-no'-ris, A'-thos, O'-thrys.

4. In unaccented syllables, not final, before a single consonant, or before a mute followed by a liquid :

Do-lo'-ris, cor'-po-ri, con'-su-lis, a-gric'-o-la.

1) **A** unaccented, except before consonants in final syllables (11, 1), has the sound of a final in *America*: *men'-sa, a-cu'-tus, a-ma'-mus*.²

2) **I** and **y** unaccented, in any syllable except the first and last, generally have the short sound: *nob'-i-lis* (nob'-e-lis), *Am'-y-cus* (Am'-e-cus).

3) **I** preceded by an accented *a, e, o,* or *y,* and followed by another vowel, is a semivowel³ with the sound of *y* in *yet*: *A-cha'-ia* (A-ka'-ya), *Pom-pe'-ius* (Pom-pe'-yus), *La-to'-ia* (La-to'-ya), *Har-py'-ia* (Har-py'-ya).

4) **U** has the short sound before *bl*, and the other vowels before *gl* and *tl*: *Pub-lic'-o-la, Ag-la'-o-phon, At'-las.*

5) **U**⁴ in *qu*, and generally in *gu* and *su* before a vowel, has the sound of *w*: *qui* (kwi), *qua*; *lin'-gua* (lin'-gwa), *lin'-guis*; *sua'-de-o* (swa'-de-o).

6) COMPOUND WORDS.—When the first part of a compound is entire and ends in a consonant, any vowel before such consonant has generally the short sound: *a* in *ab'-es*, *e* in *red'-it*, *i* in *in'-it*, *o* in *ob'-it*, *prod'-est*. But those final syllables which, as exceptions, have the long sound before a consonant (11, 1), retain that sound in compounds: *post'-quam*, *hos'-ce*. *E'-ti-am* and *quo'-ni-am* are generally pronounced as simple words.⁵

11. SHORT SOUNDS.—Vowels have their short English sounds—**a** as in *fat*, **e** in *met*, **i** in *pin*, **o** in *not*, **u** in *tub*, **y** in *myth*—in the following situations :

1. In final syllables ending in a consonant :

A'-mat, a'-met, rex'-it, sol, con'-sul, Te'-thys; except *post, es final*, and *os final* in plural cases: *res, di'-es, hos, a'gros*.

2. In all syllables before *x*, or any two consonants except a mute followed by a liquid (10, 3 and 4) :

Rex'-it, bel'-lum, rex-e'-runt, bel-lo'-rum.

¹ Penultimate, the last syllable but one.

² Some give the same sound to *a final* in monosyllables: *da, qua*; while others give it the long sound according to 10, 1.

³ Sometimes written *j*.

⁴ This is sometimes called the parasitic *u*, as having been developed in many instances by the preceding consonant and as being dependent upon it. See Papillon, p. 50; Peilo, p. 888; Corssen, I., pp. 69, 70, and 85.

⁵ *Etiam* is compounded of *et* and *jam*; *quoniam*, of *quom* = *quum*, *cum*, and *jam*.

3. In all accented syllables, not penultimate, before one or more consonants :

Dom'-i-nus, pat'-ri-bus. But—

1) **A, e, or o** before a single consonant (or a mute and a liquid), followed by *e, i, or y* before another vowel, has the long sound: *a'-ci-es, a'-cri-a, me'-re-o, do'-ce-o.*

2) **U**, in any syllable not final, before a single consonant or a mute and a liquid, except *bl*, has the long sound: *Pu'-ni-cus, sa-lu'-bri-tas.*

3) Compounds; see 10, 6).

12. DIPHTHONGS.—Diphthongs are pronounced as follows :

Ae like *e*: *Cae'-sar, Daed'-a-lus*.¹ | **Au** as in *author*: *au'-rum.*

Oe like *e*: *Oe'-ta, Oed'-i-pus*.¹ | **Eu** as in *neuter*: *neu'-ter.*

1. *Ei* and *oi* are seldom diphthongs, but when so used they are pronounced as in *height, coin*: *hei, proin*; see Synaeresis, 608, III.

2. *Ui*, as a diphthong with the long sound of *i*, occurs in *cui, hui, huic.*

13. CONSONANTS.—The consonants are pronounced in general as in English. Thus—

I. **C** and **G** are *soft* (like *s* and *j*) before *e, i, y, ae, and oe*, and *hard* in other situations: *ce'-do* (se'-do), *ci'-vis, Cy'-rus, cae'-do, coe'-pi, a'-ge* (a'-je), *a'-gi; ca'-do* (ka'-do), *co'-go, cum, Ga'-des.* But

1. *C* has the sound of *sh*—

1) Before *i* preceded by an accented syllable and followed by a vowel: *so'-ci-us* (so'-she-us);

2) Before *eu* and *yo* preceded by an accented syllable: *ca-du'-ce-us* (ca-du'-she-us), *Sic'-y-on* (Sish'-y-on).

2. *Ch* is hard like *k*: *cho'-rus* (ko'-rus), *Chi'-os* (Ki'-os).

3. *G* has the soft sound before *g* soft: *ag'-ger.*

II. **S, T, and X** are generally pronounced as in the English words *son, time, expect*: *sa'-cer, ti'-mor, rex'-i* (rek'-si). But—

1. *S, T, and X* are aspirated before *i* preceded by an accented syllable and followed by a vowel—*s* and *t* taking the sound of *sh*, and *x* that of *ksh*: *Al'-si-um* (Al'-she-um), *ar'-ti-um* (ar'-she-um), *anx'-i-us* (ank'-she-us). But

1) *T* loses the aspirate—(1) after *s, t, or x*: *Os'-ti-a, At'-ti-us, miæ'-ti-o*; (2) in old infinitives in *ier*: *flec'-ti-er*; (3) generally in proper names in *tion* (*tyon*): *Phi-lis'-ti-on, Am-phio'-ty-on.*

¹ The diphthong has the long sound in *Cae'-sar* and *Oe'-ta*, according to 10, 3, but the short sound in *Daed'-a-lus* (Ded'-a-lus) and *Oed'-i-pus* (Ed'-i-pus), according to 11, 3, as *e* would be thus pronounced in the same situations.

2. *S* is pronounced like *z*—

1) At the end of a word, after *e*, *ae*, *au*, *b*, *m*, *n*, *r*: *spes*, *praes. laus*, *urbs*, *hi'-em*, *mons*, *pars*;

2) In a few words after the analogy of the corresponding English words: *Cae'-sar*. Caesar; *cau'-sa*, cause; *mu'-sa*, muse; *mi'-ser*, miser, miserable, etc.

3. *X* at the beginning of a word has the sound of *z*: *Xan'-thus*.

14. SYLLABLES.—In dividing words into syllables—

1. Make as many syllables as there are vowels and diphthongs: *mo'-re*, *per-sua'-de*, *men'-sae*.

2. Distribute the consonants so as to give the proper sound to each vowel and diphthong, as determined by previous rules (10–12): *pa'-ter*, *pa'-tres*, *a-gro'-rum*, *au-di'-vi*; *gen'-e-ri*, *dom'-i-nus*; *bel'-lum*, *pat'-ri-bus*; *emp'-tus*, *tem'-plum*; *rex'-i*, *anx'-i-us*; *post'-quam*, *hos'-ce*.¹

CONTINENTAL METHOD OF PRONUNCIATION.²

15. For the Continental Method, as adopted in this country, take—

1. The Roman pronunciation of the vowels and diphthongs; see 5 and 6.

2. The English pronunciation of the consonants;³ see 13.

3. The Roman division of words into syllables; see 8.

QUANTITY.

16. Syllables are in quantity or length either long, short, or common.⁴

I. LONG.—A syllable is long in quantity—

1. If it contains a diphthong or a long vowel: *haec*, *rēs*.⁵

¹ Observe that compound words are separated into their component parts, if the first of these parts ends in a consonant (10, 4, 6), as *post'-quam*; that in other cases, after a vowel with a long sound, consonants are joined to the following syllable, as in the first four examples, *pa'-ter*, etc., and that, after a vowel with a short sound, a single consonant is joined to such vowel, as in *gen'-e-ri* and *dom'-i-nus*; that two consonants are separated, as in *bel'-lum*, etc.; that of three or four consonants, the last, or, if a mute and a liquid, the last two, are joined to the following syllable, as in *emp'-tus*, etc., but that the double consonant *x* is joined to the preceding vowel, as in *rex'-i*, *anx'-i-us*.

² Strictly speaking, there is no Continental Method, as every nation on the Continent of Europe has its own method.

³ Though the pronunciation of the consonants varies somewhat in different institutions.

⁴ Common—i. e., sometimes long and sometimes short. For rules of quantity see Prosody. Two or three leading facts are here given for the convenience of the learner.

⁵ See note 3 below.

2. If its vowel is followed by *x* or *z*, or any two consonants, except a mute and a liquid:¹ *dux*, *rēx*, *sunt*.²

II. SHORT.—A syllable is short, if its vowel is followed by another vowel, by a diphthong, or by the aspirate *h*: *di'-ēs*, *vi'-ae*, *ni'-hil*.

III. COMMON.—A syllable is common, if its vowel, naturally short, is followed by a mute and a liquid: *a'-grī*.

NOTE 1.—Vowels are also in quantity either long, short, or common; but the quantity of the vowel does not always coincide with the quantity of the syllable.³

NOTE 2.—Vowels are long before *ns*, *nf*, *gn*, *gm*, and generally before *j*: *cōm'-sul*, *īn-fē'-līx*, *rēg'-num*, *sēg-men'-tum*, *hū'-jus*.⁴

NOTE 3.—The signs $\bar{\ }^{\circ}$ are used to mark the quantity of vowels, the first denoting that the vowel over which it is placed is *long*, the second that it is *common*, i. e., sometimes long and sometimes short: *a-mā'-bō*. All vowels not marked are to be treated as short.⁵

NOTE 4.—Diphthongs are always long.

ACCENTUATION.*

17. Words of two syllables are always accented on the first: *mēn'-sa*.

NOTE.—Monosyllables are also accented.

18. Words of more than two syllables are accented on

¹ That is, in the order here given, with the mute before the liquid; if the liquid precedes, the syllable is long.

² Observe that the vowel in such syllables may be either long or short. Thus it is long in *rēx*, but short in *dux* and *sunt*.

³ Thus in long syllables the vowels may be either long or short, as in *rēx*, *dux*, *sunt*; see foot-note 4, p. 4. But in short syllables the vowels are also short.

⁴ See Schmitz, pp. 3-83, also p. 56; Kühner, I., p. 137; also H. A. J. Munro's pamphlet on the Pronunciation of Latin, pp. 24-26.⁴

⁵ See p. 4, foot-note 4. In many works short vowels are marked with the sign \sim : *rēgīs*.

⁶ With the ancient Romans accent probably related not to *force* or *stress of voice*, as with us, but to *musical pitch*. It was also distinguished as *acute* or *circumflex*. Thus all monosyllables and all words in which the vowel of the penult is long and the final syllable short were said to have the circumflex accent, while all other accented words were said to have the acute. The distinction is of no practical value in pronunciation. On the general subject of Accent, see Ellis, pp. 8-10; Roby, I., pp. 98-100; Kühner, I. p. 148; Corssen, II., pp. 806-808.

the *Penult*,¹ if that is long in quantity,² otherwise on the *Antepenult*:¹ *ho-nō'-ris*, *cōn'-su-lis*.

1. Certain words which have lost a syllable retain the accent of the full form. Thus—

1) Genitives in *ī* for *iī* and vocatives in *ī* for *ie*: *in-ge'-nī* for *in-ge'-nī-ī*, *Mer-cu'-rī* for *Mer-cu'-rī-e*.

2) Certain words which have lost a final *e*: *il-līc'* for *il-lī'-ce*, *il-lāc'* for *ī-lā'-ce*, *is-tīc'* for *is-tī'-ce*, etc.; *bo-nān'* for *bo-nā'-ne*, *īl-lān'* for *il-lā'-ne*, *tan-tōn'* for *tan-tō'-ne*, *au-dīn'* for *au-dīs'-ne*, *ē-dūc'* for *ē-dū'-ce*.³

NOTE 1.—Prepositions standing before their cases are treated as *Proclitics*—i. e., are so closely united in pronunciation with the following word as to have no accent of their own: *sub gū'-dī-ce*, *in-ter rē'-gēs*.

NOTE 2.—Penults common in quantity take the accent when used as *long*.

2. Compounds are accented like simple words; but—

1) The enclitics, *que*, *ve*, *ne*, *ce*, *met*, etc., throw back their accents upon the last syllable of the word to which they are appended: *ho'-mī-ne'-que*,⁴ *mēn-sa'-que*,⁵ *e-go'-met*.

2) *Faciō*, compounded with other words than prepositions, retains its own accent: *ca'-le-fa'-cīt*.⁴

3. A secondary or subordinate accent is placed on the second or third syllable before the primary accent—on the second, if that is the first syllable of the word, or is long in quantity, otherwise on the third: *mo'-nu-ē'-runt*, *mo'-nu-e-rā'-mus*,⁶ *īn-stau'-rā-vē'-runt*.

NOTE.—A few long words admit two secondary or subordinate accents: *ho'-nō-rīf'-ī-cen-tis'-sī-mus*.⁶

PHONETIC CHANGES.

19. Latin words have undergone important changes in accordance with phonetic laws.⁷

¹ The penult is the last syllable but one; the antepenult, the last but two.

² Thus the quantity of the *syllable*, not of the *vowel*, determines the place of the accent: *rege'n'-tis*, accented on the penult, because that *syllable* is *long*, though its *vowel* is *short*; see 16, I., 2.

³ According to Priscian, certain contracted words, as *ves-trās'* for *ves-trā'-tis*, or with the circumflex accent, *ves-trās* for *ves-trā-tis*, *Sam-nīs* for *Sam-nī-tis*, also retained the accent of the full form; but it is not deemed advisable to multiply exceptions in a school grammar. See Priscian, IV., 22.

⁴ By the English method, *hom'-i-ne'-que*, *cal'-e-fa'-cīt*.

⁵ A word accented upon the penult thus loses its own accent before an enclitic: *mēn'-sa*, *mēn-sa'-que*.

⁶ By the English method, *mon'-u-e'-runt*, *mon'-u-e-rā'-mus*, *hon'-ō-rīf'-ī-cen-tis'-sī-mus*.

⁷ In the history of the ancient languages of the Indo-European family, to which the Latin, Greek, and English alike belong, the general direction of phonetic change has been from the extremes of the alphabetic scale—i. e., from the open *a* at one extreme and

I. CHANGES IN VOWELS.

20. Vowels are often lengthened :

1. In compensation for the dropping of consonants :

Servoms,¹ *servōs*, slaves ; *rēgems*, *rēgēs*, kings ; *posnō*, *pōnō*, I place ; *pagla*,¹ *pāla*, a spade.

2. In the inflection of verbs :

Legō, *lēgī*,² I read, I have read ; *edō*, *ēdī*, I eat, I have eaten ; *fugiō*, *fūgī*, I flee, I have fled.

NOTE 1.—Sometimes vowels are changed, as well as lengthened : *agō*, *ēgī*, I drive, I have driven ; *faciō*, *fēcī*, I make, I have made ; see 255, II.

NOTE 2.—Different forms from the same stem or root sometimes show a variable vowel : *ducis*, *dūcis*, of a leader, you lead ; *regis*, *rēgis*, you rule, of a king ; *tegō*, *toga*, I cover, a covering, the toga.³ See also 22, 1.

21. Vowels are often shortened :⁴

1. Regularly in final syllables before *m* and *t* :

Erām, *eram*,⁵ I was ; *monēām*, *noneam*, let me advise ; *audiām*, *audiam*, let me hear ; *erāt*, *erat*, he was ; *amāt*, *amat*, he loves ; *monēt*, *monet*, he advises ; *sīt*, *sit*, may he be ; *audīt*, *audit*, he hears.

2. Often in other final syllables. Thus—

1) Final *ā*⁶ is shortened (1) in the Plural of Neuter nouns and adjectives,⁶ and (2) in the Nominative and Vocative Singular of Feminine⁷ nouns and adjectives of the first declension :

from the close mutes at the other—toward the middle of the scale, where the vowels and consonants meet ; see 3. Accordingly, in Latin words we shall not unfrequently find *e* or *o*, or even *i* or *u*, occupying the place of a primitive *a* ; and we shall sometimes find a *liquid* or a *fricative* occupying the place of a *primitive mute*. See Whitney, p. 68 ; Papillon, p. 49 ; Pelle, pp. 199 and 312.

¹ *O* short in *servoms* is lengthened in *servōs* to compensate for the loss of *m*, and *a* short in *pagla* is lengthened in *pāla* to compensate for the loss of *g*.

² The short vowel of the present tense is here lengthened in the perfect ; see 255, II.

³ In *ducis*, *dūcis*, and in *regis*, *rēgis*, the variation is simply in the *quantity* of the vowel, but in *tegō*, *toga*, it affects the vowel itself, appearing as *e* in *tegō* and *o* in *toga*. Sometimes a single vowel appears in one form while a diphthong appears in another *ides*, faith, *foedus*, treaty.

⁴ See Corssen, II., p. 436 seq.

⁵ In all these examples, the form with the long vowel in the final syllable is the earlier form, and, in general, is found only in inscriptions and in the early poets, as Plautus, Ennius, etc. ; while the form with the short vowel belongs to the classical period.

⁶ Corssen regards numerals in *-gintā*, as *tri-gintā*, *quadra-gintā*, etc., as Plural Neuters, and *ā* as the original ending. He recognizes also the Neuter Plural of the pronoun with *ā* in *ant-eā*, *post-eā*, *inter-eā*, *praeter-eā*, *ante-hā-c*, *praeter-hā-c*. See Corssen, II., p. 455. For a different explanation, see 304, IV., N. 2.

⁷ In masculine nouns of the first declension *a* final was short in the Nominative even in early Latin : *scribī*, a scribe. But most stems in *a* weakened *a* to *o*, and thus passed into the second declension.

Templā, templā, temples; generā, genera, kinds; graviā, gravia, heavy; mūsā, mūsa, muse; bonā, bona, good.

2) In **ār**, **ōr**, and **āl** final, *ā* and *ō* are regularly shortened:

Regār, regar, let me be ruled; *audiār, audiar*, let me be heard; *audiōr, audior*, I am heard; *honōr, honor*, honor; *ōrātōr, ōrātor*, orator; *moneōr, moneor*, I am advised; *animāle, animāl* (27), *animal*, an animal.

3) Final \bar{e} , \bar{i} , and \bar{o} are sometimes shortened:

Benē, bene, well; *nūbē, nūbe*, with a cloud; *nisi, nisi*, unless; *ibī, ibi*, there; *leō, leō*, a lion; *egō, ego*, I.

22. Vowels are often weakened, i. e., are often changed to weaker vowels.¹

The order of the vowels, from the strongest to the weakest, is as follows :

a, o, u, e, i.²

Thus **a** is changed to **o . . . u . . . e . . . i**

o to u . . . e . . . i.

u to e . . i.

e to i.

NOTE.—The change from *a* through *o* to *u* is usually arrested at *u*, while *a* is often changed directly through *e* to *i* without passing through *o* or *u*.^s

1. Vowels are often weakened in consequence of the lengthening of words by inflection, composition, etc.:

Carmen,⁴ *carmenis*, *carminis*, a song, of a song; *fructus*, *fructubus*, *fructibus*, fruit, with fruits; *faciō*, *cōn-faciō*, *cōn-ficiō*, I make, I accomplish; *factus*, *in-factus*, *in-fectus*, made, not made; *damnō*, *con-damnō*, *condemnō*, I doom, I condemn; *teneō*, *con-teneō*, *con-tinēō*, I hold, I contain; *cadō*, *ca-cad-i*, *ce-cid-i*, I fall, I have fallen; *tuba*, *tuba-cen*, *tubi-cen*, a flute, a flute-player.

¹ See Corssen, II., pp. 1-486. The process by which vowels are shortened (21), weakened, or dropped (27), and by which diphthongs are weakened to single vowels, and consonants assimilated, or otherwise changed, is generally known as PHONETIC DECAY. It may result from indistinct articulation, or from an effort to secure ease of utterance. For a difficult sound, or combination of sounds, it substitutes one which requires less physical effort.

² But *u*, *e*, and *i* differ so slightly in strength that they appear at times to be simply interchanged.

³ That is, the open *a* is changed either to the close *u* through the medial *o*, as seen on the right side of the following vowel-triangle, or to the close *i* through the medial *e*, as seen on the left side:

Open vowel a
Medial vowels e o
Close vowels i u

* The syllable *men* was originally *man*. The original *a* has been weakened to *e* in *carmen* and to *i* in *carmin-is*.

2. Vowels are often weakened without any such special cause:¹

Puerom, *puerum*, a boy; *filios*, *filius*, son; *sont*, *sunt*, they are; *regont*, *regunt*, they rule, *decumus*, *decimus*, tenth; *māxumus*, *māximus*, greatest; *lēgitumus*, *legitimus*, lawful; *aestumō*, *aestimō*, I estimate.

23. Two successive vowels are sometimes contracted:

1. Into a DIPHTHONG: *mēnsā-ī*, *mēnsai*, *mēnsae*, tables; see 4.

2. More frequently into a LONG VOWEL. In this case the second vowel generally disappears. Thus *e* and *i* often disappear after *a*, *e*, and *o*:

Amāverat, *amaerat*, *amārat*, he had loved; *amāvīsse*, *amaisse*, *amāsse*, to have loved; *flēverunt*, *fleerunt*, *flerunt*, they have wept; *nōvīsse*, *noisse*, *nōsse*, to know; *servoī*, *servō*, for the slave.

NOTE.—The proper diphthongs of early Latin were changed or weakened as follows:

- ai*² generally into *ae*; sometimes into *ē* or *ī*.
- oi* generally into *oe*; sometimes into *ū* or *ī*.
- ei* generally into *ī*; sometimes unchanged.
- au* sometimes into *ō* or *ū*; generally unchanged.
- eu* generally into *ū*; rarely unchanged.
- ou* regularly into *ū*.

Aidilis, *aedilis*, an aedile; *Rōmai*, *Rōmae*, at Rome; *amāimus*, *amēmus*, let us love; *in-caedit*, *in-cidit*, he cuts into; *mēnsais*, *mēnsis*, with tables; *foidus*, *foedus*, treaty; *coira*, *coera*, *cūra*, care; *loidos*, *loedus*, *lūdus*,³ play; *puerois*, *pueris*, for the boys; *ceivis*, *civis*, citizen; *lautus*, *lōtus*,⁴ elegant; *ex-claudō*, *ex-cludō*, I shut out; *doucīt*, *dūcīt*, he leads; *jous*, *jūs*,⁵ right.

24. Vowels are sometimes changed through the influence of the consonants which follow them. Thus—

¹ That is, by the ordinary process of phonetic decay, a process which in many words has changed an original *a* of the parent language to *e* or *o* in Latin, and in some words to *i* or *u*. Corssen cites upward of four hundred Latin words in which he supposes a primitive *a* to have been weakened to *o*, *e*, or *i*. Even the long vowels are sometimes weakened. Compare the following forms, in which the Sanskrit retains the vowel of the parent language.

SANSKRIT.	LATIN.	ENGLISH.	SANSKRIT.	LATIN.	ENGLISH.
sapta,	septem,	seven.	padas,	pedēs,	feet.
nava,	novem,	nine.	navas,	novus,	new.
daça,	decem,	ten.	vāk,	vōx,	voice.
mātā,	māter,	mother.	vācas,	vōcis,	of a voice.
sadas,	sēdēs,	seat.	vācam,	vōcem,	voice.

² The forms *ai*, *oi*, *ei*, *au*, *eu*, and *ou* are all found in early Latin, as in inscriptions; but in the classical period *ai* had been already changed to *ae*, *oi* to *oe*, and *ou* to *ū*.

³ *Loidos*, the earliest form, became *loedus* by weakening *oi* to *oe*, and *o* to *u* (22, 2); then *loedus* became *lūdus* by weakening *oe* to *ū*.

⁴ *Lautus*, the earlier, is also the more approved form.

⁵ As *eu* and *ou* were both weakened to *ū*, it is not easy to give trustworthy examples of the weakening of *eu* to *ū*.

1. **E** is the favorite vowel before *r*, *x*, or two or more consonants:

Cinisis, *cineris*¹ (31), of ashes; *jūdex*, *jūdex*, judge; *mīlītis*, *mīlets*, *mīles*,⁴ of a soldier, a soldier.

NOTE.—*E* final is also a favorite vowel: *servo*, *serve*, O slave; *monēris*, *monēri*, *monēre*,³ you are advised; *marī*, *mare*, sea.

2. **I** is the favorite vowel before *n*, *s*, and *t*:

Homonis, *hominis*, of a man; *pulver* or *pulvis*,⁴ dust; *salūtes*, *salūtas*, of safety; *vērōtās*, *vērītās*, truth; *genetor*, *genītor*, father.

3. **U** is the favorite vowel before *l* and *m*, especially when followed by another consonant:

Epistola, *epistula*, letter; *volt*, *vult*, he wishes; *facilitās*, *faciltās* (27), *facultās*, faculty; *monēmentum*, *monumentum*, monument; *colomna*, *columna*, column.

25. ASSIMILATION.—A vowel is often assimilated by a following vowel. Thus—

1. A vowel before another vowel is often partially⁵ assimilated. *I* is thus changed to *e* before *a*, *o*, or *u*: *ia*, *ea*, this; *iō*, *eō*, I go; *iunt*, *eunt*, they go; *iadem*, *eadem*, same; *divus*, *dīus* (36, 4), *deus*, god.

NOTE.—When the first vowel is thus adapted to the second, the assimilation is said to be *regressive*, but sometimes the second vowel is adapted to the first, and then the assimilation is *progressive*. Thus the ending *iā* (21, 2), instead of becoming *ea* as above, may become *iē*: *luxuriā* (perhaps for *luxuriās*), *luxuriīs*, luxury; *māteriā*, *māteriēs*,⁶ material.

2. A vowel may be completely assimilated by the vowel of the following syllable from which it is separated by a consonant. Thus—

1) *E* is assimilated to *i*: *mehī*, *mihī*, for me; *tebī*, *tibī*, for you; *sebī*, *sibī*, for himself; *nehil*, *nihil*, nothing.

2) *U* is assimilated to *i*: *cōnsulium*, *cōnsilium*, counsel; *exsulium*, *exsilium*, exile.

3) Other vowels are sometimes assimilated; *o* to *e*: *bonē*, *benē*, *bene* (21, 2), well; *e* to *u*: *tegurium*, *tugurium*, hut; *ē* to *ō*: *sēcors*, *sōcors*, stupid.

26. DISSIMILATION.—A vowel is often changed by dissimilation,

¹ *Cinisis*, from *cinis*, becomes *cineris* by changing *s* to *r* between two vowels, making *ciniris* (31, 1), and by then changing *i* to *e* before *r*.

² Observe that the vowel which appears as *i* in *mīlītis* before *t*, takes the form of *e* in *mīlets* before *ts*, as also in *mīles* for *mīlets*.

³ *Monēris* becomes *monēre* by dropping *s* (36, 5), and changing final *i* to *e*.

⁴ Observe that the form in *r* has *e*, while that in *s* has *i*.

⁵ That is, it is made like it, adapted to it, but does not become identical with it. Thus *i* before *a* may be changed to *e*, but not to *a*.

⁶ Thus from nouns in *iā* of the first declension were developed nearly all nouns in *iēs* of the fifth.

i. e., by being made unlike the following vowel : *ĩĩ*, *ēĩ*, these ; *ĩĩs*, *ēĩs*, for these.¹

NOTE.—The combination *ii* is sometimes avoided by the use of *e* in place of the second *i* : *pietās* instead of *piitās*, piety ; *societās*, society ; *varietās*, variety.

27. Vowels are often dropped in the middle or at the end of words, sometimes even at the beginning :

Tempulum, *templum*, temple ; *vinculum*, *vinclum*, band ; *benigenus*, *benīg-vius*,² benignant ; *amāō*, *amō*, I love ; *temploa*, *templa*, temples ; *animāle*, *animāl*,³ an animal ; *sī-ne*, *sīn*, if not ; *dīce*, *dīc*, say ; *esum*, *sum*, I am ; *esumus*, *sumus*, we are.

NOTE.—After a word ending in a vowel or in *m*, *est*, he is, often drops the initial *e*, and becomes attached to the preceding word : *rēs optima est*, *rēs optumast*, the thing is best ; *optimum est*, *optimumst*, it is best ; *domi est*, *domīst*, he is at home. In the same way *es*, thou art, is sometimes attached to the preceding word, when that word ends in a vowel : *homō es*, *homōs*, you are a man. For the loss of a final *s* from the preceding word, see 36, 5, 1), note.

II. INTERCHANGE OF VOWELS AND CONSONANTS.

28. The vowel *i* and the consonant *i*—also written *j*—are sometimes interchanged :

Altior,⁴ higher ; *māior* or *māior*, greater ; *ipsiūs*, of himself ; *ēius* or *ējus*, of him.

29. The vowel *u* and the consonant *u*—generally written *v*—are often interchanged :

Col-uĩ,⁵ I have cultivated ; *vocā-vĩ*,⁶ I have called ; *nāvīta*, *nāvta*, nauta, sailor ; *volvtus*, *volūtus*, rolled ; *lvtus*, *lvtus* or *lōtus*,⁶ washed ; *mvtus*, *mōtus*,⁶ moved.

NOTE.—The Liquids and Nasals are sometimes so fully vocalized as to develop vowels

¹ The combination *uu* was also avoided in early Latin either by retaining the second vowel in the form of *o*, instead of weakening it to *u*, or by changing *qu* to *c* : *equos*, afterward *equus*, a horse ; *quom*, or *cum*, afterward, though not properly in classical times, *quum*, when. Observe that when *o* becomes *u*, a preceding *qu* becomes *c* : *quom*, *cum* ; *loquōtūs*, *locūtus*, having spoken. See Brambach, p. 5.

² See 16, note 2.

³ Observe that after *e* is dropped, *ā* is shortened in the final syllable : *animāl*, *animāl* ; see 21, 2.

⁴ In the comparative ending *ior*, as seen in *altior*, *i* is a vowel, but in the same ending, as seen in *māior*, *māior*, it is a consonant, and in this grammar is generally written *j*. *I* thus becomes *j* between two vowels ; see 2, 4, foot-note. So in the genitive ending *ius*, *i* is sometimes a vowel and sometimes a consonant.

⁵ The ending which appears as *uĩ* in *col-uĩ* becomes *vĩ* in *vocā-vĩ*. *U* becomes *v* between two vowels.

⁶ If a vowel precedes the *v* thus changed to *u*, a contraction takes place—*a-u* becoming *au*, rarely *ō*, *o-u* becoming *ō*, and *u-u* becoming *ū* : *lvtus*, *lvtus*, *lōtus*, washed ; *mvtus*, *mvtus*, *mōtus*, moved ; *jvtus*, *jvtus*, *jūtus*, assisted.

before them.¹ Thus *agr* (for *agrus*) becomes *ager*,² field; *ācr* (for *ācris*), *ācer*,³ sharp; *regm*, *regem*, king; *sm* (for *esm*), *sum*, I am; *snt* (for *esnt*), *sunt*, they are.

III. CHANGES IN CONSONANTS.

30. A Guttural—c, g,³ q (qu), or h⁴—before s generally unites with it and forms x:

Ducs, *dux*, leader; *pācs*, *pāx*, peace; *rēgs*, *rēcs*,⁵ *rēx*, king; *lēgs*, *lēcs*, *lēx*, law; *coqusī*, *cocsī*,⁵ *coxī*, I have cooked; *trahsī*, *tracsī*, *traxī*, I have drawn.

NOTE 1.—*V* for *gv* in *vīvō*, I live, is treated as a guttural: *vīvsī*, *vīcsī*, *vīxī*, I have lived.

NOTE 2.—For the *Dropping of the Guttural* before *s*, see 36, 3.

31. S is often changed to r:

1. Generally so when it stands between two vowels: ⁶*flōsēs*, *flōrēs*, flowers; *jūsa*, *jūra*, rights; *mēnsāsum*, *mēnsārum*, of tables; *agrōsum*, *agrōrum*, of fields; *esam*, *eram*, I was; *esāmus*, *erāmus*, we were; *fuesunt*, *fuērunt*, they have been; *fuesit*, *fuērit*, he will have been; *amāset*, *amāret*, he would love; *regisī*, *regeris*,⁷ you are ruled.

NOTE.—This phonetic law, in full force during the formative period of the language, subsequently became inoperative.

2. Sometimes before *m*, *n*, or *v*: *casmēn*, *carmen*, song; *vetusnus*, *veternus*, old; *hodiesnus*, *hodiernus*, of this day; *Minesva*,⁸ *Minerva*, the goddess Minerva.

32. D is sometimes changed to l:

Dacrima, *lacrima*, tear; *dingua*, *lingua*, language; *odēre*, *olēre*, to emit an odor.

NOTE 1.—*D* final sometimes stands in the place of an original *t*: *id*,⁹ this; *istud*, that; *illud*, that; *quod*, *quid*, what, which?

NOTE 2.—*Dv* at the beginning of a word (1) sometimes becomes *b*: *dvellum*, *bellum*, war; *dis*, *bis*, twice; (2) sometimes drops *d*: *dvigintī*, *vigintī*, twenty; and (3) sometimes drops *v*: *dis*, *dis*, inseparable particle (308), in two, asunder.

33. PARTIAL ASSIMILATION.—A consonant is often partially¹⁰ assimilated by a following consonant. Thus—

¹ This occurs between consonants and at the end of words after consonants.

² The ending *us* or *is* is dropped (36, 5, 2), note, and *r* final vocalized to *er*; *m* becomes *em* in *regem*, and *um* in *sum*; *n* becomes *un* in *sunt*.

³ Sometimes *gu*: *extingusi*, *extincsi*, *extinxi*, I have extinguished.

⁴ For an original *gh*.

⁵ The process seems to be that the guttural before *s* first becomes *c*, and then unites with *s* and forms *x*: thus in *coqusī*, *qu* becomes *c*.

⁶ Hence, in many Latin words, *r* between two vowels represents an original *s*.

⁷ Observe that *i* before *s* becomes *e* before *r*; see 24.

⁸ For *Men-es-va*, *men* weakened to *min*, see 22, 1.

⁹ For *it*, *istud*, etc. *D* stands for *t* also in the old Ablative in *d*: *praedād* for *praedāt*, afterward *praedā*, with booty; *magistrātūd* for *magistrātūt*, *magistrātū*, from the magistracy.

¹⁰ That is, it is adapted or accommodated to it, but does not become the same letter.

1. Before the surd **s** or **t**, a sonant **b** or **g** is generally changed to its corresponding surd, **p**¹ or **c**:

Scribē, scripsi, I have written; *scribtus, scriptus*, written; *rēgsi, rēcsi, rēxi* (30), I have ruled; *rēgtus, rēctus*, ruled. See also 35, 3, note.

NOTE.—*Qu*, *h* for *gh*, and *v* for *gv* are also changed to *c* before *s* and *t*: *coqusit*,² *cocsit, corit*, he has cooked; *coqutus, coctus*, cooked; *trahsit*,³ *tracsit*,³ *traxit*, he has drawn; *trahtus, tractus*, drawn; *vīvsit*,⁴ *vīcsit, vīxit*, he has lived; *vīvtūrus, victūrus*, about to live.

2. Before a sonant **l**, **m**, **n**, or **r**, a surd **c**, **p**, or **t** is generally changed to its corresponding sonant, **g**, **b**, or **d**:

Neclegō, neglegō, I neglect; *sec-mentum, sēgmentum*, a cutting; *populicus*,⁵ *pūplicus, pūblicus*,⁶ public; *quatra*,⁷ *quadra*, a square; *quatrāgintā, quadrāgintā*, forty.

3. Before a Labial **p** or **b**, **n** is generally changed to **m**:⁸

Inperō, imperō, I command; *inperātor, imperātor*, commander; *inbellis, imbellis*, unwarlike.

NOTE.—Before *n*, a Labial *p* or *b* is changed to *m* in a few words: *sopnus, somnus*, sleep; *Sabnium, Samnium*, the country of the Samnites.

4. **M** is changed to **n**—

1) Regularly before a *Dental Mute*:

Eumdem, eundem, the same; *eōrundem, eōrundem*, of the same; *quemdam, quendam*, a certain one; *tamtus, tantus*, so great; *quamtus, quantus*, how great, as great.

2) Often before a *Guttural Mute*:

Hum-ce, hunc, this; *num-ce, nunc*,⁹ now; *prim-ceps, princeps*, first; *nūmquam* or *nūnquam*,⁹ never; *quamquam* or *quanquam*, although.

¹ But *b* is generally retained (1) before *s* in nouns in *bs*: *urb̄s*, not *urps*, city, and in *abs*, from; and (2) before *s* and *t* in *ob*, on account of, and *sub*, under, in compounds and derivatives: *ob-servāns*, observant; *ob-tūsus*, obtuse; *sub-scribō*, I subscribe; *sub-ter*, under. In these cases, however, *b* takes the sound of *p*, so that assimilation takes place in *pronunciation*, though not in *writing*. It is probable also that in some other consonants assimilation was observed even when omitted in writing: *inprimis* and *imprimis*, both pronounced *imprimis*. See Roby, I., p. lvii.; Munro, p. 10.

² *Qu*, also written *qv*, is not a syllable; nor is *u* or *v* in this combination either a vowel or a consonant, but simply a parasitic sound developed by *q*, which is never found without it.

³ For *traghsit*; *h* is dropped, and *g* assimilated to *c*.

⁴ For *gvīgsit*; the first *g* and the second *v* are dropped: *vīgsit, vīcsit, vīxit*.

⁵ From *populus*, the people.

⁶ *P* is changed to *b*, and *o* is weakened to *u*; see 22.

⁷ From *quattuor*, four.

⁸ That is, the dental *n* becomes the labial *m*.

⁹ "Or" placed between two forms denotes that both are in good use: *nūmquam* & *vinquam*. In other cases the last is the only approved form: *nunc, princeps*.

NOTE 1.—Before the ending *-que*, *m* is generally retained: ¹ *quicumque*, whoever; *quemque*, every one; *namque*, for indeed.

NOTE 2.—*Quom-iam* or *quom-jam* becomes *quoniam*, since.

34. A consonant is often completely assimilated by a following consonant. Thus—

1. **T** or **d** is often assimilated before **n** or **s**:

Petna, *penna*, feather; *mercednārius*, *mercennārius*, mercenary; *concutsit*, *concessit*, he has shaken.

NOTE.—*M* before *s* is sometimes assimilated, and sometimes develops *p*: *premsit*, *pressit*, he has pressed; *sūmsit*, *sūmpsit*, he has taken.

2. **D**, **n**, or **r** is often assimilated before **l**:

Sedula, *sedla* (27), *sella*, seat; *ūnulus*, *ūnlus* (27), *ūllus*, any; *puerula*, *puerla*, *puella*, girl.

3. **B**, **g**, or **n** is often assimilated before **m**:

Sub-moveō or *sum-moveō*, I remove; *supmus*, *summus*, highest; *flagma*, *flamma*, flame; *inmōtus* or *immōtus*, unmoved.

NOTE.—For ASSIMILATION in *Prepositions in Composition*, see 344, 5.

35. DISSIMILATION.—The meeting of consonants too closely related and the recurrence of the same consonant in successive syllables are sometimes avoided by changing one of the consonants. Thus—

1. *Caelulus* becomes *caculus*, azure; *medi-diēs*, *merūdiēs*, midday.

2. Certain suffixes of derivation have two forms, one with *r* to be used after *l*, and one with *l* to be used after *r*: ² *āris*, *ālis*; *burum*, *brum*, ³ *bulum*; ³ *curum*, *crum*, *culum*:

Populāris, ⁴ popular; *rēgālis*, ⁴ kingly; *dēlūbrum*, shrine; *tribulum*, threshing-sledge; *sepulcrum*, sepulchre; *periculum*, peril.

3. A Dental Mute—**d** or **t**—may unite with a following **t** in two ways:

1) **Dt** or **tt** before **r** may become **st**:

Rōdtrum, *rōstrum*, a beak; *equettris*, *equestris*, equestrian.

2) **Dt** or **tt** before a vowel may become **ss** or **s**: ⁵

Fodtus, *fossus*, dug; *vidtus*, *vīsus*, seen; *plaudtus*, *plausus*, praised; *mettus*, *messus*, reaped; *verttus*, *versus*, turned.

¹ But probably with the sound of *n*; see p. 17, foot-note 1.

² This distinction is, however, not always observed. The form with *l*, probably weakened from that with *r*, became the favorite form, and was generally used if *l* did not precede.

³ From *burum* are formed (1) *brum* by dropping *u*, and (2) *bulum* by weakening *r* into *l*. In the same way *crum* and *culum* are formed from *curum*.

⁴ In *populāris*, *āris* is used because *l* precedes; but in *rēgālis*, *ālis* is used because *r* precedes. When neither *l* nor *r* precedes, the weakened form *ālis* is used.

⁵ In regard to the exact process by which *dt* or *tt* becomes *ss* or *s*, there is a diversity of opinion among philologists. See Papillon, p. 75; Roby, p. 62; Corssen, I., p. 208; Stolz, p. 188, 187; Osthoff, p. 550.

NOTE.—*Lgt* may become *ls*; ¹ *rgt*, *rs*; ¹ *llt*, *ls*; ² and *rrt*, *rs*: ² *mulgtus*, *mulsus*, milked; *spargtus*, *sparsus*, scattered; *falltus*, *falsus*, false; *verrtus*, *versus*, swept.

36. OMISSION.—Consonants are sometimes dropped. Thus—

1. Some words which originally began with two consonants have dropped the first:

Clāmentum,³ *lāmentum*, lamentation; *gnātus*, *nātus*, born; *gnōtus*,⁴ *nōtus*, known; *dvīgintī*, *vīgintī*, twenty; *fallit*, *fallit*, he deceives.

2. A Dental Mute—*d* or *t*—before *s* is generally dropped: ⁵

Lapids, *lapis*, stone; *aetāts*, *aetās*, age; *mīlets*, *miles*, soldier; *claudsī*, *clausī*, I have closed.

NOTE.—*D* is occasionally dropped before other consonants: *lod-ce*, *hōcē*, *hōc*, this; *quod-circā*, *quōcircā*,⁶ for which reason: *ad-gnōscē*, *agnōscō*, I recognize.

3. A Guttural Mute—*c*, *g*, or *q* (*qu*)—is generally dropped—

1) Between a *Liquid* and *s*:

Mulsit, *mulsit*, he has appeased; *fulgsit*, *fulsit*, it has lightened.

2) Between a *Liquid* and *t*:

Fulctus, *fultus*, propped; *sarctus*, *sartus*, repaired.

3) Between a *Liquid* and *m*:

Fulgmen, *fulmen*, lightning; *torquementum*, *tormentum*, engine for hurling missiles.

NOTE 1.—A Guttural Mute is occasionally dropped in other situations.⁷ Thus—

1. *C* before *m* and *cs* before *n*: *lūcmen*, *lūmen*, light; *lūcsna*, *lūna*, moon.

2. *C* between *n* and *d* or *t*: *quīnctus*, *quīntus*, fifth; *quīndecim*, *quīndecim*, fifteen.

3. *G* before *m* or *v*:⁸ *exāgmen*, *exūmen* (20, 1), a swarm; *jūgmentum*, *jūmentum*, beast of burden; *magult*, *māvult*, he prefers; *breqvīs*, *brevis*, short.

NOTE 2.—*X* is sometimes dropped: *sēdecim*, *sēdecim* (20, 1), sixteen; *sewnī*, *sēnī*, six each; *tewula*, *tewla*, *tēla*, a web; *awula*, *awla*, *āla*, wing.

NOTE 3.—*N*,⁹ *r*, and *s* are sometimes dropped: *in-gnōtus*, *ignōtus*, unknown; *fōrmōsus*, *fōrmōsus*, beautiful; *quotiēns*,¹⁰ *quotiēns*, how often; *deciēns*, *deciēs*,¹⁰ ten

¹ *T* is changed to *s*, and *g* is dropped.

² *T* is changed to *s*, and one *l* is dropped in *llt*, and one *r* in *rrt*.

³ Compare *clāmō*, I cry out.

⁴ Seen in *ignōtus*, *ignōtus*, unknown.

⁵ Probably first assimilated and then dropped: *lapids*, *lapis*, *lapis*. But the dental is sometimes assimilated and retained: *cēdsī*, *cessī*, I have yielded; *concussit*, *concussit*, he has shaken.

⁶ *O* lengthened in compensation; see 20, 1.

⁷ *Sextius* becomes *Sēstius*, a proper name; *secentī*, *sēcentī*, six hundred; and *mīxtus*, *mīxtus*, mixed, by dropping the mute contained in the double consonant *x*.

⁸ *G* has also been dropped in *aiō* for *agiō*, I say; *māior* for *magior*, greater, etc.

⁹ In numerals *nt* is sometimes dropped: *ducentū*, *ducentū*, two hundred each; *vīgēnt-simū* or *vīgēnt-simū*, *vīgēnt-simū*, twentieth.

¹⁰ So in all numeral adverbs in *ies*, *ies*. The approved ending in most numeral

times; *mulier-bris*, *muliebris*, womanly; *prōrsa*, *prōsa*, prose; *īdem*, *īdem*, same; *jūs-dea*, *jūdea*, judge; *audīsne*, *audīne*, *audīn*, do you hear? *vīsne*, *vīne*, *vīn*, do you wish?

4. A Semivowel—*j* or *v*, also written *i* or *u*—is often dropped:

Bi-jugae, *biugae*, *bigae*, chariot with two horses; *quadri-jugae*, *quadrīgae*, chariot with four horses; *con-jūctus*, *co-jūctus*, *cūctus*, the whole; *abjiciō* or *abiciō*,¹ I throw away; *divitior*, *diitior*, *ditior*, richer; *nevolō*, *neolō*, *nōlō*, I am unwilling; *amāverat*, *amaerat*, *amārat*, he had loved.²

NOTE.—Separate words are sometimes united after the loss of *v*: *sī vīs*, *sīs*, *sīs*, *is*, *is* you wish; *sī vultis*, *siultis*, *sūltis*, if you wish.

5. Final consonants are often dropped. Thus—

1) Final *s* is often dropped:³

Monēris, *monēre* (24, 1, note), you are advised; *illus*, *illu*, *ille*, that; *istus*, *istu*, *iste*, that of yours; *ipsus*, *ipsu*, *ipse*, self, he; *parricidas*,⁴ *parricida*, parricide; *magis* or *mage*, more; *sivis*, *sive*, whether, lit., if you wish.

NOTE.—In the early poets *es*, thou art, and *est*, he is, after having dropped the initial *e*, sometimes become attached to the preceding word, which has lost its final *s*: *veritus es*, *veritū's*, you feared; *tempus est*, *tempust*, it is time; *virtūs est*, *virtūst*, it is virtue. See 27, note.

2) A final *d* or *t* is often dropped:

Cord, *cor*, heart; *praedād*, *praedā*,⁵ with booty; *intrād*, *intrā*, within; *facilumēd*,⁶ *facillimē*, most easily; *venērunt*,⁷ *venēru*, *venēre*, they have come; *rexerunt*, *rexēre*, they have ruled.

NOTE.—Sometimes both a vowel and a consonant disappear at the end of a word: *puerus*, *puer*, boy (51, 2, 4); *deinde* or *dein*, thereupon; *nihilum* or *nihil*, nothing.

3) A final *n*⁸ is generally dropped in the Nominative Singular from stems in *on*:

Leōn, *leō*, lion; *praedōn*, *praedō*, robber; *homon*, *homō*, man.

adverbs is *iēs*, but in those formed from indefinite numerals, as *tot*, *quot*, it is *iēns*: *totiēns*, *quotiēns*.

¹ This is the approved form in verbs compounded of *jaciō* and monosyllabic prepositions; but *abiciō* is pronounced as if written *abjiciō* or *ab-īciō*, i. e., *i* = *ji*, pronounced *ye* by the Roman method. The syllable *ab* thus remains long.

² Several adverbial forms were produced by the loss of *r* with the attendant changes: *revorsus*, *reorsus*, *rūrsus*, back; *subvorsum*, *suvorsum*, *suorsum*, *sūrsūm*, from below, on high.

³ In early inscriptions proper names in *os*, afterward *us*, occur without the *s* as often as with it: *Rōscios*, *Rōscio*; *Gabinios*, *Gabinio*.

⁴ This form actually occurs in early Latin.

⁵ The Ablative singular ended anciently in *d*, originally *t*. Many prepositions and adverbs in *d* and *ē* are ablatives in origin, and accordingly ended in *d*.

⁶ Written with one *l*, afterward with two.

⁷ Here final *t* was first dropped, then *n*, having become final, also disappeared, and the last final *u* was weakened to *e*; see 24, 1, note.

⁸ In early inscriptions final *m* is often dropped.

PART SECOND.

ETYMOLOGY.

37. ETYMOLOGY treats of the classification, inflection, and derivation of words.

38. The Parts of Speech are—*Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, Verbs, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections.*

CHAPTER I.

NOUNS.

39. A Noun or Substantive is a name, as of a person, place, or thing : *Cicerō*, Cicero ; *Rōma*, Rome ; *domus*, house.

1. A PROPER NOUN is a proper name, as of a person or place : *Cicerō*, *Rōma*.

2. A COMMON NOUN is a name common to all the members of a class of objects : *vir*, man ; *equus*, horse. Common nouns include—

1) *Collective Nouns*, designating a collection of objects : *populus*, people ; *exercitus*, army.

2) *Abstract Nouns*, designating properties or qualities : *virtūs*, virtue ; *jūstitia*, justice.

3) *Material Nouns*, designating materials as such : *aurum*, gold ; *lignum*, wood ; *aqua*, water.

40. Nouns have *Gender, Number, Person, and Case.*

I. GENDER.

41. There are three genders¹—*Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.*

NOTE.—In some nouns gender is determined by signification ; in others, by endings.

¹ In English, *Gender* denotes *sex*. Accordingly, masculine nouns denote *males* ; feminine nouns, *females* ; and neuter nouns, objects which are *neither male nor female*. In Latin, however, this natural distinction of gender is applied only to the names of *males* and *females* ; while, in all other nouns, gender depends upon an artificial distinction according to grammatical rules.

42. GENERAL RULES FOR GENDER.

I. MASCULINES.

1. Names of *Males*: *Cicerō*; *vir*, man; *rēx*, king.

2. Names of *Rivers*, *Winds*, and *Months*: *Rhēnus*, Rhine; *Notus*, south wind; *Mārtius*, March.

II. FEMININES.

1. Names of *Females*: *mulier*, woman; *leaena*, lioness.

2. Names of *Countries*, *Towns*, *Islands*, and *Trees*: *Graecia*, Greece; *Rōma*, Rome; *Dēlos*, Delos; *pirus*, pear-tree.

NOTE.—Indeclinable nouns,¹ infinitives, and all clauses used as nouns are neuter: *alpha*, the letter *a*.² See also 532.

43. REMARKS ON GENDER.

1. EXCEPTIONS.—The endings³ of nouns sometimes give them a gender at variance with these rules. Thus, some names of *rivers*, *countries*, *towns*, *islands*, *trees*, and *animals* take the gender of their endings; see 53, 1.

2. MASCULINE OR FEMININE.—A few personal appellatives applicable to both sexes and a few names of animals are sometimes *masculine* and sometimes *feminine*, but when used without distinct reference to sex they are generally *masculine*: *civis*, citizen (man or woman); *bōs*, ox, cow.

3. EPICENE NOUNS apply only to the inferior animals. They are used for both sexes, but have only one gender, and that is usually determined by their endings: *anser*, goose, masculine; *aquila*, eagle, feminine.

II. PERSON AND NUMBER.

44. The Latin, like the English, has three persons and two numbers. The first person denotes the speaker; the second, the person spoken to; the third, the person spoken of. The singular number denotes one, the plural more than one.

III. CASES.⁴

45. The Latin has six cases :

¹ Except names of persons.

² See 128, 1.

³ Gender as determined by the endings of nouns will be noticed in connection with the several declensions.

⁴ The *case* of a noun shows the relation which that noun sustains to other words; as, *John's book*. Here the *possessive case* (*John's*) shows that John sustains to the book the relation of *possessor*.

NAMES.	ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS.
Nominative,	Nominative.
Genitive,	Possessive, or Objective with <i>of</i> .
Dative,	Objective with <i>to</i> or <i>for</i> .
Accusative,	Objective.
Vocative,	Nominative Independent.
Ablative,	Objective with <i>from</i> , <i>with</i> , <i>by</i> , <i>in</i> .

1. OBLIQUE CASES.—The Genitive, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative are called the Oblique Cases.

2. LOCATIVE.—The Latin has also a few remnants of another case, called the Locative, denoting the *place in which*.

DECLENSION.

46. STEM AND SUFFIXES.—The process by which the several cases of a word are formed is called Declension. It consists in the addition of certain suffixes to one common base called the stem.

1. MEANING.—Accordingly, each case-form contains two distinct elements—the *stem*,¹ which gives the general meaning of the word, and the *case-suffix*, which shows the relation of that meaning to some other word. Thus, in *rēg-is*, of a king, the general idea, *king*, is denoted by the stem *rēg*; the relation *of*, by the suffix *is*.

2. CASES ALIKE.—But certain cases are not distinguished in form.

1) The *Nominative*, *Accusative*, and *Vocative in Neuters* are alike, and in the plural end in *a*.

2) The *Nominative* and *Vocative* are alike, except in the singular of nouns in *us* of the second declension (51).²

3) The *Dative* and *Ablative Plural* are alike.

3. CHARACTERISTIC.—The last letter of the stem is called the STEM-CHARACTERISTIC, or the STEM-ENDING.

47. FIVE DECLENSIONS.—In Latin there are five declensions, distinguished from each other by the *stem-characteristics* or by the *endings* of the *Genitive Singular*, as follows :

¹ Moreover, in many words the stem itself is derived from a more primitive form called a *Root*. For the distinction between *roots* and *stems*, and for the manner in which the latter are formed from the former, see 313-318.

² And in some nouns of Greek origin.

	CHARACTERISTICS.	GENITIVE ENDINGS.
DEC. I.	ā	ae
II.	o	i
III.	i or a consonant	is
IV	u	ūs
V.	ē	ēi

NOTE 1.—The five declensions are only five varieties of one general system of inflection, as the case-suffixes are nearly identical in all nouns.

NOTE 2.—But these case-suffixes appear distinct and unchanged only in nouns with consonant-stems, while in all others they are seen only in combination with the characteristic, i. e., with the final vowel of the stem.

NOTE 3.—The ending produced by the union of the case-suffix with the characteristic vowel may for convenience be called a CASE-ENDING.

FIRST DECLENSION: A NOUNS.

48. Nouns of the first declension end in

a and ē—*feminine*; ās and ēs—*masculine*.¹

Nouns in *a* are declined as follows:

EXAMPLE.	SINGULAR.	MEANING.	CASE-ENDING
Nom. mēnsa,		a table, ²	a ³
Gen. mēnsae,		of a table,	ae
Dat. mēnsae,		to, for a table,	ae
Acc. mēnsam,		a table,	am
Voc. mēnsa,		O table,	a
Abl. mēnsa,		from, with, by a table, ⁴	a
PLURAL.			
Nom. mēnsae,		tables,	ae
Gen. mēnsārum,		of tables,	ārum
Dat. mēnsis,		to, for tables,	is
Acc. mēnsās,		tables,	ās
Voc. mēnsae,		O tables,	ae
Abl. mēnsis,		from, with, by tables. ⁴	is

¹ That is, nouns of this declension in *a* and *ē* are feminine, and those in *ās* and *ēs* are masculine.

² The Nom. *mēnsa* may be translated *a table*, *table*, or *the table*; see 48, 6.

³ These case-endings will serve as a practical guide to the learner in distinguishing the different cases. The two elements which originally composed them have undergone various changes, and in certain cases the one or the other has nearly or quite disappeared. Thus the suffix has disappeared in the Nominative and Vocative Singular, and appears only as *e* in four other case-forms, while the characteristic *a* has disappeared in the ending *is*, contracted from *a-is*, in the Dative and Ablative Plural; see 23, 2, note.

⁴ Still other prepositions, as *in*, *on*, *at*, are sometimes used in translating the Ablative

1. STEM.—In nouns of the first declension, the stem ends in *ă*.

2. In the PARADIGM, observe that the stem is *mēnsă*, and that the several cases are distinguished from each other by their case-endings.

3. EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.—Like *mēnsa* decline:

Āla, wing; *aqua*, water; *causa*, cause; *fortūna*, fortune.

4. LOCATIVE.—Names of towns and a very few other words have a Locative Singular¹ in *ae*, denoting the *place in which* (45, 2), and are declined in the singular² number as follows:

Nom.	Rōma,	Rome,	militia,	war, ³
Gen.	Rōmae,	of Rome,	militiae,	of war,
Dat.	Rōmae,	for Rome, ³	militiae,	for war,
Acc.	Rōmam,	Rome,	militiam,	war,
Voc.	Rōma,	O Rome,	militia,	O war,
Abl.	Rōmā,	from Rome, ³	militiā,	from war,
Loc.	Rōmae,	at Rome.	militiae,	in war.

5. EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.—1. A few nouns in *a* are masculine by signification: *agricola*, husbandman; see 42, I.—2. *Hadria*, Adriatic Sea, is masculine; sometimes also *dāmma*, deer, and *talpa*, mole.

6. ARTICLE.—The Latin has no article: *corōna*, crown, a crown, the crown; *āla*, wing, a wing, the wing.

49. IRREGULAR CASE-ENDINGS.—The following occur:⁴

1. *ās* in the Genitive of *familia*, in composition with *pater*, *māter*, *filius*, and *fīlia*: *paterfamiliās*, father of a family.

2. *āl*, an old form for the Genitive ending *ae*, in the poets:⁵ *aulāi*, afterward *aulae*, of a hall.

3. *um*⁶ in the Genitive Plural: *Dardanidum* for *Dardanidārum*, of the descendants of Dardanus.

4. *ābus* in the Dative and Ablative Plural, especially in *dea*, goddess, and *fīlia*, daughter, to distinguish them from the same cases of *deus*, god, and *filius*, son: *deabus* for *deīs*, to goddesses.

¹ In the Plural of all nouns the Locative meaning is denoted by the Ablative: *Athēnis*, at Athens. Whether, however, the form *Athēnis* is in origin a Locative, an Ablative, or neither, is a disputed question. See Bopp, I., pp. 484 seq.; Schleicher, pp. 586, 587; Penka, p. 194; Delbrück, p. 27; Merguet, pp. 116, 117; Wordsworth, p. 59. In most nouns the Locative meaning is denoted by the Ablative in both numbers.

² The Plural when used is like the Plural of *mēnsa*.

³ For the other prepositions which may be used in translating the Dative and the Ablative, see 45. *Militia*, war, warfare, military service.

⁴ To these must be added for early Latin *ā* in the Nom. and Voc. Sing. and *ād* in the Abl. Sing.; see 21, 2, 1), and 36, 5, 2).

⁵ Also in inscriptions as the ending of the Genitive, Dative, and Locative.

⁶ Contracted from *a-um* like the Greek *ἀ-ων*, *ᾠν*, *ῦ* shortened before *m*; see 580, II

NOTE.—Nouns in *ia* sometimes have *is* for *ius* in the Dative and Ablative Plural *grātis* for *grātius*, from *grātia*, favor, kindness.

50. GREEK NOUNS.—Nouns of this declension in *ē*, *ās*, and *ēs* are of Greek origin, and are declined as follows :

Epitomē, <i>epitome</i> .	Aenēās, <i>Aeneas</i> .	Pyrītēs, <i>pyrites</i> .
SINGULAR.		
<i>Nom.</i> epitomē	Aenēās	pyrītēs
<i>Gen.</i> epitomēs	Aenēae	pyrītae
<i>Dat.</i> epitomae	Aenēae	pyrītae
<i>Acc.</i> epitomēn	Aenēam, ān	pyrītēn
<i>Voc.</i> epitomē	Aenēā	pyrītē, a
<i>Abl.</i> epitomē	Aenēā	pyrītē, ā
PLURAL.		
<i>Nom.</i> epitomae		pyrītae
<i>Gen.</i> epitomārum		pyrītārum
<i>Dat.</i> epitomīs		pyrītīs
<i>Acc.</i> epitomās		pyrītās
<i>Voc.</i> epitomae		pyrītae
<i>Abl.</i> epitomīs		pyrītīs

NOTE 1.—In the Plural and in the Dative Singular, Greek nouns are declined like *mēnsa*.

NOTE 2.—In nouns in *ē* and *ēs*, the stem-ending *ā* is changed to *ē* in certain cases.

NOTE 3.—Many Greek nouns assume the Latin ending *a*, and are declined like *mēnsa*. Many in *ē* have also a form in *a*: *epitomē*, *epitoma*, *epitome*.

SECOND DECLENSION : O NOUNS.

51. Nouns of the second declension end in *er*, *ir*, *us*, and *os*¹—*masculine*; *um*, and *on*—*neuter*.

Nouns in *er*, *ir*, *us*, and *um* are declined as follows :

Servus,² *slave*. Puer, *boy*. Ager, *field*. Templum, *temple*

SINGULAR.			
<i>Nom.</i> servus ³	puer	ager	templum
<i>Gen.</i> servi	pueri	agri	templi
<i>Dat.</i> servo	puerō	agrō	templō
<i>Acc.</i> servum	puerum	agrum	templum
<i>Voc.</i> serve	puer	ager	templum
<i>Abl.</i> servō	puerō	agrō	templō

¹ Sometimes *ns*.

² Sometimes written *servos*; see 52, 1.

³ In the Roman and in the Continental pronunciation, quantity furnishes a safe guide

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i> serv I	puer I	agr I	templa
<i>Gen.</i> serv ōrum	puer ōrum	agr ōrum	templ ōrum
<i>Dat.</i> serv īs	puer īs	agr īs	templ īs
<i>Acc.</i> serv ōs	puer ōs	agr ōs	templa
<i>Voc.</i> serv I	puer I	agr I	templa
<i>Abl.</i> serv īs	puer īs	agr īs	templ īs

1. STEM.—In nouns of the second declension, the stem ends in *o*.

2. In the PARADIGMS, observe—

1) That the stems are *servo*, *puero*, *agro*, and *templo*.

2) That the characteristic *o* becomes *u* in the endings *us* and *um*, and *e* in *servē*,¹ that it disappears by contraction in the endings *a*,² *i*, and *is* (for *o-a*, *o-i*, and *o-is*),³ and is dropped in the forms *puer* and *ager*.

3) That the case-endings, including the characteristic *o* (47, N. 2), are as follows :

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
MASC.	NEUT.	MASC.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> us ⁴	um	<i>Nom.</i> I	a
<i>Gen.</i> I	I	<i>Gen.</i> ōrum	ōrum
<i>Dat.</i> ō	ō	<i>Dat.</i> īs	īs
<i>Acc.</i> um	um	<i>Acc.</i> ōs	a
<i>Voc.</i> e ⁴	um	<i>Voc.</i> I	a
<i>Abl.</i> ō	ō	<i>Abl.</i> īs	īs

4) That *puer* and *ager* differ in declension from *servus* in dropping the endings *us* and *e* in the Nominative and Vocative: *Nom. puer* for *puerus*, *Voc. puer* for *puere*.

5) That *e* in *ager* is developed by the final *r*.⁵

6) That *templum*, as a neuter noun, has the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative alike, ending in the plural in *a*; see 46, 2, 1).

3. EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.—Like *SERVUS*: *dominus*, master. Like *PUER*: *gener*, son-in-law. Like *AGER*: *magister*, master. Like *TEMPLUM*: *bellum*, war.

so the sounds of the vowels; see 5. In the English method, on the contrary, the quantity of the vowels is entirely disregarded, except as it affects the accent of the word. Thus, *a* in *ager* is short in quantity, but long in sound (10, 3), while *i* in *servīs*, *puerīs*, *agrīs*, and *templīs* is long in quantity but short in sound (11, 1). Accordingly, in this method, the sounds of the vowels must be determined by the rules given in 9, 10 and 11. Moreover, the learner must not forget that when the quantity of the vowel is known, the quantity of the syllable, as used in poetry, is readily determined by article 16

¹ See 22 and 24, 1, note.

² Shortened from *ā*; see 21, 2, 1).

³ See 23, note, and 27.

⁴ The endings of the *Nom.* and *Voc. Sing.* are wanting in nouns in *er*.

⁵ See 20, note.

4. NOUNS IN **er** AND **ir**.—Most nouns in *er* are declined like *ager*, but the following in *er* and *ir* are declined like *puer*:

- 1) Nouns in *ir*: *vir*, *virī*, man.
- 2) Compounds in *fer* and *ger*: *armiger*, *armigerī*, armor-bearer; *signifer*, *signiferī*, standard-bearer.
- 3) *Adulter*, adulterer; *Celtiber*,¹ Celtiberian; *gener*, son-in-law; *Iber*,¹ Spaniard; *Liber*, Bacchus; *liberī*, children; *Mulciber*,¹ Vulcan; *presbyter*, elder; *socer*, father-in-law; *vesper*, evening.

5. Nouns in **ius** generally contract **iī** in the Genitive Singular and **ie** in the Vocative Singular into **i** without change of accent: *Claudī* for *Claudī*, of Claudius, *fīlī* for *fīlī*, of a son; *Mercurī* for *Mercurie*, Mercury, *fīlī* for *filie*, son.² In the Genitive Singular of nouns in **ium** the same contraction takes place: *ingēnī* for *ingēnī*, of talent; see 18, 1.

6. **DEUS** is thus declined: Sing. *deus*, *deī*, *deō*, *deum*, *deus*, *deō*: Plur. N. and V. *deī*, *diī*, *dī*; ³ G. *deōrum*, *deum*; D. and A. *deīs*, *diīs*, *dīs*; ³ Acc. *deōs*.

7. **NEUTERS IN us**.—The three neuter nouns in *us*,⁴ *pelagus*, sea, *vīrus*, poison, and *vulgus*, the common people, are declined in the singular as follows:

<i>Nom., Acc., Voc.</i>	<i>pelagus</i>	<i>vīrus</i>	<i>vulgus</i> ⁵
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>pelagī</i>	<i>vīrī</i>	<i>vulgī</i>
<i>Dat., Abl.</i>	<i>pelagō</i>	<i>vīrō</i>	<i>vulgō</i>

NOTE.—*Pelagus* is a Greek noun (54, N. 2), and in general is used only in the singular, though *pelagē* occurs as an Acc. Plur. *Vīrus* and *vulgus* are used only in the singular. *Vulgus* has a masculine Acc., *vulgum*, in addition to the neuter form *vulgus*.

8. **LOCATIVE**.—Names of towns and a few other words have a Locative Singular⁶ in **i**, denoting the place in which (45, 2), and are declined in the singular⁷ number as follows:

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Ephesus</i> ,	<i>Ephesus</i> ,	<i>bellum</i> ,	<i>war</i> ,
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Ephesī</i> ,	<i>of Ephesus</i> ,	<i>bellī</i> ,	<i>of war</i> ,
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Ephesō</i> ,	<i>for Ephesus</i> ,	<i>bellō</i> ,	<i>for war</i> ,
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Ephesum</i> ,	<i>Ephesus</i> ,	<i>bellum</i> ,	<i>war</i> ,
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Ephese</i> ,	<i>O Ephesus</i> ,	<i>bellum</i> ,	<i>O war</i> ,
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Ephesō</i> ,	<i>from Ephesus</i> ,	<i>bellō</i> ,	<i>from, by war</i> ,
<i>Loc.</i>	<i>Ephesī</i> ,	<i>at Ephesus</i> ,	<i>bellī</i> ,	<i>in war</i> .

¹ *Celtiber* and *Iber* have *e* long in the Gen., and *Mulciber* sometimes drops *e*.

² Nouns in *ēius* sometimes contract *ēie* in the Voc. Sing. into *ēi*; *Pompēi* or *Pompēi*, Pompey.

³ *Dī* and *dīs* are the approved forms, but *deī*, *diī* and *deīs*, *diīs* also occur.

⁴ Originally *s-stems* which by the loss of *s* in the oblique cases have become *o-stems*; see 62, I., 1, foot-note.

⁵ Also written *volgus*.

⁶ In the Plural the Locative meaning is denoted by the Ablative: *Gabiīs*, at *Gabii* see 48, 4, foot-note.

⁷ The Plural, when used, is like the Plural of *servus*, *puer*, etc.

52. IRREGULAR CASE-ENDINGS.—The following occur:¹

1. **os** and **om**, old endings for *us* and *um*, sometimes used after *v* and *u*:² *servos* for *servus*, *servom* for *servum*; *mortuos* for *mortuus*, dead.

2. **us** for *e* in the Vocative of *deus*, god; rare in other words.

3. **um** in the Genitive Plural, especially common in a few words denoting money, weight, and measure: *talentum* for *talentorum*, of talents; also in a few other words: *deum* for *deorum*; *liberum* for *liberorum*; *Argivum* for *Argivorum*.

NOTE.—The ending *um* occurs also in the Genitive Plural of many other words, especially in poetry. For the quantity of *u*, see p. 15, foot-note 6.

53. GENDER.—Nouns in **er**, **ir**, **us**, and **os** are masculine, those in **um** and **on** are neuter; except—

1. *The Feminines*:—(1) See 42, II., but observe that many names of countries, towns, islands, and trees follow the gender of their endings. (2) Most names of gems and ships are feminine: also *alvus*, belly; *carbasus*, sail; *colus*, distaff; *humus*, ground; *vannus*, sieve. (3) A few Greek feminines.

2. *The Neuters*:—*pelagus*, sea; *virus*, poison; *vulgus*, common people. For declension, see 51, 7.

54. GREEK NOUNS.—Nouns of this declension in **os**, **ōs**, and **on** are of Greek origin, and are declined in the singular as follows:

	Dēlos, F., ³ <i>Delos</i> .	Androgeōs, <i>Androgeos</i> .	Īlion, <i>Ilīum</i> .
Nom.	Dēlos	Androgeōs	Īlion
Gen.	Dēli	Androgeō, I	Īlii
Dat.	Dēlō	Androgeō	Īliō
Acc.	Dēlon	Androgeōn, ō	Īlion
Voc.	Dēle	Androgeōs	Īlion
Abl.	Dēlō	Androgeō	Īliō

NOTE 1.—The Plural of nouns in *os* and *on* is generally regular, but certain Greek endings occur, as *oe* in the Nominative Plural, and *ōn* in the Genitive.

NOTE 2.—Most Greek nouns generally assume the Latin forms in *us* and *um*, and are declined like *serrus* and *templum*. Many in *os* or *on* have also a form in *us* or *um*.

NOTE 3.—For Greek nouns in *eus*, see 63 and 68, 1.

NOTE 4.—*Panthūs* has Voc. *Panthū*. For *pelagus*, see 51, 7, note.

¹ To these must be added for early Latin: 1) *ēd* in Abl. Sing., and *ā* in Nom., Acc., and Voc. of the Neut. Plur.: see 36, 5, 2), and 21, 2, 1); 2) *oe* in Gen. Sing.; *oe*, *ē*, *ēs*, *eis*, and *īs* in Nom. Plur.: *poploe*=*populi*; *plourumē*=*plūriūmī*; *virēs*=*virī*; *leibereis* or *leiberis*=*liberī*.

² Some recent editors have adopted *vos*, *uos*, *rom* and *uom*, for *rus*, *uus*, *vum* and *uum*, but the wisdom of such a course is at least questionable. See Brambach, p. 8.

³ M. stands for *masculine*, F. for *feminine*, and N. for *neuter*.

THIRD DECLENSION : CONSONANT AND I NOUNS.

55. Nouns of the third declension end in

a, e, i, ō, y, c, l, n, r, s, t, and x.

56. Nouns of this declension may be divided into two classes :

I. Nouns whose stem ends in a *Consonant*.

II. Nouns whose stem ends in **I**.¹

CLASS I.—CONSONANT STEMS.

57. STEMS ENDING IN A LABIAL: **B** OR **P**.

Princeps, m.,² *a leader, chief.*

		SINGULAR.	CASE-SUFFIXES
<i>Nom.</i>	princeps,	<i>a leader,</i>	s
<i>Gen.</i>	principis,	<i>of a leader,</i>	is
<i>Dat.</i>	principi,	<i>to, for a leader,</i>	i
<i>Acc.</i>	principem,	<i>a leader,</i>	em
<i>Voc.</i>	princeps,	<i>O leader,</i>	s
<i>Abl.</i>	principe,	<i>from, with, by a leader,</i>	e
		PLURAL.	
<i>Nom.</i>	principes,	<i>leaders,</i>	ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	principum,	<i>of leaders,</i>	um
<i>Dat.</i>	principibus,	<i>to, for leaders,</i>	ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	principes,	<i>leaders,</i>	ēs
<i>Voc.</i>	principes,	<i>O leaders,</i>	ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	principibus,	<i>from, with, by leaders.</i>	ibus

1. STEM AND CASE-SUFFIXES.—In this Paradigm observe—

1) That the stem is *princep*, modified before an additional syllable to *princip*; see 22, 1, and 57, 2.

2) That the case-suffixes appear distinct and separate from the stem; ³ see 46, 1, and 47, note 2.

2. VARIABLE VOWEL.—In the final syllable of dissyllabic consonant stems, short *e* or *i* generally takes the form of *e* in the Nominative and Vocative Singular and that of *i* in all the other cases. Thus *princeps*,

¹ For Gender, see 99-115.

² See foot-note 3, p. 29.

³ Thus, *princeps*, *princip-is*, etc. In the first and second declensions, on the contrary, the suffix can not be separated from the final vowel of the stem in such forms as *mēnsis*, *puerī*, *agrīs*, etc.

principis,¹ and *jūdex*, *jūdicis* (59), alike have *e* in the Nominative and Vocative Singular and *i* in all the other cases, though in *princeps* the original form of the radical vowel is *e*, and in *jūdex*, *i*. For a similar change in the vowel of the stem, see *mīles*, *mīlitis* (58), and *carmen*, *carminis*² (60). See also *opus*, *operis* (61).

3. In monosyllables in *bs* the stem ends in *i*; see *urbs*, 64.

4. For the LOCATIVE IN THE THIRD DECLENSION, see 66, 4.

5. For SYNOPSIS OF DECLENSION, see 87, 89.

58. STEMS ENDING IN A DENTAL: D OR T.

Lapis, M., *stone*.

Aetās, F., *age*.

Miles, M., *soldier*.

SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	lapis	aetās	mīles
<i>Gen.</i>	lapidis	aetātis	militis
<i>Dat.</i>	lapidi	aetātī	militī
<i>Acc.</i>	lapidem	aetātem	militem
<i>Voc.</i>	lapis	aetās	mīles
<i>Abl.</i>	lapide	aetāte	militē

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	lapidēs	aetātēs	militēs
<i>Gen.</i>	lapidum	aetātum	militum
<i>Dat.</i>	lapidibus	aetātibus	militibus
<i>Acc.</i>	lapidēs	aetātēs	militēs
<i>Voc.</i>	lapidēs	aetātēs	militēs
<i>Abl.</i>	lapidibus	aetātibus	militibus

Nepōs, M., *grandson*.

Virtūs, F., *virtue*.

Caput, N., *head*.

SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	nepōs	virtūs	caput
<i>Gen.</i>	nepōtis	virtūtis	capitis
<i>Dat.</i>	nepōtī	virtūtī	capitī
<i>Acc.</i>	nepōtem	virtūtem	caput
<i>Voc.</i>	nepōs	virtūs	caput
<i>Abl.</i>	nepōte	virtūte	capite

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	nepōtēs	virtūtēs	capita
<i>Gen.</i>	nepōtum	virtūtum	capitum
<i>Dat.</i>	nepōtibus	virtūtibus	capitibus

¹ See 22, 1.

² See 22, 1, foot-note.

<i>Acc.</i> nepōtēs	virtūtēs	capita
<i>Voc.</i> nepōtēs	virtūtēs	capita
<i>Abl.</i> nepōtibus	virtūtibus	capitibus

1. STEMS AND CASE-SUFFIXES.—In these Paradigms observe—

- 1) That the stems are *lapid*, *aetāt*, *milit*, *nepōt*, *virtūt*, and *caput*.
- 2) That *miles* has the variable vowel, *e*, *i*, and *caput*, *u*, *i*; see 57, 2.
- 3) That the dental *d* or *t* is dropped before *s*: *lapis* for *lapids*, *aetās* for *aetātis*, *miles* for *mīlets*, *virtūs* for *virtūtis*; see 36, 2.

4) That the case-suffixes, except in the *neuter*, *caput* (46, 2), are the same as those given above; see 57.

5) That the *neuter*, *caput*, has no case-suffix in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Singular, *a* in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural, and the suffixes of masculine and feminine nouns in the other cases.

2. NEUTER STEMS IN *at* drop *t* in the Nominative Singular and end in *a*: Nom., *poēma*, Gen., *poēmatīs*; Stem, *poēmat*. These nouns sometimes have *is* for *ibus* in the Dative and Ablative Plural: *poēmatīs* for *poēmatibus*.

3. FOR SYNOPSIS OF DECLENSION, see 69, 78-84.

59. STEMS ENDING IN A GUTTURAL: C OR G.

<i>Rēx</i> , M., <i>king.</i>	<i>Jūdex</i> , M. & F., <i>judge.</i>	<i>Rādix</i> , F., <i>root.</i>	<i>Dux</i> , M. & F., <i>leader.</i>
SINGULAR.			
<i>Nom.</i> rēx	jūdex	rādix	dux
<i>Gen.</i> rēgis	jūdicis	rādicis	ducis
<i>Dat.</i> rēgī	jūdicī	rādicī	ducī
<i>Acc.</i> rēgem	jūdicem	rādicem	ducem
<i>Voc.</i> rēx	jūdex	rādix	dux
<i>Abl.</i> rēge	jūdice	rādice	duce
PLURAL.			
<i>Nom.</i> rēgēs	jūdicēs	rādicēs	ducēs
<i>Gen.</i> rēgum	jūdicum	rādicum	ducum
<i>Dat.</i> rēgibus	jūdicibus	rādicibus	ducibus
<i>Acc.</i> rēgēs	jūdicēs	rādicēs	ducēs
<i>Voc.</i> rēgēs	jūdicēs	rādicēs	ducēs
<i>Abl.</i> rēgibus	jūdicibus	rādicibus	ducibus

1. STEMS AND CASE-SUFFIXES.—In the Paradigms observe—

- 1) That the stems are *rēg*, *jūdic*, *rādic*, and *duc*; *jūdic* with the variable vowel, *i*, *e*; see 57, 2.
- 2) That the case-suffixes are those given in 57.
- 3) That *s* in the Nominative and Vocative Singular unites with *c* or *g* of the stem and forms *x*; see 30.

2. FOR SYNOPSIS OF DECLENSION, see NOUNS IN *x*. 91-98.

60. STEMS ENDING IN **L, M, N, OR R.**

	Sōl, M., <i>sun.</i>	Cōnsul, M., <i>consul.</i>	Passer, M., <i>sparrow.</i>	Pater, M., <i>father.</i>
	SINGULAR.			
<i>Nom.</i>	sōl	cōnsul	passer	pater
<i>Gen.</i>	sōlis	cōnsulis	passeris	patris
<i>Dat.</i>	sōli	cōnsuli	passeri	patri
<i>Acc.</i>	sōlem	cōnsulem	passerem	patrem
<i>Voc.</i>	sōl	cōnsul	passer	pater
<i>Abl.</i>	sōle	cōnsule	passere	patre
	PLURAL.			
<i>Nom.</i>	sōlēs ¹	cōnsulēs	passerēs	patrēs
<i>Gen.</i>		cōnsulum	passerum	patrum
<i>Dat.</i>	sōlibus	cōnsulibus	passeribus	patribus
<i>Acc.</i>	sōlēs	cōnsulēs	passerēs	patrēs
<i>Voc.</i>	sōlēs	cōnsulēs	passerēs	patrēs
<i>Abl.</i>	sōlibus	cōnsulibus	passeribus	patribus
	Pāstor, M., <i>shepherd.</i>	Leō, M., <i>lion.</i>	Virgō, F., <i>maiden.</i>	Carmen, N., <i>song.</i>
	SINGULAR.			
<i>Nom.</i>	pāstor	leō	virgō	carmen
<i>Gen.</i>	pāstoris	leōnis	virginis	carminis
<i>Dat.</i>	pāstorī	leōnī	virginī	carminī
<i>Acc.</i>	pāstorem	leōnem	virginem	carmen
<i>Voc.</i>	pāstor	leō	virgō	carmen
<i>Abl.</i>	pāstore	leōne	virgine	carmine
	PLURAL.			
<i>Nom.</i>	pāstorēs	leōnēs	virginēs	carmina
<i>Gen.</i>	pāstorum	leōnum	virginum	carminum
<i>Dat.</i>	pāstoribus	leōnibus	virginibus	carminibus
<i>Acc.</i>	pāstorēs	leōnēs	virginēs	carmina
<i>Voc.</i>	pāstorēs	leōnēs	virginēs	carmina
<i>Abl.</i>	pāstoribus	leōnibus	virginibus	carminibus

1. STEMS AND CASE-SUFFIXES.—In the Paradigms observe—

1) That the stems are *sōl*, *cōnsul*, *passer*, *patr*,² *pāstōr*, *leōn*, *virgon*, and *carmen*.

¹ Many monosyllables want the Gen. Plur.; see 133, 5.

² That is, the stem is *patr* when followed by a vowel; but when *r* becomes final, it develops *e* before it, and *patr* becomes *pater*; see 29, note.

2) That *virgō* (virgon) has the variable vowel, *o*, *i*, and *carmen*, *e*, *i*.

3) That in the Nominative and Vocative Singular *s*, the usual case-suffix for masculine and feminine nouns, is omitted, and that in those cases the stem *pāstōr* shortens *o*, while *leōn* and *virgon* drop *n*; see 21, 2, 2), and 36, 5, 3).

2. HIEMS, the only stem in *m*, takes *s* in the Nominative and Vocative Singular. Also *sanguis* (for *sanguīns*), blood, and *Salamis* (for *Salamīns*), Salamis, which drop *n* before *s*; see 36, 3, note 3.

3. PASSER, PATER.—Most nouns in *er* are declined like *passer*, but those in *ter*, and a few others, are declined like *pater*; see 77, 2.

4. LEŌ, VIRGŌ.—Most nouns in *o* are declined like *leō*, but those in *dē* and *gō*, with a few others, are declined like *virgō*; see 72, with exceptions.

5. FOUR STEMS IN *or* change *o* to *u*; see 77, 4.

6. For the LOCATIVE IN THE THIRD DECLENSION, see 66, 4.

7. For SYNOPSIS OF DECLENSION, see 72, 75-77.

61. STEMS ENDING IN *s*.

	Flōs, M., <i>flower.</i>	Jūs, N., <i>right.</i>	Opus, N., <i>work.</i>	Corpus, N., <i>body.</i>
	SINGULAR.			
<i>Nom.</i>	flōs	jūs	opus	corpus
<i>Gen.</i>	flōris	jūris	operis	corporis
<i>Dat.</i>	flōri	jūri	operi	corpori
<i>Acc.</i>	flōrem	jūs	opus	corpus
<i>Voc.</i>	flōs	jūs	opus	corpus
<i>Abl.</i>	flōre	jūre	opere	corpore
	PLURAL.			
<i>Nom.</i>	flōrēs	jūra	opera	corpora
<i>Gen.</i>	flōrum	jūrum	operum	corporum
<i>Dat.</i>	flōribus	jūribus	operibus	corporibus
<i>Acc.</i>	flōrēs	jūra	opera	corpora
<i>Voc.</i>	flōrēs	jūra	opera	corpora
<i>Abl.</i>	flōribus	jūribus	operibus	corporibus

1. STEMS AND CASE-SUFFIXES.—In the Paradigms observe—

1) That the stems are *flōs*, *jūs*, *opus*,¹ and *corpos*.

2) That *opus* has the variable vowel, *e*, *u*, and *corpus*, *o*, *u*.

3) That *s* of the stem becomes *r* between two vowels: *flōs*, *flōris* (for *flōsis*); see 31, 1.

4) That the *Nom.* and *Voc. Sing.* omit the case-suffix; see 60, 1, 3).

2. For SYNOPSIS OF DECLENSION, see 79, 80, 82-84.

¹ *Opos* occurs in early Latin. In *os*, from the Primary Suffix *as* (320), *o* was weakened to *u* in the *Nom.* *Acc.*, and *Voc. Sing.* of *opus* and *corpus*, while in all the other case-forms it was weakened to *e* in *opus*, but retained unchanged in *corpus*; see 22.

CLASS II.—I STEMS.

62. STEMS ENDING IN I.—Nouns in **is** and **ēs**, not increasing in the Genitive.¹

Tussis, F., <i>cough.</i>	Turris, F., <i>tower.</i>	Ignis, M., <i>fire.</i>	Hostis, M. & F., <i>enemy.</i>	Nūbēs, ² F., <i>cloud.</i>
------------------------------	------------------------------	----------------------------	-----------------------------------	--

SINGULAR.

Nom.	tuss is	turr is	ign is	host is	nūb ēs
Gen.	tuss is	turr is	ign is	host is	nūb is
Dat.	tuss i	turr i	ign i	host i	nūb i
Acc.	tuss im	turr im, em	ign em	host em	nūb em
Voc.	tuss is	turr is	ign is	host is	nūb ēs
Abl.	tuss i	turr i, e	ign i, e	host e	nūb e

PLURAL.

Nom.	tuss ēs	turr ēs	ign ēs	host ēs	nūb ēs
Gen.	tuss ium	turr ium	ign ium	host ium	nūb ium
Dat.	tuss ibus	turr ibus	ign ibus	host ibus	nūb ibus
Acc.	tuss ēs, is	turr ēs, is	ign ēs, is	host ēs, is	nūb ēs, is
Voc.	tuss ēs	turr ēs	ign ēs	host ēs	nūb ēs
Abl.	tuss ibus	turr ibus	ign ibus	host ibus	nūb ibus

I. PARADIGMS.—Observe—

1. That the stems are *tussi*, *turri*, *igni*, *hosti*, and *nūbi*.³
2. That the case-endings, including the characteristic **i**, which disappears in certain cases, are as follows:

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom.	is, ēs	ēs
Gen.	is	ium
Dat.	i	ibus
Acc.	im, em	ēs, is
Voc.	is	ēs
Abl.	i, e	ibus

¹ That is, having as many syllables in the Nom. Sing. as in the Gen. Sing.

² Observe (1) that *tussis*, *turris*, *ignis*, and *hostis* differ in declension only in the Acc. and Abl. Sing., *tussis* showing the final *i* of the stem in both those cases, *turris* sometimes in both, *ignis* sometimes in the Abl. not in the Acc., *hostis* in neither. (2) that *nūbēs* differs from the other four in taking *ēs* instead of *is* in the Nom. and Voc. Sing.

³ Nouns in *ēs*, Gen. *is*, are best treated as *i*-stems, although some of them were originally *s*-stems (61). Thus, originally the stem of *nūbēs* was itself *nūbēs*, but *s* was finally treated as the Nom. suffix, and the word was accordingly declined like the large class of *i*-nouns mentioned under 62, V. The origin of *i*-stems is obscure. A few correspond to *i*-stems in the cognate tongues, as *ignis*, *oris*, *turris*: a few are weakened from *a*-stems or *o*-stems, as *foris*, a door, Gr. *θύρα*, *imber*=*imbris*, rain-storm, Gr. *ὀμβρος*; some are formed from *s*-stems, as *nūbēs*, just mentioned. Upon the general subject of *i*-stems, see Roby, pp. 136-149; Schleicher, pp. 384, 432, 458; Corssen, I. 281, 571, 783 seq.; II. 227; Merguet, pp. 86-40, 51, 67, 95, etc.

II. Like **TUSSIS**—Acc. **im**, Abl. **i**—are declined—

1. *Buris*, plough-tail; *ravis*, hoarseness; *sitis*, thirst.

2. In the Singular: (1) Names of *ivers* and *places* in **is** not increasing in the Genitive: *Tiberis*, *Hispalis*; see 582. (2) Greek nouns in **is**, Gen. *is*, and some others.

III. Like **TURRIS**—Acc. **im**, **em**, Abl. **i**, **e**—are declined—

Clavis, key; *febris*, fever; *messis*, harvest; *navis*, ship; *puppis*, stern; *restis*, rope; *securis*, axe; *sementis*, sowing; *strigilis*, strigil.

1. *Araris*, or *Arar* (for *Araris*),¹ the Saône, and *Liger* (for *Ligeris*),¹ the Loire, have Acc. **im**, **em**, Abl. **i**, **e**.

IV. Like **IGNIS**—Acc. **em**, Abl. **i**, **e**—are declined—

Amnis, river; *anguis*, serpent; *avis*, bird; *bilis*, bile; *civis*, citizen; *classis*, fleet; *collis*, hill; *finis*, end; *orbis*, circle; *postis*, post; *unguis*, nail, and a few others.

NOTE 1.—Adjectives in **er** (for *ris*) and those in **is** have the Ablative in **i** (153, 154). Accordingly, when such adjectives are used *substantively*, the **i** is generally retained: *September*, *Septembri*, September; ²*familiaris*, *familiari*, friend. But adjectives used as proper names have **e**: *Juvenalis*, *Juvenale*, Juvenal.

NOTE 2.—*Imber* (for *imbris*), storm; *vesper* (for *vesperis*), evening, and a few others, sometimes have the Ablative in **i**.

V. Like **HOSTIS**—Acc. **em**, Abl. **e**—are declined all nouns in *is*, Gen. *is*, not provided for under II., III., and IV.³

VI. Like **NUBES** are declined all nouns in *es*, Gen. *is*.⁴

63. STEMS ENDING IN **I**.—Neuters in **e**, **al**, and **ar**.

Mare, *sea*.

Animal, *animal*.

Calcar, *spur*.

		SINGULAR.		CASE-ENDINGS.
<i>Nom.</i>	mare	animal	calcar	e—⁶
<i>Gen.</i>	maris	animālis	calcāris	is
<i>Dat.</i>	marī	animālī	calcārī	i
<i>Acc.</i>	mare	animal	calcar	e—⁶
<i>Voc.</i>	mare	animal	calcar	e—⁶
<i>Abl.</i>	marī⁵	animālī	calcārī	i

¹ The shortening of *Araris* to *Arar* and of *Ligeris* to *Liger* is similar to the shortening of *puerus* to *puer*; see 51, 2, 4); 36, 5, 2), note.

² Names of months are adjectives used substantively. Originally *mēnsis*, month, was understood.

³ Except *canis* and *juvenis*, which are consonant-stems, but have assumed *i* in the Nom. Sing. In the plural they have *um* in the Gen. and *ēs* in the Acc. *Apis*, *mēnsis*, and *volucris* often have *um* for *ium* in the Gen.

⁴ Except *struēs* and *vātēs*, which generally have *um* in Gen. Pl., and *sēdēs*, which has *um* or *ium*. *Compēs*, Gen. *edis*, has also *ium*.

⁵ See 2 below.

⁶ The dash here implies that the case-ending is sometimes wanting.

PLURAL.

Nom.	maria	animālia	calcāria	ia
Gen.	marium	animālium	calcārium	ium
Dat.	maribus	animālibus	calcāribus	ibus
Acc.	maria	animālia	calcāria	ia
Voc.	maria	animālia	calcāria	ia
Abl.	maribus	animālibus	calcāribus	ibus

1. PARADIGMS.—Observe—

1) That the stem-ending **i** is changed to **e** in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Singular of *mare*, and dropped in the same cases of *animal* (for *animāle*) and *calcar* (for *calcāre*); see 24, 1, note; 27; 21, 2, 2).

2) That the case-endings include the characteristic **i**.

2. The following have **e** in the Ablative Singular:—(1) Names of towns in **e**; *Praeneste*.—(2) Generally *rēte*, net, and in poetry sometimes *mare*.

NOTE.—Neuters in *ar*, with *a* short in the Genitive, are consonant-stems: *nectar*, *nectaris*, nectar; also *sāl*, salt, and *fār*, corn.

64. STEMS ENDING IN **I**.—Nouns in **s** and **x** generally preceded by a consonant.

Cliēns, M. & F., <i>client.</i>	Urbs, F., <i>city.</i>	Arx, F., <i>citadel.</i> ¹	Mūs, ¹ M., <i>mouse.</i>
------------------------------------	---------------------------	--	--

SINGULAR.

Nom.	cliēns	urbs	arx ³	mūs
Gen.	clientis ²	urbis	arcis	mūris ⁴
Dat.	clienti	urbī	arci	mūrī
Acc.	clientem	urbem	arcem	mūrem
Voc.	cliēns	urbs	arx	mūs
Abl.	cliente	urbe	arce	mūre

PLURAL.

Nom.	clientēs	urbēs	arcēs	mūrēs
Gen.	clientium	urbium	arcium	mūrium
Dat.	clientibus	urbibus	arcibus	mūribus
Acc.	clientēs, is	urbēs, is	arcēs, is	mūrēs, is
Voc.	clientēs	urbēs	arcēs	mūrēs
Abl.	clientibus	urbibus	arcibus	mūribus

¹ *Cliēns* is for *clientis*, *urbs* for *urbis*, *arx* for *arcis*, and *mūs* for *mūsīs*; see 30, 5, 2), note. *Mūs*, originally an *s*-stem, Greek *mūs*, became an *i*-stem in Latin by assuming *i*.

² The vowel *e* is here short before *nt*, but long before *ns*; see 16, note 2. Indeed, it seems probable that *nt* and *nd* shorten a preceding vowel, as *ns* lengthens it. See Müller, p. 27; Ritschl, Rhein. Museum, xxxi., p. 488.

³ *x* in *arx*=*cs*, *c* belonging to the stem, and *s* being the Nom. suffix.

⁴ *Mūris* is for *mūsīs*; *s* changed to *r* between two vowels, see 31, 1.

1. PARADIGMS.—Observe—

1) That the stems are *clienti*, *urbi*, *arci*, and *mūri*.2) That these nouns are declined in the singular precisely like consonant-stems, and in the plural precisely like all other masculine and feminine *i*-stems.¹2. This class of *i*-stems includes—1) Most nouns in *ns* and *rs*:² *cliēns*, *clientis*, client; *cohors*, *cohortis*, cohort.2) Monosyllables in *s* and *x* preceded by a consonant,³ and a few in *s* and *x* preceded by a vowel:⁴ *urbs*, city; *arx*, citadel; *lis*, strife; *nox*, night.3) Names of nations in *ās* and *īs*, or, if plural, in *ātes* and *ītes*: *Arpinās*, pl. *Arpinātes*, an Arpinatian, the Arpinates; *Samnīs*, pl. *Samnītes*, the Samnites.4) *Optimātes*, the aristocracy; *Penātes*, the household gods, and occasionally other nouns in *ās*.NOTE 1.—*Curō*, flesh, has a form in *is*, *carnis* (for *carinis*), from which are formed *carnī*, *carnium*, etc.NOTE 2.—*Pars*, part, sometimes has *partim* in the Accusative.NOTE 3.—*Rūs*, country, *sors*, lot, *supelles*, furniture, and a few other words sometimes have the Ablative in *ī*.

65. SUMMARY OF I-STEMS.—To I-stems belong—

1. All nouns in *is* and *ēs* which do not increase in the Genitive; see 62. Here belong also—1) Names of months in *ber* (for *bris*): *September*, *October*, etc.; see 62, N. 1.2) The following nouns in *ber* and *ter* (for *bris* and *tris*): *imber*, storm; *linter*, boat; *ūter*, leathern sack; *venter*, belly; generally also *Insuber*, an Insubrian.2. Neuters in *e*, *al* (for *āle*) and *ar* (for *āre*); see 63; also 63, 2, note.3. Many nouns in *s* and *x*—especially (1) nouns in *ns* and *rs*, and (2) monosyllables in *s* and *x* preceded by a consonant; see 61, 2.¹ Nouns thus declined are most conveniently treated as *i*-nouns, though the stem appears to end in a consonant in the Sing., and in *i* in the Plur. In some of these nouns the stem has lost its final *i* in the Sing., while in others it ended originally in a consonant, but afterward assumed *i* in the Plur., at least in certain cases; see 62, I., footnote.² Some of these often have *um* in poetry and sometimes even in prose, as *parēns*, parent, generally has.³ Except (*ops*) *opis* and the Greek nouns, *gr̥ps*, *lynx*, *sphinx*.⁴ Namely, *faua*, *glis*, *lis*, *mūs*, *nīx*, *nox*, *os* (ossis), *vīs*, generally *fraus* and *mūs*.

66. SPECIAL PARADIGMS.

Sūs, M. & F., <i>swine.</i>	Bōs, M. & F., <i>ox, cow.</i>	Nix, F., <i>snow.</i>	Senex, M., <i>old man.</i>	Vis, F., <i>force.</i>
SINGULAR.				
Nom. sūs	bōs ¹	nix	senex	vīs
Gen. suis	bovis	nivis	senis	vīs ²
Dat. suī	bovī	nivī	senī	vī ²
Acc. suem	bovem	nivem	senem	vīm
Voc. sūs	bōs	nix	senex	vīs
Abl. sue	bove	nive	sene	vī
PLURAL.				
Nom. suēs	bovēs	nivēs	senēs	vīrēs
Gen. suum	{ bovum boum	nivium	senum	vīrium
Dat. { suibus subus	{ bōbus ¹ būbus ¹	nivibus	senibus	vīribus
Acc. suēs	bovēs	nivēs	senēs	vīrēs
Voc. suēs	bovēs	nivēs	senēs	vīrēs
Abl. { suibus subus	{ bōbus būbus	nivibus	senibus	vīribus

1. The STEMS are *su*; *bov*; *nig* (*nix*=*nigs*), *niv*, *nivi*; ³ *senec*, *sen*; *vī* (sing.), *vīri* (for *vīsī*, plur.); ⁴ see 31, 1.

2. *Sūs*, and *grūs*, *crane*, the only *u* stems in this declension, are declined alike, except in the Dative and Ablative Plural, where *grūs* is regular: *gruibus*.

3. *JUPPITER*, *Jupiter*, is thus declined: *Juppiter*, *Jovis*, *Jovī*, *Jovem*, *Juppiter*, *Jove*. STEMS. *Juppiter* and *Jov*.

4. LOCATIVE.—Many names of towns have a Locative Singular in *ī* or *e* denoting the place in which (45, 2). Thus:

Nom. Karthāgō,	Carthage,	Tībur,	Tībur,
Gen. Karthāginis,	of Carthage,	Tīburis,	of Tībur,
Dat. Karthāginī,	for Carthage,	Tīburī,	for Tībur,
Acc. Karthāginem,	Carthage,	Tībur,	Tībur,
Voc. Karthāgō,	O Carthage,	Tībur,	O Tībur,
Abl. Karthāgine,	from Carthage,	Tībure,	from Tībur,
Loc. Karthāginī or e,	at Carthage.	Tīburī or e,	at Tībur.

¹ *Bōs* = *bovs*, *bous*; *bōbus*, *būbus* = *bovibus*, *boubus*.

² The Gen. and Dat. Sing.—*vīs*, *vī*—are rare.

³ For *nigvī*, from which *nig* is formed by first dropping *i* and then *v*; see 27, 36, 1, note 1.

⁴ *Vī* is formed from *vīsī* by first dropping *i* and then *s*.

67. CASE-SUFFIXES AND CASE-ENDINGS.¹

SINGULAR.			
CONSONANT STEMS.		I-STEMS.	
MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> s,— ²	— ²	is, es, s	e,— ³
<i>Gen.</i> is	is	is	is
<i>Dat.</i> i	i	i	i
<i>Acc.</i> em	—	im, em	e,—
<i>Voc.</i> s	—	is, es, s	e,—
<i>Abl.</i> e	e	i, e	i
PLURAL.			
<i>Nom.</i> es	a	es	ia
<i>Gen.</i> um	um	ium	ium
<i>Dat.</i> ibus	ibus	ibus	ibus
<i>Acc.</i> es	a	es, is	ia
<i>Voc.</i> es	a	es	ia
<i>Abl.</i> ibus	ibus	ibus	ibus

NOTE.—The following irregular case-endings occur : ³

1. *Ē*, for *ī*, in the Dat. Sing. : ⁴ *aerē* for *aerī*.
2. *Eis*, for *is*, in the Acc. Plur. : *cīveis* for *civīs*, *cīvēs*.
3. For GREEK ENDINGS, see 68.

GREEK NOUNS.

68. Most Greek nouns of the third declension are entirely regular, but a few retain certain peculiarities of the Greek. The following are examples :

Lampas, F., <i>torch.</i>	Phryx, M. & F., <i>Phrygian.</i>	Hērōs, M., <i>hero.</i>
SINGULAR.		
<i>Nom.</i> lampas	Phryx	hērōs
<i>Gen.</i> lampadis, os	Phrygis, os	hērōis
<i>Dat.</i> lampadi, i	Phrygi, i	hērōi, i
<i>Acc.</i> lampadem, a	Phrygem, a	hērōem, a
<i>Voc.</i> lampas	Phryx	hērōs
<i>Abl.</i> lampade	Phryge	hērōe

¹ On the distinction between Case-Suffixes and Case-Endings, see 46, 1, and 47, note 3.

² The dash denotes that the case-ending is wanting.

³ To these should be added for early Latin—1) *us* and *es* in the Gen. Sing. : *hominus* = *hominis*; *salūtes* = *salūtis*; 2) *id* and *ē* in the Abl. Sing. : *conventiōnīd* = *conventiōne*; *patrē* = *patre*; 3) *is* and *eis* in the Nom. Plur. of *i*-nouns : *finēis*, *finis* = *finēs*. On the Case-Endings of the Third Declension in early Latin, see Wordsworth, pp 68-78; Kühner, I., pp. 173-179.

⁴ This *e* is generally long.

PLURAL.			
<i>Nom.</i> lampad ēs, es	Phryg ēs, es	hērō ēs, es	
<i>Gen.</i> lampad um	Phryg um	hērō um	
<i>Dat.</i> lampad ibus	Phryg ibus	hērō ibus	
<i>Acc.</i> lampad ēs, as	Phryg ēs, as	hērō ēs, as	
<i>Voc.</i> lampad ēs, es	Phryg ēs, es	hērō ēs, es	
<i>Abl.</i> lampad ibus	Phryg ibus	hērō ibus	

Periclēs, m.,	Paris, m.,	Didō, f.,	Orpheus, m.,
<i>Pericles.</i>	<i>Paris.</i>	<i>Dido.</i>	<i>Orpheus.</i>

SINGULAR.¹

<i>Nom.</i> Pericl ēs	Paris	Didō	Orpheus ²
<i>Gen.</i> Pericl is, i	Parid is, os	Didūs, ōn is	Orph-e os, ei, i
<i>Dat.</i> Pericl i, i	Parid i, i	Didō, ōn i, ōni	Orph-e i, ei, i, eō
<i>Acc.</i> Pericle m, ea, ēn	{Parid em, a Parid im, in	Didō, ōn em	Orphe a, eum
<i>Voc.</i> Pericl ēs, es, ē	Pari	Didō	Orpheu
<i>Abl.</i> Pericle	Paride	Didō, ōn e	Orphe ō

1. Observe that these PARADIGMS fluctuate in certain cases—(1) between the Latin and the Greek forms: *lampadis, os*; *lampadem, a*; *hērōēs, as* :—(2) between different declensions: PERICLĒS, between Dec. I., *Periclēn*, *Periclē*, Dec. II., *Periclī* (Gen.), and Dec. III., *Periclis*, etc.: ORPHEUS, between Dec. II., *Orpheī*, *Orpheō*, etc., and Dec. III., *Orpheos*, etc.

2. Nouns in *ys* have Gen. *yos, ŷs*, Acc. *ym, yn*: *Othrys, Othryos, Othrym, Othryn*.

3. The VOCATIVE SINGULAR drops *s*—(1) in nouns in *eus, ys*, and in proper names in *ās*, Gen. *antis*: *Atlās, Atlā* :—(2) generally in nouns in *is*, and sometimes in other words: *Pari*.

4. In the GENITIVE PLURAL, the ending *ōn* occurs in a few titles of books: *Metamorphōsēs* (title of a poem), *Metamorphōsēn*.

5. In the DATIVE AND ABLATIVE PLURAL the ending *ēi*, before vowels *ēin*, occurs in poetry: *Troades, Troasin*.

6. A few neuters used only in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative have *os* in the Singular and *ē* in the Plural: *melos, melē*, song.

SYNOPSIS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

I. NOUNS ENDING IN A VOWEL.

69. Nouns in a : ³	Genitive in atis :	Stem in at :
poēma, poem,	poēmatis,	poēmat.

¹ The Plural is of course generally wanting; see 130, 2.

² *Eu* is a diphthong in the Nom. and Voc.; *ei* sometimes a diphthong in the Gen and Dat.

³ These are of Greek origin.

70. Nouns in **e**: Genitive in **is**: Stem in **i**:
 marē, sea, *maris,* *mari.*

71. Nouns in **i**:¹ Genitive in **is**: Stem in **i**:
 sināpi, mustard, *sināpis,* *sināpi.*

NOTE.—Many nouns in *i* are indeclinable. Compounds of *melī* have *itis* in the Genitive: *oxymelī, oxymelittis, oxymel.*

72. Nouns in **ō** or **ō**: Genitive in **ōnis**: Stem in **ōn**.
 leō, lion, *leōnis,* *leōn.*

EXCEPTIONS.—Genitive in—

1. **onis**:—most national names: *Macedō, Macedonis, Macedonian.*

2. **inis**:²—*Apollō; homō, man; nēmō, nobody; turbō, whirlwind; and nouns in dō and gō: grandō, grandinis, hail; virgō, virginis, maiden; except—harpagō, ōnis; ligō, ōnis; praedō, ōnis, also comedō, cūdō, mangō, spadō, ūnedō, ūdō.*

3. **nis**:—*carō, carnis* (for *carinis*³), *flesh; see 64, 2, note 1.*

4. **ēnis**:—*Aniō, Aniēnis, river Anio; Neriō, Neriēnis.*

5. **ūs**:—a few Greek feminines: *Didō, Dīdās; see 68.*

73. Nouns in **y**:³ Gen. in **yis** (*yos, ŷs*): Stem in **y**:
 misy, copperas, — misyis (yos, ŷs), *misy.*

II. NOUNS ENDING IN A MUTE OR LIQUID.

74. Nouns in **c**: *alēc, alēcis, pickle; lēc, lactis,*⁴ *milk.*

75. Nouns in **l**: Genitive in **lis**: Stem in **l**:
 sōl, sun, *sōlis,* *sōl.*

NOTE.—*Fel, fellis, gall; mel, mellis, honey; sāl, salis, salt.* On neuters in *al*, see 63.

76. Nouns in **n**: Genitive in **nis**: Stem in **n**:
 paeān, paeān, *paeānis,* *paeān.*
 flūmen, stream, *flūminis,* *flūmen, in.*

NOTE 1.—Nouns in **en** have the variable radical vowel—*e, i*; see 60. 1, 2).

NOTE 2.—There are a few Greek words in **ōn**, Gen. in **ōnis**. **ōntis**, St. in **on**. **ōnt** *uidōn, aēdonis, nightingale; Xenophōn, Xenophōntis, Xenophon.*

77. Nouns in **r**: Genitive in **ris**: Stem in **r**:
 carcer, prison, *carceris,* *carcer.*

1. Nouns in **ār, ar**: (1) **ār**, G. **āris**, St. **āri**: *lār, lāris, house*; (2) *pār paris, pair; fār, farris, corn; hepār, hepatis, liver.* For *ar*, G. **āris**, and *ar aris*, see 63.

2. Nouns in **ter**: Gen. in **tris**: *pater, patris, father; except later, lateris, tile; iter, itineris, way; Juppiter, Jovis; and Greek nouns: crāter, crāteris, bowl.*

¹ These are of Greek origin.

² Stem in *on, in, or onī, inī, nī*; see 60, 1, 2).

³ Nouns in *y* are of Greek origin, and are often indeclinable.

⁴ The only nouns in *c*.

NOTE.—*Imber* and names of months in *ber* have *bris* in the Genitive; *imber*, *imbris*, shower; *September*, *Septembris*, September; see 62, IV., notes 1 and 2.

3. Nouns in *or*: G. *ōris*, St. *ōr*: *pāstor*, *pāstōris*, shepherd; but a few have G. *oris*, St. *or*: *arbor*, *arboris*, tree; *aequor*, sea; *marmor*, marble. But *cor*, *cordis*, heart.

4. Four in *ur*: G. *oris*, St. *or*: *ebur*, ivory; *femur*, thigh; *jecur*, liver; *rōhur*, strength; but *femur* has also *feminis*, and *jecur*, *jecinoris*, *jecineris*, and *jocineris*.

78. Nouns in <i>ut</i> :	Genitive in <i>itis</i> :	Stem in <i>ut</i> , <i>it</i> :
caput, head,	capitis,	caput, it.

III. NOUNS ENDING IN *S*.

79. Nouns in <i>ās</i> :	Genitive in <i>ātis</i> :	Stem in <i>āt</i> :
aetās, age,	aetātis,	aetāt.

EXCEPTIONS.—Genitive in

1. *aris*:—*mās*, *maris*, a male;—stem, *mas*, *mari*; see 31, 1.
2. *āsis*:—*vās*, *vāsīs*, vessel.¹
3. *assis*:—*ās*, *assis*, an as (a coin).
4. *antis*:—only masculine Greek nouns: *adamās*, *antis*, adamant.

NOTE.—*Anas*, duck, and neuter Greek nouns in *as* have *atis*: *anas*, *anatis*. *Vas*, surety, *Arcas*, Arcadian, and feminine Greek nouns in *as* have *adis*: *vas*, *vadis*, *lampas*, *lampadis*.²

80. Nouns in <i>ēs</i> :	Genitive in <i>is</i> :	Stem in <i>i</i> : ³
nūbēs, cloud,	nūbis,	nūbi.

EXCEPTIONS.—Genitive in

1. *ēdis*:—*hērēs*, *hērēdis*, heir; *mercēs*, reward.
2. *edis*:—*pēs*, *pedis*, foot, and its compounds: *compēs*, *edis*, a fetter.
3. *eris*:—*Cerēs*, *Cereris*.⁴
4. *ētis*:—*quiēs*, rest, with compounds, *inquiēs*, *requiēs*, and a few Greek words: *lebēs*, *tapēs*.
5. *etis*:—*abiēs*, fir-tree; *ariēs*, ram; *pariēs*, wall.

NOTE.—*Bīs*, *bessis*, two-thirds; *aes*, *aeris*,⁴ copper; *praes*, *praedis*, surety.

81 Nouns in <i>es</i> :	Genitive in <i>itis</i> :	Stem in <i>et</i> , <i>it</i> :
miles, soldier,	militis,	milet, it.

EXCEPTIONS.—Genitive in

1. *etis*:—*interpres*, interpreter; *seges*, crop; *teges*, covering.
2. *idis*:—*obses*, hostage; *praeses*, president; see 57, 2.

¹ *Vās* is the only stem in *s* which does not change *s* to *r* between two vowels; see 61, 1, 3).

² Greek nouns sometimes have *ados* for *adis*.

³ But see 64, 1.

⁴ See 61, 1, 3).

82. Nouns in is :	Genitive in is :	Stem in i :
avis, bird,	avis,	avi.

EXCEPTIONS.—Genitive in

1. **eris**:—*cinis*, *cineris*,¹ ashes; *cucumis*, cucumber; *pulvis*, dust; *vōmis*, ploughshare.
2. **idis**:—*capis*, cup; *cassis*, helmet; *cuspis*, spear; *lapis*, stone; *prōmulsis*, antepast, and a few Greek² words: as *tyrannis*, *idis*, tyranny. Sometimes *ibis*, and *tigris*.
3. **inis**:—*pollis* or *pollen*, flour; *sanguis*, blood.

NOTE.—*Glis*, *gliris*, dormouse; *lis*, *litis*, strife; *sēmis*, *sēmīssis*, half an as; *Dis*, *Ditis*; *Quirīs*, *Quiritīs*; *Samnīs*, *Samnitīs*.

83. Nouns in ōs :	Genitive in ōris :	Stem in ōs :
mōs, custom,	mōris,	mōs.

EXCEPTIONS.—Genitive in

1. **ōtis**:—*cōs*, *cōtis*, whetstone; *dōs*, dowry; *nepōs*, grandson; *sacerdōs*, priest; and a few Greek words.
2. **ōdis**:—*cūstōs*, *cūstōdis*, guardian; see 36, 2.
3. **ōis**:—a few masculine Greek nouns: *hērōs*, hero; *Mīnōs*, *Trōs*.

NOTE.—*Arbōs* or *arbor*, *arboris*, tree; *os*, *ossis*, bone; *bōs*, *boris*, ox; see 66.

84. Nouns in **ūs**, Gen. in **ūris** or **ūtis**: stem in **ūs** or **ūt**.

1. **ūris**:—*crūs*, leg; *jūs*, right; *jūs*, soup; *mūs*, mouse; *pūs*, pus; *rūs*, country; *tūs* (*thūs*), incense; *tellūs*, earth.
2. **ūtis**:—*juventūs*, youth; *salūs*, safety; *senectūs*, old age; *servitūs*, servitude; *virtūs*, virtue; see 36, 2.

EXCEPTIONS.—Genitive in

1. **ūdis**:—*incūs*, anvil; *palūs*, marsh; *subscūs*, dovetail.
2. **uis**:—*grūs*, *gruis*, crane; *sūs*, swine.
3. **untis**:—a few Greek names of places: *Trapezūs*, *untis*.
4. **odis**:—Greek compounds in *pūs*: *tripūs*, *tripodis*, tripod.

NOTE.—*Fraus*, *fraudis*, fraud; *laus*, *laudis*, praise; see 64, 2, 2), foot-note. For Greek nouns in *eus*, see 68.

85. Nouns in **us**: Gen. in **eris** or **oris**: stem in **os**.

1. **eris**:—*latus*, *lateris*, side: stem, *latos*.³ So also: *acus*, *foedus*, *fūnus*, *genus*, *glomus*, *mūnus*, *olus*, *onus*, *opus*, *pondus*, *rūdus*, *scelus*, *sīdus*, *ulcus*, *vellus*, *Venus*, *viscus*, *vulnus*.

2. **oris**:—*corpus*, *corporis*, body: stem, *corpos*.³ So also *decus*, *dēdecus*,

¹ Stem *cinis*, *c'ner* for *cines* with variable vowel *i*, *e*: see 24, 1; 31, 1; and 57, 2.

² Greek nouns sometimes have *idos* or even *ios* for *idis*; *Salamīs* has *Salamīdis*; *Simois*, *Simoentis*.

³ See 61, 1, foot-note.

*facinus, faenus, frīgus, lepus, litus, nemus, pectus, pecus, penus, pīgnus, ster-
cus, tempus, tergus.*

NOTE.—*Pecus, pecudis*, a head of cattle; *Ligus, Liguris*, Ligurian; see 31.

86. Nouns in **ys**:¹ Genitive in **yis, yos, ŷs**: Stem in **y**:
Othrys, Othryos, Othry.

87. Nouns in **bs**: Genitive in **bis**: Stem in **bi**:²
urbs, *city*, urbis, urbi.

88. Nouns in **ms**: Genitive in **mis**: Stem in **m**:
hiems, *winter*, hiemis, hiem.

89. Nouns in **eps**: Genitive in **ipis**: Stem in **ep, ip**.
princeps, *prince*, prīncipis, prīncep, ip.

NOTE.—But *auceps, aucupis*, fowler. Other nouns in **ps** retain the stem-vowel unchanged; *merops, meropis*, bee-eater. *Gryps, griffin*, has *grīphīs*.

90. Nouns in s after **l, n, or r**: Gen. in **tis**: Stem in **ti**:
puls, *broth*, pultis, pulti.
mēns, *mind*, mentis, menti.³
ars, *art*, artis, arti.

NOTE.—*Frōns, frondis*, leaf; *glāns, glandis*, acorn; *jūglāns, jūglandis*, walnut; see 64, 2.

IV. NOUNS ENDING IN **X**.

91. Nouns in **āx**: Genitive in **ācis**: Stem in **āc**:
pāx, *peace*, pācis, pāc.

NOTE.—*Fax, facis*, torch; so also a few Greek nouns. *Astyanax, actis*; so a few Greek names of men.

92. Nouns in **ēx**: Genitive in **ēcis** or **ēgis**: Stem in **ēc, ēg**:

1. **ēcis**:—*ālēx*, pickle; *vervēx*, wether.

2. **ēgis**:—*lēx*, law; *rēx*, king, and their compounds.

93. Nouns in **ex**: Genitive in **icis**: Stem in **ic, ec**:
jūdex, *judge*, jūdicis, jūdic, ec.

EXCEPTIONS.—Genitive in

1. **ecis**:—*nex*, murder; *fēnīsex*, mower; (*prex*), *precis*, prayer.

2. **egis**:—*grex*, flock; *aquilēx*, water-inspector.

3. **igis**:—*rēmex, rēmīgis*, rower; see 24, 1.

NOTE.—*Fæw, faecis*, lees; *senex, senis*, old man (66); *supellex, supellectilis*, furniture.

94. Nouns in **ix**: Genitive in **icis**: Stem in **ic**:
rādix, *root*, rādīcis, rādīc.

¹ These are of Greek origin; a few of them have *ydis*: *chlāmēs, chlamydis*, cloak

² Dissyllables have the stem in *ō*.

³ Dissyllables in *ns* have the stem in *t*.

95. Nouns in **ix**: Genitive in **icis**: Stem in **ic**:
 calix, *cup*, calicis, calic.

NOTE.—*Nix*, *nivis* (66), *snow*; *strix*, *strigis*, screech-owl; a few Gallic names also have the Genitive in *igis*: *Dumnoria*, *Orgëtorix*.

96. Nouns in **ōx** or **ox**: *vōx*, *vōcis*, voice; *nox*, *noctis*, night.

NOTE.—There are also a few national names in **ox**, Gen. in **ocis** or **ogis**: *Cappadox*, *Cappadocis*; *Allobrox*, *Allobrogis*.

97. Nouns in **ux**: Genitive in **ucis**: Stem in **uc**:
 dux, *leader*, ducis, duc.

NOTE 1.—*Lūx*, *lūcis*, light; *Pollux*, *Pollūcis*, Pollux; *frūx*, *frūgis*, fruit.

NOTE 2.—Greek nouns in *yx* and *γx* are variously declined: *Eryx*, *Erycis*, Eryx; *bombyx*, *bombygis*, silkworm; *Styx*, *Stygis*, Styx; *coceyx*, *coceygis*, cuckoo; *onyx*, *onychis*, onyx.

98. Nouns in **x** after **n** or **r**: Genitive in **cis**: Stem in **ci**:
 arx, *citadel*, arcis, arcī.

NOTE 1.—*Conjūnx* or *conjux*, *conjugis*, spouse.

NOTE 2.—Most nouns in *x* preceded by *n* are of Greek origin: *lynx*, *lynxis*, lynx; *phalanx*, *phalangis*, phalanx.

GENDER IN THIRD DECLENSION.

99. Nouns in the third declension ending in **ō**, **or**, **ōs**, **er**, and in **ēs** and **es** increasing in the Genitive,¹ are masculine: *sermō*, discourse; *dolor*, pain; *mōs*, custom; *agger*, mound; *pēs*, Genitive *pedis*, foot.

100. Nouns in **Ō** are masculine, except the *Feminines*, viz.:

1. Nouns in **ō**, Gen. *inis*, except *cardō*, *ōrdō*, *turbō*, masc., *cupīdō* and *margō*, masc. or fem.
2. *Carō*, flesh, and the Greek *Argō*, *ēchō*, echo.
3. Most abstract and collective nouns in **iō**: *ratiō*, reason; *contīō*, an assembly.

101. Nouns in **OR** are masculine, except—

1. *The Feminine*:—*arbor*, tree.
2. *The Neuters*:—*ador*, spelt; *aquor*, sea; *cor*, heart; *marmor*, marble.

102. Nouns in **ŌS** are masculine, except—

1. *The Feminines*:—*arbōs*, tree; *cōs*, whetstone; *dōs*, dowry; *ēōs*, dawn.
2. *The Neuter*:—*ōs*, mouth.

NOTE.—*Os*, bone, and a few Greek words in *os* are neuter: *chaos*, chaos.

103. Nouns in **ER** are masculine, except—

¹ That is, having more syllables in the Genitive than in the Nominative.

1. *The Feminine* :—*linter*, boat (sometimes masc.).

2. *The Neuters* :—(1) *cadāver*, corpse; *iter*, way; *tūber*, tumor; *ūber*, udder; *vēr*, spring; *verber*, scourge;—(2) botanical names in *er*, Gen. *eris*: *acer*, maple-tree; *pāpāver*, poppy.

104. Nouns in **ĒS** and **ES** increasing in the Genitive are masculine, except—

1. *The Feminines* :—*compēs*, fetter; *mercēs*, reward; *merges*, sheaf; *quiēs*, rest (with its compounds); *scges*, crop; *teges*, mat; sometimes *āles*, bird, and *quadrupēs*, quadruped.

2. *The Neuter* :—*aes*, copper.

105. Nouns of the third declension ending in

ās, **as**, **is**, **ys**, **x**, in **ēs** not increasing in the Genitive, and in **s** preceded by a consonant,

are feminine:¹ *aetās*, age; *nāvis*, ship; *chlamys*, cloak; *pāx*, peace; *nūbēs*, cloud; *urbs*, city.

106. Nouns in **ĀS** and **AS** are feminine, except—

1. *The Masculines* :—*ās*, an as (a coin), *vas*, surety, and Greek nouns in **as**, Gen. *antis*.

2. *The Neuters* :—*vās*, vessel, and Greek nouns in **as**, Gen. *atis*.

107. Nouns in **IS** and **YS** are feminine, except the *Masculines*, viz.:

1. Nouns in **ālis**, **ollis**, **cis**, **mis**, **nis**, **guis**, **quis**: *nātālis*, birthday; *ignis*, fire; *sanguis*, blood. But a few of these are occasionally feminine: *canis*, *amnis*, *cinis*, *fīnis*, *anguis*, *torquis*.

2. *Axis*, axle; *būris*, plough-tail; *callis*, path;¹ *ēnsis*, sword; *lapis*, stone; *mēnsis*, month; *orbis*, circle; *postis*, post; *pulvis*, dust; *sentis*, brier; *torris*, brand; *vcctis*, lever; and a few others.

3. Names of mountains in **ys**: *Othrys*.

108. Nouns in **X** are feminine, except the *Masculines*, viz.:

1. Greek masculines: *corax*, raven; *thōrāx*, cuirass.

2. Nouns in **ex** and **unx**; except the feminines: *fax*, *forfex*, *nex*, (*prex*) *supellex*.

3. *Calix*, cup; *fornix*, arch; *phoenix*, phoenix; *trādux*, vine-layer, and a few nouns in **yx**.

4. Sometimes: *calx*, heel; *calx*, lime; *lynx*, lynx.

109. Nouns in **ĒS** not increasing in the Genitive are feminine, except the *Masculines*, viz.:

¹ Nouns whose gender is determined by *Signification* (42) may be exceptions to these rules for gender as determined by *Endings*. *Callis* is sometimes *feminine*.

Acinacēs, cimeter; sometimes *palumbēs*, dove; and *veprēs*, thorn-bush.

NOTE.—For Greek nouns in *es*, see 111, note.

110. Nouns in **S** PRECEDED BY A CONSONANT are feminine, except the *Masculines*, viz.:

1. *Dēns*, tooth; *fōns*, fountain; *mōns*, mountain; *pōns*, bridge; generally *adepts*, fat, and *rudēns*, cable.
2. Some nouns in **ns**, originally adjectives or participles with a masculine noun understood: *oriēns* (*sōl*), east; *cōnfluēns* (*amnis*), confluence; *tridēns* (*raster*), trident; *quadrāns* (*ās*), quarter.
3. *Chalybs*, steel; *hydrops*, dropsy, and a few other Greek words.
4. Sometimes: *forceps*, forceps; *serpēns*, serpent; *stīrps*, stock. *Animāns*, animal, is masculine, feminine, or neuter.

111. Nouns of the third declension ending in

a, e, ī, y, c, l, n, t, ār, ar, ur, ūs, and us

are neuter:¹ *poēma*, poem; *mare*, sea; *lāc*, milk; *animal*, animal; *carmen*, song; *caput*, head; *corpus*, body.

NOTE.—A few Greek nouns in *es* are also neuter: *cacoēthes*, desire, passion.

112. Nouns in **L, ĀR, and AR** are neuter, except the *Masculines*, viz.: *Mūgil*, mullet; *sāl*,¹ salt; *sōl*, sun; *lār*, hearth; *salar*, trout.

113. Nouns in **N** are neuter, except—

1. *The Masculines*:—*pecten*, comb; *rēn*, kidney; *liēn*, spleen; and Greek masculines in **ān, ēn, in, ōn**: *pacān*, paeon; *canōn*, rule.
2. *The Feminines*:—*aedōn*, nightingale; *alecyōn* (*halcyōn*), kingfisher; *icōn*, image; *sindōn*, muslin.

114. Nouns in **UR** are neuter, except the *Masculines*, viz.: *Furfur*, bran; *turtur*, turtle-dove; *vultur*, vulture.

115. Nouns in **ŪS** and **US** are neuter, except—

1. *The Masculines*:—*lepus*, hare; *mūs*, mouse; and Greek nouns in **pūs**.
2. *The Feminines*:—*tellūs*, earth; *fraus*, fraud; *laus*, praise; and nouns in **ūs**, Gen. **ūtis** or **ūdis**: *virtūs*, virtue; *palūs*, marsh.

FOURTH DECLENSION: U NOUNS.

116. Nouns of the fourth declension end in

us—masculine; ū—neuter.

They are declined as follows:

¹ See foot-note, page 47. *Sal* is sometimes neuter in the singular.

Fructus, *fruit*. Cornū, *horn*.

		SINGULAR.	CASE-ENDINGS.	
Nom.	fructus	cornū	us	ū
Gen.	fructūs	cornūs	ūs	ūs
Dat.	fructuī, ū ¹	cornū	uī, ū ¹	ū
Acc.	fructum	cornū	um	ū
Voc.	fructus	cornū	us	ū
Abl.	fructū	cornū	ū	ū
PLURAL.				
Nom.	fructūs	cornua	ūs	ua
Gen.	fructuum	cornuum	uum	uum
Dat.	fructibus	cornibus	ibus (ubus)	ibus (ubus)
Acc.	fructūs	cornua	ūs	ua
Voc.	fructūs	cornua	ūs	ua
Abl.	fructibus	cornibus	ibus (ubus)	ibus (ubus)

1. The STEM in nouns of the fourth declension ends in **u**: *fructu*, *cornu*.

2. The CASE-ENDINGS here given contain the characteristic **u**, weakened to *i* in *ibus*, but retained in *ubus*; see 22.

117. The following IRREGULAR CASE-ENDINGS occur:²

1. **Ubus** for *ibus* in the Dative and Ablative Plural—

1) Regularly in *acus*, needle; *arcus*, bow; and *tribus*, tribe.

2) Often in *artus*,³ joint; *lucus*, lake; *partus*, birth; *portus*, harbor; *specus*, cave; and *verū*, spit.

3) Occasionally in a few other words, as *genū*, knee; *tonitrus*, thunder, etc.

2. **Uis**, the uncontracted form for *us*, in the Genitive: *fructuis* for *fructūs*.⁴

3. **Uos**, an old form⁵ of the Genitive ending: *senātuos*,⁶ of the senate.

118. Nouns in **us** are masculine, those in **ū** are neuter, but the following in **us** are—

¹ Thus *uī* is contracted into *ū*: *fructuū*, *fructū*.

² To these should be added the rare endings *ūd* for *ū* in the Abl. Sing., *uus* for *ūs* in the Gen. Sing., and *uīs* for *ūs* in the Nom., Acc., and Voc. Pl. See Wordsworth, pp. 60–62.

³ Generally plural, *lumbæ*.

⁴ It has been already mentioned (47, note 1) that the five declensions are only five varieties of one general system of inflection. The close relationship between the third declension and the fourth will be seen by comparing the declension of *fructus*, a *u*-noun of the fourth, with that of *grūs* (66, 2), a *u*-noun of the third. In fact, if the old Genitive ending *uis* had not been contracted into *ūs*, there would have been no fourth declension whatever. All *u*-nouns would have belonged to the third declension.

⁵ Compare the Greek Genitive in *vos*: *ἰχθύς*, *ἰχθύος*, *fish*.

⁶ This was first weakened to *senātuis* (22), and then contracted to *senātūs* (23, 2), the classical form.

FEMININE BY EXCEPTION:—(1) *acus*, needle; *colus*, distaff; *domus*, house; *manus*, hand; *porticus*, portico; *tribus*, tribe;—(2) *Idūs*, Ides; *Quīnquātrūs*, feast of Minerva; generally *pīnus*, store, when of this declension; rarely *specus*, den;—(3) see 42, II.

NOTE.—The only neuter nouns in common use are *cornū*, *genū*, and *verū*.¹

119. SECOND AND FOURTH DECLENSIONS.—Some nouns are partly of the fourth declension and partly of the second.

1. *Domus*, f., house, has a Locative form *domī*, at home, and is otherwise declined as follows:²

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> domus	domūs
<i>Gen.</i> domūs	domuum, domōrum
<i>Dat.</i> domui (domō)	domibus
<i>Acc.</i> domum	domōs, domūs
<i>Voc.</i> domus	domūs
<i>Abl.</i> domō (domū)	domibus

2. Certain names of trees in *us*, as *cupressus*, *ficus*, *laurus*, *pīnus*, though generally of Decl. II., sometimes take those cases of the fourth which end in *ūs*, *us*, and *ū*: N. *laurus*, G. *laurūs*, D. *laurō*, A. *laurum*, V. *laurus*, A. *laurū*, etc. So also *colus*, distaff.

3. A few nouns, especially *senātus*, senate, and *tumultus*, tumult, though regularly of Decl. IV., sometimes take the Genitive ending *i* of the second; *senātī*, *tumultī*.

4. *Quercus*, oak, regularly of Decl. IV., has *quercōrum* in the Gen. Plur.

FIFTH DECLENSION: E NOUNS.

120. Nouns of the fifth declension end in *ēs*—feminine, and are declined as follows:

	Diēs, day.	Rēs, thing.
	SINGULAR.	CASE-ENDINGS.
<i>Nom.</i>	diēs	rēs ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	diēī or diē	rēī or rē ēī, ē
<i>Dat.</i>	diēī or diē	rēī or rē ēī, ē
<i>Acc.</i>	diem	rem em
<i>Voc.</i>	diēs	rēs ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	diē	rē ē

¹ But neuter forms occur in certain cases of other words. Thus, *Dat. pecūī*, *Abl. pecūī*. *Nom.*, *Acc.*, and *Voc. Pl. pecua*, from obsolete *pecū*, cattle; also *artua* from *artus*; *ossua* from obsolete *ossū*, bone; *specua* from *specus*.

² Combining forms of the second declension with those of the fourth.

	PLURAL.	CASE-ENDINGS.
<i>Nom.</i> diēs	rēs	ēs
<i>Gen.</i> diērum	rērum	ērum
<i>Dat.</i> diēbus	rēbus	ēbus
<i>Acc.</i> diēs	rēs	ēs
<i>Voc.</i> diēs	rēs	ēs
<i>Abl.</i> diēbus	rēbus	ēbus

1. The STEM of nouns of the fifth declension ends in *ē*: *diē*, *rē*.¹

2. The CASE-ENDINGS here given contain the characteristic *ē*, which appears in all the cases. It is shortened (1) generally in the ending *ēi*, when preceded by a consonant, and (2) regularly in the ending *em*.

NOTE.—Traces of a Locative in *ē* are preserved in certain phrases found in early Latin, as *diē septimī*, on the seventh day; *diē crastinī*, on the morrow; *diē proximī*, on the next day. *Cotidīē*, *hodiē*, *pridīē*, and the like are doubtless Locatives in origin.

121. IRREGULAR CASE-ENDINGS.—The following occur:

1. *ī* or *ēi* for *ēi* in the Gen. and Dat.: *aciī* for *aciēi*, of sharpness; *diī* for *diēi*; *rēi* for *rēi*; *perniciī* for *perniciēi*, of destruction.

2. *ēs* in the Gen. in early Latin: *diēs*, of a day; *rabiēs*, of madness.

122. DEFECTIVE.—Nouns of this declension want the plural, except²—

1. *Diēs* and *rēs*, complete in all their parts.

2. *Acies*, sharpness; *effigies*, image; *facies*, face; *series*, series; *species*, appearance; *spēs*,³ hope, used in the Sing., and in the Nom., Acc., and Voc. Plur.

3. *Eluvies*, used in the Sing. and in the Nom. Plur., and *glacies* in the Sing. and in the Acc. Plur.

123. GENDER.—Nouns of the fifth declension are feminine—

EXCEPT *diēs*, day, and *meridiēs*, midday, masculine, though *diēs* is sometimes feminine in the singular, especially when it means *time*.

124. GENERAL TABLE OF GENDER.

I. Gender independent of ending.⁴ Common to all declensions.

¹ Originally most *e*-stems appear to have been either *a*-stems or *s*-stems. Thus: 1) Most stems in *iē* are modified from *iā*: *māteriā*, *māteriē*, Nom. *māteriē-s*, material; see 25, 1, note, with foot-note 6. In this class of words the Gen. and Dat. Sing. are formed from the stem in *iā*, not from that in *iēs*: *māteriaē*, not *māteriēi*. 2) *Diēs*, *fidēs*, *plēbēs*, and *spēs* appear to have been *s*-stems, modified to *ē*-stems, as many *s*-stems in the third declension were modified to *i*-stems; see 62, I., 1, foot-note.

² A few plural forms in addition to those here given are sometimes cited, but seem not to occur in writers of the classical period.

³ In early Latin *spērēs* occurs in the Nom. and Acc. Plur., formed from *spēs* treated as a stem in *s*. Thus: *spēs*, *spēsēs*, *spērēs* (31, 1).

⁴ For exceptions, see 43.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Names of MALES, of RIVERS, WINDS, and MONTHS.	Names of FEMALES, of COUNTRIES, TOWNS, IS- LANDS, and TREES.	INDECLINABLE NOUNS, ¹ IN- FINITIVES, and CLAUSES <i>used as Nouns.</i>

II. Gender determined by Nominative ending.²

DECLENSION I.		
Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
ās, ēs.	a, ē.	
DECLENSION II.		
er, ir, us, os, ōs.		um, on.
DECLENSION III.		
ō, or, ōs, er, ēs and <i>es increasing in the Genitive.</i>	ās, as, is, ys, x, ēs and <i>es not increasing in the Genitive, & preceded by a consonant.</i>	a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ār. ar, ur, ūs, us.
DECLENSION IV.		
us.		ū.
DECLENSION V.		
	ēs.	

COMPOUND NOUNS.

125. Compounds present in general no peculiarities of declension.
But—

1. If two nominatives unite, they are both declined :³ *rēspūblica* = *rēs pūblica*, republic, the public thing ; *jūsjurandum* = *jūs jurandum*, oath.

2. If a nominative unites with an oblique case, only the nominative is declined :³ *paterfamiliās* = *pater familiās* (49, 1), or *pater familiae*, the father of a family.

126. PARADIGMS.

	SINGULAR.	
<i>Nom.</i> <i>rēspūblica</i>	<i>jūsjurandum</i>	<i>paterfamiliās</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>rēipublicae</i>	<i>jūrisjurandi</i>	<i>patrisfamiliās</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>rēipublicae</i>	<i>jūrijurandō</i>	<i>patrifamiliās</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>rempūblicam</i>	<i>jūsjurandum</i>	<i>patremfamiliās</i>
<i>Voc.</i> <i>rēspūblica</i>	<i>jūsjurandum</i>	<i>paterfamiliās</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>rēpūblicā</i>	<i>jūrejurandō</i>	<i>patrefamiliās</i>

¹ Except names of persons.

² For exceptions, see under the several declensions.

³ Words thus formed, however, are not compounds in the strict sense of the term see 340, I., note.

PLURAL.		
<i>Nom.</i> rēspūblicae	iūrajūrandā	patrēsfamiliās
<i>Gen.</i> rērumpublicārum		patrumfamiliās
<i>Dat.</i> rēbuspublicis		patribusfamiliās
<i>Acc.</i> rēspūbiās	jūrajūrandā	patrēsfamiliās
<i>Voc.</i> rēspūblicae	iūrajūrandā	patrēsfamiliās
<i>Abl.</i> rēbuspublicis		patribusfamiliās

NOTE 1.—The parts which compose these and similar words are often and perhaps more correctly written separately: *rēs publica*; *pater familiās* or *familiae*.

NOTE 2.—*Paterfamiliās* sometimes has *familiūrum* in the plural: *patrēsfamiliūrum*.

IRREGULAR NOUNS.

127. Irregular nouns may be divided into four classes:

I. INDECLINABLE NOUNS have but one form for all cases.

II. DEFECTIVE NOUNS want certain parts.

III. HETEROCLITES (*heteroclita*¹) are partly of one declension and partly of another.

IV. HETEROGENEOUS NOUNS (*heterogenea*²) are partly of one gender and partly of another.

I. INDECLINABLE NOUNS.

128. The Latin has but few indeclinable nouns. The following are the most important:

1. The letters of the alphabet, *a, b, c, alpha, beta*, etc.
2. Foreign words: *Jacob, Iberi*; though foreign words often are declined.

II. DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

129. Nouns may be defective in *Number*, in *Case*, or in both *Number* and *Case*.

130. PLURAL WANTING.—Many nouns from the nature of their signification want the plural: *Rōma*, Rome; *iūstitia*, justice; *aurum*, gold; *fames*, hunger; *sanguis*, blood.

1. The principal nouns of this class are:

- 1) Most names of persons and places: *Cicerō, Rōma*.
- 2) Abstract Nouns: *fides*, faith; *iūstitia*, justice.
- 3) Names of materials: *aurum*, gold; *ferrum*, iron.
- 4) A few others: *meridies*, midday; *specimen*, example; *supellex*, furniture; *vēr*, spring; *vespera*, evening, etc.

2. Proper names admit the plural to designate *families, classes*; names of materials, to designate *pieces* of the material or *articles* made of it; and abstract nouns, to designate *instances*, or *kinds*, of the quality: *Scipionēs*, the Scipios; *aera*, vessels of copper; *avaritiāe*, instances of avarice; *odia*, hatreds.

3. In the poets, the plural of abstracts occurs in the sense of the singular.

¹ From *ἑτερος*, *another*, and *κλίσις*, *inflection*, i. e., of different declensions.

² From *ἑτερος*, *another*, and *γένος*, *gender*, i. e., of different genders.

131. SINGULAR WANTING.—Many nouns want the singular.

1. The most important of these are :

1) Certain personal appellatives applicable to classes : *mājōrēs*, forefathers ; *posterī*, descendants ; *geminī*, twins ; *liberī*, children.2) Many names of cities : *Athēnae*, Athens ; *Thēbae*, Thebes ; *Delphī*, Delphi.3) Many names of festivals : *Bacchānālia*, *Olympia*, *Sātumnālia*.4) *Arma*, arms ; *divitiae*, riches ; *exsequiae*, funeral rites ; *exuviae*, spoils ; *Idūs*, Ides ; *indūtia*, truce ; *insidiae*, ambuscade ; *mānēs*, shades of the dead ; *mīnae*, threats ; *moenia*, walls ; *mūnia*, duties ; *nūptiae*, nuptials ; *rēliquiae*, remains.2. An individual member of a class designated by these plurals may be denoted by *ūnus ex* with the plural : *ūnus ex liberis*, one of the children, or a child.

NOTE.—The plural in names of cities may have reference to the several parts of the city, especially as ancient cities were often made up of separate villages. So in the names of festivals, the plural may refer to the various games and exercises which together constituted the festival.

132. PLURAL WITH CHANGE OF MEANING.—Some nouns have one signification in the singular and another in the plural. Thus :

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Aedēs</i> , temple ;	<i>aedēs</i> , (1) temples, (2) a house. ¹
<i>Auxilium</i> , help ;	<i>auxilia</i> , auxiliaries.
<i>Carcer</i> , prison, barrier ;	<i>carcerēs</i> , barriers of a race-course.
<i>Castrum</i> , castle, hut ;	<i>castra</i> , camp.
<i>Comitium</i> , name of a part of the Roman forum ;	<i>comitia</i> , the assembly held in the comitium.
<i>Cōpia</i> , plenty, force ;	<i>cōpiae</i> , (1) stores, (2) troops.
<i>Facultās</i> , ability ;	<i>facultātēs</i> , wealth, means.
<i>Finis</i> , end ;	<i>finēs</i> , borders, territory.
<i>Fortūna</i> , fortune ;	<i>fortūnae</i> , possessions, wealth.
<i>Grātia</i> , gratitude, favor ;	<i>grātiae</i> , thanks.
<i>Hortus</i> , garden ;	<i>horti</i> , (1) gardens, (2) pleasure-grounds.
<i>Impedimentum</i> , hindrance ;	<i>impedimenta</i> , (1) hindrances, (2) baggage.
<i>Littera</i> , letter of alphabet ;	<i>litterae</i> , (1) letters of alphabet, (2) epistle, writing, letters, literature.
<i>Lūdus</i> , play, sport ;	<i>lūdī</i> , (1) plays, (2) public spectacle.
<i>Mōs</i> , custom ;	<i>mōrēs</i> , manners, character.
<i>Nātālis</i> (diēs), birth-day ;	<i>nātālēs</i> , pedigree, parentage.
<i>Opera</i> , work, service ;	<i>operae</i> , workmen.
<i>Pars</i> , part ;	<i>partēs</i> , (1) parts, (2) a party.
<i>Rōstrum</i> , beak of ship ;	<i>rōstra</i> , (1) beaks, (2) the rostra or tribuns in Rome (adorned with beaks).
<i>Sāl</i> , salt ;	<i>salēs</i> , witty sayings.

¹ *Aedēs* and some other words in this list, it will be observed, have in the plural two significations, one corresponding to that of the singular, and the other distinct from it.

133. DEFECTIVE IN CASE.—Some nouns are defective in case:

1. In the Nom., Dat., and Voc. Sing.: —, *opis*, —, *opem*, —, *ope*, help; —, *vicis*,¹ —, *vicem*, —, *vice*, change.
2. In the Nom., Gen., and Voc. Sing.: —, *precī*, *precem*, —, *prece*, prayer.
3. In the Nom. and Voc. Sing.: —, *dapis*,¹ *dapī*, *dapem*, —, *dape*, food; —, *frūgis*, *frūgī*, *frūgem*, —, *frūge*, fruit.
4. In the Gen., Dat., and Abl. Plur.: Most nouns of the fifth Decl.; see 122.

NOTE.—Many neuters are also defective in the Gen., Dat., and Abl. Plur.: *fūr*, *fel*, *mel*, *pūs*, *rūs*, *tūs*, etc., especially Greek neuters in *os*, which want these cases also in the singular: *epos*, *melos*; also a few nouns of Decl. IV.: *metus*, *situs*, etc.

5. In the Gen. Plur.: many nouns otherwise entire, especially monosyllables: *nex*, *pāx*, *pīx*; *oor*, *cōs*, *rōs*; *sāl*, *sōl*, *lūx*.

134. NUMBER AND CASE.—Some nouns want one entire number and certain cases of the other. The following forms occur: *fors*, *forte*, chance; *lūs*, *luem*, *lue*, pestilence; *diciōnis*, *diciōnī*, *diciōnem*, *diciōne*, sway. *Fās*, right, and *nefās*, wrong, are used in the Nom., Acc., and Voc. Sing.; *īnstar*, likeness, *nihil*, nothing, and *opus*, need, in the Nom. and Acc.; *secus*, sex, in the Acc. only. Many verbal nouns in *ū* and a few other words have only the Ablative Singular: *jussū*, by order; *mandātū*, by command; *rogātū*, by request; *sponte*, by choice, etc.

III. HETEROCLITES.

135. Of DECLENSIONS II. and IV. are a few nouns in *us*; see 119.

136. Of DECLENSIONS II. and III. are—

1. *Jūgerum*, an acre; generally of the second Decl. in the Sing., and of the third in the Plur.: *jūgerum*, *jūgerī*; plural, *jūgera*, *jūgerum*, *jūgeribus*.
2. *Vās*, a vessel; of the third Decl. in the Sing. and of the second in the Plur.: *vās*, *vāsīs*; plural, *vāsa*, *vāsōrum*.
3. Plural names of festivals in *ālia*: *Bacchānālia*, *Sāturnālia*; which are regularly of the third Decl., but sometimes form the Gen. Plur. in *ōrum* of the second. *Ancile*, a shield, and a few other words have the same peculiarity.

137. Of DECLENSIONS III. and V. are—

1. *Requies*, rest; which is regularly of the third Decl., but also takes the forms *requiem* and *requiē* of the fifth.
2. *Famēs*, hunger; regularly of the third Decl., except in the Ablative, *famē*, of the fifth (not *fame*, of the third).

138. FORMS IN *ia* AND *iēs*.—Many words of four syllables have one form in *ia* of Decl. I., and one in *iēs* of Decl. V.: *luxuria*, *luxuriēs*, luxury; *materia*, *materiēs*, material.

139. FORMS IN *us* AND *um*.—Many nouns derived from verbs have one form in *us* of Decl. IV., and one in *um* of Decl. II.: *cōnātus*, *cōnātum*, attempt; *ēventus*, *ēventum*, event.

¹ Defective also in the Gen. Plur.

140. Many words which have but one approved form in prose, admit another in poetry: *juventūs* (ūtis), youth; poetic, *juventa* (ae): *senectūs* (ūtis), old age; poetic, *senecta* (ae): *paupertās* (ātis), poverty; poetic, *pauperiēs* (ēi).

IV. HETEROGENEOUS NOUNS.

141. MASCULINE AND NEUTER.—Some *masculines* take in the plural an additional form of the neuter gender:

<i>Jocus</i> , m., jest;	plural, <i>jocī</i> , m., <i>joca</i> , n.
<i>Locus</i> , m., place;	plural, <i>locī</i> , m., topics, <i>loca</i> , n., places.

142. FEMININE AND NEUTER.—Some *feminines* take in the plural an additional form of the neuter gender:

<i>Carbasus</i> , f., linen;	plural, <i>carbasī</i> , f., <i>carbasa</i> , n.
<i>Margarita</i> , f., pearl;	plural, <i>margaritae</i> , f., <i>margarita</i> , n.
<i>Ostrea</i> , f., oyster;	plural, <i>ostreae</i> , f., <i>ostrea</i> , n.

143. NEUTER AND MASCULINE OR FEMININE.—Some *neuters* take in the plural a different gender. Thus:

1. Some *neuters* become *masculine* in the plural:

<i>Caelum</i> , n., heaven;	plural, <i>caeli</i> , m.
-----------------------------	---------------------------

2. Some *neuters* generally become *masculine* in the plural, but sometimes remain *neuter*:

<i>Frēnum</i> , n., bridle;	plural, <i>frēnī</i> , m., <i>frēna</i> , n.
<i>Rāstrum</i> , n., rake;	plural, <i>rāstrī</i> , m., <i>rāstra</i> , n.

3. Some *neuters* become *feminine* in the plural:

<i>Epulum</i> , n., feast;	plural, <i>epulae</i> , f.
----------------------------	----------------------------

144. FORMS IN *us* AND *um*.—Some nouns of the second declension have one form in *us* masculine, and one in *um* neuter: *clipeus*, *clipeum*, shield; *commentārius*, *commentārium*, commentary.

145. HETEROGENEOUS HETEROCLITES.—Some heteroclites are also heterogeneous: *cōnātus* (ūs), *cōnātum* (ī), effort; *menda* (ae), *mendum* (ī), fault.

CHAPTER II.

ADJECTIVES.

146. THE adjective is the part of speech which is used to qualify nouns: *bonus*, good; *māgnus*, great.

NOTE.—The form of the adjective in Latin depends in part upon the gender of the noun which it qualifies: *bonus puer*, a good boy; *bona puella*, a good girl; *bonum templum*, a good temple. Thus, in the Nom. Sing., *bonus* is the form of the adjective when used with masculine nouns, *bona* with feminine, and *bonum* with neuter.

147. Some adjectives are partly of the first declension and partly of the second, while all the rest are entirely of the third declension.

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS : A AND O STEMS.

148. Bonus, good.¹

	MASC.	SINGULAR. FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	bon us	bon a	bon um
Gen.	bon i	bon ae	bon i
Dat.	bon ō	bon ae	bon ō
Acc.	bon um	bon am	bon um
Voc.	bon e	bon a	bon um
Abl.	bon ō	bon ā	bon ō
		PLURAL.	
Nom.	bon i	bon ae	bon a
Gen.	bon ōrum	bon ārum	bon ōrum
Dat.	bon is	bon is	bon is
Acc.	bon ōs	bon ās	bon a
Voc.	bon i	bon ae	bon a
Abl.	bon is	bon is	bon is

149. Liber, free.²

	MASC.	SINGULAR. FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	liber	liber a	liber um
Gen.	liber i	liber ae	liber i
Dat.	liber ō	liber ae	liber ō
Acc.	liber um	liber am	liber um
Voc.	liber	liber a	liber um
Abl.	liber ō	liber ā	liber ō
		PLURAL.	
Nom.	liber i	liber ae	liber a
Gen.	liber ōrum	liber ārum	liber ōrum
Dat.	liber is	liber is	liber is
Acc.	liber ōs	liber ās	liber a
Voc.	liber i	liber ae	liber a
Abl.	liber is	liber is	liber is

¹ **BONUS** is declined in the Masc. like *servus* of Decl. II. (51), in the Fem. like *mēnsa* of Decl. I. (48), and in the Neut. like *templum* of Decl. II. (51). The stems are *bono* in the Masc. and Neut., and *bonā* in the Fem.

² **LIBER** is declined in the Masc. like *puer* (51), and in the Fem. and Neut. like *bonus*.

150. *Aeger, sick.*¹

SINGULAR.		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> aeger	aegra	aegrum
<i>Gen.</i> aegrī	aegrae	aegrī
<i>Dat.</i> aegrō	aegrae	aegrō
<i>Acc.</i> aegrum	aegram	aegrum
<i>Voc.</i> aeger	aegra	aegrum
<i>Abl.</i> aegrō	aegrā	aegrō
PLURAL.		
<i>Nom.</i> aegrī	aegrae	aegra
<i>Gen.</i> aegrōrum	aegrārum	aegrōrum
<i>Dat.</i> aegrīs	aegrīs	aegrīs
<i>Acc.</i> aegrōs	aegrās	aegra
<i>Voc.</i> aegrī	aegrae	aegra
<i>Abl.</i> aegrīs	aegrīs	aegrīs

NOTE.—Most adjectives in *er* are declined like *aeger*, but the following in *er* and *ur* are declined like *liber* :

1) *Asper*, rough ; *lacer*, torn ; *miser*, wretched ; *prōsper*, prosperous ; *tener*, tender ; but *asper* sometimes drops the *e*, and *dexter*, right, sometimes retains it : *dexter*, *dextera*, or *dextra*.

2) *Satur*, sated ; *satur*, *satura*, *saturum*.

3) Compounds in *fer* and *ger* : *mortifer*, deadly ; *āliger*, winged.

151. IRREGULARITIES. — Nine adjectives have in the singular *ius*² in the Genitive and *ī* in the Dative, and are declined as follows :

<i>Alius, another.</i>			<i>Sōlus, alone.</i>		
SINGULAR.					
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> alius ³	alia	aliud ³	sōlus	sōla	sōlum
<i>Gen.</i> alius	alius	alius ⁴	sōlius	sōlius	sōlius
<i>Dat.</i> alii	aliī	aliī	sōli	sōli	sōli
<i>Acc.</i> alium	aliam	aliud	sōlum	sōlam	sōlum
<i>Voc.</i>			sōle	sōla	sōlum
<i>Abl.</i> aliō	aliā	aliō	sōlō	sōlā	sōlō

¹ *Aeger* is declined in the masculine like *ager* (51), and in the feminine and neuter like *bonus*.

² *I* in *ius* is often shortened by the poets ; regularly so in *alterius* in dactylic verse (609).

³ Rarely *alis* and *alid*. The same stem appears in *ali-quis* (190, 2), some one ; *ali-ter*, otherwise.

⁴ For *alius* by contraction. *Alterius* often supplies the place of *alius*

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>alii</i>	<i>aliae</i>	<i>alia</i>	<i>sōli</i>	<i>sōlae</i>	<i>sōla</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>aliōrum</i>	<i>aliārum</i>	<i>aliōrum</i>	<i>sōlōrum</i>	<i>sōlārum</i>	<i>sōlōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>aliis</i>	<i>aliis</i>	<i>aliis</i>	<i>sōlis</i>	<i>sōlis</i>	<i>sōlis</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>aliōs</i>	<i>aliās</i>	<i>alia</i>	<i>sōlōs</i>	<i>sōlās</i>	<i>sōla</i>
<i>Voc.</i>				<i>sōli</i>	<i>sōlae</i>	<i>sōla</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>aliis</i>	<i>aliis</i>	<i>aliis</i>	<i>sōlis</i>	<i>sōlis</i>	<i>sōlis</i>

1. These nine adjectives are: *alius*, *a*, *ud*, another; *nūllus*, *a*, *um*, no one; *sōlus*, alone; *tōtus*, whole; *āllus*, any; *ūnus*,¹ one; *alter*, *-tera*, *-terum*,² the other³; *uter*, *-tra*, *-trum*,⁴ which (of two); *neuter*, *-tra*, *-trum*,⁴ neither.

NOTE 1.—The regular forms occasionally occur in the Gen. and Dat. of some of these adjectives.

NOTE 2.—Like *uter* are declined its compounds: *uterque*, *utervis*, *uterlibet*, *utercunque*. In *alteruter* sometimes both parts are declined, as *alterius utrius*; and sometimes only the latter, as *alterutrius*.

THIRD DECLENSION: CONSONANT AND I STEMS.

152. Adjectives of the third declension may be divided into three classes:

I. Those which have in the Nominative Singular three different forms—one for each gender.

II. Those which have two forms—the masculine and feminine being the same.

III. Those which have but one form—the same for all genders.

153. ADJECTIVES OF THREE ENDINGS in this declension have the stem in *i*, and are declined as follows:

	SINGULAR.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ācer</i> ⁶	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācre</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācre</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>ācer</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācre</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>

¹ See declension, 175.

² Gen. *alterius*, Dat. *alterī*; otherwise declined like *liber* (149).

³ Or one of two, the one.

⁴ Gen. *utrius*, Dat. *utrī*; otherwise like *aeger* (150). Neuter like *uter*.

⁵ *Ācer* is declined like *ignis* in the Masc. and Fem., and like *mare* (63) in the Neut., except in the Nom. and Voc. Sing., Masc., and in the Abl. Sing.

⁶ These forms in *er* are like those in *er* of Decl. II. in dropping the ending in the Nom. and Voc. Sing. and in developing final *r* into *er*: *ācer* for *ācris*, stem, *ācrī*.

	MASC.	PLURAL. FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Gen.</i>	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
<i>Dat.</i>	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrēs, is	ācrēs, is	ācria
<i>Voc.</i>	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Abl.</i>	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

NOTE 1.—Like *Ācer* are declined :

1) *Alacer*, lively ; *campester*, level ; *celeber*, famous ; *celer*,¹ swift ; *equester*, equestrian ; *palūster*, marshy ; *pedester*, pedestrian ; *puter*, putrid ; *salūber*, healthful ; *silvester*, woody ; *terrester*, terrestrial ; *volucer*, winged.

2) Adjectives in *er* designating the months : *Octōber*, *bris*.²

NOTE 2.—In the poets and in early Latin the form in *er*, as *ācer*, is sometimes feminine, and the form in *is*, as *ācris*, is sometimes masculine.

154. ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS are declined as follows :

Tristis, <i>sad</i> . ³		Tristior, <i>sadder</i> . ⁴	
		SINGULAR.	
M. AND F.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	tristis	tristior	tristius
<i>Gen.</i>	tristis	tristiōris	tristiōris
<i>Dat.</i>	tristī	tristiōrī	tristiōrī
<i>Acc.</i>	tristem	tristiōrem	tristius
<i>Voc.</i>	tristis	tristior	tristius
<i>Abl.</i>	tristī	tristiōre (1) ⁵	tristiōre (1)
		PLURAL.	
<i>Nom.</i>	tristēs	tristiā	tristiōra
<i>Gen.</i>	tristium	tristiorum	tristiōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	tristibus	tristiōribus	tristiōribus
<i>Acc.</i>	tristēs, is	tristiōrēs (Is)	tristiōra
<i>Voc.</i>	tristēs	tristiōrēs	tristiōra
<i>Abl.</i>	tristibus	tristiōribus	tristiōribus

NOTE 1.—Like *tristior*, comparatives, as consonant stems, generally have the Abl. Sing. in *e*, sometimes in *ī*, the Nom. Plur. Neut. in *a*, and the Gen. Plur. in *um*. But *complūris*, several, has Gen. Plur. *complūrium* ; Nom., Acc., and Voc. Plur. Neut. *complūra* or *complūria* ; see *Plūs*, 165.

NOTE 2.—In poetry, adjectives in *is*, *e*, sometimes have the Abl. Sing. in *e* : *cōgnōmine* from *cōgnōminis*, of the same name.

¹ This retains *e* in declension : *celer*, *celeris*, *celere* ; and has *um* in the Gen. Plur.

² See also 77, 2, note.

³ *Tristis* and *triste* are declined like *ācris* and *ācre* ; the stem is *trīsti*.

⁴ *Tristior* is the comparative (160) of *tristis* ; the stem was originally *trīstiōs*, but it has been modified to *trīstius* (61, 1) and *trīstiōr* (31).

⁵ Enclosed endings are rare.

155. ADJECTIVES OF ONE ENDING generally end in *s* or *x*, but sometimes in *l* or *r*.

156. Audāx, *audacious*.¹

Fēlix, *happy*.¹

SINGULAR.

	M. AND F.	NEUT.		M. AND F.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	audāx	audāx		fēlix	fēlix
<i>Gen.</i>	audācīs	audācīs		fēlicīs	fēlicīs
<i>Dat.</i>	audācī	audācī		fēlicī	fēlicī
<i>Acc.</i>	audācem	audāx		fēlicem	fēlix
<i>Voc.</i>	audāx	audāx		fēlix	fēlix
<i>Abl.</i>	audācī (e)	audācī (e)		fēlicī (e)	fēlicī (e)

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	audācēs	audācia		fēlicēs	fēlicia
<i>Gen.</i>	audācium	audācium		fēlicium	fēlicium
<i>Dat.</i>	audācibus	audācibus		fēlicibus	fēlicibus
<i>Acc.</i>	audācēs (is)	audācia		fēlicēs (is)	fēlicia
<i>Voc.</i>	audācēs	audācia		fēlicēs	fēlicia
<i>Abl.</i>	audācibus	audācibus		fēlicibus	fēlicibus

157. Amāns, *loving*.

Prūdēns, *prudent*.

SINGULAR.

	M. AND F.	NEUT.		M. AND F.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	amāns	amāns		prūdēns	prūdēns
<i>Gen.</i>	amantis	amantis		prudentis	prudentis ²
<i>Dat.</i>	amantī	amantī		prudentī	prudentī
<i>Acc.</i>	amantem	amāns		prudentem	prūdēns
<i>Voc.</i>	amāns	amāns		prūdēns	prūdēns
<i>Abl.</i>	amante (ī)	amante (ī)		prudentī (e)	prudentī (e)

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	amantēs	amantia		prudentēs	prudentia
<i>Gen.</i>	amantium	amantium		prudentium	prudentium
<i>Dat.</i>	amantibus	amantibus		prudentibus	prudentibus
<i>Acc.</i>	amantēs (is)	amantia		prudentēs (is)	prudentia
<i>Voc.</i>	amantēs	amantia		prudentēs	prudentia
<i>Abl.</i>	amantibus	amantibus		prudentibus	prudentibus

NOTE.—The participle *amāns* differs in declension from the adjective *prūdēns* only in the Abl. Sing., where the participle usually has the ending *e*, and the adjective, *ī*.

¹ Observe that *ī* in the Abl. Sing., and *ia*, *tum*, and *is* in the Plur., are the regular case-endings for *i*-stems; see 62 and 63.

² According to Ritschl, Schmitz, and others, the *e* which is long in *prūdēns* before *ns* is short in all other forms of the word, i. e., before *nt*. In the same manner the *a* which is long in *amāns*, is according to Ritschl short in *amantis*, *amantī*, etc.; see p. 87, footnote 2. See also Schmitz, pp. 8–26; Ritschl, Rhein. Museum, xxxi., p. 489; Müller, p. 27.

Participles used adjectively may of course take *i*. A few adjectives have only *e* in general use:—(1) *pauper*, *paupere*, poor; *pūbes*, *pūbere*, mature;—(2) those in *es*, *G. itis* or *idis*: *āles*, *dēses*, *dīnes*, *sōspes*, *superstes*; (3) *caelebs*, *compos*, *impos*, *princeps*.

158. *Vetus*, *old*.*Memor*, *mindful*.

SINGULAR.			
	M. AND F.	NEUT.	
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>vetus</i>	<i>vetus</i>	
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>veteris</i>	<i>veteris</i>	
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>veteri</i>	<i>veteri</i>	
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>veterem</i>	<i>vetus</i>	
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>vetus</i>	<i>vetus</i>	
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>vetere (i)</i>	<i>vetere (i)</i>	
PLURAL.			
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>veterēs</i>	<i>vetera</i>	
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>veterum</i>	<i>veterum</i>	
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>veteribus</i>	<i>veteribus</i>	
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>veterēs (is)</i>	<i>vetera</i>	
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>veterēs</i>	<i>vetera</i>	
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>veteribus</i>	<i>veteribus</i>	

1. NEUTER PLURAL.—Many adjectives like *memor*, from the nature of their signification, want the Neuter Plural; all others have the ending *ia*, as *felicia*, *prudentia*, except *uber*, *übera*, fertile, and *vetus*, *vetera*.

2. GENITIVE PLURAL.—Most adjectives have *ium*, but the following have *um*:

1) Adjectives of one ending with only *e* in the Ablative Singular (157, note): *pauper*, *pauperum*.

2) Those with the Genitive in *eris*, *oris*, *uris*: *vetus*, *veterum*, old; *memor*, *memorum*, mindful; *cicur*, *cicurum*, tame.

3) Those in *ceps*: *anceps*, *incipitum*, doubtful.

4) Those compounded with substantives which have *um*: *inops* (ops, opum), *inopum*, helpless.

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

159. Irregular adjectives may be—

I. INDECLINABLE: *frūgi*, frugal, good; *nēquam*, worthless; *mīlle*, thousand; see 176.

II. DEFECTIVE: (cēterus) *cētera*, *cēterum*, the other, the rest; (lūdicer) *lūdica*, *lūdicum*, sportive; (sōns) *sontis*, guilty; (sēminex) *sēminecis*, half dead; *paucī*, *ae*, *a*, few, used only in the Plural; see also 158, 1.

III. HETEROCLITES.—Many adjectives have two distinct forms, one in *us*, *a*, *um*, of the first and second declensions, and one in *is* and *e* of the third: *hilarus* and *hilaris*, joyful; *exanimus* and *exanimis*, lifeless.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

160. Adjectives have three forms, called the Positive degree, the Comparative, and the Superlative: *altus, altior, altissimus*, high, higher, highest. These forms denote different degrees of the quality expressed by the adjective.

161. The Latin, like the English, has two modes of comparison:

I. TERMINATIONAL COMPARISON—by endings.

II. ADVERBIAL COMPARISON—by adverbs.

I. TERMINATIONAL COMPARISON.

162. Adjectives are regularly compared by adding to the stem of the positive the endings:

COMPARATIVE.			SUPERLATIVE.		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
ior	ior	ius	issimus	issima	issimum ¹

altus, altior, altissimus, high, higher, highest,
levis, levior, levissimus, light, lighter, lightest.

NOTE.—VOWEL STEMS lose their final vowel: *alto, altior, altissimus*.

163. IRREGULAR SUPERLATIVES.—Many adjectives with regular comparatives have irregular superlatives. Thus:

1. Those in **er** add **rimus** to this ending:¹ *acer, acrior, acerrimus*, sharp.

NOTE.—*Vetus* has *veterrimus*; *māturus*, both *māturrimus* and *māturissimus*; *dexter, dextimus*.

2. Six in **ilis** add **limus** to the stem:¹

<i>facilis,</i>	<i>difficilis,</i>	<i>easy,</i>	<i>difficult,</i>
<i>similis,</i>	<i>dissimilis,</i>	<i>like,</i>	<i>unlike,</i>
<i>gracilis,</i>	<i>humilis,</i>	<i>slender,</i>	<i>low:</i>

facilis, faciliior, facillimus. Imbecillis has *imbēcillimus*.

3. Four in **rus** have two irregular superlatives:

<i>exterus,</i>	<i>exterior,</i>	<i>extrēmus and extimus,</i>	<i>outward,</i>
<i>inferus,</i>	<i>inferior,</i>	<i>infimus and imus,</i>	<i>lower,</i>
<i>superus,</i>	<i>superior,</i>	<i>suprēmus and summus,</i>	<i>upper,</i>
<i>posterus,</i>	<i>posterior,</i>	<i>postrēmus and postumus,</i>	<i>next.</i>

¹ The superlative ending *is-simus* is probably compounded of *is*, from *iōs*, the original comparative ending (154, foot-note 4), and *simus* for *timus*: *iōs-timus* = *iōs-simus* = *is-simus*. After *l* and *r*, the first element is omitted, and *s* assimilated: *facilis, facillimus, facil-limus*; *acer, acer-simus, acer-rimus*; but those in *ilis* drop the final vowel of the stem. See Bopp, §§ 291-307; Schleicher, pp. 488-494; Roby, p. lxxi.

164. *Egēnus*, *prōvidus*, and compounds in *dicus*, *ficus*, and *volus*, are compared with the endings *entior* and *entissimus*, as if from forms in *ēns*:

egēnus,	egentior,	egentissimus,	needy,
prōvidus,	prōvidentior,	prōvidentissimus,	prudent,
maledicus,	maledicentior,	maledicentissimus,	slanderous,
mūnificus,	mūnificentior,	mūnificentissimus,	liberal,
benevolus,	benevolentior,	benevolentissimus,	benevolent.

NOTE.—*Mirificissimus* occurs as the superlative of *mirificus*, wonderful.

165. SPECIAL IRREGULARITIES OF COMPARISON.

bonus,	melior,	optimus,	good,
malus,	pējor,	pessimus,	bad,
māgnus,	mājor,	māximus,	great,
parvus,	minor,	minimus,	small,
multus,	plūs,	plūrimus,	much.

NOTE 1.—*Plūs* is neuter, and has in the singular only Nom. and Acc. *plūs*, and Gen. *plūris*. In the plural it has Nom. and Acc. *plūrēs* (m. and f.), *plūra* (n.), Gen. *plūrum*, Dat. and Abl. *plūribus*.

NOTE 2.—*Dives*, *frūgī*, and *nēquam* are thus compared :

dīves,	{ dīvitior,	dīvitissimus,	{ rich,
	{ dītior,	dītissimus,	
frūgī,	frūgālīor,	frūgālīssimus,	frugal,
nēquam,	nēquior,	nēquīssimus,	worthless.

166. POSITIVE WANTING.

cērior,	cītīmus,	nearer,	prior,	primus,	former,
dērior,	dētērrīmus,	worse,	propior,	prōxīmus,	nearer,
īrior,	īntīmus,	inner,	ūterior,	ūltīmus,	farther.
ōcior,	ōcīssīmus,	swifter,			

167. COMPARATIVE WANTING.

1. In a few participles used adjectively : *merītus*, *merītīssīmus*, deserving.
2. In these adjectives :

diversus,	diversīssīmus,	different,	novus,	novīssīmus,	new,
falsus,	falsīssīmus,	false,	sacer,	sacerīssīmus,	sacred,
inclutus,	inclutīssīmus,	renowned,	vetus,	veterrīmus,	old.
invītus,	invītīssīmus,	unwilling,			

NOTE.—Many participles used adjectively are compared in full : *amāns*, *amantior*, *amantīssīmus*, loving ; *doctus*, *doctior*, *doctīssīmus*, instructed, learned.

168. SUPERLATIVE WANTING.

1. In most verbals in *īlis* and *bilis* : *docilis*, *docilior*, *docile*.
2. In many adjectives in *ālis* and *īlis* : *capitālis*, *capitālīor*, capital.
3. In *alacer*, *alacrior*, active ; *caecus*, blind ; *diūturnus*, lasting ; *longīnquus*, distant ; *opīmus*, rich ; *prōclīvis*, steep ; *propīnquus*, near ; *salūtāris*, salutary, and a few others.
4. Three adjectives supply the superlative *thū* .

adolēscēns,	adolēscēntior,	minimus nātū, ¹	young,
juvenis,	jūnior,	minimus nātū,	young,
senex,	senior,	māximus nātū,	old.

169. WITHOUT TERMINATIONAL COMPARISON.

1. Many adjectives, from the nature of their signification, especially such as denote *material*, *possession*, or the relations of *place* and *time*: *aureus*, golden; *paternus*, paternal; *Rōmānus*, Roman; *aestivus*, of summer.

2. Most adjectives in *us* preceded by a vowel: *idōneus*, suitable.

3. Many derivatives in *ālis*, *āris*, *ilis*, *ulus*, *icus*, *inus*, *orus*: *mortālis* (mors), mortal.

4. *Albus*, white; *claudus*, lame; *ferus*, wild; *lassus*, weary; *mirus*, wonderful, and a few others.

II. ADVERBIAL COMPARISON.

170. Adjectives which want the terminational comparison, form the comparative and superlative, when their signification requires it, by prefixing the adverbs *magis*, more, and *māxime*, most, to the positive: *arduus*, *magis arduus*, *māxime arduus*, arduous.

1. Other adverbs are sometimes used with the positive to denote different degrees of the quality: *admodum*, *valde*, *oppidō*, very; *imprimis*, *apprimē*, in the highest degree. *Per* and *prae* in composition with adjectives have the force of *very*: *perdifficilis*, very difficult; *praeclārus*, very illustrious.

2. Strengthening particles are also sometimes used—(1) With the comparative: *etiam*, even, *multō*, *longē*, much, far: *etiam diligentior*, even more diligent; *multō diligentior*, much more diligent—(2) With the superlative: *multō*, *longē*, much, by far; *quam*, as possible: *multō* or *longē diligentissimus*, by far the most diligent; *quam diligentissimus*, as diligent as possible.

NUMERALS.

171. Numerals comprise numeral adjectives and numeral adverbs.²

172. Numeral adjectives comprise three principal classes:

1. CARDINAL NUMBERS: *ūnus*, one; *duo*, two.

2. ORDINAL NUMBERS: *prīmus*, first; *secundus*, second.

3. DISTRIBUTIVES: *singulī*, one by one; *binī*, two by two, two each, two apiece.

173. To these may be added—

¹ Smallest or youngest in age. *Nātū* is sometimes omitted.

² The first ten cardinal numbers, *mille*, *prīmus*, *secundus*, and *semel* (once), fourteen words in all, furnish the basis of the Latin numeral system. All other numerals are formed from these either by derivation or by composition.

1. MULTIPLICATIVES, adjectives in *plex*, Gen. *plicis*, denoting so many fold: *simplex*, single; *dùplex*, double; *triplex*, threefold.

2. PROPORTIONALS, declined like *bonus*, and denoting so many times as great: *duplus*, twice as great; *triplus*, three times as great.

174. TABLE OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES:

CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES
1. ūnus, ūna, ūnum	primus, <i>first</i>	singulī, <i>one by one</i>
2. duo, duae, duo	secundus, ⁴ <i>second</i>	bīnī, <i>two by two</i>
3. trēs, tria	tertius, <i>third</i>	ternī (trīnī)
4. quattuor	quārtus, <i>fourth</i>	quaternī
5. quinque	quīntus, <i>fifth</i>	quīnī
6. sex	sextus	sēnī
7. septem	septimus	septēnī
8. octo	octāvus	octōnī
9. novem	nōnus	novēnī
10. decem	decimus	dēnī
11. ūndecim	ūndecimus	ūndēnī
12. duodecim	duodecimus	duodēnī
13. tredecim ¹	tertius decimus ⁵	ternī dēnī
14. quattuordecim	quārtus decimus	quaternī dēnī
15. quindecim	quīntus decimus	quīnī dēnī
16. sēdecim or sexdecim ¹	sextus decimus	sēnī dēnī
17. septendecim ¹	septimus decimus	septēnī dēnī
18. duodēvigintī ²	duodēvicēsīmus ⁶	duodēvicēnī
19. ūndēvigintī ²	ūndēvicēsīmus ⁶	ūndēvicēnī
20. vigintī	vicēsīmus ⁷	vicēnī
21. { vigintī ūnus ūnus et vigintī ³	vicēsīmus primus ūnus et vicēsīmus ³	vicēnī singulī singulī et vicēnī
22. { vigintī duo duo et vigintī	vicēsīmus secundus alter et vicēsīmus	vicēnī bīnī bīnī et vicēnī
30. trīgintā	trīcēsīmus ⁷	trīcēnī
40. quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsīmus	quadrāgēnī
50. quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsīmus	quīnquāgēnī
60. sexāgintā	sexāgēsīmus	sexāgēnī
70. septuāgintā	septuāgēsīmus	septuāgēnī
80. octōgintā	octōgēsīmus	octōgēnī

¹ Sometimes with the parts separated: *decem et trēs*; *decem et sex*, etc.

² Literally two from twenty, one from twenty, by subtraction; but these numbers may be expressed by addition: *decem et octo*; *decem et novem* or *decem novem*; so 28, 29; 38, 39, etc., either by subtraction from *trīgintā*, etc., or by addition to *vigintī*.

³ If the tens precede the units, *et* is omitted, otherwise it is generally used. So in English cardinals, twenty-one, one and twenty.

⁴ *Alter* is often used for *secundus*.

⁵ *Decimus*, with or without *et*, may precede: *decimus et tertius* or *decimus tertius*.

⁶ Sometimes expressed by addition: *octāvus decimus* and *nōnus decimus*.

⁷ Sometimes written with *g*: *vigēsīmus*; *trīgēsīmus*.

CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.
90. nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsīmus	nōnāgēnī
100. centum	centēsīmus	centēnī
101. {centum ūnus centum et ūnus ¹	centēsīmus primus centēsīmus et primus	centēnī singulī centēnī et singulī
200. ducentī, ae, a	ducentēsīmus	ducentī
300. trecentī	trecentēsīmus	trecenī
400. quadringentī	quadringentēsīmus	quadringēnī
500. quingentī	quingentēsīmus	quingēnī
600. sēscentī ²	sēscentēsīmus ²	sēscentī ²
700. septingentī	septingentēsīmus	septingēnī
800. octingentī	octingentēsīmus	octingēnī
900. nōngentī	nōngentēsīmus	nōngēnī
1,000. mille	millēsīmus	singula milia ³
2,000. duo milia ³	bis millēsīmus	bīna milia
100,000. centum milia	centiēs millēsīmus	centēna milia
1,000,000. deciēs centēna milia ⁴	deciēs centiēs millēsīmus	deciēs centēna milia

1. ORDINALS with *pars*, part, expressed or understood, may be used to express fractions: *tertia pars*, a third part, a third; *quarta pars*, a fourth; *duae tertiae*, two thirds.

NOTE.—Cardinal numbers with *partēs* are used in fractions when the denominator larger than the numerator by one: *duae partēs*, two thirds, *trēs partēs*, three fourths, etc.

2. DISTRIBUTIVES are used—

1) To show the *number* of objects taken at a time, often best rendered by adding to the cardinal *each* or *apiece*: *ternos denārios accēperunt*, they received *each* three denarii, or three apiece. Hence—

2) To express *Multiplication*: *deciēs centēna milia*, ten times a hundred thousand, a million.

3) Instead of *Cardinals*, with nouns plural in form, but singular in sense: *bina castra*, two camps. Here for *singulī* and *ternī*, *ūnī* and *trinī* are used: *ūnae litterae*, one letter; *trinae litterae*, three letters.

4) Sometimes of objects spoken of in pairs: *bīnī scyphī*, a pair of goblets; and in the poets with the force of cardinals: *bina hastilia*, two spears.

8. Poets use numeral adverbs (181) very freely in compounding numbers: *bis sex*, for *duodecim*; *bis septem*, for *quattuordecim*.

4. *Sēscentī* and *mille* are sometimes used indefinitely for any large number, as *one thousand* is used in English.

¹ In compounding numbers above 100, units generally follow tens, tens hundreds, etc., as in English; but the connective *et* is either omitted, or used only between the two highest denominations: *mille centum vigintī* or *mille et centum vigintī*, 1120.

² Often incorrectly written *sarcentī*, *sarcentēsīmus*, and *sarcentī*.

³ Often written *millia*. For *duo milia*, *bīna milia* or *bis mille* is sometimes used.

⁴ Literally "ten times a hundred thousand"; the table might be carried up to any desired number by using the proper numeral adverb with *centēna milia*: *centiēs centēna milia*, 10,000,000; sometimes in such combinations *centēna milia* is understood, and the adverb only is expressed, and sometimes *centum milia* is used.

DECLENSION OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

175. *Ūnus, Duo, and Trēs* are declined as follows :

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.			
Ūnus, one.						
Nom.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	ūnī	ūnae	ūna
Gen.	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnōrum	ūnārum	ūnōrum
Dat.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	ūnīs	ūnīs	ūnīs
Acc.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	ūnōs	ūnās	ūna
Voc.	ūne	ūna	ūnum	ūnī	ūnae	ūna
Abl.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	ūnīs	ūnīs	ūnīs

Duo, two.			Trēs, three.	
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>duae</i>	<i>duo</i> ¹	<i>trēs, m. and f.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>duōrum</i>	<i>duārum</i>	<i>duōrum</i> ²	<i>trīum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>duābus</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>tribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>duōs, duo</i>	<i>duās</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>trēs, trīs</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>duae</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>trēs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>duābus</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>tribus</i>

NOTE 1.—The plural of *ŭnus* in the sense of *alone* may be used with any noun : *ŭnī Ubī*, the Ubii alone ; but in the sense of *one*, it is used only with nouns plural in form, but singular in sense : *ŭna castra*, one camp ; *ŭnae litterae*, one letter.

NOTE 2.—Like *duo* is declined *ambo*, both.

NOTE 3.—*Multi*, many, and *plūrimī*, very many, are indefinite numerals, and as such generally want the singular. But in the poets the singular occurs in the sense of *many a* : *multa hostia*, many a victim.

176. The Cardinals from *quattuor* to *centum* are indeclinable.

177. Hundreds are declined like the plural of *bonus* : *ducentī, ae, a*.

178. *Mille* as an adjective is indeclinable ; as a substantive it is used in the singular in the Nominative and Accusative,³ but in the plural it is declined like the plural of *mare* (63) : *mīlia*,⁴ *mīlium*, *mīlibus*.

NOTE.—With the substantive *mille*, *mīlia*, the name of the objects enumerated is generally in the Genitive : *mille hominum*, a thousand men (of men) ; but if a declined numeral intervenes it takes the case of that numeral : *tria mīlia trecentī militēs*, three thousand three hundred soldiers.

179. Ordinals are declined like *bonus*, and distributives like the plural of *bonus*, but the latter often have *ŭm* instead of *ōrum* in the Genitive : *bīnām* for *bīnōrum*.

¹ In the ending *o* in *duo* and *ambo* (175, note 2), we have a remnant of the dual number which has otherwise disappeared from the Latin, though preserved in Greek and Sanskrit. Compare the Sanskrit *dva*, the Greek *δύο*, the Latin *duo*, and the English *two*.

² Instead of *duōrum* and *duūrum*, *duūm* is sometimes used.

³ Rarely in other cases in connection with *mīlium* or *mīlibus*.

⁴ Generally written with one *l* : *mīlia*, but sometimes with two : *millia*.

180. NUMERAL SYMBOLS:

ARABIC.	ROMAN.	ARABIC.	ROMAN.	ARABIC.	ROMAN.
1.	I.	12.	XII.	50.	L.
2.	II.	13.	XIII.	60.	LX.
3.	III.	14.	XIV.	70.	LXX.
4.	IV.	15.	XV.	80.	LXXX.
5.	V.	16.	XVI.	90.	XC.
6.	VI.	17.	XVII.	100.	C.
7.	VII.	18.	XVIII.	200.	CC.
8.	VIII.	19.	XIX.	500.	IO, or D.
9.	IX.	20.	XX.	600.	DC.
10.	X.	30.	XXX.	1,000.	CIO, or M. ¹
11.	XI.	40.	XL.	10,000.	CCIOO.

1. LATIN NUMERAL SYMBOLS are combinations of: I = 1; V = 5; X = 10; L = 50; C = 100; IO or D = 500; CIO or M = 1,000.²

2. IN THE COMBINATION OF THESE SYMBOLS, except IO, observe—

1) That the repetition of a symbol doubles the value: II = 2; XX = 20.

2) That any symbol standing before one of greater value, subtracts its own value, but that after one of greater value, it adds its own value: V = 5; IV = 5 - 1 = 4; VI = 5 + 1 = 6.

3. IN THE COMBINATION OF IO observe—

1) That each O (inverted C) after IO increases the value tenfold: IO = 500; IOO = 500 × 10 = 5,000; IOOO = 5,000 × 10 = 50,000.

2) That these numbers are doubled by placing C the same number of times before I as O stands after it: IO = 500; CIO = 500 × 2 = 1,000; IOO = 5,000; CCIOO = 5,000 × 2 = 10,000.

3) That smaller symbols standing after these add their value: IO = 500; IOC = 600; IOCC = 700.

NUMERAL ADVERBS.

181. To numerals belong also numeral adverbs:

1. semel, <i>once</i>	5. quinquies ³	9. novies
2. bis, <i>twice</i>	6. sexies	10. decies
3. ter, <i>three times</i>	7. septies	11. undecies
4. quater	8. octies	12. duodecies

¹ Thousands are sometimes denoted by a line over the symbol: $\overline{\text{II}}$ = 2,000; $\overline{\text{V}}$ = 5,000.

² The origin of these symbols is uncertain. According to Mommsen, I is the outstretched finger; V, the open hand; X, the two hands crossed; L, the open hand like V, but in a different position; CIO is supposed to be a modification of the Greek Φ, not otherwise used by the Romans, afterward changed to M; IO, afterward changed to D, is a part of CIO; C is also supposed to be a modification of the Greek Θ, but it may be the initial letter of *centum*, as M may be that of *mille*.

³ In adverbs formed from cardinal numbers, *i s* is the approved ending, though *iēns* often occurs. In adverbs from indefinite numeral adjectives *iēns* is the approved ending *totiens* (from *tot*), so often; *quotiens* (from *quot*), how often. See Brambach, p. 14.

13. { <i>tredecīēs</i> <i>tredecīēs</i>	20. <i>vicīēs</i>	200. <i>ducentīēs</i>
14. { <i>quaterdecīēs</i> <i>quattuordecīēs</i>	21. <i>semel et vicīēs</i>	300. <i>trecentīēs</i>
15. { <i>quīnquīdecīēs</i> <i>quīndecīēs</i>	22. <i>bis et vicīēs</i>	400. <i>quadrīngentīēs</i>
16. { <i>sexīēsdecīēs</i> <i>sēdecīēs</i>	30. <i>trīcīēs</i>	500. <i>quīngentīēs</i>
17. <i>septīēsdecīēs</i>	40. <i>quadrāgīēs</i>	600. <i>sēscēntīēs</i>
18. { <i>duodēvicīēs</i> <i>octīēsdecīēs</i>	50. <i>quīnquāgīēs</i>	700. <i>septīngentīēs</i>
19. { <i>ūndēvicīēs</i> <i>novīēsdecīēs</i>	60. <i>sexāgīēs</i>	800. <i>octīngentīēs</i>
	70. <i>septuāgīēs</i>	900. { <i>nōningentīēs</i> <i>nōngentīēs</i>
	80. <i>octōgīēs</i>	1,000. <i>millīēs</i> ¹
	90. <i>nōnāgīēs</i>	2,000. <i>bis millīēs</i>
	100. <i>centīēs</i>	100,000. <i>centīēs millīēs</i>
	101. <i>centīēs semel</i>	1,000,000. <i>millīēs millīēs</i>
	102. <i>centīēs bis</i>	

NOTE 1.—In compounds of units and tens, the unit with *et* generally precedes, as in the table: *bis et vicīēs*; the tens, however, with or without *et*, may precede.

NOTE 2.—Another class of numeral adverbs in *um* or *ō* is formed from the ordinals: *prīmum*, *prīmō*, for the first time, in the first place; *tertium*, *tertiō*, for the third time

CHAPTER III

PRONOUNS.

182. IN construction, Pronouns² are used either as Substantives: *ego*, I, *tū*, thou; or as Adjectives: *meus*, my, *tuus*, your.

183. Pronouns are divided into six classes:

1. Personal Pronouns: *tū*, thou.
2. Possessive Pronouns: *meus*, my.
3. Demonstrative Pronouns: *hīc*, this.
4. Relative Pronouns: *quī*, who.
5. Interrogative Pronouns: *quīs*, who?
6. Indefinite Pronouns: *aliquis*, some one.

I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

184. Personal Pronouns,³ so called because they designate the person of the noun which they represent, are:

¹ *Millīēs* is often used indefinitely like the English *a thousand times*.

² But in their signification and use, Pronouns differ widely from ordinary substantives and adjectives, as they never *name* any object, action, or quality, but simply *point out* its relation to the speaker, or to some other person or thing; see 314, II., with foot-note

³ Also called *Substantive Pronouns*, because they are always used *substantively*.

Ego, I.	Tū, thou.	Sui, of himself, etc. ¹
SINGULAR.		
Nom. ego ²	tū	
Gen. mei	tui	sui ¹
Dat. mihi or mi	tibi	sibi
Acc. mē	tē	sē
Voc.	tū	
Abl. mē	tē	sē
PLURAL.		
Nom. nōs	vōs	
Gen. {nostrum nostrī	{vestrum ³ vestrī	{sui
Dat. nōbīs	vōbīs	sibī
Acc. nōs	vōs	sē
Voc.	vōs	
Abl. nōbīs	vōbīs	sē

1. The CASE-ENDINGS of Pronouns differ considerably from those of Nouns.
2. Sui, of himself, etc., is often called the *Reflexive* pronoun.
3. EMPHATIC FORMS in *met* occur, except in the Gen. Plur.: *egomet*, I myself; *tēmet*, etc. But the Nom. *tū* has *tūte* and *tūtemet*, not *tūmet*.
4. REDUPLICATED FORMS.—*Sesē, tētē, mēmē*, for *sē, tē, mē*.
5. ANCIENT AND RARE FORMS.—*Mis* for *mei*; *tis* for *tui*; *mēd* and *mēptō* for *mē*; *tēd* for *tē*; *sēd, sēpse*, for *sē*.
6. CUM, when used with the *ablative* of a Personal Pronoun, is appended to it: *mēcum, tēcum*.

II. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

185. From *Personal* pronouns are formed the *Possessives*:

meus, a, um, <i>my</i> ;	noster, tra, trum, <i>our</i> ;
tuus, a, um, <i>thy, your</i> ;	vester, tra, trum, <i>your</i> ;
suus, a, um, <i>his, hers, its</i> ;	suus, a, um, <i>their</i> .

¹ *Of himself, herself, itself.* The Nominative is not used.

² *Ego* has no connection in form with *mei, mihi*, etc., but it corresponds to the Greek *ἐγών, ἐγώ*. The oblique cases of *ego* and *tū* in the singular are derived from the Indo-European roots *ma* and *tva*. Compare the Accusative Singular of each in—

SANSKRIT.	GREEK.	LATIN.	ENGLISH.
mā-m or mā,	μή,	mē,	me.
tvā-m or tvā,	τί or τέ,	tē,	thee.

Sui, sibi, sē, in both numbers are formed from the root *sua*. The origin of the plural forms of *ego* and *tū* is obscure. See Papillon, pp. 142-149; Kühner, I., pp. 378-382.

³ *Vestrum* and *vestrī* are also written *rostrum* and *vostrī*, though less correctly. *Mei, tui, sui, nostrī*, and *vestrī*, are in form strictly Possessives in the Gen. Sing., but by use they have become Personal. *Nostrī* and *vestrī* have also become Plural. Thus, *memor vestrī*, 'mindful of you,' means literally *mindful of yours*, i. e., of your welfare, interest. *Nostrum* and *vestrum*, for *nostrorum* and *vestrorum*, are also Possessives; see 185.

NOTE 1.—Possessives are declined as adjectives of the first and second declensions; but *meus* has in the Vocative Singular Masculine generally *mī*, sometimes *meus*, and in the Genitive Plural sometimes *meum* instead of *meōrum*.¹

NOTE 2.—Emphatic forms in *pte* and *met* occur: *suapte*, *suamet*.

NOTE 3.—Other possessives are: (1) *cūjus*, *a*, *um*,² 'whose,' and *cūjus*, *a*, *um*,² 'whose?' declined like *bonus*, and (2) the Patrials, *nostrūs*, Genitive *ātis*, 'of our country,' *vestrūs*, Genitive *ātis*, 'of your country,' and *cūjās*, Genitive *ātis*, 'of whose country,' declined as adjectives of Declension III.

III. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

186. Demonstrative Pronouns, so called because they specify the objects to which they refer, are declined as follows:

I. *Hic*, *this*.⁴

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> hīc	haec	hōc	hī	hae ¹	haec
<i>Gen.</i> hūjus	hūjus	hūjus ⁵	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
<i>Dat.</i> huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
<i>Acc.</i> hunc	hanc	hōc ⁶	hōs	hās	haec
<i>Abl.</i> hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

II. *Iste*, *that*, *that of yours*; ⁶ see 450.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
<i>Gen.</i> istīus	istīus	istīus ⁵	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
<i>Dat.</i> istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
<i>Acc.</i> istum	istam	istud ⁶	istōs	istās	ista
<i>Abl.</i> istō	istā	istō	istīs	istīs	istīs

¹ In early Latin *tuus* is sometimes written *toros*, and *suus*, *sovos*.

² From the relative *quī*, *cūjus* (187), also written *quōius*.

³ From the interrogative *quis*, *cūjus* (188), also written *quōius*.

⁴ The stem of *hīc* is *ho*, *ha*, which by the addition of *i*, another pronominal stem, seen in *i-s*, 'he,' becomes in certain cases *hī* (for *ho-i*), *hae* (for *ha-i*), as in *hī-c*, *hae-c*. The forms *ho*, *ha*, appear in *hō-c*, *ha-nc*. Ancient and rare forms of this pronoun are *hēc* (for *hīc*), *hōius* (for *hūjus*), *hoic*, *hoice* (for *huic*), *honc* (for *hunc*), *heis*, *heisce*, *hīs*, *hiace* (for *hīce*, *hī*), *hībus* (for *hīs*).

⁵ The Genitive suffix is *us*, appended to the stem after the addition of *i* (foot-note 4): *ho-i-us*, *hūjus* (*i* changed to *j* between two vowels, 28), *isto-i-us*, *istīus* (*i* retained after a consonant). The suffix *us*, originally *as*, is in origin the same as the suffix *is* in the third declension. In one the original vowel *a* is weakened to *u*, and in the other to *i*. See Wordsworth, p. 95; Corssen, I, p. 307.

In prose *i* in the ending *īus* is generally long.

⁶ Demonstrative, Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite Pronouns want the Vocative.

⁷ Here the form with *c*, *haec*, is sometimes used.

⁸ The stem of *iste* (for *istus*) is *isto* in the Masc. and Neut., and *ista* in the Fem. *o* is weakened to *e* in *iste* (24, 1, note) and to *u* in *istu-d*. Ancient and rare forms of *iste*

III. *Ille, that,*¹ *that one, he,* is declined like *iste*; see II. on the preceding page.

IV. *Is, he, this, that.*²

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	is	ea	id	eī, ī	eae	ea
<i>Gen.</i>	ejus	ejus	ejus	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	ei	ei	ei ³	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
<i>Acc.</i>	eum	eam	id ⁴	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	eā	eō	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

V. *Ipse, self, he.*⁵

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
<i>Gen.</i>	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
<i>Acc.</i>	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
<i>Abl.</i>	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

VI. *Īdem, the same.*⁶

are *istus* (for *iste*), forms in *i, ae, ī* (for *ius*) in the Genitive, and in *ō, ae, ō* (for *ī*) in the Dat.: *istī* (for *istius*), *istō* (for *istī*), *istae* (for *istius* or *istī*).

¹ The stem of *ille* (for *illus*) is *illo, illa*. Ancient and rare forms are (1) *illus* (for *ille*), forms in *i, ae, ī* (for *ius*) in the Genitive Singular, and in *ō, ae, ō* (for *ī*) in the Dative Singular: *illī* (for *illius*), etc.; (2) forms from *ollus* or *olle* (for those from *ille*): *ollus, olle, olla*, etc.

² The stem of *is* is *i*, strengthened in most of its case-forms to *eo, ea*. Ancient or rare forms of *is* are, *eis* (for *is*); *ē-i-eī, ei-eī, ī-eī, eae* (for Dative Singular *ei*); *im, em* (for *eum*); *e-eis, i-eis, eis* (for Nominative Plural *eī*); *ē-i-eis, ei-eis, e-eis, ībus, eābus* (for *eīs*). To these may be added a few rare forms from a root of kindred meaning, *so, sa*: *sum, sam=eum, eam*; *sōs, sās=eōs, eās*. This root appears in *ip-sus, ip-sa, ip-sum*. *Sī, if*, and *sī-c*, thus, are probably Locatives from this root or from *ova*, the root of *ovī* (184).

³ Sometimes a diphthong in poetry. In the same way the plural forms *eī, ī, eis, iīs*, are sometimes monosyllables. Instead of *iī* and *i's*, *ī* and *īs* are sometimes written.

⁴ See page 72, foot-note 6.

⁵ *Ipse* (for *ipsus = i-pe-sus*) is compounded of *is* or its stem *i*, the intensive particle *pe*, 'even,' 'indeed,' and the pronominal root *so, sa*, mentioned in foot-note 2 above. The stem is *ipso, ipsa*, but forms occur with the first part declined and *pse* unchanged: *eum-pse, eam-pse*, etc.; sometimes combined with *rē*: *reāpse = rē-eāpse = rē ipsā*, 'in reality.' *Ipsus* (for *ipse*) is not uncommon.

⁶ In *īdem*, compounded of *is* and *dem*, only the first part is declined. *Isdem* is shortened to *īdem, iddem* to *idem*, and *m* is changed to *n* before *dem* (33, 4). In early Latin *īdem* and *īdem* occur for *īdem, eidem* and *īdem* for *idem; eisdem* and *īdem* in the Nominative Plural for *eidem*.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> Idem	eadem	idem	{ eīdem ² īidem	eaedem	eadem
<i>Gen.</i> ējusdem	ējusdem	ējusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
<i>Dat.</i> ēīdem	ēīdem	ēīdem ¹	{ eīsdem īīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem ²
<i>Acc.</i> eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
<i>Abl.</i> eōdem	eādem	eōdem	{ eīsdem īīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem ²
				īīsdem	īīsdem

1. *Hīc* (for *hī-ce*) is compounded with the demonstrative particle *ce*, meaning *here*. The forms in *c* have dropped *e*, while the other forms have dropped the particle entirely. But *ce* is often retained for emphasis; *hīce*, *hūjusce*, *hōsce*, *hōrunce* (*m* changed to *n*), *hōrunc* (*e* dropped). *Ce*, changed to *ci*, is generally retained before the interrogative *ne*: *hīcine*, *hōscine*.

2. *ILLIC* AND *ISTIC*,³ also compounded with the particle *ce*, are declined alike, as follows:

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> illic	illaec	illūc (illōc)	illīc	illaecc	illaecc
<i>Gen.</i> illīusce	illīusce	illīusce ⁴			
<i>Dat.</i> illīc	illīc	illīc	illīsce	illīsce	illīsce
<i>Acc.</i> illūc	illāc	illūc (illōc)	illōsce	illāsce	illaecc
<i>Abl.</i> illōc	illāc	illōc	illīsce.	illīsce	illīsce

3. SYNCOPATED FORMS, compounded of *ecce* or *en*, 'lo,' 'see,' and some cases of demonstratives, especially the Accusative of *ille* and *is*, occur: *ecceum* for *ecce eum*; *ecceōs* for *ecce eōs*; *ellum* for *en illum*; *ellam* for *en illam*.

4. DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES: *tālis*, *e*, such; *tantus*, *a*, *um*, so great; *tot*, so many; *totus*, *a*, *um*, so great. *Tot* is indeclinable; the rest regular.

NOTE.—For *tālis*, the Genitive of a demonstrative with *modī* (Genitive of *modus*, measure, kind) is often used: *hujusmodī*, *ējusmodī*, of this kind, such.

IV. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

187. The Relative *quī*, 'who,' so called because it relates to some noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, called its antecedent, is declined as follows: ⁵

¹ Sometimes a dissyllable.

² *Eīdem* and *eīsdem* are the approved forms. Instead of *īīdem* and *īīsdem*, dissyllables in poetry, *īdem* and *īsdem* are often written.

³ *Illīc* and *istīc* are formed from the stems of *ille* and *iste* in the same manner as *hīc* is formed from its stem; see page 72, foot-note 4.

⁴ Observe that *ce* is retained in full after *s*, but shortened to *c* in all other situations.

⁵ The stem of *quī* is *quo*, *qua*, which becomes *co*, *cu* in *cūjus* and *cui*. *Quī* and

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	qui	quae	quod	qui	quae	quae
Gen.	cūjus	cūjus	cūjus	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem ¹	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

1. *Qui*² = *quō*, *quā*, 'with which,' 'wherewith,' is a *Locative* or *Ablative* of the relative *qui*.

2. *Cum*, when used with the *Ablative* of the relative, is generally appended to it: *quibuscum*.

3. *Quicumque* and *Quisquis*, 'whoever,' are called from their signification *general relatives*.³ *Quicumque* (*quicunque*) is declined like *qui*. *Quisquis* is rare except in the forms, *quisquis*, *quidquid* (*quicquid*), *quōquō*.

NOTE.—The parts of *Quicumque* are sometimes separated by one or more words: *quā rē cumque*.

4. **RELATIVE ADJECTIVES:** *quālis*, *e*, such as; *quantus*, *a*, *um*, so great; *quot*, as many as; *quotus*, *a*, *um*, of which number; and the double and compound forms: *quālisquālis*, *quālescumque*, etc.

NOTE.—For *Quālis* the Genitive of the relative with *modi* is often used: *cūjusmodi*, of what kind, such as; *cūjuscumquemodi*, *cuiusmodi* (for *cūjuscūjusmodi*), of whatever kind.

V. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

188. The Interrogative Pronouns *quis* and *qui*, with their compounds,⁴ are used in asking questions. They are declined as follows:

quae are formed from *quo* and *qua* like *hī* and *hae* in *hī-c* and *hae-c* from *ho* and *ha*; see 186, I., foot-note 4. Ancient or rare forms are *quei*, *quis* (for *qui*), Nom. Sing.; *quōius* (*i = j*); *quōi*, *cui* (for *cūjus*, as in *cūimodi* = *cūjusmodi*), *quōiei*, *quōi* (for *cui*); *quīs* (for *qui*), Nom. Plur.; *quai* (for *quae*), Fem. and Neut. Plur.; *queis*, *quīs* (for *quibus*).

¹ An Accusative *quom*, also written *quum* and *cum*, formed directly from the stem *quo*, became the conjunction *quom*, *quum*, *cum*, 'when,' lit. *during which*, i. e., during which time. Indeed, several conjunctions are in their origin Accusatives of pronouns: *quam*, 'in what way,' 'how,' is the Accusative of *qui*; *quamquam*, 'however much,' the Accusative of *quis-quis* (187, 3); *tum*, 'then,' and *tam*, 'so,' Accusatives of the pronominal stem *to*, *tu*, seen in *is-tus*, *is-te*, *is-ta* (186, II., foot-note 8).

² This is an element in *quīn* = *quī-ne*, 'by which not,' 'that not,' and in *quippe* = *quī-pe*, 'indeed.'

³ Relative pronouns, adjectives, and adverbs may be made *general* in signification by taking *cumque*, like *qui-cumque*, or by being doubled like *quis-quis*: *quālis-cumque*, *quālis-quālis*, of whatever kind; *ubi-cumque*, *ubi-ubi*, wheresoever.

⁴ The relative *qui*, the Interrogatives *quis*, *quī*, and the indefinites *quis*, *quī*, are all formed from the stem *quo*, *qua*. The ancient and rare forms are nearly the same in all; see page 74, foot-note 5.

I. Quis, who, which, what?

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> quis	quae	quid	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i> cūjus	cūjus	cūjus	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i> cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i> quem	quam	quid	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i> quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

II. Quī, which, what? is declined like the relative quī.

1. QUIS is generally used substantively, and QUī, adjectively. The forms *quis* and *quem* are sometimes feminine.

2. Quī, how? in what way? is a Locative or Ablative of the interrogative *quis*; see 187, 1.

3. COMPOUNDS of *quis* and *quī* are declined like the simple pronouns: *quisnam*, *quīnam*, *ecquīs*, etc. But *ecquīs* has sometimes *ecqua* for *ecquae*.

4. INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVES: *quālis*, *e*, what? *quantus*, *a*, *um*, how great? *quot*, how many? *quotus*, *a*, *um*, of what number? *uter*, *utra*, *utrum*, which (of two)? see 151.

VI. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

189. Indefinite Pronouns do not refer to any definite persons or things. The most important are *quis* and *quī*, with their compounds.

190. *Quis*, 'any one,' and *quī*, 'any one,' 'any,' are the same in form and declension as the interrogatives *quis* and *quī*. But—

1. After *sī*, *nisi*, *nē*, and *num*, the Fem. Sing. and Neut. Plur. have *quae* or *qua*: *sī quae*, *sī qua*.

2. From *quis* and *quī* are formed—

1) The Indefinites :

<i>aliquis</i> ,	<i>aliqua</i> ,	<i>aliquid</i> or <i>aliquod</i> , ¹	<i>some, some one.</i>
<i>quispiam</i> ,	<i>quaepiam</i> ,	<i>quidpiam</i> or <i>quodpiam</i> , ²	<i>some, some one.</i>
<i>quidam</i> ,	<i>quaedam</i> ,	<i>quiddam</i> or <i>quoddam</i> , ³	<i>certain, certain one.</i>
<i>quisquam</i> ,	<i>quaequam</i> ,	<i>quicquam</i> or <i>quidquam</i> , ⁴	<i>any one.</i>

¹ *Aliquis* is compounded of *ali*, seen in *ali-us*; *quisquam*, of *quis* and *quam*; *quisque*, of *quis* and *que* (from *quī*); *quīvis*, of *quī* and the verb *vīs* (293), 'you wish'—hence *quīvis*, 'any you wish'; *quīlibet*, of *quī* and the impersonal *libet*, 'it pleases.'

² Also written *quippiam*, *quoppiam*.

³ *Quidam* changes *m* to *n* before *d*: *quendam* for *quemdam*.

⁴ *Quisquam* generally wants the Fem. and the Plur.

2) *The General Indefinites :*

quisque,	quaeque,	quidque or quodque, ¹	every, every one.
quivis,	quaevis,	quidvis or quodvis,	any one you please.
quilibet,	quaelibet,	quidlibet or quodlibet,	any one you please.

NOTE 1.—These compounds are generally declined like *quis* and *quī*, but they have in the Neut. Sing. *quod* used *adjectively*, and *quid* *substantively*.

NOTE 2.—*Aliquis* has *aliqua* instead of *aliquae* in the Fem. Sing. and Neut. Plur. *Aliquī* for *aliquis* occurs.

191. The correspondence which exists between Demonstratives, Relatives, Interrogatives, and Indefinites, is seen in the following

TABLE OF CORRELATIVES.

INTERROGATIVE.	INDEFINITE.	DEMONSTRATIVE.	RELATIVE.
<i>quis, quī,</i> who? what? ²	<i>quis, quī</i> , ³ any one, any; <i>aliquis</i> , ³ some one, some; <i>quidam</i> , certain one, certain;	<i>hic</i> , this one, this; ⁴ <i>iste</i> , that one, that; <i>ille</i> , that one, that; <i>is</i> , he, that;	<i>quī</i> , ³ who.
<i>uter</i> , which of two?	<i>uter</i> or <i>alteruter</i> , ei- ther of two;	<i>uterque</i> , each, both; ⁵	<i>quī</i> , who.
<i>quālis</i> , of what kind?	<i>quālislibet</i> , ³ of any kind;	<i>tālis</i> , such;	<i>quālis</i> , ³ as.
<i>quantus</i> , how great?	<i>aliquantus</i> , some- what great; <i>quan- tusvis</i> , as great as you please;	<i>tantus</i> , so great;	<i>quantus</i> , ³ as, as great.
<i>quot</i> , how many?	<i>aliquot</i> , some;	<i>tot</i> , so many;	<i>quot</i> , as, as many.

NOTE.—*Nesciō quis*, 'I know not who,' has become in effect an indefinite pronoun = *quidam*, 'some one.' So also *nesciō quī*, 'I know not which' or 'what' = 'some'; *nesciō quot* = *aliquot*, 'some,' 'a certain number.'

¹ In *ūnus-quisque* both parts are regularly declined.

² Observe that the question *quis* or *quī*, who or what? may be answered *indefinitely* by *quis, quī, aliquis*, etc., or *definitely* by a demonstrative, either alone or with a relative, as by *hic*, this one, or *hic quī*, this one who; *is*, he, or *is quī*, he who, etc.

³ In form observe that the indefinite is either the same as the interrogative or is a compound of it: *quis, ali-quis, quī, quī-dam*, and that the relative is usually the same as the interrogative.

⁴ On *hic, iste, ille*, and *is*, see 450; 451, 1.

⁵ Or one of the demonstratives, *hic, iste*, etc.

CHAPTER IV.

VERBS.

192. VERBS in Latin, as in English, express existence, condition, or action: *est*, he is; *dormit*, he is sleeping; *legit*, he reads.

193. Verbs comprise two principal classes:

I. TRANSITIVE VERBS admit a direct object of the action: *servum verberat*, he beats the slave.¹

II. INTRANSITIVE VERBS do not admit such an object: *puer currit*, the boy runs.¹

194. Verbs have *Voice, Mood, Tense, Number, and Person*.

I. VOICES.

195. There are two voices:

I. The ACTIVE VOICE² represents the subject as ACTING or EXISTING: *pater filium amat*, the father loves his son; *est*, he is.

II. The PASSIVE VOICE represents the subject as ACTED UPON by some other person or thing: *filius à patre amātur*, the son is loved by his father.

1. INTRANSITIVE VERBS generally have only the active voice, but are sometimes used impersonally in the passive; see 301, 1.

2. DEPONENT VERBS³ are Passive in form, but not in sense: *loquor*, to speak. But see 231.

II. MOODS.

196. There are three moods:⁴

¹ Here *servum*, 'the slave,' is the object of the action: *beats* (what?) *the slave*. The object thus *completes* the meaning of the verb. *He beats* is incomplete in sense, but *the boy runs* is complete, and accordingly does not admit an object.

² *Voice* shows whether the subject *acts* (Active Voice), or is *acted upon* (Passive Voice). Thus, with the Active Voice, '*the father loves his son*,' the subject, *father*, is the one who *performs the action*, *loves*, while with the Passive Voice, '*the son is loved by the father*,' the subject, *son*, merely *receives the action*, *is acted upon*, *is loved*.

³ So called from *dēpōnō*, to lay aside, as they dispense, in general, with the active form and the passive meaning. For deponent verbs with the sense of the Greek Middle, see 465.

⁴ *Mood*, or *Mode*, means *manner*, and relates to the manner in which the meaning of the verb is expressed, as will be seen by observing the force of the several Moods.

I. The INDICATIVE MOOD either asserts something as a *fact* or inquires after the *fact*:

Legit, HE IS READING. *Legitne*, IS HE READING? *Servius rēgnāvit*, *Servius* REIGNED. *Quis ego sum*, who AM I?

II. The SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD expresses not an actual fact, but a *possibility* or *conception*. It is best translated ¹—

1. Sometimes by the English auxiliaries,² *let, may, might, should, would*:

Amemus patriam, LET US LOVE *our country*. *Sint beati*, MAY THEY BE *happy*. *Quaerat quispiam*, *some one* MAY INQUIRE. *Hoc nemo dixerit*, *no one* WOULD SAY *this*. *Ego censeam*, I SHOULD THINK, or I AM INCLINED TO THINK. *Ensitur ut vincat*, *he strives that* HE MAY CONQUER.³ *Domum ubi habitaret*, *lēgit*, *he selected a house where* HE MIGHT DWELL.

2. Sometimes by the English *Indicative*, especially by the Future forms with *shall* and *will*:

Huc cēdamus, SHALL WE YIELD *to this one*? *Quid dies ferat* *incertum est*, *what a day* WILL BRING FORTH *is uncertain*. *Dubitō num debeam*, I doubt *whether* I OUGHT. *Quaesivit si liceret*, *he inquired whether* IT WAS LAWFUL.

3. Sometimes by the *Imperative*, especially in prohibitions:

Scribere nē pigrēre, DO NOT NEGLECT *to write*. *Nē trānsieris Ibērum*, DO NOT CROSS *the Ebro*.

4. Sometimes by the English *Infinitive*:⁴

Contendit ut vincat, *he strives to CONQUER*.⁵ *Missi sunt qui cōsulerent Apollinem*, *they were sent to CONSULT Apollo*.

III. The IMPERATIVE MOOD expresses a *command* or an *entreaty*:

Iūstitiā cole, PRACTISE *justice*. *Tū nē cēde malis*, DO NOT YIELD *to misfortunes*.

¹ The use and proper translation of the Subjunctive must be learned from the Syntax. A few illustrations are here given to aid the learner in understanding the Paradigms of the Verbs; see 477-530.

² This is generally the proper translation in simple sentences and in principal clauses (483), and sometimes even in subordinate clauses (490).

³ Or, *he strives to CONQUER*; see 4 below, with foot-note 4.

⁴ The English has a few remnants of the Subjunctive Mood, which may also be used in translating the Latin Subjunctive: *Utinam possem*, *would that* I WERE ABLE.

⁵ Observe, however, that the Infinitive here is not the translation of the Subjunctive alone, but of the Subjunctive with its subject and connective: *ut vincat*, *to conquer* (lit., *that he may conquer*); *qui cōsulerent*, *to consult* (lit., *who should or would consult*).

III. TENSES.

197. There are six tenses:

I. THREE TENSES FOR INCOMPLETE ACTION:

1. Present: *amō*, I love, I am loving.¹
2. Imperfect: *amābam*, I was loving, I loved.
3. Future: *amābō*, I shall love, I will love.

II. THREE TENSES FOR COMPLETED ACTION.

1. Perfect: *amāvī*, I have loved, I loved.
2. Pluperfect: *amāveram*, I had loved.
3. Future Perfect: *amāverō*, I shall have loved.²

NOTE 1.—The Latin Perfect sometimes corresponds to our Perfect with *have* (*have loved*), and is called the *Present Perfect* or *Perfect Definite*; and sometimes to our Imperfect or Past (*loved*), and is called the *Historical Perfect* or *Perfect Indefinite*.³

NOTE 2.—The Indicative Mood has all the six tenses; the Subjunctive has the Present, Imperfect, Perfect, and Pluperfect; the Imperative, the Present and Future only.⁴

198. PRINCIPAL AND HISTORICAL.—Tenses are also distinguished as—

I. PRINCIPAL OR PRIMARY TENSES:

1. Present: *amō*, I love.
2. Present Perfect: *amāvī*, I have loved.³
3. Future: *amābō*, I shall love.
4. Future Perfect: *amāverō*, I shall have loved.

II. HISTORICAL OR SECONDARY TENSES:

1. Imperfect: *amābam*, I was loving.
2. Historical Perfect: *amāvī*, I loved.³
3. Pluperfect: *amāveram*, I had loved.

¹ Or, *I do love*. The English *did* may also be used in translating the *Imperfect* and *Perfect*: *I did love*.

² Or, *I will have loved*.

³ Thus the Latin Perfect combines within itself the force and use of two distinct tenses—the *Perfect proper*, seen in the Greek Perfect, and the *Aorist*, seen in the Greek Aorist: *amāvī* = *πεφίληκα*, *I have loved*; *amāvī* = *ἐφίλησα*, *I loved*. The *Historical Perfect* and the *Imperfect* both represent the action as *past*, but the former regards it simply as a *historical fact*—*I loved*; while the latter regards it as *in progress*—*I was loving*.

⁴ The nice distinctions of tense have been fully developed only in the Indicative. In the Subjunctive and Imperative, the *time* of the action is less prominent and is less definitely marked.

199. NUMBERS AND PERSONS.—There are two numbers, SINGULAR and PLURAL,¹ and three persons, FIRST, SECOND, and THIRD.¹

NOTE.—The various verbal forms which have voice, mood, tense, number, and person, make up the *finite verb*.

200. Among verbal forms are included the following verbal nouns and adjectives:

I. The INFINITIVE is a verbal noun.² It is sometimes best translated by the English *Infinitive*, sometimes by the *verbal noun* in ING, and sometimes by the *Indicative*:

Exire ex urbe volō, *I wish to go out of the city.* *Gestiō* scire omnia, *I long to know all things.* *Haec* scire juvat, *to know these things affords pleasure.* *Peccāre* licet nēmini, *to sin is lawful for no one.* *Vincere*³ scīs, *you know how to conquer, or you understand conquering.*³ *Tē* dicunt esse⁴ sapientem, *they say that you are⁴ wise.* *Sentimus* calēre⁴ ignem, *we perceive that fire is hot.*⁴ See also Syntax, 532-539.

II. The GERUND gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the second declension, used only in the *genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular*. It corresponds to the English verbal noun in ING:

Amandī, OF LOVING. *Amandī* causā, *for the sake of loving.* *Arts* vivendī, *the art of living.* *Cupidus* tē audiendī, *desirous of hearing you.* *Ūtilis* bibendō, *useful for drinking.* *Ad* discendum prōpēnsus, *inclined to learn,*⁵ *or to learning.* *Mēns* discendō alitur, *the mind is nourished by learning.* See also Syntax, 541-544.

III. The SUPINE gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the fourth declension. It has a form in *um* and a form in *ū*:

Amātum, TO LOVE, FOR LOVING. *Amātū*, TO BE LOVED, FOR LOVING, IN

¹ As in Nouns; see 44.

² The Infinitive has the characteristics both of verbs and of nouns. As a verb, it governs oblique cases and takes adverbial modifiers; as a noun, it is itself governed. In origin it is a verbal noun in the Dative or Locative. See Jolly, pp. 179-200.

³ Observe that the infinitive *vincere* may be translated by the English infinitive, *to conquer*, or by the verbal noun, *conquering*.

⁴ Observe that the infinitives *esse* and *calēre* are translated by the indicative *are* and *is* (*is hot*); and that the Acc. *tē*, the subject of *esse*, is translated by the Nom. *you*, the subject of *are*; and that the Acc. *ignem*, the subject of *calēre*, is translated by the Nom. *fire*, the subject of *is*.

⁵ Occasionally the Gerund, especially with a preposition, may be thus translated by the English *infinitive*.

LOVING. *Auxilium postulatum venit, he came to ask aid. Difficile dictū est, it is difficult to tell.* See Syntax, 545-547.

NOTE.—The Supine in *um* is an Accusative in form, while the Supine in *ū* may be either a Dative or an Ablative; see 116.

IV. The PARTICIPLE in Latin, as in English, gives the meaning of the verb in the form of an adjective.¹ It is sometimes best translated by the English *Participle* or *Infinitive*, and sometimes by a *Clause*:

Amāns, LOVING. *Amātūrus*, ABOUT TO LOVE. *Amātus*, LOVED. *Amandus*, DESERVING TO BE LOVED. *Platō scribēns mortuus est, Plato died WHILE WRITING, OR WHILE HE WAS WRITING. Sōl oriēns diem cōficiūt, the sun RISING, OR WHEN IT RISES,² causes the day. Rediit bellī cāsū tentātūrus, he returned TO TRY (lit., about to try) the fortune of war. In amīcīs eligēdis,³ in SELECTING friends.* See Syntax, 548-550.

NOTE.—A Latin verb may have four participles: two in the Active, the Present and the Future, *amāns*, *amātūrus*; and two in the Passive, the Perfect and the Gerundive,³ *amātus*, *amandus*.

CONJUGATION.

201. Regular verbs are inflected, or conjugated, in four different ways, and are accordingly divided into Four Conjugations,⁴ distinguished from each other by the stem characteristics or by the endings of the Infinitive, as follows:

	CHARACTERISTICS.	INFINITIVE ENDINGS.
CONJ. I.	ā	ā-re
II.	ē	ē-re
III.	e	e-re
IV.	ī	ī-re

202. PRINCIPAL PARTS.—The Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, Perfect Indicative, and Supine are called from their importance the *Principal Parts* of the verb.

¹ Participles are verbs in force, but adjectives in form and inflection. As verbs, they govern oblique cases; as adjectives, they agree with nouns.

² Or *by its rising*.

³ Sometimes called the *Future Passive Participle*. In agreement with a noun, it is often best translated like a gerund governing that noun; see 544.

⁴ The Four Conjugations are only varieties of one general system of inflection, as the differences between them have been produced in the main by the union of different final letters in the various stems with one general system of suffixes; see Comparative View of Conjugations, 213-216.

NOTE 1.—In the inflection of verbs it is found convenient to recognize four stems :

1) The *Verb-Stem*, which is the basis of the entire conjugation. This is often called simply the *Stem*.

2) Three *Special Stems*, the Present Stem, the Perfect Stem, and the Supine Stem.

NOTE 2.—The *Special Stems* are formed from the *Verb-Stem*, unless they are identical with it.¹

203. The ENTIRE CONJUGATION of any regular verb may be readily formed from the Principal Parts by means of the proper endings.²

1. SUM, *I am*, is used as an auxiliary in the passive voice of regular verbs. Accordingly, its conjugation, though quite irregular, must be given at the outset. The Principal Parts are—

PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.
sum, <i>I am</i> ,	esse, <i>to be</i> ,	fuī, <i>I have been</i> .

NOTE 1.—*Sum* has no Supine.

NOTE 2.—Two independent *stems* or *roots*³ are used in the conjugation of this verb, viz. : (1) *es*, seen in *s-um* (for *es-um*) and in *es-se*, and (2) *fu*, seen in *fu-i*.

¹ For the treatment of Stems, see 249-256. In many verbs the stem is itself derived from a more primitive form called a *Root*. For the distinction between *roots* and *stems*, and for the manner in which the latter are formed from the former, see 313-318.

² In the Paradigms of regular verbs, the endings which distinguish the various forms are separately indicated, and should be carefully noticed. In the parts derived from the present stem (222, I.) each ending contains the characteristic vowel.

³ The forms of irregular verbs are often derived from different roots. Thus in English, *am*, *was*, *been*; *go*, *went*, *gone*. Indeed, the identical roots used in the conjugation of *sum* are in constant use in our ordinary speech. The root *es*, Greek *ἐς*, originally *as*, is seen in *am* (for *as-mi*), *art* (for *as-t*), *are* (for *as-e*); the root *fu*, Greek *φύ*, originally *bhu*, is seen in *be* (for *bhe*), *been*. The close relationship existing between the Sanskrit, Greek, Latin, and English is seen in the following comparative forms; *ἐσ-σι* is Homeric, and *ἐ-ντι* Doric:

SANSKRIT.	GREEK.	LATIN.	ENGLISH.
as-mi	ei-μῖ	s-um	a-m
as-i	ἐσ-σι	es	ar-t
as-ti	ἐσ-τι	es-t	is
s-mas	ἐσ-μέν for ἐσ-μές	s-umus	ar-e
s-tha	ἐσ-τέ	es-tis	ar-e
s-anti	ἐ-ντι for ἐσ-ντι	s-unt	ar-e

Every verbal form is thus made by appending to the stem, or root, a pronominal ending meaning *I*, *thou*, *he*, etc. Thus *mi*, seen in the English *me*, means *I*. It is retained in *as-mi* and *ei-μῖ*, but shortened to *m* in *s-u-m* and *a-m*. *Ti*, meaning *he*, is preserved in *as-ti* and *ἐσ-τι*, but shortened to *t* in *es-t* and lost in *is*. The stem also undergoes various changes: in Sanskrit it is *as*, sometimes shortened to *s*; in Greek *ἐς*, sometimes shortened to *ἐ*; in Latin *es*, sometimes shortened to *s*, as in Sanskrit; in English *a*, *ar*, or *is*.

204. Sum, *I am*.—STEMS, *es*, *fu*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	SUPINE. ¹
sum ,	esse ,	fuī ,	—

INDICATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.		PRESENT TENSE.	PLURAL.
sum , ²	<i>I am,</i>	sumus ,	<i>we are,</i>
es ,	<i>thou art</i> , ³	estis ,	<i>you are,</i>
est ,	<i>he is ;</i>	sunt ,	<i>they are.</i>

IMPERFECT.

eram ,	<i>I was,</i>	erāmus ,	<i>we were,</i>
erās ,	<i>thou wast</i> , ³	erātis ,	<i>you were,</i>
erat ,	<i>he was ;</i>	erant ,	<i>they were.</i>

FUTURE.

erō , ⁴	<i>I shall be</i> , ⁵	erimus ,	<i>we shall be,</i>
eris ,	<i>thou wilt be,</i>	eritis ,	<i>you will be,</i>
erit ,	<i>he will be ;</i>	erunt ,	<i>they will be.</i>

PERFECT.

fuī ,	<i>I have been</i> , ⁵	fuimus ,	<i>we have been,</i>
fuisti ,	<i>thou hast been,</i>	fuistis ,	<i>you have been,</i>
fuit ,	<i>he has been ;</i>	fuērunt ,	} <i>they have been.</i>
		fuēre ,	

PLUPERFECT.

fueram ,	<i>I had been,</i>	fuerāmus ,	<i>we had been,</i>
fuerās ,	<i>thou hadst been,</i>	fuerātis ,	<i>you had been,</i>
fuerat ,	<i>he had been ;</i>	fuerant ,	<i>they had been.</i>

FUTURE PERFECT.

fuerō ,	<i>I shall have been,</i>	fuerīmus ,	<i>we shall have been,</i>
fueris ,	<i>thou wilt have been,</i>	fuerītis ,	<i>you will have been,</i>
fuerit ,	<i>he will have been ;</i>	fuerint ,	<i>they will have been.</i>

¹ The Supine is wanting.² *Sum* is for *esum*, *eram* for *esam*. Whenever *s* of the stem *es* comes between two vowels, *e* is dropped, as in *sum*, *sunt*, or *s* is changed to *r*, as in *eram*, *erō*; see 31, 1. The pupil will observe that the endings which are added to the roots *es* and *fu* are distinguished by the type.³ Or *you are*, and in the Imperfect, *you were*; *thou* is confined mostly to solemn discourses.⁴ In verbs, final *o*, marked **ō**, is generally long.⁵ Or, Future, *I will be*; Perfect, *I was*; see 197, note 1.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SINGULAR.		PRESENT.	PLURAL.
sim,	<i>may I be,¹</i>	simus,	<i>let us be,</i>
sis,	<i>mayst thou be,²</i>	sitis,	<i>be ye, may you be,</i>
sit,	<i>let him be, may he be ;</i>	sint,	<i>let them be.</i>

IMPERFECT.

essem,	<i>I should be,¹</i>	essēmus,	<i>we should be,</i>
essēs,	<i>thou wouldst be,</i>	essētis,	<i>you would be,</i>
esset,	<i>he would be ;</i>	essent,	<i>they would be.</i>

PERFECT.

fuerim,	<i>I may have been,¹</i>	fuerimus,	<i>we may have been,</i>
fueris,	<i>thou mayst have been,</i>	fueritis,	<i>you may have been,</i>
fuerit,	<i>he may have been ;</i>	fuerint,	<i>they may have been.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

fuissem,	<i>I should have been,</i>	fuissemus,	<i>we should have been,</i>
fuisēs,	<i>thou wouldst have been,</i>	fuisētis,	<i>you would have been</i>
fuisset,	<i>he would have been ;</i>	fuisSENT,	<i>they would have been</i>

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. es,	<i>be thou,</i>	este,	<i>be ye.</i>
Fut. estō,	<i>thou shalt be,³</i>	estōte,	<i>ye shall be,</i>
estō,	<i>he shall be ;³</i>	suntō,	<i>they shall be.</i>

INFINITIVE.

Pres. esse,	<i>to be.</i>
Perf. fuisse,	<i>to have been.</i>
Fut. futūrus esse,⁴	<i>to be about to be.</i>

PARTICIPLE.

Fut. futūrus,⁴ *about to be.*

1. In the Paradigm all the forms beginning with *e* or *s* are from the stem *es* ; all others from the stem *fu*.⁵

2. RARE FORMS :—*forem, forēs, foret, forent, fore*, for *essem, essēs, esset, essent, futūrus esse* ; *siem, siēs, siet, sient*, or *fuam, fuās, fuat, fuant*, for *sim, sis, sit, sint*.

¹ On the translation of the Subjunctive, see 196, II., and remember that it is often best rendered by the Indicative. Thus, *sim* may often be rendered *I am*, and *fuerim*, *I have been*.

² Or *be thou, or may you be*.

³ The Fut. may also be rendered like the Pres., or with *let* : *be thou* ; *let him be*.

⁴ *Futūrus* is declined like *bonus*. So in the Infinitive : *futūrus, a, um esse*.

⁵ *Es* and *fu* are roots as well as stems. As the basis of this paradigm they are properly stems, but as they are not derived from mere primitive forms, they are in themselves roots.

FIRST CONJUGATION : A VERBS.

205. ACTIVE VOICE.—Amō, *I love*.VERB STEM AND PRESENT STEM, amā.¹

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	SUPINE
amō,	amāre,	amāvī,	amātum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.		PRESENT TENSE.		PLURAL.
amō, ¹	<i>I love,²</i>	amāmus,	<i>we love,</i>	
amās,	<i>you love,³</i>	amātis,	<i>you love,</i>	
amat,	<i>he loves ;</i>	amant,	<i>they love.</i>	

IMPERFECT.

amābam,	<i>I was loving,</i>	amābāmus,	<i>we were loving,</i>
amābās,	<i>you were loving,</i>	amābātis,	<i>you were loving,</i>
amābat,	<i>he was loving ;</i>	amābant,	<i>they were loving.</i>

FUTURE.

amābō,	<i>I shall love,⁴</i>	amābimus,	<i>we shall love,</i>
amābis,	<i>you will love,</i>	amābitis,	<i>you will love,</i>
amābit,	<i>he will love ;</i>	amābunt,	<i>they will love.</i>

PERFECT.

amāvī,	<i>I have loved,⁵</i>	amāvimus,	<i>we have loved,</i>
amāvistī,	<i>you have loved,</i>	amāvistis,	<i>you have loved,</i>
amāvit,	<i>he has loved ;</i>	amāvērunt, ēre,	<i>they have loved</i>

PLUPERFECT.

amāveram,	<i>I had loved,</i>	amāverāmus,	<i>we had loved,</i>
amāverās,	<i>you had loved,</i>	amāverātis,	<i>you had loved,</i>
amāverat,	<i>he had loved ;</i>	amāverant,	<i>they had loved.</i>

FUTURE PERFECT.

amāverō,	<i>I shall have loved,⁴</i>	amāverīmus,	<i>we shall have loved,</i>
amāverīs,	<i>you will have loved,</i>	amāverītis,	<i>you will have loved</i>
amāverit,	<i>he will have loved ;</i>	amāverint,	<i>they will have loved.</i>

¹ The final ā of the stem disappears in amō for ama-ō, amem, amēs, etc., for amāim, amāis, etc. Also in the Pass. in amor for ama-or, amer, etc., for amā-ir, etc.; see 23; 27. Final o, marked ō, is generally long.

² Or *I am loving, I do love*. So in the Imperfect, *I loved, I was loving, I did love*

³ Or *thou lovest*. So in the other tenses, *thou wast loving, thou wilt love, etc.*

⁴ Or *I will love*. So in the Future Perfect, *I shall have loved or I will have loved*

⁵ Or *I loved ;* see 197, note 1.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SINGULAR.	PRESENT.	PLURAL.
amem, <i>may I love,¹</i>	amēmus, <i>let us love,</i>	
amēs, <i>may you love,</i>	amētis, <i>may you love,</i>	
amet, <i>let him love ;</i>	ament, <i>let them love.</i>	

IMPERFECT.

amārem, <i>I should love,</i>	amārēmus, <i>we should love,</i>
amārēs, <i>you would love,</i>	amārētis, <i>you would love,</i>
amāret, <i>he would love ;</i>	amārent, <i>they would love.</i>

PERFECT.

amāverim, <i>I may have loved,²</i>	amāverīmus, <i>we may have loved,</i>
amāverīs, <i>you may have loved,</i>	amāverītis, <i>you may have loved,</i>
amāverit, <i>he may have loved ;</i>	amāverint, <i>they may have loved.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

amāvissem, <i>I should have loved,</i>	amāvissēmus, <i>we should have loved,</i>
amāvissēs, <i>you would have loved,</i>	amāvissētis, <i>you would have loved,</i>
amāvisset, <i>he would have loved ;</i>	amāvissent, <i>they would have loved.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> amā, <i>love thou ;</i>	amāte, <i>love ye.</i>
<i>Fut.</i> amātō, <i>thou shalt love,</i>	amātōte, <i>ye shall love,</i>
amātō, <i>he shall love ;</i>	amantō, <i>they shall love.</i>

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres.</i> amāre, <i>to love.</i>	<i>Pres.</i> amāns,⁴ <i>loving.</i>
<i>Perf.</i> amāvisse, <i>to have loved.</i>	
<i>Fut.</i> amātūrus³ esse, <i>to be about to love.</i>	<i>Fut.</i> amātūrus,³ <i>about to love.</i>

GERUND.

SUPINE.

<i>Gen.</i> amandi, <i>of loving,</i>	
<i>Dat.</i> amandō, <i>for loving,</i>	
<i>Acc.</i> amandum, <i>loving,</i>	<i>Acc.</i> amātum, <i>to love,</i>
<i>Abl.</i> amandō, <i>by loving.</i>	<i>Abl.</i> amātū, <i>to love, be loved.</i>

¹ On the translation of the Subjunctive, see 196, II.² Often best rendered *I have loved*. So in the Pluperfect, *I had loved* ; see 196, II.³ Decline like *bonus*, 148.⁴ For declension, see 157.

FIRST CONJUGATION: A VERBS.

206. PASSIVE VOICE.—Amor, *I am loved.*VERB STEM AND PRESENT STEM, *amā.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.

amor,

PRES. INF.

amāri,

PERF. IND.

amātus sum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am loved.

SINGULAR.

amor

amāris, or re

amātur

PLURAL.

amāmur

amāmini

amantur

IMPERFECT.

I was loved.

amābar

amābāris, or re

amābātur

amābāmur

amābāmini

amābantur

FUTURE.

I shall or will be loved

amābor

amāberis, or re

amābitur

amābimur

amābimini

amābuntur

PERFECT.

*I have been loved or I was loved.*amātus sum¹

amātus es

amātus est

amātī sumus

amātī estis

amātī sunt

PLUPERFECT.

*I had been loved.*amātus eram¹

amātus erās

amātus erat

amātī erāmu.

amātī erātis

amātī erant

FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been loved.*amātus erō¹

amātus eris

amātus erit

amātī erimus

amātī eritis

amātī erunt

¹ *Fui, fuistī, etc.*, are sometimes used for *sum, es, etc.*: *amātus fui* for *amātus sum*. So *fueram, fuerās, etc.*, for *eram, etc.*: also *fuerō, etc.*, for *erō, etc.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

May I be loved, let him be loved.¹

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
amer	amēmur
amēris, or re	amēmini
amētur	amentur

IMPERFECT.

I should be loved, he would be loved.¹

amārer	amārēmur
amārēris, or re	amārēmini
amārētur	amārēntur

PERFECT.

I may have been loved, or I have been loved.¹

amātus sim²	amātī simus
amātus sis	amātī sitis
amātus sit	amātī sint

PLUPERFECT.

I should have been loved, he would have been loved.¹

amātus essem²	amātī essēmus
amātus essēs	amātī essētis
amātus esset	amātī essent

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> amāre , be thou loved ;	amāmini , be ye loved.
<i>Fut.</i> amātor , thou shalt be loved, amātor , he shall be loved ;	amantor , they shall be loved.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres.</i> amārī , to be loved.	
<i>Perf.</i> amātus esse , ² to have been loved.	<i>Perf.</i> amātus , having been loved.
<i>Fut.</i> amātum irī , to be about to be loved.	<i>Ger.</i> ³ amandus , to be loved, desiring to be loved.

¹ But on the translation of the Subjunctive, see 196, II.² *Fuerim, fueris*, etc., are sometimes used for *sim, sis*, etc.—So also *fuissem, fuissēs*, etc., for *essem, essēs*, etc. : rarely *fuisse* for *esse*.³ *Ger.* = Gerundive; see 200, IV., note.

SECOND CONJUGATION : **E** VERBS.207. ACTIVE VOICE.—*Monēō, I advise.*VERB STEM, *mon, moni*; PRESENT STEM, *monē*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	SUPINE.
monēō,	monēre,	monuī,	monitum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I advise.

SINGULAR.

monēō**monēs****monet**

PLURAL.

monēmus**monētis****monent**

IMPERFECT.

*I was advising, or I advised.***monēbam****monēbās****monēbat****monēbāmus****monēbātis****monēbant**

FUTURE.

*I shall or will advise.***monēbō****monēbis****monēbit****monēbimus****monēbitis****monēbunt**

PERFECT.

*I have advised, or I advised.***monuī****monuisti****monuit****monuimus****monuistis****monuerunt, or ēre**

PLUPERFECT.

*I had advised.***monueram****monuerās****monuerat****monuerāmus****monuerātis****monuerant**

FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have advised.***monuerō****monueris****monuerit****monuerimus****monueritis****monuerint**

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

May I advise, let him advise.¹

SINGULAR.

moneam

moneās

moneat

PLURAL.

moneāmus

moneātis

moneant

IMPERFECT.

I should advise, he would advise.

monērem

monērēs

monēret

monērēmus

monērētis

monērent

PERFECT.

I may have advised, or I have advised.¹

monuerim

monuerīs

monuerit

monuerīmus

monuerītis

monuerint

PLUPERFECT.

I should have advised, he would have advised.²

monuissē

monuissēs

monuisset

monuissēmus

monuissētis

monuissent

IMPERATIVE.

*Pres. monē, advise thou ;**monēte, advise ye.**Fut. monētō, thou shalt advise,
monētō, he shall advise ;**monētōte, ye shall advise,
monentō, they shall advise.*

INFINITIVE.

*Pres. monēre, to advise.**Perf. monuisse, to have advised.**Fut. monitūrus esse, to be about
to advise.*

PARTICIPLE.

*Pres. monēns, advising.**Fut. monitūrus, about to advise.*

GERUND.

*Gen. monendī, of advising,**Dat. monendō, for advising,**Acc. monendum, advising,**Abl. monendō, by advising.*

SUPINE.

*Acc. monitum, to advise,**Abl. monitū, to advise, be advised.*¹ But on the translation of the Subjunctive, see 196. II.² The Pluperfect, like the Perfect, is often rendered by the Indicative: *I had advised, you had advised, etc.*

SECOND CONJUGATION : E VERBS.

208. PASSIVE VOICE.—Moneor, *I am advised.*VERB STEM, *mon, moni*; PRESENT STEM, *monē*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.

moneor,

PRES. INF.

monēri,

PERF. IND.

monitus sum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am advised.

SINGULAR.

monēor

monēris, or re

monētur

PLURAL.

monēmur

monēmini

monentur

IMPERFECT.

I was advised.

monēbar

monēbāris, or re

monēbātur

monēbāmur

monēbāmini

monēbantur

FUTURE.

I shall or will be advised.

monēbor

monēberis, or re

monēbitur

monēbimur

monēbimini

monēbuntur

PERFECT.

*I have been advised, I was advised.*monitus sum¹

monitus es

monitus est

moniti sumus

moniti estis

moniti sunt

PLUPERFECT.

*I had been advised.*monitus eram¹

monitus erās

monitus erat

moniti erāmus

moniti erātis

moniti erant

FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been advised.*monitus erō¹

monitus eris

monitus erit

moniti erimus

moniti eritis

moniti erunt

¹ See 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
monēar	monēāmur
monēāris, or re	monēāmini
monēātur	monēantur

IMPERFECT.

I should be advised, he would be advised.

monērer	monērēmur
monērēris, or re	monērēmini
monērētur	monērentur

PERFECT.

I may have been advised, or I have been advised.

monitus sim ¹	moniti simus
monitus sis	moniti sitis
monitus sit	moniti sint

PLUPERFECT.

I should have been advised, he would have been advised.²

monitus essem ¹	moniti essēmus
monitus essēs	moniti essētis
monitus esset	moniti essent.

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. monēre, be thou advised ;	monēmini, be ye advised.
Fut. monētor, thou shalt be advised,	
monētor, he shall be advised ;	monentor, they shall be advised.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. monēri, to be advised.
Perf. monitus esse, ¹ to have been advised.
Fut. monitum iri, to be about to be advised.

PARTICIPLE.

Perf. monitus, advised.
Ger. monendus, to be advised, deserv- ing to be advised.

¹ See 206, foot-notes.

² Or *I had been advised, you had been advised, etc.*

THIRD CONJUGATION: CONSONANT VERBS.

209. ACTIVE VOICE.—Regō, *I rule*.VERB STEM, *reg*; PRESENT STEM, *rege*.¹

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	SUPINE.
regō,	regere,	rēxī, ²	rēcīmus. ²

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I rule.

SINGULAR.

regō

regis

regit

PLURAL.

regimus

regitis

regunt

IMPERFECT.

I was ruling, or I ruled.

regēbam

regēbās

regēbat

regēbāmus

regēbātis

regēbant

FUTURE.

I shall or will rule.

regam

regēs

reget

regēmus

regētis

regent

PERFECT.

I have ruled, or I ruled.

rēxī

rēxistī

rēxit

rēximur

rēxistis

rēxērunt, or ēre

PLUPERFECT.

I had ruled.

rēxeram

rēxerās

rēxerat

rēxerāmus

rēxerātis

rēxerant

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have ruled.

rēxerō

rēxerīs

rēxerit

rēxerīmus

rēxerītis

rēxerint

¹ The characteristic is a variable vowel—*ō, u, e, i*: regō, regunt, regere, regis; Curtius calls it the *thematic vowel*; see Curtius, I., p. 199, but on *ō*, see also Meyer, 441.

² See 254; 30, 33, 1.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

May I rule, let him rule.¹

SINGULAR.

regam

regās

regat

PLURAL.

regāmus

regātis

regant

IMPERFECT.

I should rule, he would rule.

regerem

regerēs

regeret

regerēmus

regerētis

regerent

PERFECT.

I may have ruled, or I have ruled.

rēxerim

rēxerīs

rēxerit

rēxerīmus

rēxerītis

rēxerint

PLUPERFECT.

I should have ruled, he would have ruled.

rēxissem

rēxisse

rēxisset

rēxissemus

rēxissetis

rēxisset

IMPERATIVE.

Præ rege, rule thou ;*Fut.* regitō, thou shalt rule,

regitō, he shall rule ;

regite, rule ye.

regitōte, ye shall rule,

reguntō, they shall rule.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. regere, to rule.*Perf.* rēxisse, to have ruled.*Fut.* rēctūrus esse, to be about to rule.

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. regēns, ruling.*Fut.* rēctūrus, about to rule.

GERUND.

Gen. regendī, of ruling,*Dat.* regendō, for ruling,*Acc.* regendum, ruling,*Abl.* regendō, by ruling.

SUPINE.

Acc. rēctum, to rule,*Abl.* rēctū, to rule, be ruled.¹ But on the translation of the Subjunctive, see 196. II.

THIRD CONJUGATION: CONSONANT VERBS.

210. PASSIVE VOICE.—Regor, *I am ruled.*VERB STEM, *reg*; PRESENT STEM, *rege*.¹

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.

regor,

PRES. INF.

regī,

PERF. IND.

rēctus¹ sum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am ruled.

SINGULAR.

regor

regeris, or re

regitur

PLURAL.

regimur

regimini

reguntur

IMPERFECT.

I was ruled.

regēbar

regēbāris, or re

regēbātur

regēbāmur

regēbāmini

regēbantur

FUTURE.

I shall or will be ruled.

regar

regēris, or re

regētur

regēmur

regēmini

regentur

PERFECT.

*I have been ruled, or I was ruled.*rēctus sum²

rēctus es

rēctus est

rēctī sumus

rēctī estis

rēctī sunt

PLUPERFECT.

*I had been ruled.*rēctus eram²

rēctus erās

rēctus erat

rēctī erāmus

rēctī erātis

rēctī erant

FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been ruled.*rēctus erō¹

rēctus eris

rēctus erit

rēctī erimus

rēctī eritis

rēctī erunt

¹ See 209, foot-notes.² See 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

May I be ruled, let him be ruled.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
regar	regāmur
regāris, or re	regāmini
regātur	regantur

IMPERFECT.

I should be ruled, he would be ruled.

regerer	regerēmur
regerēris, or re	regerēmini
regerētur	regerentur

PERFECT.

I may have been ruled, or I have been ruled.

rēctus sim ¹	rēctī simus
rēctus sis	rēctī sitis
rēctus sit	rēctī sint

PLUPERFECT.

I should have been ruled, he would have been ruled.

rēctus essem ¹	rēctī essēmus
rēctus essēs	rēctī essētis
rēctus esset	rēctī essent

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. regere, be thou ruled ;	regimini, be ye ruled.
Fut. regitor, thou shalt be ruled,	reguntor, they shall be ruled.
regitor, he shall be ruled ;	

INFINITIVE.

Pres. regī, to be ruled.
Perf. rēctus esse, ¹ to have been ruled.
Fut. rēctum irī, to be about to be ruled.

PARTICIPLE.

Perf. rēctus, ruled.
Ger. regendus, to be ruled, deserving to be ruled.

¹ See 206, foot-notes.

FOURTH CONJUGATION : I VERBS.

211. ACTIVE VOICE.—*Audiō, I hear.*VERB STEM AND PRESENT STEM, *audi*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	SUPINE.
audiō,	audire,	audivī,	audītum

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	<i>I hear.</i>	PLURAL.
audiō		audīmus
audis		audītis
audit		audiunt

IMPERFECT.

I was hearing, or I heard.

audiēbam		audiēbāmus
audiēbās		audiēbātis
audiēbat		audiēbant

FUTURE.

I shall or will hear.

audiam		audiēmus
audiēs		audiētis
audiet		audient

PERFECT.

I have heard, or I heard.

audivī		audivimus
audivisti		audivistis
audivit		audiverunt, or ēre

PLUPERFECT.

I had heard.

audiveram		audiverāmus
audiverās		audiverātis
audiverat		audiverant

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have heard.

audiverō		audiverimus
audiveris		audiveritis
audiverit		audiverint

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

May I hear, let him hear.¹

SINGULAR.

aud**iam**aud**iās**aud**iat**

PLURAL.

aud**iāmus**aud**iātis**aud**iant**

IMPERFECT.

*I should hear, he would hear.*aud**īrem**aud**irēs**aud**īret**aud**irēmus**aud**irētis**aud**īrent**

PERFECT.

*I may have heard, or I have heard.*aud**iverim**aud**iveris**aud**iverit**aud**iverimus**aud**iveritis**aud**iverint**

PLUPERFECT.

*I should have heard, he would have heard.*aud**ivissem**aud**ivissēs**aud**ivisset**aud**ivissēmus**aud**ivissētis**aud**ivissent**

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. aud**i**, hear thou ;*Fut.* aud**itō**, thou shalt hear,aud**itō**, he shall hear ;aud**ite**, hear ye.aud**itōte**, ye shall hear,aud**iuntō**, they shall hear.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. aud**ire**, to hear.*Perf.* aud**ivisse**, to have heard.*Fut.* aud**itūrus esse**, to be about to hear.

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. aud**iēns**, hearing.*Fut.* aud**itūrus**, about to hear.

GERUND.

Gen. aud**iendī**, of hearing,*Dat.* aud**iendō**, for hearing,*Acc.* aud**iendum**, hearing,*Abl.* aud**iendō**, by hearing.

SUPINE.

Acc. aud**itum**, to hear,*Abl.* aud**itū**, to hear, be heard¹ But on the translation of the Subjunctive, see 196, II.

FOURTH CONJUGATION : I VERBS.

212. PASSIVE VOICE.—Audior, *I am heard.*VERB STEM AND PRESENT STEM, *audi*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.

audior,

PRES. INF.

audiri,

PERF. IND.

auditus sum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am heard.

SINGULAR.

audior**audiris, or re****auditur**

PLURAL.

audimur**audimini****audiuntur**

IMPERFECT.

*I was heard.***audiebar****audiebāris, or re****audiebatur****audiebāmur****audiebāmini****audiebantur**

FUTURE.

*I shall or will be heard.***audiar****audieris, or re****audietur****audiemur****audiemini****audientur**

PERFECT.

*I have been heard, or I was heard.***auditus sum¹****auditus es****auditus est****auditi sumus****auditi estis****auditi sunt**

PLUPERFECT.

*I had been heard.***auditus eram¹****auditus erās****auditus erat****auditi erāmus****auditi erātis****auditi erant**

FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been heard.***auditus erō¹****auditus eris****auditus erit****auditi erimus****auditi eritis****auditi erunt**¹ See 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

May I be heard, let him be heard.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audiar	audiāmur
audiāris, or re	audiāmini
audiātur	audiantur

IMPERFECT.

I should be heard, he would be heard.

audīrer	audīrēmur
audīrēris, or re	audīrēmini
audīrētur	audīrentur

PERFECT.

I may have been heard, or I have been heard.

auditus sim ¹	auditi simus
auditus sis	auditi sitis
auditus sit	auditi sint

PLUPERFECT.

I should have been heard, he would have been heard

auditus essem ¹	auditi essēmus
auditus essēs	auditi essētis
auditus esset	auditi essent

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> audire , be thou heard ;	audi mini , be ye heard.
<i>Fut.</i> auditor , thou shalt be heard,	
auditor , he shall be heard ;	audiuntor , they shall be heard.

INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> audiri , to be heard.
<i>Perf.</i> auditus esse , ¹ to have been heard.
<i>Fut.</i> auditum iri , to be about to be heard.

PARTICIPLE.

<i>Perf.</i> auditus , heard.
<i>Ger.</i> audiendus , to be heard, desiring to be heard.

¹ See 206, foot-notes.

COMPARATIVE VIEW OF CONJUGATIONS.

213. ACTIVE VOICE.

PRESENT SYSTEM.¹

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

am	-ō	-ās,	-at;	-āmus,	-ātis,	-ant.
mon	-eō,	-ēs,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
reg	-ō	-is,	-it;	-imus,	-itis,	-unt.
aud	-iō,	-īs,	-it;	-īmus,	-ītis,	-iunt.

IMPERFECT.

am	-ābam,	-ābās,	-ābat;	-ābāmus,	-ābātis,	-ābant.
mon	-ēbam,	-ēbās,	-ēbat;	-ēbāmus,	-ēbātis,	-ēbant.
reg	-ēbam,	-ēbās,	-ēbat;	-ēbāmus,	-ēbātis,	-ēbant.
aud	-iēbam,	-iēbās,	-iēbat;	-iēbāmus,	-iēbātis,	-iēbant.

FUTURE.

am	-ābō,	-ābis,	-ābit;	-ābimus,	-ābitis,	-ābunt.
mon	-ēbō,	-ēbis,	-ēbit;	-ēbimus,	-ēbitis,	-ēbunt.
reg	-am,	-ēs,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
aud	-iam,	-iēs,	-iet;	-iēmus,	-iētis,	-ient.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

am	-em,	-ēs,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
mon	-eam,	-eās,	-eat;	-eāmus,	-eātis,	-eant.
reg	-am,	-ās,	-at;	-āmus,	-ātis,	-ant.
aud	-iam,	-iās,	-iat;	-iāmus,	-iātis,	-iant.

IMPERFECT.

am	-ārem,	-ārēs,	-āret;	-ārēmus,	-ārētis,	-ārent.
mon	-ērem,	-ērēs,	-ēret;	-ērēmus,	-ērētis,	-ērent.
reg	-erem,	-erēs,	-eret;	-erēmus,	-erētis,	-erent.
aud	-īrem,	-īrēs,	-īret;	-īrēmus,	-īrētis,	-īrent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.					FUTURE.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.		SINGULAR.		SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
am	-ā,	-āte;	-ātō,	-ātō;	-ātōte,	-antō.
mon	-ē,	-ēte;	-ētō,	-ētō;	-ētōte,	-entō.
reg	-e,	-ite;	-itō,	-itō;	-itōte,	-untō.
aud	-ī,	-īte;	-ītō,	-ītō;	-ītōte,	-iuntō.

PRES. INFINITIVE.

am	-āre;
mon	-ēre;
reg	-ere;
aud	-īre;

PRES. PARTICIPLE.

-āns;
-ēns;
-ēns;
-iēns;

GERUND.

-andī.
-endī.
-endī.
-iendī.

NOTE.—Verbs in *io* of Conj. III. have certain endings of Conj. IV.; see 217.

¹ For the *Present System*, see 222, I.

COMPARATIVE VIEW OF CONJUGATIONS.

214. PASSIVE VOICE.

PRESENT SYSTEM.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

am	-or,	-āris	<i>or</i> āre, ¹	-ātur;	-āmur,	-āminī,	-antur.
mon	-eor,	-ēris	<i>or</i> ēre,	-ētur;	-ēmur,	-ēminī,	-entur.
reg	-or,	-eris	<i>or</i> ere,	-itur;	-imur,	-iminī,	-untur.
aud	-ior,	-īris	<i>or</i> īre,	-itur;	-imur,	-iminī,	-iuntur.

IMPERFECT.

am	-ābar,	-ābāris	<i>or</i> ābāre,	-ābātur;	-ābāmur,	-ābāminī,	-ābantur.
mon	-ēbar,	-ēbāris	<i>or</i> ēbāre,	-ēbātur;	-ēbāmur,	-ēbāminī,	-ēbantur.
reg	-ēbar,	-ēbāris	<i>or</i> ēbāre,	-ēbātur;	-ēbāmur,	-ēbāminī,	-ēbantur.
aud	-iēbar,	-iēbāris	<i>or</i> iēbāre,	-iēbātur;	-iēbāmur,	-iēbāminī,	-iēbantur.

FUTURE.

am	-ābor,	-āberis	<i>or</i> ābere,	-ābitur;	-ābimur,	-ābiminī,	-ābuntur.
mon	-ēbor,	-ēberis	<i>or</i> ēbere,	-ēbitur;	-ēbimur,	-ēbiminī,	-ēbuntur.
reg	-ar,	-ēris	<i>or</i> ēre,	-ētur;	-ēmur,	-ēminī,	-entur.
aud	-iar,	-iēris	<i>or</i> iēre,	-iētur;	-iēmur,	-iēminī,	-ientur.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

am	-er,	-ēris	<i>or</i> ēre,	-ētur;	-ēmur,	-ēminī,	-entur.
mon	-ear,	-eāris	<i>or</i> eāre,	-eātur;	-eāmur,	-eāminī,	-eantur.
reg	-ar,	-ēris	<i>or</i> āre,	-ātur;	-āmur,	-āminī,	-antur.
aud	-iar,	-iāris	<i>or</i> iāre,	-iātur;	-iāmur,	-iāminī,	-iantur.

IMPERFECT.

am	-ārer,	-ārēris	<i>or</i> ārēre,	-ārētur;	-ārēmur,	-ārēminī,	-ārentur.
mon	-ērer,	-ērēris	<i>or</i> ērēre,	-ērētur;	-ērēmur,	-ērēminī,	-ērentur.
reg	-erer,	-erēris	<i>or</i> erēre,	-erētur;	-erēmur,	-erēminī,	-erentur.
aud	-īrer,	-īrēris	<i>or</i> irēre,	-irētur;	-irēmur,	-irēminī,	-irentur.

PRESENT.

IMPERATIVE.

FUTURE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
am	-āre,	-ātor,	— -antor.
mon	-ēre,	-ētor,	— -entor.
reg	-ere,	-itor,	— -untor.
aud	-īre,	-itor,	— -iuntor.

PRES. INFINITIVE.

GERUNDIVE.

am	-ārī;
mon	-ērī;
reg	-ī;
aud	-irī;

-andus.
-endus.
-endus.
-iendus.

¹ In these and the following endings *re* takes the place of *ris*: *āris* or *āre*, *ābāris* or *ābāre*. *Re* is formed from *ris* by dropping final *s* and then changing final *i* to *e*; see §6, 5; 24, 1, note; also 237.

COMPARATIVE VIEW OF CONJUGATIONS.

215. ACTIVE VOICE.

PERFECT SYSTEM.¹

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PERFECT.

amāv monu rēx audīv	I,	-istī,	-it;	-imus,	-istis,	-erunt, ēre ²
------------------------------	----	--------	------	--------	---------	--------------------------

PLUPERFECT.

amāv monu rēx audīv	-eram,	-erās,	-erat;	-erāmus,	-erātis,	-erant.
------------------------------	--------	--------	--------	----------	----------	---------

FUTURE PERFECT.

amāv monu rēx audīv	-erō,	-erīs,	-erit;	-erīmus,	-erītis,	-erint.
------------------------------	-------	--------	--------	----------	----------	---------

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PERFECT.

amāv monu rēx audīv	-erim,	-erīs,	-erit;	-erīmus,	-erītis,	-erint.
------------------------------	--------	--------	--------	----------	----------	---------

PLUPERFECT.

amāv monu rēx audīv	-issem,	-issēs,	-isset;	-issēmus,	-issētis,	-issent.
------------------------------	---------	---------	---------	-----------	-----------	----------

PERFECT INFINITIVE.

amāv monu rēx audīv	-isse.
------------------------------	--------

SUPINE SYSTEM.¹

FUT. INFINITIVE.

FUT. PARTICIPLE.

SUPINE.

amāt monit rēct audīt	-ūrus esse.	-ūrus.	-um, -ū.
--------------------------------	-------------	--------	----------

¹ For the *Perfect System*, see 222, II.; for the *Supine System*, 222, III.

² From the comparative view presented in 213-216, it will be seen that the four conjugations differ from each other only in the formation of the *Principal Parts* and in the endings of the *Present System*. See also 201, foot-note.

COMPARATIVE VIEW OF CONJUGATIONS.

216. PASSIVE VOICE.

SUPINE SYSTEM.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PERFECT.

amāt monit rēct audīt	}	-us sum,	-us es,	-us est;	-I ¹ sumus,	-I estis,	-I sunt.
--------------------------------	---	----------	---------	----------	------------------------	-----------	----------

PLUPERFECT.

amāt monit rēct audīt	}	-us eram,	-us erās,	-us erat;	-I erāmus,	-I erātis,	-I erant.
--------------------------------	---	-----------	-----------	-----------	------------	------------	-----------

FUTURE PERFECT.

amāt monit rēct audīt	}	-us erō,	-us eris,	-us erit;	-I erimus,	-I eritis,	-I erunt.
--------------------------------	---	----------	-----------	-----------	------------	------------	-----------

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PERFECT.

amāt monit rēct audīt	}	-us sim,	-us sis,	-us sit;	-I simus,	-I sitis,	-I sint.
--------------------------------	---	----------	----------	----------	-----------	-----------	----------

PLUPERFECT.

amāt monit rēct audīt	}	-us essem,	-us essēs,	-us esset;	-I essēmus,	-I essētis,	-I essent.
--------------------------------	---	------------	------------	------------	-------------	-------------	------------

INFINITIVE.

amāt monit rēct audīt	}	PERFECT. -us esse.	FUTURE. -um iri.
--------------------------------	---	-----------------------	---------------------

PERFECT PARTICIPLE.

amāt monit rēct audīt	}	-us.
--------------------------------	---	------

¹ In the plural, -us becomes -ī: *amāt-ī sumus*, etc.

217. A few verbs of the Third Conjugation form the Present Indicative in *iō*, *ior*, like verbs of the Fourth Conjugation. They are inflected with the endings of the Fourth wherever those endings have two successive vowels. These verbs are —

1. *Capiō*, to take; *cupiō*, to desire; *faciō*, to make; *fodiō*, to dig; *fugiō*, to flee; *jaciō*, to throw; *pariō*, to bear; *quatiō*, to shake; *rapiō*, to seize; *sapiō*, to be wise, with their compounds.

2. The compunods of the obsolete verbs, *laciō*, to entice, and *speciō*,¹ to look; *alliciō*, *ēliciō*, *illiciō*, *pelliciō*, etc.; *aspiciō*, *cōspiciō*, etc.

3. The Deponent Verbs: *gradior*, to go; *morior*, to die; *pator*, to suffer; see **231**.

218. ACTIVE VOICE. — *Capiō*, *I take*.

VERB STEM, *cap*; PRESENT STEM, *cape*.²

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	SUPINE.
<i>capiō</i> ,	<i>capere</i> ,	<i>cēpī</i> ,	<i>captum</i> .

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>capiō</i> , <i>capis</i> , <i>capit</i> ;	<i>capimus</i> , <i>capitis</i> , <i>capiunt</i> .
IMPERFECT.	
<i>capiebam</i> , <i>-iēbās</i> , <i>-iēbat</i> ;	<i>capiebāmus</i> , <i>-iēbātis</i> , <i>iēbant</i> .
FUTURE.	
<i>capiam</i> , <i>-iēs</i> , <i>-iet</i> ;	<i>capiemus</i> , <i>-iētis</i> , <i>-ient</i> .
PERFECT.	
<i>cēpī</i> , <i>-istī</i> , <i>-it</i> ;	<i>cēpimus</i> , <i>-istis</i> , <i>-ērunt</i> , <i>or ēre</i> .
PLUPERFECT.	
<i>cēperam</i> , <i>-erās</i> , <i>-erat</i> ;	<i>cēperāmus</i> , <i>-erātis</i> , <i>-erant</i> .
FUTURE PERFECT.	
<i>cēperō</i> , <i>-erīs</i> , <i>-erit</i> ;	<i>cēperīmus</i> , <i>-erītis</i> , <i>-erint</i> .

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

<i>capiam</i> , <i>-iās</i> , <i>-iat</i> ;	<i>capīamus</i> , <i>-iātis</i> , <i>-iant</i> .
---	--

IMPERFECT.

<i>caperem</i> , <i>-erēs</i> , <i>-eret</i> ;	<i>caperēmus</i> , <i>-erētis</i> , <i>-erent</i> .
--	---

PERFECT.

<i>cēperim</i> , <i>-erīs</i> , <i>-erit</i> ;	<i>cēperīmus</i> , <i>-erītis</i> , <i>-erint</i> .
--	---

PLUPERFECT.

<i>cēpissem</i> , <i>-issēs</i> , <i>-isset</i> ;	<i>cēpissēmus</i> , <i>-issetis</i> , <i>-issent</i> .
---	--

¹ *Speciō* occurs, but is exceedingly rare.

² With variable vowel — *e. i., cape, capi*.

IMPERATIVE.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Pres.</i> cape ;	capite.
<i>Fut.</i> capitō, capitō ;	capitōte, capiuntō.
INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Pres.</i> capere.	<i>Pres.</i> capiēns.
<i>Perf.</i> cēpisse.	
<i>Fut.</i> captūrus esse.	<i>Fut.</i> captūrus.
GERUND.	SUPINE.
<i>Gen.</i> capiendī,	
<i>Dat.</i> capiendō,	
<i>Acc.</i> capiendum,	<i>Acc.</i> captum,
<i>Abl.</i> capiendō.	<i>Abl.</i> captū.

219. PASSIVE VOICE.—Capior, *I am taken.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND
capior,	capī,	captus sum

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
capior, caperis, capitur ;	capimur, capimini, capiuntur.

IMPERFECT.

capiēbar, -iēbāris, -iēbātur ;	capiēbāmur, -iēbāmini, -iēbantur
--------------------------------	----------------------------------

FUTURE.

capiar, -iēris, -iētur ;	capiēmur, -iēmini, -ientur.
--------------------------	-----------------------------

PERFECT.

captus sum, es, est ;	captī sumus, estis, sunt.
-----------------------	---------------------------

PLUPERFECT.

captus eram, erās, erat ;	captī erāmus, erātis, erant.
---------------------------	------------------------------

FUTURE PERFECT.

captus erō, eris, erit ;	captī erimus, eritis, erunt.
--------------------------	------------------------------

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SINGULAR.	PRESENT.	PLURAL.
capiar, -iāris, -iātur;		capiāmur, -iāminī, -iantur.
IMPERFECT.		
caperer, -erēris, -erētur;		caperēmur, -erēminī, -erentur.
PERFECT.		
captus sim, sis, sit;		captī sīmus, sītis, sint.
PLUPERFECT.		
captus essem, essēs, esset;		captī essēmus, essētis, essent.

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> capere;		capiminī.
<i>Fut.</i> capitor,		
capitor;		capiuntor.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres.</i> capī.		
<i>Perf.</i> captus esse.		<i>Perf.</i> captus.
<i>Fut.</i> captum irī.		<i>Fut.</i> capiendus.

VERBAL INFLECTIONS.

220. The PRINCIPAL PARTS are formed in the four conjugations with the following endings, including the characteristic vowels, ā, ē, e, i :

CONJ. I.	ō,	āre,	āvi,	ātum,	
	amō,	amāre,	amāvi,	amātum,	to love.
CONJ. II. In a few verbs:	eō,	ēre,	ēvi,	ētum,	
	dēlēō,	dēlēre,	dēlēvi,	dēlētum,	to destroy.
In most verbs:	eō,	ēre,	ui,	itum,	
	moneō,	monēre,	monui,	monitum,	to advise.
CONJ. III. In consonant stems:	ō,	ere,	si,	tum,	
	carpō,	carpere,	carpsi,	carptum,	to pluck.
In vowel stems:	ō,	ere,	i,	tum,	
	acuō,	acuere,	acui,	acūtum,	to sharpen.
CONJ. IV.	iō,	ire,	ivi,	itum,	
	audiō,	audire,	audivi,	auditum,	to hear.

221. COMPOUNDS of verbs with dissyllabic Supines generally change the stem-vowel in forming the principal parts:

I. When the Present of the compound has i for e of the simple verb:

1. The Perfect and Supine generally resume the *e*:¹

regō,	regere,	rēxī,	rēctum,	to rule.
dī-rigō,	dirigere,	dīrēxī,	dirēctum,	to direct.

2. But sometimes only the Supine resumes the *e*:¹

teneō,	tenēre,	tenuī,	tentum,	to hold.
dē-tineō,	dētinēre,	dētinuī,	dētentum,	to detain.

II. When the Present of the compound has *i* for *a* of the simple verb:

1. The Perfect generally resumes the vowel of the simple perfect, and the Supine takes *e*,¹ sometimes *a*:

capīō,	capere,	cēpī,	captum,	to take.
ac-cipīō,	accipere,	accēpī,	acceptum,	to accept.

2. But sometimes the Perfect retains *i* and the Supine takes *e*:¹

rapīō,	rapere,	rapuī,	raptum,	to seize.
dī-ripīō,	diripere,	dīripuī,	dīreptum,	to tear asunder.

NOTE.—For *Reduplication in compounds*, see 255, I., 4; other peculiarities of compounds will be noticed under the separate conjugations.

222. All the forms of any regular verb arrange themselves in three distinct groups or systems:

I. The PRESENT SYSTEM, with the Present Infinitive as its basis, comprises—

1. The *Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative*—Active and Passive.
2. The *Present and Imperfect Subjunctive*—Active and Passive.
3. The *Imperative*—Active and Passive.
4. The *Present Infinitive*—Active and Passive.
5. The *Present Active Participle*.
6. The *Gerund* and the *Gerundive*.

NOTE.—These parts are all formed from the *Present Stem*, found in the Present Infinitive Active by dropping the ending *re*: *amāre*, present stem *AMĀ*; *monēre*, *MONĒ*; *regere*, *REGE*; *audire*, *AUDĪ*.

II. The PERFECT SYSTEM, with the Perfect Indicative Active as its basis, comprises in the Active Voice—

1. The *Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative*.
2. The *Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive*.
3. The *Perfect Infinitive*.

NOTE.—These parts are all formed from the *Perfect Stem*, found in the Perfect Indicative Active, by dropping *i*: *amāvī*, perfect stem *AMĀV*; *monuī*, *MONU*.

III. The SUPINE SYSTEM, with the Supine as its basis, comprises—

¹ The favorite vowel before *α*, or two or more consonants; see 24, 1.

1. The *Supines* in *um* and *ū*, the former of which with *irī* forms the *Future Infinitive Passive*.

2. The *Future Active* and *Perfect Passive Participles*, the former of which with *esse* forms the *Future Active Infinitive*, and the latter of which with the proper parts of the auxiliary *sum* forms in the Passive those tenses which in the Active belong to the *Perfect System*.

NOTE.—These parts are all formed from the *Supine Stem*, found in the Supine by dropping *um*: *amātum*, supine stem *amāt*; *monitum*, *monit*.

SYNOPSIS OF CONJUGATION

FIRST CONJUGATION.

223. ACTIVE VOICE.—Amō, *I love*.

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum.

2. PRESENT SYSTEM; STEM, *amā*.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Pres.</i> amō	amem	amā	amāre	amāns
<i>Imp.</i> amābam	amārem			
<i>Fut.</i> amābō		amātō		

Gerund, amandī, dō, etc.

3. PERFECT SYSTEM; STEM, *amāv*.

<i>Perf.</i> amāvī	amāverim		amāvisse	
<i>Plup.</i> amāveram	amāvissem			
<i>F. P.</i> amāverō				

4. SUPINE SYSTEM; STEM, *amāt*.

<i>Fut.</i>			amātūrus esse	amātūrus
-------------	--	--	---------------	----------

Supine, amātum, amātū.

224. PASSIVE VOICE.—Amor, *I am loved*.

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

amor, amārī, amātus sum.

2. PRESENT SYSTEM; STEM, *amā*.

<i>Pres.</i> amor	amer	amāre	amārī	
<i>Imp.</i> amābar	amārer			
<i>Fut.</i> amābor		amātor		

Gerundive, amandus.

3. SUPINE SYSTEM; STEM, *amāt.*

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Perf.</i> amātus sum	amātus sim		amātus esse	amātus
<i>Plup.</i> amātus eram	amātus essem			
<i>F. P.</i> amātus erō				
<i>Fut.</i>			amātum iri	

SECOND CONJUGATION.

225. ACTIVE VOICE.—Moneō, *I advise.*

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum.

2. PRESENT SYSTEM; STEM, *monē.*

<i>Pres.</i> moneō	moneam	monē	monēre	monēns
<i>Imp.</i> monēbam	monērem			
<i>Fut.</i> monēbō		monētō		

Gerund, monendī, dō, etc.

3. PERFECT SYSTEM; STEM, *monu.*

<i>Perf.</i> monuī	monuerim		monuisse	
<i>Plup.</i> monueram	monuissem			
<i>F. P.</i> monuerō				

4. SUPINE SYSTEM; STEM, *monit.*

<i>Fut.</i>			monitūrus esse	monitūrus
-------------	--	--	----------------	-----------

Supine, monitum, monitū.

226. PASSIVE VOICE.—Moneor, *I am advised.*

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

moneor, monērī, monitus sum.

2. PRESENT SYSTEM; STEM, *monē.*

<i>Pres.</i> moneor	monear	monēre	monērī	
<i>Imp.</i> monēbar	monērer			
<i>Fut.</i> monēbor		monētor		

Gerundive, monendus.

3. SUPINE SYSTEM; STEM, *monit.*

<i>Perf.</i> monitus sum	monitus sim		monitus esse	monitus
<i>Plup.</i> monitus eram	monitus essem			
<i>F. P.</i> monitus erō				
<i>Fut.</i>			monitum iri	

THIRD CONJUGATION.

227. ACTIVE VOICE.—Regō, *I rule.*

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

regō, regere, rēxī, rēctum.

2. PRESENT SYSTEM; STEM, *rege.*

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPERATIVE.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Pres.</i>	regō	regam	rege	regere	regēns
<i>Imp.</i>	regēbam	regerem			
<i>Fut.</i>	regam		regitō		

Gerund, regendī, dō, etc.

3. PERFECT SYSTEM; STEM, *rēx.*

<i>Perf.</i>	rēxī	rēxerim		rēxisse	
<i>Plup.</i>	rēxeram	rēxissem			
<i>F. P.</i>	rēxerō				

4. SUPINE SYSTEM; STEM, *rēct.*

<i>Fut.</i>			rēctūrus esse	rēctūrus
-------------	--	--	---------------	----------

Supine, rēctum, rēctū.

228. PASSIVE VOICE.—Regor, *I am ruled.*

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

regor, regī, rēctus sum.

2. PRESENT SYSTEM; STEM, *rege.*

<i>Pres.</i>	regor	regar	regere	regī	
<i>Imp.</i>	regēbar	regerer			
<i>Fut.</i>	regar		regitor		

Gerundive, regendus.

3. SUPINE SYSTEM; STEM, *rēct.*

<i>Perf.</i>	rēctus sum	rēctus sim		rēctus esse	rēctus
<i>Plup.</i>	rēctus eram	rēctus essem			
<i>F. P.</i>	rēctus erō				
<i>Fut.</i>				rēctum Irī	

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

229. ACTIVE VOICE.—Audiō, *I hear.*

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

audiō, audire, audiṽi, audītum.

2. PRESENT SYSTEM; STEM, *audi.*

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Pres.</i>	audiō	audiam	audi	audire	audiēns
<i>Imp.</i>	audiēbam	audīrem			
<i>Fut.</i>	audiam		audītō		

Gerund, audiendī, dō, etc.3. PERFECT SYSTEM; STEM, *audiṽ.*

<i>Perf.</i>	audiṽi	audīverim		audīvisse	
<i>Plup.</i>	audīveram	audīvissem			
<i>F. P.</i>	audīverō				

4. SUPINE SYSTEM; STEM, *audīt.*

<i>Fut.</i>			audītūrus esse	audītūrus
-------------	--	--	----------------	-----------

Supine, audītum, audītū.230. PASSIVE VOICE.—Audior, *I am heard.*

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS

audior, audīrī, audītus sum.

2. PRESENT SYSTEM; STEM, *audi.*

<i>Pres.</i>	audior	audiar	audire	audīrī	
<i>Imp.</i>	audiēbar	audīrer			
<i>Fut.</i>	audiar		auditor		

Gerundive, audiendus3. SUPINE SYSTEM; STEM, *audīt.*

<i>Perf.</i>	audītus sum	audītus sim		audītus esse	audītus
<i>Plup.</i>	audītus eram	audītus essem			
<i>F. P.</i>	audītus erō				
<i>Fut.</i>				audītum irī	

DEPONENT VERBS.

231. Deponent Verbs have in general the forms of the Passive Voice with the signification of the Active. But—

1. They have also in the Active, the future infinitive, the participles, gerund, and supine.

2. The gerundive generally has the passive signification; sometimes also the perfect participle: *hortandus*, to be exhorted; *expertus*, tried.

3. The Future Infinitive of the Passive form is rare, as the Active form is generally used.

NOTE.—The synopsis of a single example will sufficiently illustrate the peculiarities of Deponent Verbs.

232. Hortor, I exhort.

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum.

2. PRESENT SYSTEM; STEM, *hortā*.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Pres.</i> hortor ¹	horter	hortāre	hortārī	hortāns
<i>Imp.</i> hortābar	hortārer			
<i>Fut.</i> hortābor		hortātor		
<i>Gerund.</i> hortandī.		<i>Gerundive</i> , hortandus.		

3. SUPINE SYSTEM; STEM, *hortāt*.

<i>Perf.</i> hortātus sum	hortātus sim		hortātus esse	hortātus
<i>Plup.</i> hortātus eram	hortātus essem			
<i>F. P.</i> hortātus erō				
<i>Fut.</i>			hortātūrus esse	hortātūrus
<i>Supine</i> , hortātum, hortātū.				

NOTE.—For the Principal Parts of Deponent Verbs in the other conjugations, see 268, 283, and 288. From these Principal Parts the pupil, by the aid of the paradigms already learned, will be able to inflect any Deponent Verb.

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

233. The ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION, formed by combining the Future Active Participle with *sum*, denotes an intended or future action:

¹ The tenses are inflected regularly through the persons and numbers: *hortor*, *hortāris*, *hortātur*, *hortāmur*, *hortāmini*, *hortantur*. All the forms in this synopsis have the active meaning, *I exhort*, *I was exhorting*, etc., except the *Gerundive*, which has the passive force, *deserving to be exhorted*, *to be exhorted*. The *Gerundive*, as it is passive in meaning, cannot be used in intransitive Deponent Verbs, except in an impersonal sense; see 301, 1.

Amātūrus sum, I am about to love.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INFINITIVE.
<i>Pres.</i> amātūrus sum ¹	amātūrus sim	amātūrus esse
<i>Imp.</i> amātūrus eram	amātūrus essem	
<i>Fut.</i> amātūrus erō		
<i>Perf.</i> amātūrus fui	amātūrus fuerim	amātūrus fuisse
<i>Plup.</i> amātūrus fueram	amātūrus fuisset	
<i>F. P.</i> amātūrus fuerō ¹		

234. The PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION, formed by combining the Gerundive with *sum*, denotes *necessity* or *duty*.

*Amandus sum, I must be loved.*²

<i>Pres.</i> amandus sum	amandus sim	amandus esse
<i>Imp.</i> amandus eram	amandus essem	
<i>Fut.</i> amandus erō		
<i>Perf.</i> amandus fui	amandus fuerim	amandus fuisse
<i>Plup.</i> amandus fueram	amandus fuisset	
<i>F. P.</i> amandus fuerō		

NOTE.—The Periphrastic Conjugation, in the widest sense of the term, includes all forms compounded of participles with *sum*; but as the Pres. Part. with *sum* is equivalent to the Pres. Ind. (*amāns est* = *amat*), and is accordingly seldom used, and as the Perf. Part. with *sum* is, in the strictest sense, an integral part of the regular conjugation, the term *Periphrastic* is generally limited to the two conjugations above given.

PECULIARITIES IN CONJUGATION.

235. Perfects in *āvī*, *ēvī*, *ivī*, and the tenses derived from them, sometimes drop *v* and suffer contraction before *s* and *r*, and sometimes before *t*. Thus—

A with the following vowel becomes *ā*: *amāvistī* (*amaistī*), *amāstī*; *amāveram* (*amaeram*), *amāram*; *amāvisse* (*amaisse*), *amāsse*; *amāvit* (*an-ait*), *amāt*.

E with the following vowel becomes *ē*: *nēvī* (to spin), *nēvistī* (*neisti*), *nēstī*; *nēverunt* (*neŕunt*), *nērunt*.

I-I and **I-i** become **I**: *audīvistī* (*a-diistī*), *audīstī*; *audīvissem* (*audiissem*), *audissem*; *audīvit* (*audiit*), *audīt*.

1. Perfects in *ivī* sometimes drop *v* in any of their forms, but generally without contraction,³ except before *s*: *audīvī*, *auari* *audiit*, *audieram*; *audīvistī*, *audiistī* or *audistī*.

¹ The periphrastic forms are inflected regularly through the persons and numbers: *amātūrus sum*, *es*, *est*. The Fut. Perf. is rare. ² Or, *I deserve* (ought) to be loved.

³ Then in prose the first *i* retains quantity and accent: *audī'-i*, *audī'-it*. See Geelmann, p. 94.

2. Perfects in *ovī*.—The perfects of *nōscō*, to know, and *movēō*, to move, sometimes drop *v* and suffer contraction before *r* and *s*: *nōvistī*, *nōstī*.

3. Perfects in *sī* and *xī* sometimes drop *is*, *is*, or *sis*: *scripsistī*, *scripsī*; *diixisse*, *diixē*; *accessistis*, *accēstis*.

236. The ending **ēre** for **ērunt** in the Perfect is common in Livy and the poets, but rare in Cicero and Caesar.

NOTE.—The form in *ēre* does not drop *v*. In poetry *erunt* occurs.

237. **Re** for **ris** in the ending of the second Person of the Passive is rare in the Present Indicative, but common in the other tenses.

238. **Dic**, **dūc**, **fac**, and **fer**, for *dice*, *dūce*, *face*, and *ferē*, are the Imperatives of *dicō*, *dūcō*, *faciō*, and *ferō*, to say, lead, make, and bear.

NOTE 1.—*Dice*, *dūce*, and *face* occur in poetry.

NOTE 2.—Compounds follow the simple verbs, except those of *faciō*, which change *a* into *i*: *cōnfice*.

239. **Undus** and **undī** for *endus* and *endī* occur as the endings of the Gerundive and Gerund of Conj. III. and IV., especially after *i*: *faciundus*, from *faciō*, to make; *dicundus*, from *dicō*, to say.

240. ANCIENT AND RARE FORMS.—Various other forms, belonging in the main to the earlier Latin, occur in the poets, even of the classical period, and occasionally also in prose, to impart to the style an air of antiquity or solemnity. Thus forms in—

1. **ībam** for *ībam*, in the Imperfect Ind. of Conj. IV.: *scībam* for *sciēbam*. See Imperfect of *eō*, to go, 295.

2. **ībo**, **ībor**, for *iam*, *iar*, in the Future of Conj. IV.: *scrībō* for *scrīam*; *opperībor* for *opperiar*. See Future of *eō*, 295.

3. **īm** for *am* or *em*, in the Pres. Subj.: *edīm*, *edīs*, etc., for *edam*, *edās*, etc.; *duīm* (from *duō*, for *dō*), for *dem*.—In *sim*, *velīm*, *nōlīm*, *mālīm* (204 and 293), *īm* is the common ending.

4. **āssō**, **ēssō**, and **sō**, in the Future Perfect, and **āssim**, **ēssim**, and **sim**, in the Perfect Subjunctive of Conj. I., II., III.: *faxō* (*faciō*) for *fēcērō*¹ (from *faciō*); *faxīm* for *fēcērīm*¹; *ausīm* for *ausus sim* (for *ause-rim*, from *audeō*). Rare examples are: *levāssō* for *levāverō*; *prohibēssō* for *prohibuerō*; *jussō* for *jusserō*; *capsō* for *cēperō*; *axō* for *ēgerō*; *occīsīt* for *occiderīt*; *taxīs* for *tetigerīs*.

5. **tō** and **minō** for *tor*, the former in both numbers, the latter in the singular, of the Future Imperative, Passive and Deponent: *arbitrātō*, *arbitrāminō* for *arbitrātor*; *ūtuntō* for *ūtuntor*.

6. **ier** for *ī* in the Present Passive Infinitive: *amārier* for *amārī*; *vidērier* for *vidērī*.

¹ Remember that *r* in *erō* and *erīm* was originally *s*; see 31, 1; 204, foot-note 2.

ANALYSIS OF VERBAL ENDINGS.

241. The endings which are appended to the stems in the formation of the various parts of the finite verb contain three distinct elements:

1. The TENSE-SIGN: **ba** in *amā-ba-n*, *regē-bā-s*.
2. The MOOD-VOWEL: **ā** in *mone-ā-s*, *reg-ā-s*.
3. The PERSONAL ENDING: **s** in *mone-ā-s*, *reg-ā-s*.

I. TENSE-SIGNS.

242. The Present is without any tense-sign: *amā-s*. So also the Future¹ in Conjugations III. and IV.

243. In the other tense-forms of all regular verbs, the tense-sign is found in the auxiliary with which these forms are all compounded:

Amā-bam,² *amāv-eram*; *amā-bō*, *amāv-erō*; *monē-bam*, *monu-eram*.

II. MOOD-SIGNS.

244. The Indicative has no special sign to mark the Mood.

245. The Subjunctive has a long vowel—*ā*, *ē*,³ or *ī*⁴—before the Personal Endings:

Mone-ā-mus, *mone-ā-tis*, *am-ē-mus*, *am-ē-tis*, *s-ī-mus*, *s-ī-tis*.

NOTE.—This vowel is shortened before final *m* and *t*, and generally in the Perfect before *s*, *mus*, and *tis*. *moneam*, *amet*, *sit*, *fueris*, *amāverimus*, *amāveritis*.

¹ This Future is in form a Present Subjunctive, though it has assumed in full the force of the Future Indicative; see foot-note 4 below.

² *Bam* and *eram* are both auxiliary verbs in the Imperfect, the former from the stem *dhū*, the old form of *fu* in *fu-ī*, and the latter from the stem *es*; the former added to the Present stem forms the Imperfect, the latter added to the Perfect stem forms the Pluperfect. *Bō* and *erō* are Future forms, the former from *dhū*, the latter from *es*; the former added to the Present stem forms the Future in Conjugations I. and II., the latter added to the Perfect stem forms the Future Perfect. In the Subjunctive the tense-forms, except the Present, are compounded with Subjunctive tense-forms from *es*; thus, *erem* in *reg-erem* is for *esem*, the old form of *essem*; *erim* in *rēx-erim* is for *esim* = *sīm*, and *issim* in *rēx-issim* is for *essem*; thus the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive of *sum* added to the Perfect stem form the Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive.

³ This *ē* comes from *a-ī*, of which the *ī* alone is the true Mood-Sign.

⁴ The Latin Subjunctive contains the forms of two distinct Moods—the Subjunctive with the sign *ā*, and the Optative with the sign *ī*, sometimes contained in *ē* for *a-ī*. Thus: Subjunctive, *mone-ā-mus*, *audi-ā-tis*; Optative, *s-ī-mus*, *rēxer-ī-tis*, *am-ē-mus* for *ama-ī-mus*, *reger-ē-s* for *regera-ī-s*. The Subjunctive and Optative forms, originally distinct, have in the Latin been blended into one Mood, called the Subjunctive, and are used without any difference of meaning. Thus the Mood in *mone-ā-mus*, a Subjunctive form, has precisely the same force as in *am-ē-mus*, an Optative form. The First Person Singular of Futures in *am—regam*, *audiam*, etc.—is in form a Subjunctive, while the other Persons, *regēs*, *et*, etc., *audiēs*, *et*, etc., are in form Optatives.

246. The Imperative is distinguished by its Personal Endings; see 247, 3.

III. PERSONAL ENDINGS.

247. The Personal Endings are formed from ancient pronominal stems, and have, accordingly, the force of pronouns in English. They are as follows:

	PERSON.	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.	MEANING.
Singular. ¹	First	m	r	I
	Second	s	ris	thou, you
	Third	t	tur	he, she, it
Plural. ²	First	mus	mur	we
	Second	tis	mini ³	you
	Third	nt	ntur	they

EXAMPLES.

amāba-m	amāba-r	regō	rego-r
amābā-s	amābā-ris	regi-s	rege-ris
amāba-t	amābā-tur	regi-t	regi-tur
amābā-mus	amābā-mur	regi-mus	regi-mur
amābā-tis	amābā-mini	regi-tis	regi-mini
amāba-nt	amāba-ntur	regu-nt	regu-ntur

1. OMITTED.—In the Present,⁴ Perfect, and Future Perfect Ind. of all the conjugations, and in the Future Ind. of Conjugations I. and II., the ending *m* does not appear. In these forms the First Person ends in *ō*:⁵ *amō*, *amābō*, *amāverō*; except in the Perfect, where it ends in *ī*:⁶ *amāvī*.

2. The endings of the Perfect Active are peculiar. They are the same as in *fuī*:

¹ In the Singular these Personal Endings contain each—(1) in the Active Voice one pronominal stem, *m*, I; *s*, thou, you; *t*, he; and (2) in the Passive two such stems, one denoting the Person, and the other the Passive Voice: thus, in the ending *tur*, *t* (*tū*) denotes the person, and *r*, the voice. *R* of the first person stands for *m-r*.

² In the Plural the Endings contain each—(1) in the Active two pronominal stems: *mu-s* = *m* (*mu*) and *s*, I and you, i. e., we; *tis* = *t* (the original form for *s*, thou, as seen in *tū*, thou) and *s*, = *s* and *s*, thou and thou, i. e., you; *nt* = *n* and *t*, he and he, i. e., they; and (2) in the Passive three such stems, the third denoting the Passive Voice: thus in *ntur*, *nt* (*ntu*) denotes the person and number, and *r*, the voice.

³ *Minī* was not originally a Personal Ending, but the Plural of a Passive Participle, not otherwise used in Latin, but seen in the Greek (*μενοι*). *Amāminī*, originally *amāminī estis*, means *you are loved*, as *amātī estis* means *you have been loved*.

⁴ Except in *sum*, I am, and *inquam*, I say.

⁵ The origin of this final *ō* is uncertain. Curtius regards it as simply the *thematic* vowel, but Meyer recognizes in it a *suffix* combined with the *thematic* vowel; see Curtius, *Verbum*, I., pp. 199, 200; Meyer, p. 349.

⁶ Probably a part of the stem; but see Curtius, *Verbum*, II., p. 173; Papillon, pp. 194-196; also two papers by the author, on the Formation of the Tenses for Completed Action in the Latin Finite Verb; Transactions of the Am. Phil. Assoc., 1874 and 1875.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>First Pers.</i>	fu-ī ¹	fu-i-mus
<i>Second</i>	fu-is-tī	fu-is-tis
<i>Third</i>	fu-i-t	fu-ēru-nt or ēre

3. The Imperative Mood has the following Personal Endings :

	ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Pres. Second Pers.</i>	— ²	te	re	mini
<i>Fut. Second</i>	tō	tōte	tor	
<i>Third</i>	tō	ntō	tor	ntor

248. Infinitives, Participles, Gerunds, and Supines are formed with the following endings:

	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
<i>Infinitive Present</i>	re (ere)	rī (erī), ī
<i>Perfect</i>	isse	us esse
<i>Future</i>	ūrus esse	um irī
<i>Participle Present</i>	ns	
<i>Future</i>	ūrus	
<i>Perfect</i>		us
<i>Gerundive</i>		ndus
<i>Gerund</i>	ndī	
<i>Supine</i>	um, ū	

FORMATION OF STEMS.

249. The three Special Stems are all formed from the Verb Stem.

I. PRESENT STEM.

250. The Present Stem, found in the Present Infinitive Active by dropping *re*, is generally the same as the Verb Stem in the First and in the Fourth Conjugations, and sometimes in the Second. Thus, *amā*, *dēlē*, and *audī*³ are both Present Stems and Verb Stems.

¹ *M* is omitted in the first person, and *tī*, an ancient form of *sī*, *s*, is used in the second. Otherwise the endings themselves are regular, but in the second person *tī* and *tis* are preceded by *is*, and *ērunt* in *fu-ērunt* is for *esunt*, the full form for *sunt*. Thus *fu-ērunt* is a compound of *fu* and *esunt* for *sunt*. *Fu-istis*, in like manner, may be a compound of *fu* and *istis* for *estis*, and *fu-istī*, of *fu* and *istī* for *estī* for *es*.

² In the Present the ending is dropped in the Sing. Act., and the endings *te* and *re* are shortened from *tis* and *ris* of the Indicative by dropping *s* and changing final *i* into *e*; see 24, 1, note. In the Future, *tō* of the second person corresponds to *tī* of the Perfect Ind.; *tō* and *ntō* of the third person to *t* and *nt*. *Tor* and *ntor* add *r* to *tō* and *ntō*. *Tōte* doubles the pronominal stem.

³ The final vowels are generally explained as derived from *aJa*, which became, in Donj. I., *aJo*, shortened to *ō* in *am-ō*, and to *ā* in the other forms, as *am-ā-mus*; in

251. The Present Stem, when not the same as the Verb Stem, is formed from it by one of the following methods :

1. By adding a short vowel, called the *Thematic vowel* :¹

regō ;	<i>Stem</i> , reg ;	<i>Present Stem</i> , rege ;	<i>to rule.</i>
canō ;	" can ;	" cane ;	<i>to sing.</i>

2. By adding a *Thematic vowel* preceded by *n*, *sc*, or *t* :

sinō ;	<i>Stem</i> , si ;	<i>Present Stem</i> , sine ;	<i>to permit.</i>
spernō ;	" sper, sprē ;	" sperne ;	<i>to spurn.</i>
temnō ;	" tem ;	" temne ;	<i>to despise.</i>
veterāscō ;	" veterā ;	" veterāscē ;	<i>to grow old.</i>
crēsco ;	" crē ;	" crēscē ;	<i>to increase.</i>
plectō ;	" plect ;	" plectē ;	<i>to braid.</i>

3. By adding a *Thematic vowel* preceded by *i* or *j* :

capio ;	<i>Stem</i> , cap ;	<i>Present Stem</i> , cap-je, cape ; ²	<i>to take.</i>
pellō ;	" pel ;	" pel-je, pelle ; ²	<i>to drive.</i>
curro ;	" our ;	" cur-je, curre ; ²	<i>to run.</i>

4. By adding a *Thematic vowel* and inserting *n*—changed to *m* before a labial, *b* or *p* ; see 33, 3 :

frangō ;	<i>Stem</i> , frag ;	<i>Present Stem</i> , frange ;	<i>to break.</i>
fundō ;	" fud ;	" funde ;	<i>to pour.</i>
rumpō ;	" rup ;	" rumpe ;	<i>to burst.</i>

5. By adding *ā*, *ē*, or *ī* :

juvō ;	<i>Stem</i> , juv ;	<i>Present Stem</i> , juvā ;	<i>to assist.</i>
videō ;	" vid ;	" vidē ;	<i>to see.</i>
hauriō ;	" haur for haus ;	" haurī ;	<i>to draw.</i>

6. By reduplicating the stem :

sistō ;	<i>Stem</i> , sta ;	<i>Present Stem</i> , sista, ³ siste ;	<i>to place.</i>
serō ;	" sa ;	" sisa, sise, sere ; ⁴	<i>to sow.</i>

NOTE.—Sometimes twq of these methods are united in the same stem :

gignō ;	<i>Stem</i> , gen ;	<i>Present Stem</i> , gigenē, gigne ; ⁵	<i>to beget.</i>
nancisco ;	" nac ;	" nancisce ; ⁶	<i>to obtain.</i>

Conj. II., *ejo*, shortened to *eō* in *dēl-eō*, and to *ē* in *dēl-ē-mus* ; and in Conj. IV., *ije* shortened to *iō* in *aud-iō*, to *iu* in *aud-iu-nt*, and to *ī* in *aud-ī-mus* ; see 335, foot-note.

¹ This *Thematic vowel*, originally *a*, is generally weakened to *e* or *i* : *reg-e-re*, *reg-i-mus* ; but sometimes it appears to take the form of *ō* or *u* : *reg-ō*, *reg-u-nt*. There is, however, some difference of opinion in regard to the origin of *ō* in such cases ; see 247, 1, foot-note 5

² With variable *Thematic vowel* ; see foot-note 1, above. *J*, pronounced *y*, assimilated to *l* and *r* in *pelle* and *curre*, as in the Greek βάλλω, from βάλλ-*j*ω. See Curtius, Verbum, I., p. 300.

³ For *sista* for *stasta*. The *e* in *siste* takes the several forms of the *Thematic vowel*.

⁴ *S* changed to *r* between two vowels ; see 31, 1. The vowel *a* of the stem is weakened to *i* before *s*, but to *e* before *r* ; see 24, 1 and 2.

⁵ Reduplication with *Thematic vowel*.

⁶ *N* inserted and *i-sc-e* added.

II. PERFECT STEMS.

252. Vowel Stems form the Perfect Stem by adding **v**:

amō (a-ō),	amāvi ;	Stem, amā ;	Perfect Stem, amāv ;	to love.
dēlēō,	dēlēvi ;	“ dēlē ;	“ dēlēv ;	to destroy.
audiō,	audivī ;	“ audī ;	“ audiv ;	to hear.

1. In verbs in *uō*, the Perfect Stem is the same as the Verb Stem :

acuō,	acui ;	Stem, acu ;	Perfect Stem, acu ;	to sharpen.
-------	--------	-------------	---------------------	-------------

253. Many Liquid Stems, and a few others, form the Perfect Stem by adding **u**:

alō,	alui ;	Stem, al ;	Perfect Stem, alu ;	to nourish.
fremō,	fremui ;	“ frem ;	“ fremu ;	to rage.
teneō,	tenui ;	“ ten ;	“ tenu ;	to hold.
doceō,	docui ;	“ doc ;	“ docu ;	to teach.

254. Most Consonant Stems form the Perfect Stem by adding **s**:

regō,	rēxi ;	Stem, reg ;	Perfect Stem, rēx = rēgs ;	to rule.
scribō,	scripsi ;	“ scrib ;	“ scrips = scribs ;	to write.
carpō,	carpsi ;	“ carp ;	“ carps ;	to pluck.

255. A few Consonant Stems form the Perfect Stem without any suffix whatever. But of these—

I. Some reduplicate the stem :¹

canō,	cecini ;	Stem, can ;	Perfect Stem, cecin ;	to sing.
-------	----------	-------------	-----------------------	----------

1. The REDUPLICATION consists of the initial consonant (or consonants) of the stem with the following vowel, or with *e*—generally with the following vowel, if that vowel is *e*, *i*, *o*, or *u*, otherwise with *e* ; see examples under 271, 1, and 272, 1.

2. The STEM-VOWEL *a* is generally weakened to *i*, sometimes to *e* : *cadō*, *cecidī* (for *cecadī*), to fall.

3. In VERBS BEGINNING WITH *Sp* or *St*, the reduplication retains both consonants, but the stem drops the *s* : *spondeō*, *spopondī* (for *spospondī*), to promise ; *stō*, *stetī* (for *stestī*), to stand.

4. In COMPOUNDS the reduplication is generally dropped, but it is retained in the compounds of *dō*, to give ; *stō*, to stand ; *discō*, to learn ; *poscō*, to demand ; and sometimes in the compounds of *currō*, to run ; *re-spondeō*, *re-spondī*, to answer ; *circum-dō*, *circum-dedī* ; *circum-stō*, *circum-stetī*, to encircle. The compounds of *dō* which are of the third conjugation change *e* of the reduplication into *i* : *ad-dō*, *ad-didī* (for *ad-dedī*), to add ; see 259, 1.

II. Some lengthen the Stem-Vowel :²

emō,	ēmī ;	Stem, em ;	Perfect Stem, ēm ;	to buy.
agō,	ēgī ;	“ ag ;	“ ēg ;	to drive.
ab-igō,	ab-ēgī ;	“ abig ;	“ abēg ;	to drive away.

NOTE.—The stem-vowels *a* and (in compounds) *i* generally become *ē*, as in *agō* and *ab-igō*.

¹ See lists, 271, 1, and 272, 1.

² See lists, 271, 2; 272, 2.

III. Some retain the stem unchanged:¹

icō,	icī ;	Stem, ic ;	Perfect Stem, ic ;	to strike.
visō,	visī ;	" vis ;	" vis ;	to visit.

NOTE.—Of the few verbs belonging to this class, nearly all have the stem-syllable long

III. SUPINE STEM.

256. The Supine Stem adds *t* to the Verb Stem :

amō, ²	amātum ;	Stem, amā ;	Supine Stem, amāt ;	to love.
dicō,	dictum ;	" dic ;	" dict ;	to say.
monēō,	monitum ;	" moni ; ³	" monit ;	to advise.
dēlēō,	dēletum ;	" dēlē ;	" dēlet ;	to destroy.
audiō,	auditum ;	" audi ;	" audit ;	to hear.
carpō,	carptum ;	" carp ;	" carpt ;	to pluck.

1. Stems in *d* and *t*, most stems in *l* and *r*, and a few others, change *t* into *s* :

laedō,	laesum ;	Stem, laed ;	Supine Stem, laes ; ⁴	to hurt.
vertō,	versum ;	" vert ;	" vers ; ⁴	to turn.
verrō,	versum ;	" verr ;	" vers ;	to brush.
fallō,	falsum ;	" fall ;	" fals ;	to deceive.

CLASSIFICATION OF VERBS. *

FIRST CONJUGATION.

CLASS I.—STEM IN *ā* : PERFECT IN *vī* OR *uī*.257. Principal Parts in—*ō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*.⁶

These endings belong to most verbs of this conjugation. The following are examples :

dōnō	dōnāre	dōnāvī	dōnātum,	to bestow.
honōrō	honōrāre	honōrāvī	honōrātum,	to honor.
liberō	liberāre	liberāvī	liberātum,	to free.
nōminō	nōmināre	nōmināvī	nōminātum,	to name.
pūgnō	pūgnāre	pūgnāvī	pūgnātum,	to fight.
spērō	spērāre	spērāvī	spērātum,	to hope.

NOTE 1.—*Pōtō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, to drink, has also a supine, *pōtum*.

NOTE 2.—*Cēnātus*, from *cēnō*, 'to dine,' and *jūrātus*, from *jūrō*, 'to swear,' are active in meaning, *having dined*, etc. *Pōtus*, from *pōtō*, is also sometimes active in meaning

¹ See list, 272, 3.

² For *amaō*.

³ See 207.

⁴ *Laes* is for *laedt*, *plaus* for *plaudt*, *vis* for *vidt*, *vers* for *vertt*, *fals* for *fallt*, *vers* for *verrt*; see 35, 3, 2), note.

⁵ The Perfect Formation is selected as the special basis of this classification, because the irregularities of the other principal parts are less important and can be readily associated with this formation. In this classification the regular or usual formation is first given with a few examples, then complete lists (1) of all the simple verbs which deviate from this formation, and (2) of such compounds as deviate in any important particular from their simple verbs.

⁶ It is deemed unnecessary longer to retain the double mark \simeq over final *o* in verbs. The pupil has now learned that this vowel may be short, though it is generally long in the Augustan poets.

258. Principal Parts in—ō, āre, uī, itum.¹

crepō	crepāre	crepuī	crepitum, ²	<i>to creak.</i>
cubō	cubāre	cubuī	cubitum, ³	<i>to recline.</i>
domō	domāre	domuī	domitum,	<i>to tame.</i>
ēnecō	ēnecāre	ēnecuī	ēnectum, ⁴	<i>to kill.</i>
fricō	fricāre	fricuī	{ frictum, fricātum, }	<i>to rub.</i>
micō	micāre	micuī	_____ ⁵	<i>to glitter</i>
plicō	plicāre	{ plicāvī plicuī	{ plicātum, plicitum, ⁶ }	<i>to fold.</i>
secō	secāre	secuī	sectum, ⁷	<i>to cut.</i>
sonō	sonāre	sonuī	sonitum, ⁷	<i>to sound.</i>
tonō	tonāre	tonuī	_____	<i>to thunder</i>
vetō	vetāre	vetuī	vetitum,	<i>to forbid.</i>

CLASS II.—PERFECT IN ī.

259. Principal Parts in—ō, āre, ī, tum.

1. WITH REDUPLICATION.⁸

dō	dare	dedī	datum,	<i>to give.</i>
stō	stāre	stetī	stātum,	<i>to stand.</i>

2. WITH LENGTHENED STEM-VOWEL.⁸

juvō	juvāre	jūvī	jūtum, ⁷	<i>to assist.</i>
			{ lavātum, ⁹ }	
lavō	lavāre	lāvī	{ lautum, lōtum, }	<i>to wash.</i>

NOTE 1.—In *dō* the characteristic *a* is short by exception: ¹⁰ *dabam, dabō, darem*, etc. Four compounds of *dō*—*circumdō, pessumdō, satisdō*, and *venumdō*—are conjugated like the simple verb; the rest are of the Third Conjugation (271). The basis of several of these compounds is *dō*, 'to place,' originally distinct from *dō*, 'to give.'

NOTE 2.—Compounds of *stō* generally want the Supine. In the Perfect they have *stetī*, if the first part is a dissyllable, otherwise *stetī*: *adstō, adstāre, adstetī*. *Distō* and *exstō* want Perfect and Supine.

¹ Note deviations in the Supine.

² *Increpō, āre, uī (āvī), itum (ātum)*; *discrepō, āre, uī (āvī)*, —.

³ Compounds which insert *m*, as *accumbō*, etc., are of Conj. III.; see 273.

⁴ The simple *necō* is regular, and even in the compound the forms in *āvī* and *ātum* occur.

⁵ *Dimicō, āre, āvī (uī), ātum*; *ēmicō, āre, uī, ātum*.

⁶ *Duplicō, multiplico, replicō*, and *supplicō*, are regular: *āre, āvī, ātum*.

⁷ *Secō* has participle *secātūrus*; *sonō, sonātūrus*; *juvō, juvātūrus*, in compounds also *jūtūrus*. *Resonō* has Perfect *resonāvī*. Most compounds of *sonō* want the Supine.

⁸ See 255, I. and II.

⁹ In poetry, *lavō* is sometimes of Conj. III.: *lavō, lavere, lāvī*, etc.

¹⁰ This short vowel is explained by the fact that *dō* is a root-verb formed directly from the root *da* without the suffix from which the *ā* is derived in other verbs in this conjugation; see 250, foot-note.

260. DEPONENT VERBS.

In this conjugation deponent verbs are entirely regular.

cōnor	cōnārī	cōnātus sum,	<i>to endeavor.</i>
hortor	hortārī	hortātus sum,	<i>to exhort.</i>
mīror	mīrārī	mīrātus sum,	<i>to admire.</i>

SECOND CONJUGATION.

CLASS I.—STEM IN **ē**: PERFECT IN **vī** OR **uī**.261. Principal Parts in—**eō, ēre, ēvī, ētum.**

These endings belong to the following verbs :

dēleo	dēlēre	dēlēvī	dēlētum,	<i>to destroy.</i>
compleō	complēre	complēvī	complētum, ¹	<i>to fill.</i>
flēo	flēre	flēvī	flētum,	<i>to weep.</i>
nēo	nēre	nēvī	nētum, ²	<i>to spin.</i>

262. Principal Parts in—**eō, ēre, uī, itum.**

These endings belong to most verbs of this conjugation. The following are examples :

dēbeō	dēbēre	dēbuī	dēbitum,	<i>to owe.</i>
habeō	habēre	habuī	habitum,	<i>to have.</i>
moneō	monēre	monuī	monitum,	<i>to advise.</i>
noceō	nocēre	nocuī	nocitum,	<i>to hurt.</i>
pāreō	pārēre	pāruī	pāritum,	<i>to obey.</i>
placeō	placēre	placuī	placitum,	<i>to please.</i>
taceō	tacēre	tacuī	tacitum,	<i>to be silent.</i>

NOTE 1.—Many verbs with the Perfect in **uī** want the Supine. The following are the most important :

candeō, <i>to shine.</i>	madeō, <i>to be wet.</i>	sorbeō, <i>to swallow.</i>
egeō, <i>to want.</i>	niteō, <i>to shine.</i>	splendeō, <i>to shine.</i>
ēmineō, <i>to stand forth.</i>	oleō, <i>to smell.</i>	studeō, <i>to study.</i>
flōreō, <i>to bloom.</i>	palleō, <i>to be pale.</i>	stupeō, <i>to be amazed.</i>
frondeō, <i>to bear leaves.</i>	pateō, <i>to be open.</i>	timeō, <i>to fear.</i>
horreō, <i>to shudder.</i>	rubeō, <i>to be red.</i>	torpeō, <i>to be torpid.</i>
lateō, <i>to be hid.</i>	sileō, <i>to be silent.</i>	vireō, <i>to be green.</i>

NOTE 2.—Some verbs, derived mostly from adjectives, want both Perfect and Supine. The following are the most important :

albeō, <i>to be white.</i>	hebeō, <i>to be blunt.</i>	maereō, <i>to be sad.</i>
calveō, <i>to be bald.</i>	ūmeō, <i>to be moist.</i>	polleō, <i>to be powerful.</i>
cāneō, <i>to be gray.</i>	immineō, <i>to threaten.</i>	renideō, <i>to shine.</i>
flāveō, <i>to be yellow.</i>	lactēō, <i>to suck.</i>	squaleō, <i>to be filthy.</i>

¹ No other compounds of the obsolete *pleō* : *expleō, impleō*, etc.

² To these may be added *aboleō, abolēre, abolēvī, abolitum*, 'to destroy,' with Supine in *itum*. See also *abolēscō*, 277.

CLASS II.—STEM IN **c, n, r, OR s**: PERFECT IN **uī**.¹263. Principal Parts in—**eō, ēre, uī, tum** or **sum**.²

These endings belong to the following verbs :

cēnsēō	cēnsēre	cēnsuī	cēnsūm, ³	<i>to think.</i>
doceō	docēre	docuī	doctum,	<i>to teach.</i>
misceō	miscēre	miscuī	{ mistum, mixtum, ⁴	<i>to mix.</i>
teneō	tenēre	tenuī	tentum, ⁴	<i>to hold.</i>
torreō	torrēre	torruī	tostum,	<i>to roast.</i>

CLASS III.—STEM IN A CONSONANT: PERFECT IN **sī** OR **ī**.264. Principal Parts in—**eō, ēre, sī, tum**.

augeō	augēre	auxī	auctum,	<i>to increase.</i>
indulgeō	indulgēre	indulsi	indultum,	<i>to indulge.</i>
torqueō	torquēre	torsi	tortum,	<i>to twist.</i>

265. Principal Parts in—**eō, ēre, sī, sum**.²

algeō	algēre	alsī	————	<i>to be cold.</i>
ardeō	ardēre	arsī	arsum,	<i>to burn.</i>
cōniveō	cōnivēre	{ cōnivī cōnixī }	————	<i>to wink at.</i>
frigeō	frigēre	frīxi (rare)	————	<i>to be cold.</i>
fulgeō	fulgēre	fulsi	———— ⁵	<i>to shine.</i>
haereō	haerēre	haesi	haesum, ⁶	<i>to stick.</i>
jubeō	jubēre	jussi	jussum,	<i>to order.</i>
lūceō	lūcēre	lūxi	————	<i>to shine.</i>
lūgeō	lūgēre	lūxi	————	<i>to mourn.</i>
maneō	manēre	mānsī	mānsum,	<i>to remain.</i>
mulgeō	mulgēre	mulsi	mulsum,	<i>to milk.</i>
mulceō	mulcēre	mulsi	mulsum, ⁷	<i>to soothe.</i>
rideō	rīdēre	rīsi	rīsum,	<i>to laugh.</i>
suadeō	suādēre	suāsi	suāsum,	<i>to advise.</i>
tergeō	tergēre	tersi	tersum,	<i>to wipe.</i>
turgeō	turgēre	tursī (rare)	————	<i>to swell.</i>
urgeō (urgueō)	urgēre	ursī	————	<i>to press.</i>

NOTE.—*Cieō, ciēre, cīvī, citum*, to arouse, has a kindred form, *ciō, ciere, cīvī, citum*, from which it seems to have obtained its Perfect. In compounds the forms of the Fourth Conj prevail, especially in the sense of *to call, call forth*.

¹ For convenience of reference, a *General List* of all verbs involving irregularities will be found on page 388.

² The *Present Stem* adds *ē*; see 251, 5. For *phonetic changes*, see 33–36.

³ Participle *cēnsus* and *cēnsitus*.—*Percēnsēō* wants Supine: *recēnsēō* has *recēnsūm* and *recēnsitum*.

⁴ In most compounds the Supine is rare.

⁵ Poetic, *fulgō, fulgere*, etc.

⁶ The stem of *haereō* is *haes*. The Present adds *ē* and changes *s* to *r* between two vowels. In *haesi* and *haesum*, *s* standing for *ss* or *st* is not changed.

⁷ In compounds sometimes *mulctum*.

266. Principal Parts in—eō, ēre, i, tum.

WITH LENGTHENED STEM-VOWEL.

caveō	cavēre	cāvī	cautum,	<i>to beware.</i>
faveō	favēre	fāvī	fautum,	<i>to favor.</i>
foveō	fovēre	fōvī	fōtum,	<i>to cherish.</i>
moveō	movēre	mōvī	mōtum,	<i>to move.</i>
paveō	pavēre	pāvī	_____	<i>to fear.</i>
voveō	vovēre	vōvī	vōtum,	<i>to vow.</i>

267. Principal Parts in—eō, ēre, i, sum.

1. WITH REDUPLICATION.¹

mordeō	mordēre	momordī	morsum,	<i>to bite.</i>
pendeō	pendēre	pependī	pēsum,	<i>to hang.</i>
spondeō	spondēre	spopondī	spōsum,	<i>to promise.</i>
tondeō	tōndēre	totondī	tōnsum,	<i>to shear.</i>

2. WITH LENGTHENED STEM-VOWEL.

sedeō	sedēre	sēdī	sēssum, ²	<i>to sit.</i>
videō	vidēre	vīdī	vīsum,	<i>to see.</i>

3. WITH UNCHANGED STEM.

cōnīveō	cōnīvēre	cōnīvī, cōnīxī	_____ ³	<i>to wink at.</i>
ferveō	fervēre	fervī, ferbuī	_____	<i>to boil.</i>
langueō	langueēre	languī	_____	<i>to be languid.</i>
liqueō	liqueēre	liquī, licuī	_____	<i>to be liquid.</i>
prandeō	prandēre	prandī	prānsum, ⁴	<i>to dine.</i>
strīdeō	strīdēre	strīdī	_____	<i>to creak.</i>

268. DEPONENT VERBS.

1. Regular.

liceor	licēri	licitus sum,	<i>to bid.</i>
mereor	merēri	meritus sum,	<i>to deserve.</i>
polliceor	pollicēri	pollicitus sum,	<i>to promise.</i>
tueor	tuēri	{ tuitus sum, }	<i>to protect.</i>
		{ tūtus sum, }	
vereor	verēri	veritus sum,	<i>to fear.</i>

2. Irregular.

fateor	fatēri	fassus sum, ⁵	<i>to confess.</i>
medeor	medēri	_____	<i>to cure.</i>
misereor	miserēri	{ miseritus sum, }	<i>to pity.</i>
		{ misertus sum, }	
reor	rēri	ratus sum,	<i>to think.</i>

¹ For reduplication in compounds, see 255, I., 4.² So *circumsedeō* and *supersedeō*. Other compounds thus: *assideō*, *ēre*, *assēdī*, *assessum*; but *disideō*, *praesideō*, and *resideō*, want Supine.³ Observe that the *supine stem* is wanting in most of these verbs.⁴ Participle, *prānsus*, in an active sense, *having dined*.⁵ *Confiteor*, *ēri*, *cōnfessus*: so *profiteor*.

3. Semi-Deponent—Deponent in the Perfect.

audeō	audēre	ausus sum,	to dare.
gaudeō	gaudēre	gāvīsus sum,	to rejoice.
soleō	solēre	solitus sum,	to be accustomed

THIRD CONJUGATION.

NOTE.—This conjugation contains the *primitive* verbs of the language; see 335.

CLASS I.—STEM IN A CONSONANT: PERFECT IN SĪ OR Ī

269. Principal Parts in—ō (or iō), ere, sī, tum.

These are the regular endings in verbs whose stems end in a consonant. The following are examples: ¹

carpō	carpere	carpsī	carptum, ²	to pluck.
cingō	cingere	cinxī (gsī)	cinctum,	to gird.
dīcō	dīcere	dīxī	dictum,	to say.
lūcō	dūcere	dūxī	ductum,	to lead.
exstinguō	exstinguere	extinxī	extinctum, ³	to extinguish.
gerō	gerere	gessi	gestum,	to carry.
nūbō	nūbere	nūpsī	nūptum,	to marry.
regō	regere	rēxī	rēctum, ²	to rule.
sūmō	sūmere	sūmpsī	sūmptum,	to take.
trahō	trahere	traxī	tractum,	to draw.
ūrō	ūrere	ussī	ūstum,	to burn.
vehō	vehere	vēxī	vectum,	to carry.
vīvō	vivere	vīxī	victum,	to live.

270. Principal Parts in—ō (or iō), ere, sī, sum.¹

cādō	cēdere	cēssī	cēssum,	to yield.
claudō	claudere	clausī	clausum, ⁴	to close.
dividō	dividere	divīsī	divīsum,	to divide.
ēvādō	ēvādere	ēvāsī	ēvāsūm, ⁵	to evade.
figō	figere	fixī	fixum,	to fasten.
flectō	flectere	flēxī	flexum,	to bend.
frendō	frendere	—	{ frēsūm, } { fressūm, }	to gnash.
laedō	laedere	laesī	laesum, ⁴	to hurt.
lūdō	lūdere	lūsī	lūsum,	to play.
mittō	mittere	mīsī	missum,	to send.
mergō	mergere	mersī	mersum,	to dip.
nectō	nectere	{ nēxī } { nexuī ⁶ }	nexum,	to bind.
pectō	pectere	pēxī	pexum,	to comb.

¹ For *Phonetic Changes*, see 30-36.

² The stem-vowel is often changed in compounds: *carpō*, *dē-cerpō*; *regō*, *dī-rigō*; for this change, see 344, 4; also 221.

³ So other compounds of *stinguō* (rare): *distingūō*, etc.

⁴ Compounds of *claudō* have *ū* for *au*, *con-clūdō*; those of *laedō*, *i* for *ae*, *il-lidō*; those of *plaudō* generally *ō* for *au*, *ex-plūdō*; those of *quatō*, *cu* for *qua*, *con-cutō*.

⁵ So other compounds of *vādō*.

⁶ Compounds take this form in the Perfect.

plectō	plectere	plēxi	plēxum,	<i>to plait.</i>
plaudō	plaudere	plausi	plausum, ¹	<i>to applaud.</i>
premō	premere	pressi ²	pressum,	<i>to press.</i>
quatiō	quaterere	quassi ²	quassum, ¹	<i>to shake.</i>
spargō	spargere	sparsi	sparsum,	<i>to scatter.</i>
rādō	rādere	rāsi	rāsum,	<i>to shave.</i>
rōdō	rōdere	rōsi	rōsum,	<i>to gnaw.</i>
tergō	tergere	tersi	tersum, ³	<i>to wipe off.</i>
trūdō	trūdere	trūsi	trūsum,	<i>to thrust.</i>

271. Principal Parts in—ō (or iō), ere, i, tum.

1. WITH REDUPLICATION.

abdō	abdere	abdiī	abditum, ⁴	<i>to hide.</i>
canō	canere	ceciī	cantum, ⁵	<i>to sing.</i>
crēdō	crēdere	crēdiī	crēditum, ⁶	<i>to believe.</i>
discō	discere	didici	—	<i>to learn.</i>
pangō	pangere	pepigi	pactum, ⁷	<i>to bargain.</i>
pangō	pangere	{ panxi pēgi	{ pactum, ⁷ pactum, ⁸	<i>to fix in.</i>
pariō	parere	peperi	partum, ⁸	<i>to bring forth.</i>
sistō	sistere	stiti	statum, ⁹	<i>to place.</i>
tangō	tangere	tetigi	tactum, ¹⁰	<i>to touch.</i>
tendō	tendere	tetendi	{ tentum, ¹⁰ tēsum,	<i>to stretch.</i>
tollō	tollere	sustuli	sublatum, ¹¹	<i>to raise.</i>
vēndō	vēdere	vēdiī	vēditum, ⁶	<i>to sell.</i>
pungō	pungere	pupugi	pūctum, ¹²	<i>to prick.</i>

2. WITH LENGTHENED STEM-VOWEL.

agō	agere	ēgi	āctum, ¹³	<i>to drive.</i>
capiō	capere	cēpi	captum, ¹⁴	<i>to take.</i>
emō	emere	ēmī	ēptum, ¹⁵	<i>to buy.</i>

¹ See page 127, foot-note 4.² See 34, 1, note; 35, 3, 2).³ Also *tergeo*, *torgere*, etc.; compounds take this form; see 265.⁴ So all compounds of *dō* except those of Conjugation I.; see 259, note 1.⁵ *Conciō*, *ere*, *concinui*, —; so *occinō* and *præcinō*; other compounds want Perfect and Supine.⁶ Explained as a compound of *dō*; see *abdō*.⁷ *Compingō*, *ere*, *compēgi*, *compactum*; so also *impingō*. *Dēpangō* wants Perfect: *repangō*, Perfect and Supine.⁸ Participle, *paritūrus*: compounds are of Conjugation IV.⁹ Compounds thus: *cōsistō*, *ere*, *cōstiti*, *cōstitutum*; but *circumsteti* also occurs.¹⁰ Compounds drop the reduplication.¹¹ *Attollō* and *extollō* want Perfect and Supine.¹² Compounds thus: *compungō*, *ere*, *compūnxi*, *compūnctum*.¹³ So *circumagō* and *peragō*; *satagō* wants Perfect and Supine. Other compounds change *a* into *i* in the Present: *abigō*, *ere*, *abēgi*, *abāctum*; but *coigō* becomes *cōgō*, *ere*, *coēgi*, *coāctum*, and *deigō*, *ere*, *dēgi*, without Supine. *Prōdigō* wants Supine, and *ambigō*, Perfect and Supine.¹⁴ So *antecapiō*; other compounds thus: *accipio*, *ere*, *accēpi*, *acceptum*.¹⁵ So *coemō*; other compounds thus: *adimō*, *ere*, *adēmī*, *adēptum*.

faciō	facere	fēcī	factum, ¹	to make.
fugīō	fugere	fūgī	fugitum,	to flee.
jaciō	jacere	jēcī	jactum, ²	to throw.
frangō	frangere	frēgī	frāctum, ³	to break.
legō	legere	lēgī	lēctum, ⁴	to read.
linquō	linquere	līquī	_____ ⁵	to leave.
scabō	scabere	scābī	_____	to scratch.
vincō	vincere	vīcī	vīctum,	to conquer.
rumpō	rumpere	rūpī	ruptum,	to burst.

272. Principal Parts in—ō (or iō), ere, I, sum.⁶

1. WITH REDUPLICATION.

cadō	cadere	cecidī	cāsum, ⁷	to fall.
caedō	caedere	cecīdī	caesum, ⁸	to cut.
currō	currere	cucurrī	cursum, ⁹	to run.
fallō	fallere	fefellī	falsum, ¹⁰	to deceive.
parcō	parcere	pepercī (parsī)	parsum, ¹¹	to spare.
pellō	pellere	pepulī	pulsum, ¹²	to drive.
pendō	pendere	pendī	pēsum, ¹²	to weigh.
poscō	poscere	poposcī	_____ ¹³	to demand.
tundō	tundere	tutudī	{ tūsum, ¹² }	to beat.
			{ tūsum, }	

2. WITH LENGTHENED STEM-VOWEL.

edō	edere	ēdī	ēsum,	to eat.
fodiō	fodere	fōdī	fossum,	to dig.
fundō	fundere	fūdī	fūsum,	to pour.

3. WITH UNCHANGED STEM.

accendō	accendere	accendī	accēsum, ¹⁴	to kindle.
cūdō	cūdere	cūdī	oūsum,	to forge.
dēfendō	dēfendere	dēfendī	dēfēsum, ¹⁴	to defend.

¹ Passive Irregular: *fīō, fierī, factus sum*; see 294. So *satisfaciō* and compounds of *faciō* with verbs; but compounds with prepositions thus: *cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectum*; with regular Passive, *cōnficior, cōnfici, cōnfectus sum*.

² *Superfaciō* has *jactum* or *jectum* in Supine: compounds with monosyllabic prepositions thus: *abiciō, abicere, abjēcī, abjectum*; see page 20, foot-note 1.

³ Compounds thus: *cōnfringō, ere, cōnfrēgī, cōnfrāctum*.

⁴ So compounds, except (1) *colligō, ere, collēgī, collēctum*; so *dēligō, ēligō, sēligō*—(2) *dīligō, ere, dīlēcī, dīlēctum*; so *intellegō, neglegō*, though *neglēgī* occurs in the Perfect.

⁵ Compounds with Supine: *relinquō, ere, reliquī, relictum*.

⁶ For *Phonetic Changes*, see 30-36.

⁷ *Incidō, ere, incidī, incāsum*; so *occidō* and *recidō*; other compounds want Supine.

⁸ Compounds thus: *concidō, ere, concidī, concisum*.

⁹ *Excurrō* and *præcurrō* generally retain the reduplication: *excucurrī, præcucurrī*; other compounds generally drop it.

¹⁰ *Refellō, ere, refellī*, without Supine.

¹¹ *Comparcō, ere, comparcī, comparsum*, also with *e* for *a*: *compercō, ere, etc.* *Imparcō* and *reparcō* want Perfect and Supine.

¹² Compounds drop reduplication, 255, I., 4.

¹³ Compounds retain reduplication, 255, I., 4.

¹⁴ So other compounds of the obsolete *candō* and *fendō*.

findō	findere	fidī (findī)	fissum,	to part.
icō	icere	icī	ictum,	to strike.
mandō	mandere	mandī	mānsum,	to chew.
pandō	pandere	pandī	{ passum, } { pānsum, }	to open.
pīnsō (pīsō)	pīnere	{ pīnsī pīnsuī	{ pīnsitum, } { pīstum, } pīnsum,	to pound.
prehendō	prehendere,	prehendī	prehēnsum, ¹	to grasp.
scandō	scandere	scandī	scānsum,	to climb.
scindō	scindere	scidī	scissum,	to rend.
solvō	solvere	solvī	solūtum, ²	to loose.
vellō	vellere	vellī (vulsī)	vulsum,	to pluck.
verrō	verrere	verrī	versum,	to brush.
vertō	vertere	vertī	versum, ³	to turn.
vīsō	vīsere	vīsī	vīsum,	to visit.
volvō	volvere	volvī	volūtum,	to roll.

NOTE 1.—Some verbs with the Perfect in *sī* or *ī* want the Supine:

angō, ere, ānxī,	to aquece.	metuō, ere, ī,	to fear.
annuō, ere, ī,	to assent.	pluō, ere, ī, or plūvī,	to rain.
batuō, ere, ī,	to beat.	psallō, ere, ī,	to play the harp.
bibō, ere, ī,	to drink.	sido, ere, ī, ⁴	to sit down.
congruō, ere, ī,	to agree.	ningō, ere, nīnxī,	to snow.
ingruō, ere, ī,	to assail.	stridō, ere, ī,	to creak.
lambō, ere, ī,	to lick.	sternuō, ere, ī,	to sneeze.

NOTE 2.—Some verbs want both Perfect and Supine:

clangō,	to clang.	hiscō,	to gape.
claudō,	to be lame.	vādō,	to go. ⁵
fatiscō,	to gape.	temnō,	to despise. ⁶
gliscō,	to grow.	vergō,	to incline.

CLASS II.—STEM IN A CONSONANT: PERFECT IN *uī*.

273. Principal Parts in—ō (or iō), ere, *uī*, itum.

accumbō	accumbere	accubuī	accubitum, ⁷	to recline.
alō	alere	aluī	{ alitum, } { altum, }	to nourish.
depsō	depsere	depsuī	{ depsitum, } { depstum, }	to knead.
ēliciō	ēlicere	ēlicuī	ēlicitum, ⁸	to elicit.
fremō	fremere	fremuī	fremitum,	to rage.
gemō	gemere	gemuī	gemitum,	to groan.
gignō	gignere	genuī	genitum,	to beget.
molō	molere	moluī	molitum,	to grind.

¹ Often written *prēndō*, *prēndere*, etc.

² *V* is here changed to its corresponding vowel *u*: *solūtum* for *solvitum*.

³ Compounds of *dē*, *prae*, *re*, are generally deponent in the Present, Imperfect, and Future.

⁴ Perfect and Supine generally supplied from *sedeō*; hence *sēdī*, *sessum*. So in compounds.

⁵ See *evādō*, 270.

⁶ But *contemnō*, *ere*, *contemptī*, *contemptum*.

⁷ So other compounds of *cumbō*, *cubō*; see *cubō*, 258.

⁸ Other compounds of *laciō* thus: *alliciō*, *allicere*, *allexī*, *allectum*.

pīnsō	pīnsere	{ pīnsuī pīnsī }	{ pīnsitum, pīstum, pīnsum, }	to crush.
pōnō	pōnere	posuī	positum,	to place.
strepō	strepere	strepuī	strepitum,	to make a noise.
vomō	vomere	vomuī	vomitum,	to vomit.

NOTE.—*Compescō*, 'to restrain'; *excello*,¹ 'to excel'; *furo*, 'to rage'; *sterto*, 'to snore'; and *tremō*, 'to tremble,' have the Perfect in *uī*, but want the Supine.

274. Principal Parts in—ō (or iō), ere, uī, tum.

colō	colere	coluī	cultum,	to cultivate.
cōnsulō	cōnsulere	cōnsuluī	cōnsultum,	to consult.
occulō	occulere	occuluī	occultum,	to hide.
rapīō	rapere	rapuī	raptum, ²	to snatch.
serō	serere	seruī	sertum,	to connect.
texō	texere	texuī	textum,	to weave.

275. Principal Parts in—ō, ere, suī, sum.

metō	metere	messuī ³	messum,	to reap.
nectō	nectere	{ nēxi nexuī }	nexum,	to bind.

CLASS III.—STEM IN A VOWEL: PERFECT IN **vī** OR **ī**.

276. The following verbs have the Perfect in **āvī** from a stem in **ā**:

pāscō ⁴	pāscere	pāvī	pāstum,	to feed.
sternō	sternere	strāvī	stratum,	to strew.
veterāscō	veterāscere	veterāvī	—	to grow old.

277. The following verbs have the Perfect in **ēvī** from a stem in **ē**:

abolēscō	abolēscere	abolēvī	abolitum, ⁵	to disappear.
cernō	cernere	crēvī	crētum,	to decide.
crēscō	crēscere	crēvī	crētum, ⁶	to grow.
quiēscō	quiēscere	quiēvī	quiētum,	to rest.
spernō	spernere	sprēvī	sprētum,	to spurn.
suēscō	suēscere	suēvī	suētum,	to become accustomed.

NOTE.—*Serō*, *serere*, *sēvī*, *satum*,⁷ *to sow*.

278. The following verbs have the Perfect in **ivī** from a stem in **i**:

arcēssō	arcēssere	arcēssivī	arcēssitum,	to call for.
capēssō	capēssere	capēssivī	capēssitum,	to lay hold of.
cupiō	cupere	cupivī	cupitum,	to desire.
facēssō	facēssere	{ facēssivī facēssi }	facēssitum,	to make.

¹ Other compounds of *cello* want the Perfect and Supine, except *percello*, *percellera*, *perculi*, *perculsum*.

² Compounds thus: *corripio*, *corripere*, *corripui*, *correptum*.

³ The Perfect in *suī* seems to be a double formation, *si* enlarged to *suī*.

⁴ The stem of *pāscō* is *pā*, *pās*; the Present Stem adds *sce*; see 251, 2.

⁵ So *inolēscō*; but *adolēscō* has Supine *adultum*; *exolēscō*, *exolētum*; *obolēscō*, *obolētum*.

⁶ *Incrēscō* and *succrēscō* want the Supine.

⁷ Compounds thus: *cōnservo*, *cōnserere*, *cōnsēvī*, *cōnsitum*.

incēssō	incēssere	{ incēssivī incēssi }	—————	to attack.
lacēssō	lacēssere	lacēssivī	lacēssitum.	to provoke
linō	linere	livī, lēvī	litum,	to smear.
nōscō	nōscere	nōvī	nōtum, ¹	to know.
petō	petere	petivī	petitum,	to ask.
quaerō	quaerere	quaesivī	quaesitum, ²	to seek.
rudō	rudere	rudivī	ruditum,	to bray.
sapiō	sapere	sapivī, sapui	—————	'o taste.
sinō	sinere	sivī	situm,	i. permix.
terō	terere	trivī	tritum,	to rub.

279. Principal Parts in—ō, ere, I, tum.

These are the regular endings in verbs with **u**-stems. The following are examples :

acuō	acuere	acui	acūtum,	to sharpen.
arguō	arguere	argui	argūtum,	to convict.
imbuō	imbuerere	imbuī	imbūtum,	to imbue.
minuō	minuere	minui	minūtum,	to diminish.
ruō	ruere	ruī	rutum,	to fall.
statuō	statuere	statui	statūtum,	to place.
tribuō	tribuere	tribui	tribūtum,	to impart.

NOTE.—*Fluō* and *struō* have the Perfect in **xī**.

fluō	fluere	fluxī ³	fluxum,	to flow.
struō	struere	struxī ³	strūctum,	to build.

INCEPTIVES.

280. Inceptives end in **scō**, and denote the beginning of an action.

NOTE.—When formed from verbs, they are called *Verbal Inceptives*, and when formed from nouns or adjectives, *Denominative Inceptives*.

281. Most **VERBAL INCEPTIVES** want the Supine, but take the Perfect of their primitives :

acēscō	(<i>acēō</i>)	acēscere	acui	—————	to become sour.
ārēscō	(<i>ārēō</i>)	ārēscere	arui	—————	to become dry.
calēscō	(<i>calēō</i>)	calēscere	calui	—————	to become warm.
flōrēscō	(<i>flōrēō</i>)	flōrēscere	flōrui	—————	to begin to bloom.
tepēscō	(<i>tepēō</i>)	tepēscere	tepuī	—————	to become warm.
virēscō	(<i>virēō</i>)	virēscere	virui	—————	to become green.

NOTE.—The following take the Perfect and Supine of their primitives :

concupiscō	(<i>con. cupiō</i>)	ere	concupivī	concupitum,	to desire.
convalescō	(<i>con. valeō</i>)	ere	convalui	convalitum,	to grow strong.
exārdescō	(<i>ex. ardeō</i>)	ere	exārsi	exārsūm,	to burn.
inveterāscō	(<i>inveterō</i>)	ere	inveterāvi	inveterātum,	to grow old.
obdormiscō	(<i>ob. dormiō</i>)	ere	obdormivi	obdormitum,	to fall asleep.
reviviscō	(<i>re. vivo</i>)	ere	revixi	revictum,	to revive.
sciāscō	(<i>sciō</i>)	ere	scivi	scitum,	to enact.

¹ So *ignōscō*; *agnōscō* and *cognōscō* have *itum* in Supine, *agnitum*; *agnōscō* and *internōscō* want Supine.

² Compounds thus : *acquīrō*, *ere*, *acquīsivī*, *acquīsītum*.

³ For *flux-sī*, *strug-sī*, formed not from *u*-stems, but from *consonant-stem*.

282. Most DENOMINATIVE INCEPTIVES want both Perfect and Supine:

ditēscō (<i>dīves</i>),	to grow rich.	mitēscō (<i>mitis</i>),	to grow mild.
dulcēscō (<i>dulcis</i>),	to become sweet.	mollēscō (<i>mollis</i>),	to grow soft.
grandēscō (<i>grandis</i>),	to grow large.	puerāscō (<i>puer</i>),	to become a boy.

NOTE.—The following have the Perfect in *ui*:

crēbrēscō (<i>crēber</i>)	ere	crēbrui,	to become frequent.
dūrēscō (<i>dūrus</i>)	ere	dūruī,	to become hard.
innōtēscō (<i>in, nōtus</i>)	ere	innōtūi,	to become known.
macrēscō (<i>macer</i>)	ere	macruī,	to become lean.
mātūrēscō (<i>mātūrus</i>)	ere	mātūruī,	to ripen.
obmūtēscō (<i>ob, mūtus</i>)	ere	obmūtūi,	to grow dumb.
recrūdēscō (<i>re, crūdus</i>)	ere	recrūdūi,	to bleed afresh.
vilēscō (<i>vīlis</i>)	ere	vīlūi,	to become worthless.

283. DEPONENT VERBS.

amplexor	I	amplexus sum,	to embrace.
apīscor	I	aptus sum, ¹	to obtain.
comminīscor	I	commentus sum, ²	to devise.
expergiſcor	I	experrēctus sum,	to awake.
fatīscor	I ³		to gape.
fruor	I	{ fructus sum, }	to enjoy.
		{ fruitus sum, }	
fungor	I	fūctus sum,	to perform
gradior	I	gressus sum, ⁴	to walk.
īrāscor	I		to be angry.
lābor	I	lāpsus sum,	to fall.
liquor	I		to melt.
loquor	I	locūtus sum,	to speak.
morior	I (<i>irī, rare</i>)	mortuus sum, ⁵	to die.
nancīscor	I	nactus (nactus) sum,	to obtain.
nāscor	I	nātus sum, ⁵	to be born.
nītor	I	{ nīsus sum, }	to strive.
		{ nīxus sum, }	
oblīvīscor	I	oblītus sum,	to forget.
pacīscor	I	pactus sum,	to bargain.
patior	I	passus sum,	to suffer.
proficiſcor	I	profectus sum,	to set out.
queror	I	questus sum,	to complain.
reminīscor	I		to remember.
ringor	I	rictus sum,	to growl.
sequor	I	secūtus sum,	to follow.
ulcīscor	I	ultus sum,	to avenge.
ūtor	I	ūsus sum,	to use.
vescor	I		to eat.

Semi-Deponent—Deponent in the Perfect.

fido	fidere	fisus sum,	to trust.
------	--------	------------	-----------

¹ *Adīpīscor*, *i.*, *adeptus sum*; so *indīpīscor*.² *Com-minīscor* is compounded of *con*, and the obsolete *minīscor*; *re-minīscor* wants the Perfect.³ *Dē-fetīscor*, *i.*, *dē-fessus sum*.⁴ Compounds thus: *aggredior*, *i.*, *aggressor sum*.⁵ *Morior* has future participle *moritūrus*; *nāscor*, *nāscitūrus*.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

CLASS I.—STEM IN **i**: PERFECT IN **vi**.284. Principal Parts in—**iō, ire, ivi, itum**.

The following are examples :

finiō	finire	finivī	finitum,	<i>to finish.</i>
lēniō	lēnīre	lēnivī	lēnitum,	<i>to alleviate.</i>
mūniō	mūnīre	mūnivī	mūnitum,	<i>to fortify.</i>
pūniō	pūnīre	pūnivī	pūnitum,	<i>to punish.</i>
sciō	scīre	scivī	scitum,	<i>to know.</i>
sepeliō	sepelīre	sepelivī	sepultum, ¹	<i>to bury.</i>
sitiō	sitīre	sitivī	_____	<i>to thirst.</i>
vāgiō	vāgīre	vāgivī	_____	<i>to cry.</i>

NOTE 1.—*V* is often dropped in the Perfect: *audiī* for *audivī*; see 235, 1.

NOTE 2.—Desideratives (338, III.)—except *esuriō, ire, —, itum*; *nūpturiō, ire, ivi*, and *parturiō, ire, ivi*—want both Perfect and Supine. Also a few others :

balbatiō,	<i>to stammer.</i>	ferociō,	<i>to be fierce.</i>	sāgiō,	<i>to be wise.</i>
caecutiō,	<i>to be blind.</i>	ganniō,	<i>to bark.</i>	superbiō,	<i>to be proud.</i>
feriō,	<i>to strike.</i>	ineptiō,	<i>to trifle.</i>	tussiō,	<i>to cough.</i>

CLASS II.—STEM IN **c, l, or r**: PERFECT IN **ui**.285. Principal Parts in—**iō, ire, ui, tum**.

amiciō	amicire	amicui (xi)	amictum,	<i>to clothe.</i>
aperiō	aperire	aperui	apertum,	<i>to open.</i>
operiō	operire	operui	opertum,	<i>to cover.</i>
salīō	salire	salui (ii)	(saltum), ²	<i>to leap.</i>

CLASS III.—STEM IN A CONSONANT: PERFECT IN **si** OR **i**.286. Principal Parts in—**iō, ire, si, tum**.

farcīō	farcire	farsī	{ fartum, ³ faretum, }	<i>to stuff.</i>
fulciō	fulcire	fulsī	fultum,	<i>to prop.</i>
hauriō ⁴	haurire	hausī	haustum, hausum,	<i>to draw.</i>
saepiō	saepire	saepsī	saeptum,	<i>to hedge in.</i>
sanciō	sancire	sansī	{ sancitum, } sanctum, }	<i>to ratify.</i>
sarciō	sarcire	sarsī	sartum,	<i>to patch.</i>
vinciō	vincire	vinxī	vinctum,	<i>to bind.</i>

¹ Supine irregular.

² Compounds thus: *dēsiliō, ire, ui (ii)*, (*dēsultum*).

³ Compounds thus: *cōnferciō, ire, cōnfersī, cōnferturn*.

⁴ The stem of *hauriō* is *haus*. The Present adds *i* and changes *s* to *r* between two vowels. In *hausī* and *hausum*, *s* standing for *ss* or *st* is not changed.

287. Principal Parts in—*iō, ire, sī, sum.*

rauciō	raucīre	rausī	rausum,	<i>to be hoarse.</i>
sentiō	sentiire	sēnsī	sēnsūm,	<i>to feel.</i>

NOTE.—The following verbs have the Perfect in *ī*:

comperiō	comperire	comperi	compertum,	<i>to learn.</i>
reperiō	reperire	reperi	repertum,	<i>to find.</i>
veniō	venire	vēnī ¹	ventum,	<i>to come.</i>

288. DEPONENT VERBS.

1. Regular.

blandior	Irī	blanditus sum,	<i>to flatter.</i>
largior	Irī	largitus sum,	<i>to bestow.</i>
mentior	Irī	mentitus sum,	<i>to lie.</i>
mōlior	Irī	mōlītus sum,	<i>to strive.</i>
partior	Irī	partitus sum,	<i>to divide.</i>
potior ²	Irī	potitus sum,	<i>to obtain.</i>
sortior	Irī	sortitus sum,	<i>to draw lots.</i>

2. Irregular.

assentior ³	Irī	assēnsus sum,	<i>to assent.</i>
experior	Irī	expertus sum,	<i>to try.</i>
mētiōr	Irī	mēnsus sum,	<i>to measure.</i>
opperior	Irī	{ oppertus sum, } { oppertus sum, }	<i>to await.</i>
ōrdior	Irī	ōrsus sum,	<i>to begin.</i>
orior	Irī	ortus sum, ⁴	<i>to rise.</i>

IRREGULAR VERBS.

289. A few verbs which have special irregularities are called by way of preëminence *Irregular* or *Anomalous Verbs*. They are *sum, edō, ferō, volō, fīō, eō, queō*, and their compounds.

 290. *Sum*, 'I am,' and its compounds.

I. The conjugation of *sum* has been already given (204); its numerous compounds—*absum*,⁵ *adsum*, *dēsum*, *praesum*,⁵ etc.—except *possum* and *prōsum*, are conjugated in the same way.

¹ With lengthened stem-vowel.

² In the Present Indicative and Subjunctive, forms of Conjugation III. occur.

³ Compounded of *ad* and *sentiō*; see 287.

⁴ Participle, *oritūrus*.—Present Indicative, Conjugation III., *oreris, oritur*. Imperfect Subjunctive, *orīrer* or *orerer*.—So compounds, but *adorior* follows Conjugation IV.

⁵ *Absum* and *praesum*, like *possum*, have Present Participles, *absēns* and *praesēns*, used as adjectives. *absēns*, *present*.

II. Possum, posse, potuī, to be able.

	SINGULAR.	INDICATIVE.	PLURAL.
<i>Pres.</i>	possum, potes, potest;	possumus, potestis, possunt.	
<i>Imp.</i>	poteram; ¹	poterāmus.	
<i>Fut.</i>	poterō;	poterimus.	
<i>Perf.</i>	potuī;	potuimus.	
<i>Plup.</i>	potueram;	potuerāmus.	
<i>F. P.</i>	potuerō;	potuerīmus.	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	possim, possis, possit;	possimus, possitis, possint.
<i>Imp.</i>	possem;	possēmus.
<i>Perf.</i>	potuerim;	potuerīmus.
<i>Plup.</i>	potuissem;	potuissēmus.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. posse.
Perf. potuisse.

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. potēns (as an adjective).

NOTE 1.—*Possum* is compounded of *potis*, 'able,' and *sum*, 'to be.' The parts are sometimes separated, and then *potis* is indeclinable: *potis sum*, *potis sumus*, etc.

NOTE 2.—In *possum* observe—²

1) That *potis* drops *is*, and that *t* is assimilated before *s*: *possum* for *potsum*.

2) That the Perfect is *potuī* not *potfuī*.²

3) That *posse* and *possem* are shortened forms for *potesse* and *potessem*.

III. *Prōsum*, 'I profit,' is compounded of *prō*, *prōd*, 'for,' and *sum*, 'to be.' It retains *d* when the simple verb begins with *e*: *prōsum*, *prōdes*, *prōdest*, etc. Otherwise it is conjugated like *sum*.

291. Edō, edere, edī, ēsum, to eat.

This verb is sometimes regular, and sometimes takes forms similar, except in quantity,³ to those of *sum* which begin in *es*. Thus—

INDICATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	{ edō, edis, edit;	edimus, editis, edunt.
	{ ēs, ³ ēst;	ēstis.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Imp.</i>	{ ederem, ederēs, ederet;	ederēmus, ederētis, ederent.
	{ ēssēm, ēssēs, ēssēt;	ēssēmus, ēssētis, ēssent.

¹ Inflected regularly through the different persons: *poteram*, *poterās*, *poterat*, etc. So also in the other tenses: *potuī*, *potuisti*, etc.

² For *old* and *rare* forms, see 204, 2. *Potuī* is probably a *regular perfect* in *uī* from an obsolete verb *poteo* or *potio*; see 262, 285; also Stolz, p. 225.

³ These forms have *ē* long before *s*, while the corresponding forms of *sum* have *e* short.

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	{ ede; ēſ; ¹	edite. ēſte.	
<i>Fut.</i>	{ editō; ēſtō;	editōte, ēſtōte.	eduntō.

INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	edere.	ēſſe.
--------------	--------	-------

NOTE 1.—In the PASSIVE, *ēſtur* for *editur* and *ēſſētur* for *ederētur* also occur.

NOTE 2.—FORMS IN *IM* for *am* occur in the Present Subjunctive: *edim, edis, edit*, etc., for *edam, edās, edat*, etc.

NOTE 3.—COMPOUNDS are conjugated like the simple verb, but *comedō* has in the Supine *comēsum* or *comēſtum*.

292. *Ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, to bear.*

ACTIVE VOICE.

SINGULAR.	INDICATIVE.	PLURAL.
<i>Pres.</i> ferō, fers, fert;		ferimus, fertis, ² ferunt.
<i>Imp.</i> ferēbam; ³		ferēbāmus.
<i>Fut.</i> feram;		ferēmus.
<i>Perf.</i> tulī;		tulimus.
<i>Plup.</i> tuleram;		tulerāmus.
<i>F. P.</i> tulerō;		tulerīmus.

	SUBJUNCTIVE.	
<i>Pres.</i> feram;	ferāmus.	
<i>Imp.</i> ferrem;	ferrēmus. ⁴	
<i>Perf.</i> tulerim;	tulerīmus.	
<i>Plup.</i> tulissem;	tulissēmus.	

	IMPERATIVE.	
<i>Pres.</i> fer; ⁵	ferte.	
<i>Fut.</i> fertō,	fertōte,	
fertō;	feruntō.	

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Pres.</i> ferre. ⁴	<i>Pres.</i> ferēns.
<i>Perf.</i> tulisse.	
<i>Fut.</i> lāturus esse.	<i>Fut.</i> lāturus.

¹ See page 186, foot-note 2.

² *Fer-s, fer-t, fer-tis*, like *es-t, es-tis*, dispense with the usual thematic vowel *i*. With such vowel the forms would be *feris, ferit, feritis*.

³ Inflect the several tenses in full: *ferēbam, ferēbās*, etc.

⁴ *Ferrem*, etc., for *fererem*, etc.; *ferre* for *ferere* (*e* dropped).

⁵ *Fer* for *fero*: *fertō, ferte, fertōte, ferris, fertur*, without thematic vowel.

GERUND.

Gen. ferendī,*Dat.* ferendō,*Acc.* ferendum,*Abl.* ferendō.

SUPINE.

Acc. lātum,*Abl.* lātū.

PASSIVE VOICE.

1st Pers. Pres. feror,*2nd Pers. Pres.* ferrī,*3rd Pers. Pres.* lātus sum,*to be borne.*

INDICATIVE.

SINGULAR.

Pres. feror, ferris, fertur;¹*Imp.* ferēbar;*Fut.* ferar;*Perf.* lātus sum;*Plup.* lātus eram;*F. P.* lātus erō;

PLURAL.

Pres. ferimur, feriminī, feruntur*Imp.* ferēbāmur.*Fut.* ferēmur.*Perf.* lātī sumus.*Plup.* lātī erāmus.*F. P.* lātī erimus.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. ferar;*Imp.* ferrer;¹*Perf.* lātus sim;*Plup.* lātus essem;*Pres.* ferāmur.*Imp.* ferrēmur.*Perf.* lātī sīmus.*Plup.* lātī essēmus.

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. ferre;¹*Fut.* fertor;¹*3rd Pers. Pres.* fertor;*2nd Pers. Pres.* feriminī.*3rd Pers. Pres.* feruntor.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. ferrī.¹*Perf.* lātus esse.*Fut.* lātum irī.

PARTICIPLE.

Perf. lātus.*Ger.* ferendus.1. *Ferō* has two principal irregularities:1) Its forms are derived from three independent stems, seen in *ferō*, *tuli*, *lātum*.2) It dispenses with the thematic vowel, *e* or *i*, before *r*, *s*, and *t*.2. COMPOUNDS of *ferō* are conjugated like the simple verb, but in a few of them the preposition suffers a euphonic change:

<i>ab-</i>	<i>auferō</i>	<i>auferre</i>	<i>abstuli</i>	<i>ablātum</i>
<i>ad-</i>	<i>adferō</i>	<i>adferre</i>	<i>attuli</i>	<i>allātum</i>
<i>con-</i>	<i>cōferō</i>	<i>cōferre</i>	<i>contuli</i>	<i>collātum</i>
<i>dis-</i>	<i>differō</i>	<i>differre</i>	<i>distuli</i>	<i>dilātum</i>
<i>ex-</i>	<i>efferō</i>	<i>efferre</i>	<i>extuli</i>	<i>ēlātum</i>
<i>in-</i>	<i>inferō</i>	<i>inferre</i>	<i>intuli</i>	<i>illātum</i>
<i>ob-</i>	<i>offerō</i>	<i>offerre</i>	<i>obtuli</i>	<i>oblātum</i>
<i>sub-</i>	<i>sufferō</i>	<i>sufferre</i>	<i>sustuli</i>	<i>sublātum</i>

¹ Without thematic vowel.

NOTE.—*Sustulī* and *sublātum* are not often used in the sense of *sufferō*, to bear, but they supply the Perfect and Supine of *tollō*, to raise; see 271.

293. Volō,	velle,	voluī,	to be willing.
Nōlo,	nōlle,	nōluī,	to be unwilling.
Mālo,	mālle,	māluī,	to prefer.

INDICATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> volō,	nōlō,	mālō,
vīs,	nōn vīs,	māvīs,
vult:	nōn vult;	māvult;
voimus,	nōlumus,	mālumus,
vultis,	nōn vultis,	māvultis,
volunt.	nōlunt.	mālunt.
<i>Imp.</i> volēbam.	nōlēbam.	mālēbam.
<i>Fut.</i> volam.	nōlam.	mālam.
<i>Perf.</i> voluī.	nōluī.	māluī.
<i>Plup.</i> volueram.	nōlueram.	mālueram.
<i>F. P.</i> voluerō.	nōluerō.	māluerō.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> velim. ¹	nōlim.	mālim.
<i>Imp.</i> vellem. ²	nōllem.	māllem.
<i>Perf.</i> voluerim.	nōluerim.	māluerim.
<i>Plup.</i> voluissem.	nōluissem.	māluissem.

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> nōlī,	nōlīte.
<i>Fut.</i> nōlītō,	nōlītōte,
nōlītō;	nōluntō.

INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> velle.	nōlle.	mālle.
<i>Perf.</i> voluisse.	nōluisse.	māluisse.

PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres.</i> volēns.	nōlēns.
----------------------	---------

NOTE 1.—The stem of *volō* is *vol*, with variable stem-vowel, *o*, *e*, *u*.

NOTE 2.—*NŌLŌ* is compounded of *nē* or *nōn* and *volō*; *MĀLŌ*, of *magis* and *volō*.

NOTE 3.—RARE FORMS.—(1) Of *volō*: *volt*, *voltis*, for *vult*, *vultis*; *sīs*, *vultis*, for *sī vīs*, *sī vultis*; *vīn'* for *vīsne*.—(2) Of *nōlō*: *nēvīs*, *nēvult* (*nēvolt*),

¹ *Velim* is inflected like *sī*, and *vellem* like *essem*.

² *Vellem* and *velle* are syncopated forms for *velerem*, *velere*; *e* is dropped and assimilated: *velerem*, *velrem*, *vellem*; *velere*, *velre*, *velle*. So *nōllem* and *nōlle*, for *nōlerem* and *nōlere*; *māllem* and *mālle*, for *mālerem* and *mālere*.

nēvelle, for *nōn* (*nē*) *vis*, *nōn* (*nē*) *vult*, *nōlle*.—(3) Of *MĀLŌ*: *māvolō*, *māvelim*, *māvellem*, for *mālō*, *mālim*, *māllem*.

294. *Fīō*, *fieri*, *factus sum*, *to become, be made.*¹

SINGULAR.

Pres. *fīō*, *fis*, *fit*;

Imp. *fīēbam*;

Fut. *fiam*;

Perf. *factus sum*;

Plup. *factus eram*;

F. P. *factus erō*;

INDICATIVE.

PLURAL.

fīmus, *fītis*, *fīunt*.

fīēbāmus.

fīēmus.

factī sumus.

factī erāmus.

factī erimur.

Pres. *fiam*;

Imp. *fierem*;

Perf. *factus sim*;

Plup. *factus essem*;

SUBJUNCTIVE.

fīāmus.

fīērēmus.

factī sīmus.

factī essēmus.

Pres. *fī*;

IMPERATIVE.

fīte.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. *fieri*.

Perf. *factus esse*.

Fut. *factum iri*.

PARTICIPLE.

Perf. *factus*.

Ger. *faciendus*.

295. *Eō*, *ire*, *ivī*, *itum*, *to go*.

Pres. *eō*, *is*, *it*;

Imp. *ibam*;

Fut. *ibō*;

Perf. *ivī*;

Plup. *iveram*;

F. P. *iverō*;

INDICATIVE.

imus, *itis*, *eunt*.

ibāmus.

ibimus.

ivimus.

iverāmus.

iverīmus.

Pres. *eam*;

Imp. *irem*;

Perf. *iverim*;

Plup. *ivissem*;

SUBJUNCTIVE.

eāmus.

irēmus.

iverīmus.

ivissēmus.

Pres. *i*;

Fut. *itō*,

itō;

IMPERATIVE.

ite.

itōte,

euntō.

¹ COMPOUNDS of *fīō* are conjugated like the simple verb, but *cōnfi*, *dēfi*, and *infi* are defective; see 297, III., 2.

INFINITIVE.		PARTICIPLE.	
<i>Pres.</i> ire.		<i>Pres.</i> iēns,	<i>Gen.</i> euntis.
<i>Perf.</i> ivisse.			
<i>Fut.</i> itūrus esse.		<i>Fut.</i> itūrus.	
GERUND.		SUPINE.	
<i>Gen.</i> eundī,			
<i>Dat.</i> eundō,			
<i>Acc.</i> eundum,		<i>Acc.</i> itum,	
<i>Abl.</i> eundō.		<i>Abl.</i> itū.	

1. *Eō* is a verb of the Fourth Conjugation, but it forms the Supine with a short vowel (*itum*), and is irregular in several parts of the Present System. It admits contraction according to 235: *istis* for *ivistis*, etc.

2. *Eō*, as an intransitive verb, wants the Passive, except when used impersonally in the third singular, *itur*, *ibatur*, etc. (301, 1), but *irī*, the Passive Infinitive, occurs as an auxiliary in the Future Infinitive Passive of the regular conjugations: *amātum irī*, etc.

3. COMPOUNDS of *eō* generally shorten *ivī* into *ii*. *Vēneō* (*vēnum eō*) has sometimes *vēniēbam* for *vēnībam*. Many compounds want the Supine, and a few admit in the Future a rare form in *eam*, *iēs*, *iet*.

NOTE 1.—Transitive compounds have the Passive: *adeō*, to approach; *adeor*, etc.

NOTE 2.—*Ambiō* is regular, like *audiō*, though *ambiēbam* for *ambīēbam* occurs.

296. *Queō*, *quīre*, *quīvī*, *quitum*, to be able, and *nequeō*, *nequīre*, *nequīvī* (*ivī*), *nequitum*, to be unable, are conjugated like *eō*, but they want the Imperative and Gerund, and are rare except in the Present tense.¹

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

297. Defective Verbs want certain parts. The following are the most important: ²

I. PRESENT SYSTEM WANTING.

Coepī, *I have begun.* *Meminī*, *I remember.* *Ōdī*, *I hate.*

INDICATIVE.		
<i>Perf.</i> coepī.	<i>meminī.</i>	<i>ōdī.</i>
<i>Plup.</i> coeperam.	<i>memineram.</i>	<i>ōderam.</i>
<i>F. P.</i> coeperō.	<i>meminerō.</i>	<i>ōderō.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.		
<i>Perf.</i> coeperim.	<i>meminerim.</i>	<i>ōderim.</i>
<i>Plup.</i> coepissem.	<i>meminissem.</i>	<i>ōdissem.</i>

IMPERATIVE.	
<i>Sing.</i> mementō.	
<i>Plur.</i> mementōte.	

¹ A Passive form, *quitur*, *nequitur*, etc., occurs before a Passive Infinitive.

² For many verbs which want the Perfect or Supine, or both, see 262-284.

INFINITIVE.		
<i>Perf.</i> coepisse.	meminisse.	ōdisse.
<i>Fut.</i> coeptūrus esse.		ōsūrus esse.
PARTICIPLE.		
<i>Perf.</i> coeptus.		ōsus. ¹
<i>Fut.</i> coeptūrus.		ōsūrus.

1. With PASSIVE INFINITIVES, *coepi* generally takes the Passive form: *coeptus sum, eram*, etc. *Coeptus* is Passive in sense.

2. *Memini* and *ōdī* are Present in sense; hence in the Pluperfect and Future Perfect they have the sense of the Imperfect and Future. *Nōvī*, 'I know,' Perfect of *nōscō*, 'to learn,' and *cōnsuēvī*, 'I am wont,' Perfect of *cōnsuēscō*, 'to accustom one's self,' are also Present in sense.

II. PARTS OF EACH SYSTEM WANTING.

1. *Āiō, I say, say yes.*²

<i>Indic. Pres.</i> āiō,	ais, ³	ait;	_____	_____	aiunt.
<i>Imp.</i> āiebam,	-ēbās,	-ēbat;	-ēbāmus,	-ēbātis,	-ēbant. ⁴
<i>Perf.</i> _____	_____	ait;	_____	_____	_____
<i>Subj. Pres.</i> _____	aiās,	aiat;	_____	_____	aiant.
<i>Imper. Pres.</i> ai (rare).					
<i>Part. Pres.</i> aiēns.					

2. *Inquam, I say.*

<i>Indic. Pres.</i> inquam,	inquis, inquit;	inquimus,	inquitis, inquiunt.
<i>Imp.</i> _____	_____ inquitēbat; ⁴	_____	_____
<i>Fut.</i> _____	inquiēs, inquiet;	_____	_____
<i>Perf.</i> _____	inquisti, inquit;	_____	_____
<i>Imper. Pres.</i> inque.	<i>Fut.</i> inquitō.		

3. *Fārī, to speak.*⁵

<i>Indic. Pres.</i> _____	_____	fātur;	_____	_____	_____
<i>Fut.</i> fābor,	_____	fābitur;	_____	_____	_____
<i>Perf.</i> fātus sum,	es,	est;	fāti sumus,	estis,	sunt.
<i>Plup.</i> fātus eram,	erās,	erat;	fāti erāmus,	erātis,	erant.
<i>Subj. Perf.</i> fātus sim,	sīs,	sit;	fāti simus,	sītis,	sint.
<i>Plup.</i> fātus essem,	essēs,	esset;	fāti essēmus,	essētis,	essent.
<i>Imper. Pres.</i> fāre.					
<i>Infin. Pres.</i> fārī.					
<i>Part. Pres.</i> (fāns) fantis.			<i>Perf.</i> fātus.		<i>Ger.</i> fandus.
<i>Gerund, Gen. and Abl.</i> fandī, dō.			<i>Supine, Abl.</i> fātū.		

¹ *Ōsus* is Active in sense, *hating*, but is rare except in compounds: *exōsus, perōsus*.

² In this verb *a* and *i* do not form a diphthong; before a vowel the *i* has the sound of *y*: *ā-yō, ā-yunt*; see 10, 4, 8).

³ The interrogative form *aisne* is often shortened into *ain*.

⁴ *āiebam, aiēbas*, etc., occur; also *inquitbat* for *inquitbat*.

⁵ *Fārī* is used chiefly in poetry. Compounds have some forms not found in the simple: *adfāmur, adfāminī, adfābar; efāberis*.

III. IMPERATIVES AND ISOLATED FORMS.

1. IMPERATIVES.

havē,	havēte;	havētō;	<i>Inf.</i> havēre, ¹	<i>hail.</i>
salvē,	salvēte,	salvētō; ²	salvēre,	<i>hail.</i>
cedō,	cette,			<i>tell me, mine</i>
apage,				<i>begone.</i>

2. ISOLATED FORMS.

INDICATIVE.			SUBJUNCTIVE.		INFINITIVE.
PRESENT.	FUTURE.		PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	
cōnfīt; —	—		cōnfīat;	cōnfīeret;	cōnfīerī, <i>to be done.</i>
dēfīt, dēfīunt;	dēfiet;		dēfīat;	—	dēfīerī, <i>to be wanting</i>
infīt, infīunt,	—		—	—	— <i>to begin.</i>
<i>Sub. Imp.</i> forem, forēs, foret,			—	—	<i>forent.</i>
<i>Ind. Pres.</i> ovat,			<i>he rejoices.</i>		<i>Part.</i> ovāns.
<i>Ind. Pres.</i> quaesō, quaesumus, ⁴			<i>I pray.</i>		

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

298. Impersonal Verbs correspond to the English Impersonal with *it*: *licet*, it is lawful; *oportet*, it behooves.⁶ They are conjugated like other verbs, but are used only in the third person singular of the Indicative and Subjunctive, and in the Present and Perfect Infinitive.

299. The most important Impersonal Verbs are—

deceat,	deceat,	<i>it becomes.</i> ⁶	pigēt,	{ piguit,	{ <i>it grieves.</i>
libet,	{ libuit,	{ <i>it pleases.</i> ⁶	paenitet,	{ pigitum est,	{ <i>it causes re-</i>
	{ libitum est,			{ <i>gret.</i> ⁷	
licet,	{ licuit,	{ <i>it is lawful.</i> ⁶	pudet,	{ puduit,	{ <i>it shames.</i>
	{ licitum est,			{ puditum est,	
liquet,	licuit,	<i>it is evident.</i> ⁶	taedet,	{ taeduit,	{ <i>it wearies.</i> ⁸
miseret,	miseritum est,	<i>it excites pity.</i> ⁷		{ taesum est,	
oportet,	oportuit,	<i>it behooves.</i>			

1. PARTICIPLES are generally wanting, but a few occur, though with a somewhat modified sense: (1) from LIBET: *libēns*, willing; (2) from LICET: *licēns*, free; *licitus*, allowed; (3) from PAENITET: *paenitēns*, penitent; *paenitendus*, to be repented of; (4) from PUDET: *pudēns*, modest; *pudendus*, shameful.

2. GERUNDS are generally wanting, but occur in rare instances: *paenitendum*, *pudendum*.

¹ Also written *avē*, *avēte*, etc.

² The Future *salvēbis* is also used for the Imperative.

³ *Forem* = *essem*; *fore* = *futurum esse*; see 204, 2.

⁴ Old forms for *quaerō* and *quaerimus*.

⁵ The subject is generally an infinitive or clause, but may be a noun or pronoun denoting a thing, but not a person: *hōc fieri oportet*, that this should be done is necessary.

⁶ These four occur in the third person plural, but without a personal subject.

⁷ *Mē miseret*, I pity; *mē paenitet*, I repent.

⁸ Also the compound, *pertaedet*, *pertaesum est*, it greatly wearies.

300. Generally Impersonal are several verbs which designate the changes of the weather, or the operations of nature :

Fulminat, it lightens ; *grandinat*, it hails ; *lucēscit*, it grows light ; *pluit*, it rains ; *rōrat*, dew falls ; *tonat*, it thunders.

301. Many other verbs are often used impersonally :

Accidit, it happens ; *appāret*, it appears ; *cōstat*, it is evident ; *contingit*, it happens ; *delectat*, it delights ; *dolet*, it grieves ; *interest*, it concerns ; *juvat*, it delights ; *patet*, it is plain ; *placet*, it pleases ; *praestat*, it is better ; *rēfert*, it concerns.

1. In the PASSIVE VOICE intransitive verbs can be used only impersonally. The participle is then neuter :

Mihī crēditur, it is credited to me, I am believed ; *tibi crēditur*, you are believed ; *crēditum est*, it was believed ; *certātur*, it is contended ; *curritur*, there is running, people run ; *pugnātur*, it is fought, they, we, etc., fight ; *vivitur*, we, you, they live.

2. The PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION (234) is often used impersonally. The participle is then neuter :

Mihī scribendum est, I must write ; *tibi scribendum est*, you must write ; *illi scribendum est*, he must write.

CHAPTER V.

PARTICLES.

302. THE Latin has four parts of speech sometimes called *Particles*: the *Adverb*, the *Preposition*, the *Conjunction*, and the *Interjection*.

ADVERBS.

303. The Adverb is the part of speech which is used to qualify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs: *celeriter currere*, to run swiftly ; *tam celer*, so swift ; *tam celeriter*, so swiftly.

304. In their origin, Adverbs are mainly the oblique cases¹ of nouns, adjectives, participles, and pronouns.

I. ACCUSATIVES.—Many Adverbs were originally Accusatives :

1. ACCUSATIVES OF NOUNS: *partim*, partly ; *forās*,¹ out of doors ; *diū*¹ (for *diūm*²), for a long time. Here belong numerous adverbs in *tim* and *sim*, chiefly from verbal nouns³ no longer in use: ¹ *contemptim*, contemptuously ;

¹ Some, indeed, are the oblique cases of words not otherwise used in Latin, and some are formed by means of case-endings no longer used in the regular declensions.

² Accusative of *dius* = *diēs*.

³ Some adverbs in *tim* and *sim* are from adjectives: *singulātīm*, one by one. In time doubtless *tim*, *ātīm*, *sim*, and *im* came to be regarded simply as adverbial suffixes, and were so used in forming new adverbs.

sēsim, perceptibly, slowly; *raptim*, hastily; *statim*, steadily; *fūrtim*, by stealth.

2. ACCUSATIVES OF NOUNS WITH PREPOSITIONS: *ad-modum*, very, to the full measure; *in-vicem*, in turn; *in-cassum*, in vain; *ob-iter*, on the road, in passing; *ob-viam*, in the way, against; *post-molum*, after a short time; *inter-diū*¹ and *inter-dius*,¹ during the day; *inter-dum*,¹ during the time, in the mean time.

3. ACCUSATIVES OF ADJECTIVES:

1) NEUTERS in *um*, *a*, *e*, *us*, *is*: *solum*, only; *multum*, *multa*, much; *nimum*, too much; *parum*, little; *secundum*, secondly; *ceterum*,² *cetera*, as to the rest; *verum*,² truly; *abunde*,³ abundantly; *facile*, easily; *saepe*,⁴ often; *plus*, more; *minus*, less; *saepius*, more frequently; *magis*, more, rather.⁵

2) FEMININES in *am*, *as*: *bifariam*,⁶ in two parts; *multifariam*, in many parts; *clam* = *calam*, secretly; *palam*, openly; *perperam*, wrongly; *aliās*, otherwise.

4. ACCUSATIVES OF PRONOUNS: *quam*,⁷ how much; *tam*,⁷ so much; *tum*, then; *tun-c*, at that time; *nun-c*, now.

II. ABLATIVES.—Many Adverbs were originally Ablatives:

1. ABLATIVES OF NOUNS in *ō*, *e*, *is*: *ergō*, accordingly; ⁸ *numerō*, exactly; *forte*, by chance; *jūre*, rightly; *sponte*, willingly; *grātīs*, or *grātis*, gratuitously; *foris*, out of doors.

NOTE.—The ablative is sometimes accompanied by a preposition or by an adjective: *ex-templō*, immediately—lit., from the moment; *ilico* for *in locō*, on the spot; *quotannis*, yearly; *multi-modis*, in many ways; *hō-diē* (*hōc-diē*), to-day; *quā-rē*, wherefore, by which thing.

2. ABLATIVES OF ADJECTIVES AND PARTICIPLES in *ā*, FEMININE, *ō*, *e*,⁹ and *ī*, NEUTER: *dextrā*¹⁰ = *dexterā*, on the right; *extrā*,¹¹ on the outside; *infrā*,¹¹ on the under side; *intrā*, on the inside; —*intrō*, within; *ultrō*, beyond; *perpetuō*, continually; *rārō*, rarely; *subitō*, suddenly; *auspicātō*, after taking the aus-

¹ *Diū* and *dum* are explained as forms of *dium* = *diem*, and *dius* as for *diēs*; see Corssen, I., pp. 282–286; II., 458.

² Often becoming conjunctions—*ceterum*, but. *Nōn*, from *ne-ūnum*, also belongs here.

³ From obsolete *abundis*.

⁴ Here may be added *semel*, 'once,' and *simul*, 'at the same time,' both for *simile*.

⁵ *Secus*, 'otherwise'; *tenus*, 'as far as'; *prōtinus*, 'straightforward'; and *versus* 'toward,' doubtless belong here.

⁶ Originally *partem* or *viam* may have been used.

⁷ *Quam*, from stem *qua*, in *quī*, *quae*; *tam*, *tum*, from stem *ta*, *to*, in the final syllable of *iste*, for *is-tu-s*, *is-ta*; *tun-c* = *tum-ce*, *nun-c* = *num-ce*, in which *num* is from the stem *no*, seen also in *num*, 'whether,' and also in its original form, *na*, in *nam*, 'for'

⁸ Literally, *by the deed*. Compare Greek *ἐργον*, *ἐργψ*.

⁹ That *ā* is here an ablative ending is proved by the fact that it appears in early Latin in the form of *ēd*, an undoubted ablative ending.

¹⁰ With these feminines, *parte* or *viā* may have been originally used.

¹¹ Often becoming prepositions. In fact, all prepositions in *ā* are derived from adverbs which were originally ablatives in *ād*, afterward *ā*.

pices; *cōsultō*, after deliberating; *sortitō*, by lot, i. e., after casting lots;—*doctē*, learnedly; *liberē*, freely; *certē*,¹ surely; *rectē*, rightly; *vērē*, truly;—*doctissimē*, most skillfully; *māximē*,² especially;—*brevī*, briefly.

3. ABLATIVES OF PRONOUNS: *eā*, there, in that way; *hāc*, here, in this way; *quā*, where, in which way; *eādem*, by the same road, in the same way.

NOTE.—Several pronominal adverbs denote direction toward a point: *eō*, to that place; *hōc*, *hūc*, to this place,³ *illō*, *illō-c*, *illū-c*, to that place; *istō*, *istō-c*, *istū-c*, to the place where you are; *quō*, to which place.

III. LOCATIVES.—Some Adverbs were originally Locatives:

1. LOCATIVES OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES in *i* or *ē*: *herī*, yesterday; *tempērī*, in time; *vesperī*, in the evening; *peregrī*, or *peragrē*, in a foreign land.

2. LOCATIVES OF PRONOUNS: *hīc*,⁴ here; *illīc*,⁴ there; *istīc*, there where you are; *sic*, in this way, thus; *utī*,⁵ *ut*, in which way; *ibī*,⁶ there; *ubī*, where.

NOTE.—Locative forms in *im* also occur: *olim*, formerly; *utrim-que*, on both sides; *illim*, *illin-c*, from that place; *hinc-c*, from this place; often with *dē*: *utrin-de*, from both sides; *in-de*, from that point, thence.

IV. ADVERBS IN **tus** AND **ter**.—Adverbs are also formed by means of the endings **tus**⁷ and **ter**:⁷

Fundī-tus, from the foundation; *rādīcī-tus*, from the roots, utterly; *divīnī-tus*, by divine appointment, divinely; *fortī-ter*, bravely; *ācrī-ter*, sharply; *dūri-ter*, harshly; *ēlegan-ter*, elegantly; *aman-ter*, lovingly; *prūden-ter*, prudently.

NOTE 1.—The stem-vowel before *tus* becomes *i*, and consonant stems assume *i*: *fundī-tus*,⁸ *rādīcī-tus*. The stem-vowel before *ter* also becomes *i*: *dūri-ter*.⁸ Consonant stems, however, do not assume *i*, but drop final *t*: *amant-ter*, *aman-ter*.

NOTE 2.—Many adverbs are simply adverbial phrases or clauses whose parts have become united in writing. In these compound forms prepositions

¹ As *ē* is an ablative ending, *certō* and *certē* are only different forms of the same word; so also *rectō* and *rectē*, *vērō* and *vērē*, though the two forms do not always have precisely the same meaning: *vērō*, in truth; *vērē*, truly.

² This is the regular ending in superlatives.

³ These are sometimes explained as *Datīves*, but they are probably *Ablatīves*; *illō*, lit., *by that way or road*, finally came to mean *to that place*, i. e., to the place to which the road leads.

⁴ Here the Locative ending is *i*: *hīc*, *illīc*, *istīc*, *sīc*; *c* for *ce* is a demonstrative ending, meaning *here*. *Sic* is the Locative of *sa*; see 313, foot-note.

⁵ *Uti* contains two stems—*u* or *cu* (seen in *cui*), and *ta* or *to* (seen in *te* in *is-te*).

⁶ In *ibī* and *ubī* the ending is *bī*; *i* in *ibī* is the stem of *is*, he; *u* in *ubī* is the same as in *utī*.

⁷ Seen also in *in-ter*, in the midst; *in-tus*, within; *sub-ter* and *sub-tus*, below. These suffixes are of uncertain origin; the former appears to be a case-suffix with ablative meaning, no longer used in declension; the latter, like *ter* in *al-ter*, *nos-ter*, and *de-ter*, has lost its case-suffix, and may therefore represent either *terō* with an ablative suffix, or *terum* with an accusative suffix. See Corssen, II., p. 299; Kühner, I., p. 679.

⁸ The stem-vowel *o* is changed to *i*.

are especially common, and sometimes seem to be used with cases with which they do not otherwise occur: *ant-eā*,¹ before, before that; *inter-eā*, in the mean time; *post-eā*, after; *ante-hāc*,¹ before this; *quem-ad-modum*, in what manner; *parum-per*, for a while; *nū-per* = *novum-per*, lately; *tantis-per*, for so long a time; *vidēlicet* = *videre licet*, clearly—lit., 'it is permitted to see'; *scīlicet* = *scire licet*, certainly; *forsitan* = *fors sit an*, perhaps.

305. Many Pronominal Adverbs, like the pronouns from which they are formed (191), are correlatives of each other, as will be seen in the following

TABLE OF CORRELATIVES.

INTERROGATIVE.	INDEFINITE.	DEMONSTRATIVE.	RELATIVE.
I. PLACE IN WHICH.			
<i>ubi</i> , where? ²	<i>alicubi</i> , somewhere; <i>usquam</i> , <i>usquam</i> , any- where; <i>ubivis</i> , where you please.	<i>hīc</i> , here; ³ <i>istīc</i> , there; <i>illīc</i> , there; <i>ibī</i> , there.	<i>ubi</i> , where.
II. PLACE TO WHICH.			
<i>quō</i> , whither?	<i>aliquō</i> , to some place; <i>quolibet</i> , <i>quōvis</i> , whith- er you please.	<i>hūc</i> , to this place; ³ <i>istūc</i> , to that place; <i>illūc</i> , to that place; <i>eō</i> , to that place; <i>eōdem</i> , to the same place.	<i>quō</i> , whither.
<i>quōrsum</i> , ⁴ to what place? to what end?	<i>aliquō-vorsum</i> , ⁴ to some place.	<i>hōrsum</i> , ⁴ to this place.	<i>quōrsum</i> , to which place or end.
III. PLACE FROM WHICH.			
<i>unde</i> , whence?	<i>alicunde</i> , from some place; <i>undelibet</i> , from any place.	<i>hīnc</i> , from this place; <i>istīnc</i> , from that place; <i>illīnc</i> , from that place; <i>īnc</i> , from that place.	<i>unde</i> , whence.

¹ Some scholars, regarding *eā* and *hāc* in these and similar cases as ablatives, think that all such compounds had their origin at a time when *ante*, *post*, *inter*, etc., admitted that case; but Corssen treats *eā* and *hāc* in all such cases as *neuters* in the *accusative plural*. See Corssen, II., p. 455; Bücheler, p. 32.

² Observe that the question *ubi*, 'where?' may be answered *indefinitely* by *alicubi*, *usquam*, etc., or *definitely* by a demonstrative either alone or with a relative: *hīc*, 'here'; *hīc, ubi*, 'here, where.'

³ *Hīc*, 'here,' 'near me'; *istīc*, 'there,' 'near you'; *illīc*, 'there,' 'near him'; *ibī*, 'there,' a weak demonstrative and the most common correlative of *ubi*, 'where.' See distinction in pronouns (191). A similar distinction exists in *hūc*, *istūc*, *illūc*, and *eō*.

⁴ For *quō-vorsum* = *quō-versum*, 'whither turned'; *aliquō-vorsum*, *hūc-vorsum*.

TABLE OF CORRELATIVES.—(Continued.)

INTERROGATIVE.	INDEFINITE.	DEMONSTRATIVE.	RELATIVE.
IV. TIME.			
<i>quandō</i> , when?	<i>quandō</i> , <i>aliquandō</i> , <i>unquam</i> , at any time.	<i>nunc</i> , now; <i>tum</i> , then; <i>tunc</i> , at that very time; <i>ibī</i> , then.	<i>quom</i> , <i>cum</i> , <i>quum</i> , when.
<i>quotiens</i> , how often?	<i>aliquotiens</i> , somewhat often.	<i>totiens</i> , so often.	<i>quotiens</i> , as, as often.
V. WAY, MANNER, DEGREE.			
<i>quā</i> , by or in what way?	<i>aliquā</i> , by or in some way; <i>quāvis</i> , by any way.	<i>hāc</i> , by this way; <i>istāc</i> , by that way; <i>illāc</i> , by that way; <i>eā</i> , by that way; <i>eā-</i> <i>dem</i> , by the same way.	<i>quā</i> , by which way.
<i>ut</i> , <i>utī</i> , how?	<i>aliquā</i> , in some way, etc.	<i>ita</i> , <i>sic</i> , so, thus.	<i>ut</i> , <i>utī</i> , in which way, as.
<i>quam</i> , how much?	<i>aliquam</i> , somewhat.	<i>tam</i> , so much.	<i>quam</i> , as.

NOTE 1.—From *Relative Adverbs* are formed *General or Indefinite Relatives* by appending *-cumque* or by reduplicating the form: *ubicumque*, *ubiubi*, wheresoever; *quōcumque*, *quōquō*, whithersoever.

NOTE 2.—Other examples are—

1) PLACE:—*alibi*, elsewhere; *ibidem*, in the same place; *neubi*, lest anywhere, that nowhere; *sicubi*, if anywhere; *aliō*, to another place; *citrō*, to this side; *ultrō* *citrōque*, to and fro; *utrōque*, to both places; *aliunde*, from another place; *indidem*, from the same place; *utrimque*, from or on both sides; *undique*, from all sides.

2) TIME:—*hodiē*, to-day; *heri*, yesterday; *crās*, to-morrow; *pridiē*, the day before; *postridiē*, the day after; *jam*, already; *jam tum*, even then; *jamdiū*, *jamdūdum*, *jampridem*, long ago; *quondam*, at a certain time; *olim*, formerly, hereafter; *interim*, *interea*, meanwhile; *anteā*, *prius*, before; *post*, *postea*, afterward; *unquam*, ever; *nūquam*, never; *semper*, at all times.

3) WAY, MANNER, DEGREE:—*adeō*, so; *aliter*, otherwise; *magis*, more; *paene*, almost; *palam*, openly; *prorsus*, wholly; *rīte*, rightly; *valdē*, greatly; *vix*, scarcely.

4) CAUSE:—*cūr*, why; *eō*, for this reason; *ideō*, *idcirco*, *propterea*, on this account; *ergō*, *igitur*, *itaque*, therefore, accordingly.

NOTE 3.—*Nesciō*, with an interrogative adverb, is often equivalent to an indefinite adverb: *nesciō quōmodo*, I know not in what way = *quōdammodo*, in some way; *nesciō ubi* = *alicubi*, in some place; *nesciō unde* = *alicunde*, from some place; see also 191, note.

NOTE 4.—Adverbial phrases are formed by combining *mīrum* or *nīmium* with *quantum*: *mīrum quantum*, it is wonderful how much = wonderfully much, wonderfully; *nīmium quantum*, exceedingly. *Mīrum quam*, *sānē quam*, and *valdē quam* have a similar force: *how wonderfully*, *how very*, *how greatly* = *exceedingly*, *wonderfully*.

NOTE 5.—For INTERROGATIVE PARTICLES, see 311, 8.

NOTE 6.—For NEGATIVE PARTICLES, see 552.

306. COMPARISON.—Most adverbs are derived from adjectives, and are dependent upon them for their comparison. The comparative is the accusative neuter singular of the adjective, and the superlative changes the ending *us* of the adjective into *ē*:¹

altus,	altior,	altissimus,	lofty.
altē,	altius,	altissimē,	loftily.
prūdēns,	prūdēntior,	prūdētissimus,	prudent.
prūdenter,	prūdētius,	prūdētissimē,	prudently.

1. When the adjective is compared with *magis* and *māximē*, the adverb is compared in the same way:

ēgregius,	magis ēgregius,	māximē ēgregius,	excellent.
ēgregiē,	magis ēgregiē,	māximē ēgregiē,	excellently.

2. When the adjective is irregular, the adverb has the same irregularity:

bonus,	melior,	optimus,	good.
bene,	melius,	optimē,	well.
male,	pējus,	pessimē,	badly.

3. When the adjective is defective, the adverb is generally defective:

_____	dēterior,	dēterrimus,	worse.
_____	dēterius,	dēterrimē,	worse.
novus,	_____	novissimus,	new.
novē,	_____	novissimē,	newly.

4. A few not derived from adjectives are compared:

diū,	diūtius,	diūtissimē,	for a long time.
saepe,	saepius,	saepissimē,	often.
satis,	satiū,	_____	sufficiently.
nūper,	_____	nūperimē,	recently.

5. Most adverbs not derived from adjectives, as also those from adjectives incapable of comparison (169), are not compared: *hīc*, here; *nunc*, now; *vulgārīter*, commonly.

6. Superlatives in *ō* or *um* are used in a few adverbs: *prīmō*, *primum*, *potissimum*.

PREPOSITIONS.

307. The Preposition is the part of speech which shows the relations of objects to each other:

In Itāliā esse, to be *IN Italy*; *ante mē*, *BEFORE me*.

NOTE 1.—Prepositions were originally adverbs, and, like other adverbs (304), are in origin petrified case-forms.²

¹ See 304, II., 2.

² Thus prepositions in *ā* are in origin ablatives: *circā*, *citrā*, *contrā*, *ergā*, *extrā*, *infrā*, etc.; while those in *m* are accusatives: *circum*, *cōram*, *cum*, etc. These case-forms passed into adverbs denoting *direction*, *situation*, etc.; but they finally became associated with nouns in the accusative or ablative as auxiliary to the case-ending: *locō*

NOTE 2.—For the USE of Prepositions, see 432–437.

NOTE 3.—For the FORM and MEANING of Prepositions in Composition, see 344, 5.

308. INSEPARABLE PREPOSITIONS.¹ — *Ambi*, *amb*, ‘around,’ ‘about’; *dis*, *dī*, ‘asunder’; *in*, ‘not,’ ‘un-’; *por*, ‘toward,’ ‘forth’; *re*, *red*, ‘back’; *sē*, *sēd*, ‘aside,’ ‘apart’; and *vē*, ‘not,’ are called Inseparable Prepositions, because they are used only in composition.

NOTE.—For the FORM and MEANING of the Inseparable Prepositions in Composition, see 344, 6.

CONJUNCTIONS.

309. Conjunctions are mere connectives. They are either *Coordinate* or *Subordinate*.

1. COÖRDINATE CONJUNCTIONS connect similar constructions:

Labor voluptāsque,² *labor* AND *pleasure*. *Karthāginem cēpit* AND *diruit*, *he took* AND *destroyed Carthage*.

2. SUBORDINATE CONJUNCTIONS connect subordinate with principal constructions:

*Haec dum*² *colligunt*, *effugit*, WHILE *they collect these things*, *he escapes*.

310. COÖRDINATE CONJUNCTIONS comprise—

1. COPULATIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting UNION:

Et, *que*, *atque*,³ *ac*, and; *etiam*, *quoque*, also; *neque*, *nec*, and not; *neque—neque*, *ne—nec*, *neque—nec*, neither—nor.

2. DISJUNCTIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting SEPARATION:

Aut,⁴ *vel*, *ve*, *sive* (*seu*), or; *aut—aut*, *vel—vel*, either—or; *sive—sive*, either—or.

NOTE.—Here belong interrogative particles in double or disjunctive questions: *utrum*, *num*, or *ne—an*, whether—or; *an*, or; *annōn*, *necne*, or not; see 353.

3. ADVERSATIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting OPPOSITION:

= FROM a place; *ex locō* = OUT of a place; *aliquid locō movēre*, to move anything FROM a place; *aliquid ex locō movēre*, to move anything OUT of a place. An adverb thus separated from the verb and brought into connection with a noun ceased to be an *adverb* and became a *preposition*.

¹ Like other prepositions, these were doubtless originally case-forms.

² Thus *que* connects two nominatives, *ac* two indicatives which are entirely coördinate, *took* AND *destroyed*, but *dum* connects the subordinate clause, *haec—colligunt*, with the principal clause, *effugit—he escapes* WHILE *they collect these things*.

³ Copulative conjunctions are *et* = Greek *ēti*, *que* = *kai*, and their compounds—*et—iam* or *et—jam*, *at—que*, *quo—que*, *ne—que*. *Ac* is a shortened form of *at—que*; *nec*, of *ne—que*.

⁴ Disjunctives are *aut*, *vel*, *ve*, with their compounds: *vel* = *vel*-s, ‘should you wish,’ offering a choice, *ve* = *vīs*, ‘you wish,’ as in *quī—vīs*, ‘any you please’; *sive* = *sivē*s, ‘if you wish.’

Sed,¹ *autem*, *vērūm*, *vērō*, but; *at*, but, on the contrary; *atquē*, rather; *cēterum*, but still, moreover;² *tamen*, yet.

4. ILLATIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting INFERENCE:

Ergō, *igitur*, *inde*, *proinde*, *itaque*, hence, therefore; see also 554, IV., 2.

5. CAUSAL CONJUNCTIONS, denoting CAUSE:

Nam, *namque*, *enim*, *etenim*, for.³

311. SUBORDINATE CONJUNCTIONS comprise—

1. TEMPORAL CONJUNCTIONS, denoting TIME:

Quandō, *quom*,⁴ *cum*, or *quum*, when; *ut*, *ubi*, as, when; *cum* (*quom* or *quum*) *primum*, *ut primum*, *ubi primum*, *simul*, *simulac*, *simul ac*, *simul-atque*, *simul atque*, as soon as; *dum*, *dōnec*, *quoad*, *quandiu*,⁵ while, until, as long as; *antequam*, *priusquam*, before; *postēquam*, after.

2. COMPARATIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting COMPARISON:

Ut, *utī*, *sicut*, *sicuti*, as, so as; *velut*, just as; *praeut*, *prout*, according as, in comparison with; *quam*, as; *tanquam*, *quasi*, *ut sī*, *ac sī*, *velut sī*, as if.

3. CONDITIONAL CONJUNCTIONS, denoting CONDITION:

Sī,⁶ if; *sī nōn*, *nisi*, *nē*, if not; *sīn*, but if; *sī quidem*, if indeed; *sī modo*, *dum modo*, *dummodo*, if only, provided.

4. CONCESSIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting CONCESSION:

Quamquam, *licet*,⁷ *cum* (*quom*,⁴ or *quum*), although; *etsī*, *tametsī*, *etiāmsī*, even if; *quamvis*,⁷ *quantumvis*, *quantumlibet*,⁷ however much, although; *ut*, grant that; *nē*, grant that not.

5. FINAL CONJUNCTIONS, denoting PURPOSE OR END:

Ut, *utī*, that, in order that; *nē*, *nēve* (*neu*), that not; *quō*, that; *quōminus*,⁸ that not.

6. CONSECUTIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting CONSEQUENCE OR RESULT:

Ut, so that; *ut nōn*, *quīn*,⁸ so that not.

¹ Conjunctions, like adverbs, consist largely of case-forms, chiefly from pronominal stems. Thus, *sed*, *vērō*, *ergō*, etc., are explained as ablatives (*sed* from *su*); *autem*, *verum*, *cēterum*, *quam*, *quod*, *quom*, or *cum*, etc., as accusatives; *que*, *ubi*, *utī*, *ut*, etc., as locatives.

² Lit., as to the rest.

³ But most Causal Conjunctions are subordinate; see 311, 7.

⁴ *Quom*, the original form out of which *cum* and *quum* were developed (22; 26, foot-note), occurs in early Latin, as in Plautus. *Cum* is the approved form in classical Latin.

⁵ See 304, I., 1 and 2, foot-notes.

⁶ Probably locative, possibly instrumental; see page 78, foot-note 2.

⁷ *Licet* is strictly a verb, meaning *it is permitted*; *vis*, in *quam-vis* and *quantumvis*, is also a verb: *quam-vis*, 'as much as you wish'; as is also *libet*, 'it pleases,' in *quantum-libet*, 'as much as is pleasing.'

⁸ *Quōminus* = *quō minus*, 'by which less'; *quīn* = *quī nē*, 'by which not.'

7. CAUSAL CONJUNCTIONS, denoting CAUSE:

Quia, quod, quoniam,¹ *quandō*, because, inasmuch as; *cum* (*quom, quum*) since; *quandōquidem, siquidem*,² *utpote*, since indeed.

8. INTERROGATIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting INQUIRY:³

Nē, nōnne, num, utrum, an, whether; *an nōn, necne*, or not.

INTERJECTIONS.

312. Interjections are certain particles used as expressions of feeling or as mere marks of address.⁴ They may express—

1. Astonishment: *ō, hem, ehem, atāt, bubae, vāh, ēn, ecce*.
2. Joy: *iō, ēvoe, euge, ēja, ō, papae*.
3. Sorrow: *vae, ei, heu, ēheu, ōhē, āh, au, prō*.
4. Disgust: *āha, phē, apage*.
5. Calling: *heus, ō, ēho, ehodum*.
6. Praise: *eu, euge, ēja, hēja*.

CHAPTER VI.

FORMATION OF WORDS.

SECTION I.

ROOTS.—STEMS.—SUFFIXES.

313. Words are formed from stems (46, 1), and stems from roots or from other stems.

NOTE 1.—Thus *status*, 'position,' is formed from the stem *statu* by adding the nominative suffix *s*,⁵ but the stem *statu* is itself formed from the root *sta* by appending the derivative suffix *tu*.

¹ Compounded of *quom-jam*, when now.

² Lit., if indeed.

³ These are sometimes classed as *Adverbs*. In some of their uses they are plainly *Conjunctions*, while in other cases they approach closely to the nature of *Adverbs*. As a matter of convenience they may be called *Interrogative Particles*; see 351, 1.

⁴ Some interjections seem to be the simple and natural utterance of feeling, and accordingly do not appear to have been built up, like other words, from roots and stems, but to be themselves specimens of the unorganized elements of human speech. Others, however, are either inflected forms, as *age*, 'come,' *apage* = *āpays*, 'begone,' or mutilated sentences or clauses: *meherculēs, mehercu'e*, etc., = *mē Herculēs juvet*, 'may Hercules protect me'; *mēcastōr*, 'may Castor protect me'; *mēdius fidius*, 'may the true God help me'; *ēcastōr* = *ēn Castōr*, 'lo Castor.'

⁵ This *s* is doubtless a remnant of an old demonstrative, *sa*, meaning *that, he, she*.

NOTE 2.—Words are either simple or compound :

1. *Simple*, when formed from single roots with or without suffixes.

2. *Compound*, when formed by the union of two or more roots or stems; see 340, III.

314. ROOTS.—Roots are the primitive elements out of which all words in our family of languages have been formed.¹ They are of two kinds:

I. **PREDICATIVE ROOTS**, also called **VERBAL ROOTS**.² These designate or name objects, actions, or qualities: *es* in *es-t*, he is; *i* in *i-re*, to go; *duc* in *duc-s* = *dux*, leader; *doc* in *doc-ilis*, docile.

II. **DEMONSTRATIVE ROOTS**,³ also called **PRONOMINAL ROOTS**. These do not name objects or actions, but simply point out the relation of such objects or actions to the speaker: *me* in *meī*, of me; *tu* in *tuī*, of you; *i* in *is*, that, that one, he.

315. The STEMS⁴ of simple words may be divided into three classes: *Root Stems*, *Primary Stems*, and *Secondary Stems*.

316. ROOT STEMS are either identical with roots, or are formed from them without the aid of suffixes:

Duc-is, 'of a leader,' root-stem *duc*; ⁵ *es-tis*, 'you are,' root-stem *es*; *rēg-ēs*, 'kings,' root-stem *rēg*; *vōc-is*, 'of the voice,' root-stem *vōc*; *murmur-is*, 'of a murmur,' root-stem *murmur*.

317. PRIMARY STEMS are formed from roots by means of suffixes:⁶

¹ These roots were probably all monosyllabic, and were once used separately as words, but not as parts of speech. Thus *es*, the root of *sum*, *esse*, 'to be,' and *i*, the root of *eō*, *īre*, 'to go,' were doubtless used in their original form, as significant words, long before the verbs themselves had an existence.

² Observe that from this class of roots, whether called *Predicative* or *Verbal*, may be formed the stems, not only of verbs, but also of nouns, adjectives, and, in fact of all the parts of speech except pronouns.

³ The learner should note the difference in signification between *Predicative* and *Demonstrative* Roots. Thus *dux* has a definite meaning, and must always designate *one who leads*; while the pronoun *ego* is not the name of any person or thing, but may be used by any and every person in speaking of himself.

⁴ The learner has already become familiar with the use of stems in the inflection of nouns, adjectives, etc.; but stems, like roots, were probably once used as words.

⁵ The basis of every inflected word is a stem. *Duc* is therefore the stem of *duc-is*, but as it can not be derived from a more primitive form, it is also a *root*. According to some authorities, *rēg*, the stem of *rēg-ēs*, and *vōc*, the stem of *vōc-is*, are not roots, but derived from more primitive forms—*reg* in *reg-ō*, and *voc* in *voc-ō*; according to other authorities, however, *reg* and *rēg* are only two forms of the same root; so also *voc* and *vōc*, *duc* and *dūc*. The stem *murmur* is not a root, but formed from the root *mur* by reduplication. See Curtius, *Chron.*, p. 25; Schleicher, pp. 341–350; Meyer, pp. 6 871–876.

⁶ Any suffix used to form a *Primary Stem* is called a *Primary Suffix*; see 320.

ROOT.	SUFFIX.	STEM.	WORD.	
ar,	vo,	ar-vo,	ar-vu-m, ¹	<i>field.</i>
fac,	to,	fac-to,	fac-tu-s, ¹	<i>made.</i>
sta,	tu,	sta-tu,	sta-tu-s,	<i>position.</i>

NOTE.—All stems formed from verb-stems are also generally classed as *Primary Stems*:² *cūrā-tor*, 'guardian,' 'curator,' from *cūrō*, 'to care for,' from *cūra*, 'care.'

318. SECONDARY STEMS are formed from other stems³ by means of suffixes:⁴

STEM.	SUFFIX.	SECONDARY STEM.	WORD.	
cīvi, ⁵	co ;	cīvi-co,	cīvicus,	<i>civic.</i>
vīctōr, ⁵	iā ;	vīctōr-iā,	vīctōria,	<i>victory.</i>
vīctōr,	ic ;	vīctōr-ic,	vīctrix, ⁶	<i>victress.</i>

319. THE STEMS OF COMPOUND WORDS are formed by the union of two or more stems, or of a stem with a root :

fu-erā, ⁷	fu-erā-s,	<i>you had been.</i>
grand-aevo, ⁸	grand-aevu-s,	<i>of great age.</i>
īgni-colōr, ⁹	īgni-color,	<i>fire-colored.</i>
māgn-animo, ¹⁰	māgn-animu-s,	<i>great-souled.</i>

NOTE 1.—Words are formed from Stems by means of the Suffixes of Inflection ; see **46** and **202**, note 1.

NOTE 2.—A single root often gives rise to a large class of forms. Thus, from the root *sta*, 'to stand,' are derived—

1. The numerous forms which make up the conjugation of the verb *stō*, *stāre*, *stetī*, *stātum*, to stand.

2. All the forms of the verb *sistō*, *sistere*, *stitī*, *statum*, 'to place.'

3. Numerous other forms. Thus (1) *sta-bilis*, 'stable,' from which are derived *stabilis*, 'to make firm'; *stabilitās*, 'firmness,' and *stabiliter*, 'firmly'; (2) *stabulum*, 'a standing place,' 'stable,' from which are derived *stabulō*, and *stabulor*, 'to have a standing place'; (3) *stāmen*, 'something standing,' 'warp in an upright loom'; (4) *statim*, 'in standing,' 'at once'; (5) *statio*, 'standing'; (6) *stativus*, 'stationary'; (7) *stator*, 'a stayer'; and (8) *status*, 'position,' from which is derived *statuō*, 'to place,' which in turn becomes the basis of *statua*, 'a statue,' and *statūra*, 'stature.'

¹ *Ar-vo-m* weakened to *arvum*, *fac-to-s* to *factus*; see **22**, 2.

² This is a matter of convenience, as new stems, or words, are formed from verb-stems in the same manner as from roots; see Schleicher, p. 347.

³ Except verb-stems. Remember that stems formed from verb-stems are treated as Primary; see **317**, note.

⁴ Any suffix used to form a Secondary stem is called a Secondary suffix, but many suffixes may be either primary or secondary. Thus *co* in *cīvicus* is Secondary, as it is added to a stem; but in *locus*, 'place,' it is Primary, as it is added to a root.

⁵ *Cīvi* is the stem of *civis*, 'citizen'; *vīctōr* of *vīctor*, 'conqueror'.

⁶ For *vīctōrix*, by contraction.

⁷ Compounded of root *fu* with stem *erā* from the root *es*; see **203**, note 2, and **243**.

⁸ For *grandi-aevo*.

⁹ Compounded of *īgni*, the stem of *īgnis*, 'fire,' and of *colōr*, the stem of *color*, 'color.'

¹⁰ Compounded of *māgno*, the stem of *māgnus*, 'great,' and of *animo*, the stem of *animus*, 'soul,' *māgno-animo* becoming *māgnanimo*.

320. SUFFIXES.—Most suffixes¹ appear to have been formed from a comparatively small number of primitive elements called

PRIMARY SUFFIXES.

I.	II. ²	EXAMPLES.
a,	ă, ³ o, ē, e, i, ō, u,	ă and o in nouns and adjectives, ē in nouns, and e, i, ō, and u in verbs: <i>scrib-a</i> , writer; <i>fug-a</i> , flight; <i>jug-o</i> , Nom. <i>jug-u-m</i> , ⁴ yoke; <i>fid-ē</i> , Nom. <i>fid-ē-s</i> , faith; <i>reg-e</i> , ⁵ rule thou; <i>reg-i-s</i> , you rule; <i>reg-ō</i> , I rule; <i>reg-u-nt</i> , they rule.
i,	i,	in a few nouns: <i>av-i</i> , Nom. <i>av-i-s</i> , bird; <i>arc-i</i> , Nom. <i>arc-i-s</i> , <i>arc-s</i> , ⁶ <i>arc</i> , citadel.
u,	u,	in nouns: ⁷ <i>ac-u</i> , Nom. <i>ac-u-s</i> , needle.
an,	on, ōn, en, in,	denoting either the ACT or the AGENT; <i>asperg-on</i> , Nom. <i>aspergō</i> ⁸ (G. <i>inīs</i>), sprinkling; <i>ger-ōn</i> , <i>gerō</i> ⁸ (G. <i>ōnīs</i>), a carrier; <i>pect-en</i> (G. <i>inīs</i>), a comb.
ant, ⁹	ent, unt,	in present participles: ¹⁰ <i>audient-s</i> , ¹⁰ <i>audiēns</i> , hearing; <i>ab-es-ent-s</i> , <i>ab-sēns</i> , absent; <i>amā-ent-s</i> , <i>amāns</i> , loving.

¹ Most suffixes appear to be of pronominal origin, i. e., from pronominal stems or roots, but, according to Bopp, Corssen, and others, a few may be of verbal origin. Thus in several suffixes beginning with *b*—seen in *ber*, *bitis*, *bulum*, etc.—Corssen recognizes the root *bhar* = *fer* in *fer-ō*, 'to bear'; in some beginning with *t*—seen in *ter*, *tor*, *tūrus*, etc.—the root *tar*, 'to accomplish'; in some beginning with *c*—seen in *cer*, *culum*, *crum*, etc.—the root *kar* = *cer*, *cre* in *cre-ō*, 'to make.' For a discussion of the subject, see Bopp, III., pp. 186–201; Corssen, I., p. 567; II., pp. 40, 68; Schleicher, p. 443.

² Column I. shows the suffix in its *supposed* original form, while column II. shows the various forms which the suffix has assumed in Latin.

³ Originally long in Latin in feminine forms; see 21, 2, 1).

⁴ Observe that these suffixes form *stems*, not *cases*. Sometimes the Nominative Singular is in form identical with the stem; but in most cases, the Nominative is formed from the stem by adding the Nominative suffix, as *s* in *fidē-s*, *m* in *jugu-m* for *jugo-m* (*o* weakened to *u*, 22, 2).

⁵ Observe that the Present stem takes the several forms, *reg-e*, *reg-i*, *reg-ō*, *reg-u*; but see page 118, foot-note 5.

⁶ Often thus dropped; sometimes changed to *e*, *ē*: *mari*, *mare*, sea; *caedi*, *caede*, *caedē-s*, slaughter.

⁷ Also in adjectives, in union with *i* making *ui*: *ten-ut-s*, thin.

⁸ *N* dropped; see 36, 5, 8).

⁹ This is the base of several compound suffixes: *ent-o*, *ent-iā*, *ent-io*—Nom. *ent-um*, *ent-ia*, and *ent-ium*; *flu-ent-um*, stream; *sapi-ent-ia*, wisdom; *sil-ent-ium*, silence.

¹⁰ Also in a few adjectives and nouns: *frequ-ent-s*, *frequēns*, frequent; *pari-ent-s* *parēns*. Here *s* is the Nominative ending.

PRIMARY SUFFIXES.—(Continued.)

I.	II.	EXAMPLES.
as,	os, us, es, ¹ ēs, ōr, ur,	<i>gen-os</i> , <i>gen-us</i> , ² birth; <i>corp-us</i> , ³ body; <i>nūb-ēs</i> , cloud; <i>rōb-ur</i> , ³ strength; <i>sop-or</i> (21, 2), sleep.
ja ⁴ = ya,	iā, ⁵ io, iē,	iā and io in adjectives; iē in nouns: <i>ex-im-iā</i> , <i>ex-im-io</i> , Nom. <i>ex-im-iu-s</i> , <i>ex-im-ia</i> , <i>ex-in-iu-m</i> , select; <i>fac-iē</i> , Nom. <i>fac-iē-s</i> , appearance
ja ⁶ = ya,	e, i, iō, iu,	in verbs: <i>cap-e</i> , take thou; <i>cap-e-re</i> , to take; <i>cap-i-s</i> , you take; <i>cap-i-mus</i> , we take; <i>cap-iō</i> , I take; <i>cap-iu-nt</i> , they take.
jans ⁷ = yans,	iōs, iōr, ius, jōr, ōr,	in comparatives: <i>mag-iōs</i> , <i>mag-iōr</i> , <i>mā-jōr</i> , Nom. <i>mā-jor</i> (21, 2), greater; <i>min-ōr</i> , <i>min-or</i> (21, 2), smaller; see 162, 165.
ka,	cā, co,	rare: ⁸ <i>pau-cā</i> , <i>pau-co</i> , <i>pau-cus</i> , a, um, small; <i>lo-co</i> , <i>locus</i> , place.
la,	lā, lo, li,	see <i>ra</i> .
ma, ⁹	mā, mo,	<i>fōr-ma</i> , form; <i>pri-mo</i> , <i>pri-mus</i> , first; <i>sup-mo</i> , <i>sum-mo</i> (34, 3), <i>sum-mus</i> , highest; <i>al-mo</i> , <i>al-mus</i> , cherishing.

¹ This suffix seems to be used in forming the Latin Infinitive, in origin the Dative of a verbal noun: *reg-es-e*, *reg-ere* (31, 1), 'to rule'—lit., *for ruling*; *e* is the Dative ending (67, note); see Schleicher, p. 472. See also page 81, foot-note 2.

² With variable vowel (57, 2); in early Latin *o*, in classical Latin *u* in Nominative Singular, *e* in other cases. We thus have in early Latin *os* in *gen-os*, and in classical Latin *us* in *gen-us*, and *es* changed to *er* (31, 1) in *gen-er-is*, *gen-er-i*, etc. Words of this class take no Nominative ending.

³ With variable vowel—*o*, *u*. We thus have *corp-us*, *corp-or-is*, with *s* changed to *r* (31, 1). *S* final is also changed to *r* in *rōbur*; see 31, 2.

⁴ Doubtless a pronominal stem. It is common as a secondary suffix (page 154, foot-note 4): *pater-io*, *patr-io*, Nom. *patr-ius*, paternal; *victōr-ia*, victory; *luxur-ia*, *luxur-iēs*, luxury; see 325.

⁵ Originally long in Latin, see 21, 2, 1).

⁶ Probably the verbal root *ja*, identical with *i* in *īre*, to go. So explained by Curtius, *Verbum*, I., pp. 290-295. *Ja* was also used as a secondary suffix, appended to the stems of nouns and adjectives, in forming denominative verbs; see 335, foot-note.

⁷ This suffix is generally secondary: *alt-ior*, *alt-ius*, higher; *sapient-ior*, *wisier*; see 162.

⁸ It seems to appear without its final vowel in some nouns in *r*: *ape-c-s*, *apea*, point, top. It is common as a secondary suffix: *civi-co*, *civi-cus*, civic (330); and is also used in compound suffixes, as *cu-lo*, *ci-no*, *ti-co*: *flōs-cu-lus*, a small flower; *vātī-ci-nus*, prophetic. See Schleicher, p. 478; Corssen, II., pp. 205, 306, 307.

⁹ This is also an element in *ti-mā*, *ti-mo*, *si-mā*, *si-mo*, *is-si-mā*, *is-si-mo*: *op-ti-mus*, a, um, best; *alt-is-si-mus*, highest.

PRIMARY SUFFIXES.—(Continued.)

I.	II.	EXAMPLES.
man, ¹	men, ² min, ² mōn;	denoting the MEANS of the action, sometimes the ACT itself, or its RESULT: <i>tegi-men</i> , or <i>teg-men</i> , ² a covering; <i>nō-men</i> , ³ name; <i>certā-men</i> , contest; <i>ser-mōn</i> , <i>ser-mō</i> , ⁴ discourse.
na, ⁵	nā, no,	1. in adjectives with the force of perfect participles: ⁵ <i>plēnā</i> , <i>plē-no</i> , <i>plē-nus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> , filled, full; <i>rēg-no</i> , <i>rēg-num</i> , kingdom, that which is ruled. 2. in nouns and adjectives with various meanings: ⁶ <i>sop-no</i> , <i>som-no</i> (33, 3, note), <i>som-nus</i> , sleep.
ni,	ni, ⁷	<i>īg-ni</i> , <i>īg-nis</i> , fire; <i>pā-ni</i> , <i>pā-nis</i> , bread.
nu,	nu,	very rare: <i>ma-nu</i> , <i>ma-nus</i> , hand.
ra, ⁸ la,	rā, ro, lā, lo, li,	<i>ag-ro</i> (<i>agrus</i>), <i>ager</i> , field; <i>sac-ro</i> (<i>sac-rus</i>), <i>sacer</i> , <i>sac-ra</i> , <i>sac-rum</i> , sacred; <i>sed-lā</i> , <i>sel-la</i> (34, 2), seat; <i>candē-la</i> , a light; <i>tē-lo</i> , <i>tē-lum</i> , weapon; <i>doci-li</i> , <i>doci-lis</i> , docile.
ta, ⁹	tā, to, sā, so,	1. in perfect participles: ¹⁰ <i>amā-tō</i> , <i>amā-tus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> , loved; <i>plaud-to</i> , <i>plau-so</i> (35, 3), <i>plausus</i> , applauded; <i>cōnā-tus</i> , having tried; <i>prān-sus</i> , having taken lunch. 2. in a few adjectives: <i>sex-to</i> , <i>sex-tus</i> , sixth.

¹ This is an element in *men-to*, *mōn-tū*, and *mōn-io*: *nūtri-men-tum*, nutriment; *queri-mīn-ia*, complaint; *testi-mīn-ium* (secondary suffix), testimony.

² With variable vowel (57, 2). The suffix *man* is weakened to *men* in the Nominative Singular, and to *min* in the other cases.

³ For *gnō-men*, 'name,' the means by which one is known.

⁴ *N* is dropped; see 36, 5, 8).

⁵ Nearly equivalent to *ta*. In some languages it forms passive participles like *ta*.

⁶ Often secondary: *pater-no*, *pater-nus*, paternal; sometimes preceded by *ā*, *i*, or *ē*: *font-ā-nus*, of a fountain; *can-ī-nus*, canine; *ali-ē-nus*, belonging to another; see 327, 329, and 330.

⁷ As *ta* and *na* are closely related in meaning and use, so are *tī* and *nī*. They are sometimes united in the same suffix: *tī-ō-nī* (326).

⁸ *Ra* and *la* are only different forms of the same suffix. In Latin and Greek this suffix often forms verbal adjectives which sometimes pass into nouns: *gnā-rus*, 'knowing,' from *gnā* in *nō-scō*, 'to know'; *δῶ-ρον*, 'gift,' 'something given,' from *δο* in *δίδωμι*, 'to give.'

⁹ In the form of *tī* it is the first element in *tī-mus*, *a*, *um*: *op-tī-mus*, best; and the second element in *is-si-mus*, *a*, *um*: *alt-is-si-mus*, highest. In the form of *tū*, it is the first element in *tū-ti*, shortened to *tūt*: *cīvi-tās* = *cīvi-tūt-s*, state.

¹⁰ Often becoming adjectives or nouns: *al-to*, *al-tus*, high; *nā-tus*, son.

PRIMARY SUFFIXES.—(Continued.)

I.	II.	EXAMPLES.
tar,	ter, tǒr,	see <i>tra</i> .
ti, ¹	ti, ² si,	in verbal nouns: <i>ves-ti</i> , <i>ves-tis</i> , garment; <i>met-ti</i> , <i>met-tis</i> , <i>messis</i> (35, 3), reaping, harvest.
tu,	tũ, ³	in verbal nouns, including supines: <i>sta-tu</i> , <i>sta-tus</i> , standing; <i>i-tu</i> , <i>i-tus</i> , going; <i>dic-tũ</i> (supine), in telling, to tell.
tar, ⁴ tra, ⁴	ter, tǒr, tro,	ter ⁵ and tǒr denoting AGENCY; tro , MEANS: <i>pa-ter</i> , father; <i>mā-ter</i> , mother; <i>vic-tor</i> , conqueror; <i>audi-tor</i> , hearer; <i>arā-trum</i> , plough.
vă,	vo, uo,	in nouns and adjectives: <i>ar-vo</i> , <i>ar-vum</i> , ploughed field; <i>vac-uo</i> , <i>vac-uus</i> , empty.

SECTION II.

DERIVATION OF WORDS.

FORMATION OF NOUNS BY SUFFIXES.

I. FROM THE STEMS OF OTHER NOUNS.

321. DIMINUTIVES generally end in—

lus, la, lum; ulus, ula, ulum; culus, cula, culum:⁶

¹ *Ti* is the first element in *ti-ă*, *tī-o*, *tī-ē*, *tī-ō-ni*, *ti-ēn* (*i* dropped): *jūsti-tia*, justice; *servi-tia*, *servi-tium*, service; *dūri-tiē*, *dūri-tis*, hardness; *sta-tiōn*, *sta-tiō* (*n* dropped), station.

² *I* often disappears: *men-ti*, *men-tis*, *men-ts*, *mēns* (36, 2), mind.

³ *Tu* is the first element in the suffixes, *tu-ă*, *tu-o*; *tū-ti*, *tūt*, and *tū-don*: *sta-tua*, statue; *mor-tuus*, dead; *servi-tūtī*, *servi-tūt* (*servi-tūts*), *servi-tūs*, servitude; *turpi-tūdōn*, *turpi-tūdō* (*n* dropped), turpitude.

⁴ Perhaps of verbal origin (320, foot-note 1). This suffix seems to be the basis of several compound suffixes: *tēr-iă*, *tēr-iō*, *tūră*, *tūro*, *trio* for *tēr-i-o*, etc.; see examples, 324, 326, 330.

⁵ *Ter* is used in names denoting family relationship, originally AGENCY: *pa-ter*, lit., protector, from the root *pa*, to protect.

⁶ For the convenience of the learner the suffixes are given in the Nominative form, i. e., with the Nominative ending and the modified stem-vowel. Observe that the stem suffix in *lu-s* and *lu-m* is *lo*. The endings, *ulus*, *ula*, *ulum*, were developed irregularly after the analogy of *u-lus*, *u-la*, *u-lum* in such words as *hortu-lus*, *virgu-lus*, *oppidu-lum*, where the *u* is the modified stem-vowel. Thus the *u* in *rēg-u-lus* and *capit-u-lum* is an irregularity introduced from the Diminutives of *a* and *o* stems. *Lus*, *la*, *lum* are formed from the suffix *la* or *ra*, often used in forming Primary Stems (320). *Culus*, *cula*, *culum* are compound suffixes in which the first part, *cu*, is formed from the suffix, originally *ka*, modified in Latin to *co*, *cu*, seen in *lo-co-s*, *locus*, place; see 320, *ka*, foot-note.

filio-lus,	a little son,	from	filius,	son.
filio-la,	a little daughter,	"	filia,	daughter.
atrio-lum,	a small hall,	"	atrium,	hall.
alveo-lus,	a small cavity,	"	alveus,	cavity.
hortu-lus,	a small garden,	"	hortus,	garden.
virgu-la,	a small branch,	"	virga,	branch.
oppidu-lum,	a small town,	"	oppidum,	town.
rēg-ulus,	a petty king,	"	rēx,	king.
capit-ulum,	a small head,	"	caput,	head.
flōs-culus,	a small flower,	"	flōs,	flower.
parti-cula,	a small part,	"	pars,	part.
mīnus-culum,	a small present,	"	mīnus,	present.

1. **Lus, la, lum**, are appended to **a** and **o** stems; **ulus, ula, ulum**, to *Dental* and *Guttural* stems; **culus, cula, culum**, to **e, i,** and **u** stems, and to *Liquid* and **s** stems; see examples.

2. Before **lus, la, lum**, the stem-vowels **ā** and **o** take the form of **o** after **e** or **i**, and the form of **u** in other situations: *filio-lus, filio-la* for *filīd-la, hortu-lus* for *horto-lus*.

3. Before **culus, cula, culum**, stems in **u** change **u** into **i**, and stems in **on** change **o** into **u**: *versi-culus*, 'a little verse,' from *versus*; *homun-culus*, 'a small man,' from *homō*. Like nouns in **on**, a few other words form diminutives in *un-culus, un-cula*: *av-unculus*, 'maternal uncle,' from *avus*, 'grandfather.'¹

4. **El-lus, el-la, el-lum, il-lus, il-la, il-lum**,² are used when the stem of the primitive ends in **ā** or **o**, preceded by **l, n,** or **r**: *ocel-lus*,² 'small eye,' from *oculus*; *fābel-la*, 'short fable,' from *fābula*; *vīl-lum*,² 'a small wine,' from *vīnum*.

NOTE.—The endings **leus** and **ciō** occur: *ecu-leus*,³ 'a small horse,' from *egrus*; *homun-ciō*, 'a small man,' from *homō*.

322. PATRONYMICS, or names of DESCENT, generally end in—

dēs, stem-suffix **dā**, masculine; **s** for **ds**, stem-suffix **d**, feminine.

Tantali-dēs,	son of Tantalus;	Tantali-s,	daughter of Tantalus. ⁴
Thēsī-dēs,	son of Theseus;	Thēsēi-s,	daughter of Theseus.
Thestia-dēs,	son of Thesius;	Thestīā-s,	daughter of Thesius.

NOTE.—The suffix **nē**, preceded by **i** or **ō**, is sometimes used in forming feminine Patronymics: *Neptūnī-nē*, daughter of Neptune; *Aerisīō-nē*, daughter of Aerisius.

¹ *Nubē-cula, plūbē-cula*, and *vulpē-cula* are formed as if from *e*-stems.

² The syllables *el* and *il* do not belong to the ending, but are produced by a slight change in the stem. The quantity of the vowel *e* or *i* is therefore determined by the primitive: thus, *oculus, oculu-lus* = *ocul-lus* = *ocul-lus*; *vīnum, vīnu-lum* = *vīn-lum* = *vīl-lum*.

³ Also written *equuleus*, but *eculeus* is the approved form.

⁴ The vowel preceding the suffix is usually *i*, as in *Tantali-dēs, Tantalī-s*, modified from the stem-vowel *o*. Primitives in *eus* generally change *eu* to *i* or *ēi*, as in *Thēsī-dēs, Thēsēi-s*; and primitives in *ius* change stem-vowel *o* to *a*, as in *Thestia-dēs*. Other nouns sometimes form Patronymics after the analogy of nouns in *ius*: *Lāertiādēs*, son of Laertes. *Aenēus* has *Aenēādēs*, masculine, and *Aenīa*, feminine.

323. DESIGNATIONS OF PLACE are often formed with the endings—

	ārium,	ētum, tum,	ile. ¹	
columb-ārium,	a dovecot,	from	columba,	dove.
querc-ētum,	a forest of oaks,	"	quercus,	oak.
salic-tum,	a thicket of willows,	"	salix,	willow.
ov-ile,	a sheepfold,	"	ovis,	sheep.

1. **Ārium** designates the PLACE where anything is kept, a receptacle: *aerārium*, 'treasury,' from *aes*, money.

2. **Ētum, tum**, used with names of trees and plants, designate the PLACE where they flourish: *olivētum*, 'an olive-grove,' from *olīva*, 'olive-tree.'

3. **Īle**, used with names of animals, designates their STALL or FOLD: *bovīle*, 'stall for cattle,' from *bōs*, stem *bov*.

4. OTHER EXAMPLES are—

Aestu-ārium, 'tidal bay,' from *aestus*, 'tide'; *avi-ārium*, 'aviary,' from *avis*, 'bird'; *dōn-ārium*, 'place for offerings,' from *dōnum*, 'gift'; *pōm-ārium*, 'orchard,' from *pōmum*, 'fruit'; *aescul-ētum*, 'forest of oaks,' from *aesculus*, 'oak'; *pīn-ētum*, 'pine-forest,' from *pīnus*, 'pine'; *ros-ētum*, 'rose-bed,' from *rosa*, 'rose'; *vīn-ētum*, 'vineyard,' from *vīnum*, 'vine'; *virgul-tum*, 'a thicket,' from *virgula*, 'bush'; *capr-ile*, 'goat-stall,' from *caper*, 'goat.'

324. DERIVATIVES are also formed with several other endings, especially with—

ārius, iō, ium, itium, īna, imōnium, itās, tūs, ātus.²

statu-ārius,	a statuary,	from	statua,	statue.
mūl-iō,	muleteer,	"	mūlus,	mule.
sacerdōt-ium,	priesthood,	"	sacerdōs,	priest.
serv-itium,	servitude,	"	servus,	slave.
rēg-īna,	queen,	"	rēx,	king.
patr-imōnium,	patrimony,	"	pater,	father.
cīv-itās,	citizenship,	"	cīvis,	citizen.
vir-tūs,	virtue,	"	vir,	man.
cōnsul-ātus,	consulship,	"	cōnsul,	consul.

1. **Ārius** and **iō** generally designate PERSONS by their occupations.

2. **Ium** and **itium** denote OFFICE, CONDITION, or COLLECTION: *servitium*, servitude, sometimes a collection of servants.

¹ *Ārium* and *ile* are the endings of neuter adjectives used substantively (330). The vowels *ā* and *i* were probably developed out of the stem-vowel of the primitive, but they were afterward treated as a part of the suffix. For an explanation of such vowels, see 330, foot-note. Many derivative endings were thus formed originally by the union of certain suffixes with the stem-vowel of the primitive; accordingly, when added to vowel stems, they generally take the place of the stem-vowel: *columb-ā*, *columb-ārium*; *querc-ō*, *querc-ētum*.

² *Ārius* is identical in origin with the adjective ending *ārius* (330), and *ātus* with *ātus* in particples. In each the initial *ā* was originally the stem-vowel of the primitive. *Īna* is the same formation as the adjective ending *īnus* (330). On *i-tium*, *i-mōnium*, *i-tās*, and *tūs*, see *tī*, *tā*, *tu*, *man*, *mōn*, with foot-notes, 320; remember that the initial *i* was developed from the stem-vowel of the primitive.

3. **Īna** and **imōnium** are used with some variety of signification; see examples under 7 below.

4. **Itās** and **tūs** designate some CHARACTERISTIC or CONDITION: *h̄rēd-itās*, 'heirship,' from *h̄rēs*, 'heir'; *virtūs*, 'manliness,' 'virtue,' from *vir*.

5. **Ātus** denotes RANK, OFFICE, COLLECTION: *cōsulātus*, 'consulship,' from *cōsul*; *senātus*, 'senate,' 'collection of old men,' from *senex*.

6. FOR PATRIAL or GENTILE NOUNS, see 331, note 1.

NOTE.—The endings *āgō*, *īgō*, and *ūgō*¹ also occur: *vir-āgō*, 'heroic maiden,' from *vir*, 'hero'; *ferr-ūgō*, 'iron-rust,' from *ferrum*, 'iron.'

7. OTHER EXAMPLES are—

Libr-ārius, 'transcriber of books,' from *liber*, 'book'; *lign-ārius*, 'joiner,' from *lignum*, 'wood'; *quadrig-ārius*, 'driver of a four-horse chariot,' from *quadriga*, 'four-horse chariot'; *arbitr-ium*, 'decision,' from *arbitr*, 'arbitr'; *conjug-ium*, 'wedlock,' from *conjūx*, 'spouse'; *magis-ter-ium*, 'presidency,' from *magis-ter*, 'president'; *os-tium*, 'door,' from *os*, 'mouth'; *gall-īna*, 'hen,' from *gallus*, 'cock'; *doctr-īna*, for *doctōr-īna*, 'doctrine,' from *doctor*, 'learned man,' 'doctor'; *mātr-imōnium*, 'matrimony,' from *māter*, 'mother'; *aedil-itās*, 'office of edile,' from *aedilis*, 'edile'; *auctōr-itās*, 'authority,' from *auctōr*, 'founder,' 'author'; *senec-tūs*, 'old age,' from *senex*, 'old man'; *tribūn-ātus*,² 'office of tribune,' from *tribūnus*, 'tribune.'

II. NOUNS FROM ADJECTIVES.

325. From Adjectives are formed various ABSTRACT NOUNS with the endings—

ia, itia, ta, tās, itās, tūs, ēdō, itūdō, imōnia.³

diligent-ia,	<i>diligence,</i>	from	diligēns,	<i>diligent.</i>
superb-ia,	<i>haughtiness,</i>	"	superbus,	<i>haughty.</i>
amic-itia,	<i>friendship,</i>	"	amicus,	<i>friendly.</i>
juven-ta,	<i>youth,</i>	"	juvenis,	<i>young.</i>
liber-tās,	<i>freedom,</i>	"	liber,	<i>free.</i>
bon-itās,	<i>goodness,</i>	"	bonus,	<i>good.</i>
pi-etās, ⁴	<i>piety,</i>	"	pius,	<i>pious.</i>
juven-tūs,	<i>youth,</i>	"	juvenis,	<i>young.</i>
dulc-ēdō,	<i>sweetness,</i>	"	dulcis,	<i>sweet.</i>
sōl-itūdō,	<i>solitude,</i>	"	sōlus,	<i>alone.</i>
ācr-imōnia,	<i>sharpness.</i>	"	ācer,	<i>sharp.</i>

¹ These endings were formed, according to Corssen, by appending the suffix *an* to *ag*, the root of *agō*, to put in motion, make, do; see Corssen, I., p. 577.

² As if formed from a verb, *tribūnō*, *āre*, like *equit-ātus*, 'cavalry,' from *equitō*, *āre*, 'to ride,' from *eques*, 'a horseman.'

³ When appended to vowel stems, these endings take the place of the final vowel. Originally the initial *i* in *i-tia*, *i-tās*, *i-tūdō*, and *i-mōnia* formed no part of the suffix, but represented the stem-vowel of the primitive. On *ia*, *tia*, and *ta*, see *ja*, *tī*, and *ta*, 320; on *i-tās* and *tās*, see page 160, foot-note 2; on *i-tūdō* and *i-mōnia*, see *tu* and *man*, 320. The original of *ē-dō*, *ē-din* is obscure.

⁴ For *pi-itās* by dissimilation (26).

NOTE 1.—Instead of *ia* and *itia*, *iēs* and *itiēs* occur: *pauper*, *pauper-iēs*, poverty; *dūrus*, *dūr-itia* or *dūr-itiēs*, hardness.

NOTE 2.—Before *tis* the stem of the adjective is sometimes slightly changed: *facilis*, *facultās*, faculty; *difficilis*, *difficultās*, difficulty; *potēns*, *potestās*, power.

NOTE 3.—A few adjectives form abstracts with both *itūs* and *itūdō*: *fīrmus*, *fīrm-itis*, *fīrmitūdō*, firmness. Polysyllabic adjectives in *tus* often suffer contraction before these endings: *honestūs* for *honest-itās*, 'honesty,' from *honestus*; *sollicitūdō*, for *sollicit-itūdō*, 'solicitude,' from *sollicitus*.

1. OTHER EXAMPLES are—

Audāc-ia, 'boldness,' from *audāx*, 'bold'; *jūst-itia*, 'justice,' from *jūstus*, 'just'; *saev-itia*, 'cruelty,' from *saevus*, 'cruel'; *senec-ia*, 'old age,' from *senex*, 'old'; *aequāl-itās*, 'equality,' from *aequalis*, 'equal'; *cār-itās*, 'dear-ness,' from *cārus*, 'dear'; *ānxi-ctās*, 'anxiety,' from *ānxius*, 'anxious'; *al-itūdō*, 'height,' from *altus*, 'high'; *fort-itūdō*, 'bravery,' from *fortis*, 'brave'; *māgn-itūdō*, 'greatness,' from *māgnus*, 'great.'

III. NOUNS FROM VERBS AND FROM ROOTS.

326. From the Stems of Verbs and from Roots are formed numerous nouns with the suffixes—¹

ter, tor,² trīx, trum, tūra, tus, tiō, iō.³

pa-ter,	father,	from the root	pa,	to protect.
frā-ter,	brother,	"	bhra, fra,	to support.
amā-tor,	lover,	"	amā-re,	to love.
audī-tor,	hearer,	"	audī-re,	to hear.
dēfēn-sor,	defender,	"	dēfend-ere,	to defend
vēnā-tor,	hunter,	"	vēnā-rī,	to hunt.
vēnā-trīx,	huntress,	"	"	"
gubernā-trīx,	directress,	"	gubernā-re,	to direct.
arā-trum,	plough,	"	arā-re,	to plough.
rōs-trum, ⁴	beak,	"	rōd-ere,	to gnaw.
pīc-tor,	painter,	"	ping-ere,	to paint.
pīc-tūra,	painting,	"	"	"
ū-sūra, ⁵	using,	"	ūt-ī,	to use.
audī-tus,	hearing,	"	audī-re,	to hear.
vī-sus, ⁵	sight,	"	vid-ēre,	to see.
audī-tiō,	hearing,	"	audī-re,	to hear.
moni-tiō, ⁶	advising,	"	monē-re,	to advise.
vī-siō, ⁵	seeing,	"	vid-ēre,	to see.
leg-iō,	a selecting,	"	leg-ere,	to select.
occīd-iō,	a slaying,	"	occīd-ere,	to slay.

¹ These endings appear to be true suffixes, as they do not contain the stem-vowel of the primitive.

² For the phonetic change by which *t* in *tor*, *tūra*, etc., unites with a preceding *d* or *t* and produces *ss* or *s*, as in *dēfend-tor*, *dēfēnsor*, see 35, 3, 2).

³ On *ter*, *tor*, *trīx*, and *tūra*, see *tar*, *tra*; on *tus* and *tiō*, see *tu* and *ti*; and on *iō*, see *ja*, 320.

⁴ For *rōd-trum*; see 35, 3, 1).

⁵ For *ūt-tūra*, *vid-tus*, *vid-tiō*; see 35 3, 2)

⁶ From stem *moni*, seen in *moni-tum*

1. **Ter, tor,** and **trīx** designate the AGENT or DOER; **trum**, the MEANS of the action; and **tūra, tus, tiō,** and **iō**, the ACT itself; see examples. But nouns in **tus** and **iō** sometimes become *concrete*, and denote the RESULT of the action: *quaes-tus*, 'gain,' from *quaes-ere*, 'to gain'; *leg-iō*, 'a selecting' and then 'a legion' (the men selected), from *leg-ere*, 'to select'; *exerci-tus*, 'exercise,' 'drill,' and then 'an army' (a collection of trained men), from *exercē-re*, 'to exercise.'

2. **Us, a, ō**¹ sometimes designate the AGENT of the action: *coqu-us* = *coquus*, cook, from *coqu-ere*, to cook; *scrib-a*, writer, from *scrib-ere*; *err-ō*, wanderer, from *err-āre*.

NOTE 1.—*Tor, trīx, tūra*, and *tus* are sometimes added to noun stems with or without change: *viā-tor*, 'traveler,' from *via*, 'way'; *senā-tor*, 'senator,' from *senex* (Genitive *senis*, stem *sen*), 'old man'; *jāni-tor*, 'janitor,' and *jāni-trīx*, 'janitrix,' from *jānu-a*, 'gate'; *litterā-tūra*, 'writing,' from *littera*, 'letter'; *cōsul-ā-tus*, 'consulship,' from *cōsul*, 'consul.'

NOTE 2.—For nouns in *iō* from the stems of other nouns, see 324, with 1.

3. OTHER EXAMPLES ARE—

Accūsā-tor, 'accuser,' from *accūsā-re*, 'to accuse'; *cūrā-tor*, 'keeper,' from *cūrā-re*, 'to take care of'; *da-tor*, 'giver,' from *da-re*, 'to give'; *vic-tor*, 'victor,' from *vinc-ere*,² 'to conquer'; *inven-trīx*, 'a female discoverer,' from *inven-ire*, 'to discover'; *mōnstrum* = *mon-es-trum*,³ 'prodigy,' from *mon-ere*, 'to admonish'; *rās-trum*, 'rake,' from *rād-ere*, 'to rake,' 'scrape'; *armā-tūra*, 'arming,' 'equipment,' from *armā-re*, 'to arm'; *nā-tūra*, 'birth,' 'nature,' from *nā-scī*,⁴ 'to be born'; *scrip-tūra*, for *scrib-tūra*,⁵ 'writing,' from *scrib-ere*, 'to write'; *āc-tus*, for *ag-tus*,⁶ 'driving,' 'act,' from *ag-ere*, 'to drive,' 'act'; *āc-tiō*, for *ag-tiō*, 'action,' from *ag-ere*, 'to act'; *moni-tiō*, 'act of admonishing,' from *monē-re*, 'to admonish'; *mon-itus*, 'admonition,' from *monē-re*, 'to admonish'; *opīn-iō*, 'opinion,' from *opīn-ārī*, 'to think'; *opt-iō*, 'choice,' from *opt-āre*, 'to choose.'

327. From the Stems of Verbs and from Roots are formed nouns with the suffixes—

or, us, ēs, iēs, ium, en, men, mentum, mōnia, mōnium, bulum, culum, brum,⁷ crum, num.⁸

¹ *O* and *ā*, the stems of *us* and *a*, are only different forms of the suffix *a*; and *ōn*, the stem of *ō*, *ōnis*, is from the suffix *an*; see 320.

² Root *vic*.

³ With the compound suffix *es-trum*, from *as-tra*; see *as* and *tra*, 320.

⁴ Root *nā*.

⁵ See 33, 1.

⁶ Observe change in quantity: *ag-ere*, *āc-tus*; see Gellius, IX., 6.

⁷ On the forms *bulum*, *brum*, *culum*, *crum*, see 35, 2, foot-note 8.

⁸ On *or* (for *os*), *us*, and *ēs*, see *as*; on *iēs* and *ium*, see *ja*; on *en*, see *an*; on *men*, *mentum*, *mōnia*, and *mōnium*, see *man*; on *num*, see *na*—all in 320; on *bulum*, *brum*, *culum*, *crum*, see Corssen, II., p. 40.

am-or,	love,	from	am-āre,	to love
tim-or,	fear,	"	tim-ēre,	to fear
gen-us,	birth,	"	gen in gign-ere,	to bear.
frigus,	cold,	"	frig-ere, ¹	to be cold.
sēd-ēs,	seat,	"	sed-ēre, ²	to sit.
fac-iēs,	make, face,	"	fac-ere,	to make.
gaud-ium,	joy,	"	gaud-ēre,	to rejoice.
stud-ium,	zeal, study,	"	stud-ēre,	to be zealous
pect-en,	a comb,	"	pect-ere,	to comb.
flū-men,	a stream,	"	flu-ere,	to flow.
ōrnā-mentum,	ornament,	"	ōrnā-re,	to adorn.
queri-mōnia,	complaint,	"	querī,	to complain.
ali-mōnium,	nourishment,	"	ale-re,	to nourish.
vocā-bulum,	appellation,	"	vocā-re,	to call.
vehi-culum,	vehicle,	"	vehe-re,	to carry.
dēlū-brum,	shrine,	"	dēlu-ere,	to cleanse.
simulā-crum,	image,	"	simulā-re,	to represent.
rēg-num,	reign,	"	reg-ere,	to rule.

1. **Or, us, ēs, iēs, and ium** generally designate the ACTION or STATE denoted by the verb, but **ēs, iēs, and ium** sometimes designate the RESULT of the action: *aedificium*, 'edifice,' from *aedific-āre*, 'to build.'

2. **Men, mentum, mōnia, mōnium, and num** generally designate the MEANS of the action, or its involuntary SUBJECT, sometimes the ACT itself, or its RESULT: *flū-men*, 'a stream,' 'something which flows,' from *flu-ere*; *āg-men*, 'an army in motion,' from *ag-ere*.

NOTE.—The stem or root is sometimes shortened or changed: *mō-mentum*, 'moving force,' from *mov-ēre*.

3. **Bulum, culum, brum, and crum** designate the INSTRUMENT or the PLACE of the action: *vehi-culum*, 'vehicle' (instrument of the action), from *vehe-re*; *sta-bulum*, 'stall' (place of the action), from *stā-re*.

NOTE.—The vowel of the stem is sometimes changed: *sepul-crum*, 'sepulchre,' from *sepel-ire*, 'to bury'; see 24, 3.

4. In **culum, c** is dropped after *c* and *g*: *vinc-ulum*, 'a bond,' from *vinc-ire*; *reg-ula*, 'rule,' from *reg-ere*.

NOTE.—*Dō, la, āgō, īgō,*³ and a few other endings also occur: *torpē-dō*, 'numbness,' from *torpē-re* 'to be numb'; *cupī-dō*, 'desire,' from *cupe-re*, 'to desire'; *candē-la*, 'candle,' from *candē-re*, 'to shine'; *vor-āgō*, 'whirlpool,' from *vor-āre*, 'to swallow up'; *vert-īgō*, 'a turn,' from *vert-ere*, 'to turn.'

5. OTHER EXAMPLES are—

Splend-or, 'brightness,' from *splend-ere*, 'to be bright'; *op-us*, 'work,' from the root *op* for *ap*, 'work'; *dec-us*, 'ornament,' from root *dec*, in *dec-et*,

¹ In several of these examples the noun is not strictly derived from the verb, but both noun and verb are formed from one common root, as *frig-us* and *frig-ere* from the root *frīg*.

² *Sed-ēre* and *sēd-ēs* show a variable root-vowel—*e, ē*; see 20, note 2.

³ See Corssen, I, p. 377; II, pp. 302, 303.

it is becoming'; *nūb-ēs*, 'cloud,' from the root *nūb* in *nūb-ere*, 'to veil'; *spec-ies*, 'look,' from *spec-ere*, 'to look'; *effug-ium*, 'escape,' from *effug-ere*, 'to escape'; *imper-ium*, 'command,' from *imper-āre*, 'to command'; *certā-men*, 'contest,' from *certā-re*, 'to contend'; *docu-mentum*,¹ 'lesson,' 'document,' from *docē-re*, 'to teach'; *nūtrī-mentum*, 'nourishment,' from *nūtrī-re*, 'to nourish'; *pā-bulum*, 'fodder,' from the root *pā* in *pā-scere*, 'to feed'; *spectā-culum*, 'sight,' from *spectā-re*, 'to behold'; *lu-crum*, 'gain,' from *lu-ere*, 'to pay'; *dō-num*,¹ 'gift,' from the root *da* in *da-re*, 'to give.'

FORMATION OF ADJECTIVES BY SUFFIXES.

I. ADJECTIVES FROM NOUNS.

328. FULLNESS.—Adjectives denoting *fullness, abundance, sup-
ply*, generally end in—

*ōsus, cōsus, lēns, lentus, tus.*²

<i>anim-ōsus</i> ,	<i>full of courage,</i>	from	<i>animus</i> ,	<i>spirit, courage</i>
<i>fructu-ōsus</i> ,	<i>fruitful,</i>	"	<i>fructus</i> ,	<i>fruit.</i>
<i>belli-cōsus</i> ,	<i>warlike,</i>	"	<i>bellum</i> ,	<i>war.</i>
<i>pesti-lēns</i> ,	<i>pestilential,</i>	"	<i>pestis</i> ,	<i>pest.</i>
<i>pesti-lentus</i> ,	"	"	"	"
<i>vīno-lentus</i> ,	<i>full of wine,</i>	"	<i>vīnum</i> ,	<i>wine.</i>
<i>fraudu-lentus</i> ,	<i>fraudulent,</i>	"	<i>fraus</i> ,	<i>fraud.</i>
<i>ālā-tus</i> ,	<i>winged,</i>	"	<i>ālā</i> ,	<i>wing.</i>
<i>turri-tus</i> ,	<i>turreted,</i>	"	<i>turris</i> ,	<i>turret.</i>
<i>cornū-tus</i> ,	<i>horned,</i>	"	<i>cornū</i> ,	<i>horn.</i>
<i>jūs-tus</i> ,	<i>just,</i>	"	<i>jūs</i> ,	<i>right.</i>

NOTE.—Before *ōsus* the stem-vowel is generally dropped, but *u* is retained: *anim-ōsus*, *anim-ōsus*, but *fructu-ōsus*.

1. OTHER EXAMPLES are—

Ann-ōsus, 'full of years,' from *annus*, 'year'; *luxuri-ōsus*, 'luxurious,' from *luxuria*, 'luxury'; *pericul-ōsus*, 'dangerous,' from *periculum*, 'danger'; *tenebr-ōsus* and *tenebri-cōsus*, 'gloomy,' from *tenebrae*, 'gloom'; *turbu-lentus*, 'riotous,' from *turba*, 'riot'; *barbā-tus*, 'bearded,' from *barba*, 'beard'; *auri-tus*, 'long eared,' from *auris*, 'ear'; *onus-tus*, 'burdened,' from *onus*, 'burden.'

329. MATERIAL.—Adjectives designating the material of which anything is made generally end in—

¹ With modified stem or root: *docē*, *docu*; *da*, *dō*.

² On *ōsus*, see Schleicher, p. 403; Corssen, I., p. 62; II., p. 688. *Cōsus* is from *co* and *ōsus*; thus from *bellum*, 'war,' is formed *belli-cus*, 'belonging to war'; and from *belli-cus* is formed *bellico-ōsus*, 'warlike.' On *lēns*, *lentus*, see *ra*, *la*, 320. The vowel before *lēns*, *lentus*—generally *u*, sometimes *o* or *i*—was originally the stem-vowel of the primitive, as in *vīno-lentus*, *pesti-lēns*, *pesti-lentus*, but it was sometimes treated as a part of the suffix: *vi-olentus*, 'violent,' from *vis*, 'force.' *Tus* is identical with *tus* in the passive participle, and when added to vowel-stems is preceded by *ū*, *i*, or *ū*: *ālū-tus*, *turri-tus*, *cornū-tus*, like *amū-tus*, *audī-tus*, *acū-tus* ('sharpened,' from *acu-o*, 'to sharpen'). It may, however, be added to consonant-stems: *jūs-tus*.

eus, nus, neus, āceus, icus.¹

aur-eus,	golden,	from	aurum,	gold.
argent-eus,	of silver,	"	argentum,	silver.
fāg-eus,	of beech,	"	fāgus,	a beech.
fāgi-nus, ²	"	"	"	"
fāgi-neus, ²	"	"	"	"
pōpul-nus, ³	of poplar,	"	pōpulus,	a poplar
pōpul-neus, ³	"	"	"	"
papȳr-āceus,	of papyrus,	"	papȳrus,	papyrus.
later-icus,	of brick,	"	later,	brick.

NOTE.—These endings sometimes denote characteristic or possession: *virgineus*, 'belonging to a maiden.'

330. CHARACTERISTIC.—Adjectives signifying *belonging to, derived from*, generally end in—

cus, icus, ālis, ilis, ānus, īnus, āris, ārius, ius, ēnsis.⁴

cīvi-cus,	relating to a citizen,	from	cīvis,	citizen.
patr-icus,	paternal,	"	pater,	father.
nātūr-ālis,	natural,	"	nātūra,	nature.
mort-ālis,	mortal,	"	mors,	death.
host-ilis,	hostile,	"	hostis,	enemy.
cīv-ilis,	relating to a citizen,	"	cīvis,	citizen.
oppid-ānus,	of the town,	"	oppidum,	town.
urb-ānus,	of the city,	"	urbs,	city.
mar-īnus,	marine,	"	mare,	sea.
equ-īnus,	of, pertaining to a horse,	"	equus,	horse.
lūn-āris,	lunar,	"	lūna,	moon.
salūt-āris,	salutary,	"	salūs,	safely.
auxili-ārius,	auxiliary,	"	auxilium,	aid.
rēg-ius,	royal,	"	rēx,	king.
ōrātōr-ius,	of an orator,	"	ōrātor, ⁵	orator.
for-ēnsis,	forensic,	"	forum,	forum.

¹ On *eus*, stem *eo*, see Corssen, II., pp. 342–346; Bopp, III., p. 429; on *nus*, see *na*, 320. *Neus* adds *eus* to *no*, seen in *nus*; *āceus* adds *eus* to *āc*, seen in *āw* (333, foot-note 2); and *ic-ius* adds *ius* to *ic* or *ico*; see *ja*, 320, and *icus*, 330.

² Stem-vowel changed to *i* before *nus* and *neus*.

³ Stem-vowel dropped before *nus* and *neus*.

⁴ On *cus*, see *ka*, 320. In *i-cus*, *i* was originally the stem-vowel of the primitive, but was finally treated as a part of the suffix, as in *patr-icus*. In the same way the vowels *ā* and *i* in *ālis*, *īlis*, *āris*, *ārius*, *ānus*, and *īnus* were developed from the stem-vowels of the primitives; thus in such words as *doc-i-lis*, 'docile,' from *doc-ē-re*, the suffix seems to have been originally *lis*, but at length the preceding *i* was treated as a part of the suffix, making *ilis*. If now *ilis* be added to *hosti*, the stem of *hostis*, we shall have *hosti-ilis* = *host-ilis*; or, with Corssen, we may suppose that from *hostis* was formed the verb *hosti-re*, and that the ending *lis* was added directly to *hosti*, making *hosti-lis*. The lower initial vowel in other endings is supposed to have had a similar origin. *Ālis*, *īlis*, and *āris* are virtually the same suffix, as *l* and *r* are interchangeable; see *ra*, *la*, foot-note, 320. *Ārius* = *āri-ius*. On *ānus*, *īnus*, and *ius*, see *ja* and *na*, 320; on *ēnsis*, see Corssen, I., pp. 62, 254; II., pp. 688, 719.

⁵ But *ōrā-tor* is formed from *ōrā-re* by adding *tor* to the stem; see 326.

1. **Ester** or **estris**,¹ **timus**, **itimus**, **ticus**,² **cinus**, and a few other endings occur: *terr-ester* or *terr-estris*, 'terrestrial,' from *terra*, 'earth'; *mari-timus*, 'maritime,' from *mare*, 'sea'; *lĕg-itimus*, 'lawful,' from *lĕx*, *legis*, 'law'; *rŭs-ticus*, 'rustic,' from *rŭs*, 'country'; *vĕti-cinus*, 'prophetic,' from *vĕtēs*, 'prophet.'

2. OTHER EXAMPLES are—

Domini-cus, 'of a master,' from *dominus*, 'master'; *serv-ilis*, 'slavish,' from *servus*, 'slave'; *vir-ilis*, 'manly,' from *vir*, 'man'; *capit-ālis*, 'of the head,' 'capital,' from *caput*, 'head'; *rĕg-ālis*, 'kingly,' from *rĕx*, 'king'; *cōsul-āris*, 'consular,' from *cōsul*, 'consul'; *milit-āris*, 'military,' from *miles*, 'soldier'; *agr-ārius*, 'of or relating to land,' from *ager*, 'field'; *argent-ārius*, 'of silver,' from *argentum*, 'silver'; *can-inus*, 'of a dog,' from *canis*, 'dog'; *lup-inus*, 'of a wolf,' from *lupus*, 'wolf'; *mont-ānus*, 'of a mountain,' from *mōns*, 'mountain'; *nox-ius*, 'injurious,' from *noxa*, 'injury'; *patr-ius*, 'of a father,' from *pater*, 'father'; *imperātōr-ius*, 'of a commander,' from *imperātor*, 'commander.'

331. Adjectives from proper nouns generally end in—

ānus, **iānus**, **inus**; **ius**, **iacus**, **icus**; **ēnsis**, **iēnsis**; **ās**, **aeus**, **ēus**.³

Sull-ānus,	of Sulla,	from	Sulla,	Sulla.
Rōm-ānus,	Roman,	"	Rōma,	Rome.
Mari-ānus,	of Marius,	"	Marius,	Marius.
Cicerōn-iānus,	Ciceronian,	"	Cicerō,	Cicero.
Lat-inus, ²	Latin,	"	Latium,	Latium.
Plaut-inus,	of Plautus,	"	Plautus,	Plautus.
Corinth-ius,	Corinthian,	"	Corinthus,	Corinth.
Corinth-iacus,	"	"	"	"
Britann-icus,	British,	"	Britannus,	a Briton.
Cann-ēnsis,	of Cannae,	"	Cannae,	Cannae.
Athēn-iēnsis,	Athenian,	"	Athēnae,	Athens.
Fidēn-ās,	of Fidenae,	"	Fidēnae,	Fidenae.
Smyrn-aeus,	Smyranean,	"	Smyrna,	Smyrna.
Pŷthagor-ēus,	Pythagorean,	"	Pŷthagorās,	Pythagoras.

1. **Ānus** and **iānus** are the endings generally used in derivatives from *Names of Persons*; but others also occur.

NOTE 1.—Many of these adjectives from names of places are also used substantively as *Patrial* or *Gentile Nouns* to designate the citizens of the place: *Corinthii*, the Corinthians; *Athēniēnsēs*, the Athenians.

NOTE 2.—The Roman *Gentēs* or *clans* were all designated by adjectives in *ius*, as *gēns Cornēlia*, *gēns Jūlia*.

¹ The ending *ester* or *estris* may be formed by adding *ter* or *tris* to *es* from the suffix *as* (320); but see Corssen, II., p. 549.

² On *ti-mus*, *i-ti-mus*, and *ti-cus*, see *ta*, *ma*, *ca*, 320.

³ When appended to vowel stems, these endings take the place of the stem-vowel: *Sull-ānus*. In fact, *ānus* is formed by the union of the stem-vowel with the suffix. So in *Mari-ānus*, but in examples like this the *i* before *ānus* was finally treated as a part of the suffix, making *iānus*, as seen in *Cicerōn-iānus*. *Inus* in *Lat-inus* contains *io*, from *Lat-io*, the stem of *Latium*.

NOTE 8.—An adjective in *ius*, used substantively, formed a part of the name of every distinguished Roman, and designated the *gens* to which he belonged; see *Roman Names*, 649.

II. ADJECTIVES FROM ADJECTIVES.

332. DIMINUTIVES from other adjectives generally end like diminutive nouns (321) in—

lus, ulus, culus.¹

ēbrio-lus,	somewhat drunken,	from	ēbrius,	drunken
aureo-lus,	golden,	"	aureus,	golden.
long-ulus,	rather long,	"	longus,	long.
pauper-culus,	rather poor,	"	pauper,	poor.

NOTE 1.—The endings *ellus* and *illus* also occur as in nouns (321, 4): *nov-ellus*, new, from *novus*, 'new.'

NOTE 2.—*Culus* is sometimes added to comparatives: *dūrius-culus*, 'somewhat hard,' from *dūrior*, *dūrius*, 'harder.'

III. ADJECTIVES FROM VERBS AND FROM ROOTS.

333. Verbal adjectives generally end in—

bundus, cundus, dus; bilis, tilis, silis, lis; āx.²

mīrā-bundus,	wondering,	from	mīrā-rī,	to wonder.
mori-bundus,	dying,	"	morī,	to die.
verē-cundus,	diffident,	"	verē-rī,	to fear.
cali-dus,	warm,	"	calē-re,	to be warm.
pavi-dus,	fearful,	"	pavē-re,	to fear.
amā-bilis,	worthy of love,	"	amā-re,	to love.
dūc-tilis,	ductile,	"	dūc-ere,	to lead.
flec-silis, ³ }	flexible,	"	flect-ere,	to turn.
flexilis,				
doci-lis,	docile,	"	docē-re,	to teach.
pūgn-āx,	pugnacious,	"	pūgnā-re,	to fight.
aud-āx,	daring,	"	audē-re,	to dare.

1. **Bundus** and **cundus** have nearly the force of the present participle; but *bundus* is somewhat more expressive than the participle: *luctā-bundus*, rejoicing greatly; and *cundus* generally denotes some characteristic rather than a single act or feeling: *verē-cundus*, diffident.

2. **Dus** retains the simple meaning of the verb.

3. **Bilis**, **tilis**, **silis**, and **lis** denote CAPABILITY, generally in a passive sense: *amābilis*, capable or worthy of being loved; sometimes in an active sense: *terribilis*, terrible, capable of producing terror.

¹ See p. 153. foot-note 6.

² *Bundus* is explained by Corssen and others as formed by appending *undus*, *endus*, the Gerundive suffix, to *bu* = *fu*, as seen in *fuī*; *cundus*, by adding the same suffix to *oo* (*ka*, 320); see Corssen, II., pp. 310–312. On *dus*, see Corssen, II., pp. 302, 303; on *lis*, see *ra*, *la*, 320; and on *bilis*, 320, foot-note 1; also Corssen, I., pp. 166–169; on *tilis* and *silis*, Corssen, II., pp. 41, 326. The ending *āx* = *ā-c-s* is for *ā-co-s*, in which *ā* was originally the stem-vowel of an *ā-verb*: thus *pūgn-ā-co-s* becomes *pūgnā-cs*, *pūgnāō*.

³ *Flec-silis* = *flect-tilis*; see 35, 3, 2).

4. **Āx** denotes INCLINATION, generally a faulty one: *loquāx*, loquacious.

5. **Cus, icus, ūcus, vus, uus, ivus, tivus, ticius, ius, and ulus**¹ also occur:

Medi-cus, 'healing,' 'medical,' from *medē-rī*, 'to heal'; *am-icus*, 'friendly,' from *am-āre*, 'to love'; *cad-ūcus*, 'falling,' 'inclined to fall,' from *cad-ere*, 'to fall'; *sal-vus*, 'safe,' from root *sal*, 'whole,' 'sound'; *noc-uus* and *noc-ivus*, 'hurtful,' from *noc-ēre*, 'to hurt'; *cap-tivus*, 'captive,' from *cap-ere*, 'to take'; *ficticius*, for *fig-ticius*, 'feigned,' from *fig*, the root of *fig-ere*, 'to form,' 'fashion,' 'feign'; *exim-ius*, 'select,' 'choice,' from *exim-ere*, 'to select out'; *cred-ulus*, 'credulous,' from *cred-ere*, 'to believe.'

6. OTHER EXAMPLES ARE—

Lūdi-bundus, 'sportive,' 'playful,' from *lūde-re*, 'to play'; *ridi-bundus*, 'laughing,' from *ridē-re*, 'to laugh'; *fā-cundus*, 'eloquent,' from *fā-rī*, 'to speak'; *jū-cundus*, for *juv-cundus*, 'pleasant,' from *juv-āre*, 'to aid,' 'delight'; *avi-dus*, 'greedy,' from *acē-re*, 'to long for'; *cupi-dus*, 'desirous,' from *cupe-re*, 'to desire'; *timi-dus*, 'timid,' from *timē-re*, 'to fear'; *faci-lis*, 'easy,' 'capable of being done,' from *face-re*, 'to do'; *nūbi-lis*, 'marriageable,' from *nūbe-re*, 'to marry'; *ūti-lis*, 'useful,' from *ūti*, 'to use'; *crēdi-bilis*, 'credible,' from *crēde-re*, 'to believe'; *terri-bilis*, 'terrible,' from *terrē-re*, 'to terrify'; *laudā-bilis*, 'praiseworthy,' from *laudā-re*, 'to praise'; *fer-tilis*, 'fertile,' from *fer-re*, 'to bear'; *cap-āx*, 'capacious,' from *cap-ere*, 'to take'; *ten-āx*, 'tenacious,' from *ten-ēre*, 'to hold.'

IV. ADJECTIVES FROM ADVERBS AND PREPOSITIONS.

334. A few adjectives are formed from adverbs and prepositions:²

<i>crās-tinus</i> ,	<i>of to-morrow</i> ,	from	<i>crās</i> ,	<i>to-morrow</i> .
<i>contrā-rius</i> ,	<i>contrary</i> ,	"	<i>contrā</i> ,	<i>against</i> .
<i>inter-nus</i> ,	<i>internal</i> ,	"	<i>inter</i> ,	<i>among, within</i> .
<i>super-bus</i> ,	<i>haughty</i> ,	"	<i>super</i> ,	<i>above</i> .
<i>super-nus</i> ,	<i>upper</i> ,	"	"	"

FORMATION OF VERBS BY SUFFIXES.

I. VERBS FROM NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.

335. Verbs formed from nouns and adjectives are called **DE-NOMINATIVES**. They end in—

CONJ. I.	CONJ. II.	CONJ. III.	CONJ. IV.
ō, ā-re,	eō, ē-re,	uō, ue-re, ³	iō, i-re. ⁴

¹ *Fus, uus*, and *i-vus* are only different forms of the same suffix; *uus* was formed by vocalizing *r* in *eus*; *i-eus*, by adding *eus* to the stem-vowel *i*; *noc-i-eus*, as if from a verb, *noc-īre* = *noc-ēre*. The other endings are composed of elements already explained.

² But adverbs and prepositions are in origin case-forms; see 304; 307, note 1

³ Conjugation III. contains *primitive* verbs with a few *derivatives*.

⁴ According to Curtius and others, the suffix which was added to the stems of nouns and adjectives to form verbs was originally *ja*, pronounced *ya*, probably identical with *i*

cūr-ō,	ā-re,	to care for,	from	cūr-a,	care.
fug-ō,	ā-re,	to put to flight,	"	fug-a,	flight.
pūgn-ō,	ā-re,	to fight,	"	pūgn-a,	battle.
bell-ō,	ā-re,	to carry on war,	"	bell-um,	war.
dōn-ō,	ā-re,	to give,	"	dōn-um,	gift.
firm-ō,	ā-re,	to make firm,	"	firm-us,	firm.
labōr-ō,	ā-re,	to labor,	"	labor,	labor.
liber-ō,	ā-re,	to liberate,	"	liber,	free.
nōmin-ō,	ā-re,	to name,	"	nōmen,	name.
alb-eō,	ē-re,	to be white,	"	alb-us,	white.
clār-ō,	ā-re,	to make bright,	"	clār-us,	bright.
clār-eō,	ē-re,	to be bright,	"	"	"
flōr-eō,	ē-re,	to bloom,	"	flōs,	flower.
lūc-eō,	ē-re,	to shine,	"	lūx=lūc-s,	light.
met-uō,	ue-re,	to fear,	"	met-us,	fear.
stat-uō,	ue-re,	to place,	"	stat-us,	position.
fin-iō,	i-re,	to finish,	"	fin-is,	end.
moll-iō,	i-re,	to soften,	"	moll-is,	soft.
vest-iō,	i-re,	to clothe,	"	vest-is,	garment.
serv-iō,	i-re,	to serve,	"	serv-us,	servant.
cūstōd-iō,	i-re,	to guard,	"	cūstōs,	guardian

NOTE 1.—Denominatives of the second conjugation are intransitive, but most of the others are transitive.

NOTE 2.—Derivatives, like other verbs, may of course be deponent: *dominor*, *ārī*, 'to domineer,' from *dominus*, 'master'; *miror*, *ārī*, 'to wonder at,' from *mirus*, 'wonderful'; *partior*, *ērī*, 'to part,' 'divide,' from *pars*, *partis*, 'part.'

1. OTHER EXAMPLES ARE—

Culp-āre, 'to find fault,' from *culp-a*, 'fault'; *glōri-ārī*, 'to boast,' 'glory,' from *glōri-a*, 'glory'; *nov-āre*, 'to make new,' from *novus*, 'new'; *rēgn-āre*, 'to reign,' from *rēgnum*, 'royal power'; *lev-āre*, 'to lighten,' from *levis*, 'light'; *honōr-āre*, 'to honor,' from *honor*, 'honor'; *laud-āre*, 'to praise,' from *laus* = *laud-s*, 'praise'; *sacr-āre*, 'to be fierce,' from *sacr-us*, 'fierce.'

the root of *i-re*, 'to go.' This suffix added to *a*, the original stem-vowel of most nouns and adjectives, formed *a-ja*, still preserved in the ending *ajā-mi* in a large class of Sanskrit verbs. From this compound suffix *a-ja* are derived in Latin, in the first conjugation, (1) *ao*, contracted to *o*: *cūr-o* = *cūr-ajō* for *cūr-ao* for *cūr-aja*; (2) *ā*: *cūr-ā-s*, shortened to *a* in *cūr-a-t* for *cūr-ā-t*;—in the second conjugation, (1) *eō*: *lūc-eō* for *lūc-aja*; (2) *ē*: *lūc-ē-s*, shortened to *e* in *lūc-e-t* for *lūc-ē-t*; and in the fourth conjugation, (1) *iō* and *iu*: *serv-iō* for *serv-ijō* for *serv-aja*, *serv-iu-nt* for *serv-iju-nt* for *serv-aju-nt*; and (2) *ī*: *serv-ī-s*, shortened to *i* in *serv-i-t* for *serv-ī-t*; see Bopp, I., pp. 207–229; Curtius, Verbum, I., pp. 202, 326–348; Schleicher, pp. 358–361. For an objection to this explanation of the *a-verbs*, see Corssen, II., pp. 733–736.—On final *o* of the first person, see 247, 1, foot-note 5.—The suffix *ja*, added to original *i-stems*, formed *ija* and gave rise to *i-verbs*: *fin-iō* = *fin-i-jō* = *fin-ija*; and added to *u-stems*, it formed *u-ja* and gave rise to *u-verbs*: *met-uō* = *met-u-jō* = *met-uja*.—In general, *a-stems* give rise to *a-verbs*: *cūr-a*, *cūr-ā-re*; *o-stems*, sometimes to *a-verbs*, sometimes to *e-verbs*, and sometimes to *i-verbs*: *firm-us*, stem *fīrmo*, *fīr-m-ā-re*; *albus*, stem *alb-o*, *alb-ē-re*; *serv-us*, stem *serv-o*, *serv-ē-re*; consonant stems, to *a-verbs*, *e-verbs*, or *i-verbs*, after the analogy of vowel stems: *labor* for *labōr*, *labōr-ā-re*; *flūs*, stem *flūr-ē-re* for *flūs-ē-re* (31, 1): *cūstōs*, stem *cūstōd*, *cūstōd-ī-re*.

II. VERBS FROM VERBS.¹

336. FREQUENTATIVES or INTENSIVES denote *repeated*, *continued*, or *intense* action. They are generally of the first conjugation, and are formed—

I. From the stem of the participle² in *tus* or *sus* :

cant-ō,	āre,	to sing,	from	cantus	from	canō,	to sing. ³
capt-ō,	āre,	to snatch,	"	captus	"	capiō,	to take.
dat-ō,	āre,	to give often,	"	datus	"	dō,	to give.
habit-ō,	āre,	to inhabit,	"	habitus	"	habeō,	to have.
quass-ō,	āre,	to shake violently,	"	quassus	"	quatiō,	to shake.
territ-ō,	āre,	to frighten often,	"	terrītus	"	terreō,	to frighten.

II. From the present stem, by adding *tō* and changing the preceding vowel to *i*, if not already in that form :⁴

agi-tō,	āre,	to shake,	from	agō,	to move, lead.
clāmi-tō,	āre,	to shout often,	"	clāmō,	to shout.
rogi-tō,	āre,	to ask eagerly,	"	rogō,	to ask.
voci-tō,	āre,	to call often,	"	vocō,	to call.
voli-tō,	āre,	to flit about,	"	volō,	to fly.

NOTE 1.—Frequentatives are sometimes formed from other frequentatives :⁵ *cantitō*, 'to sing often,' from *cantō* from *canō*; *dictitō*, 'to say often,' from *dictō* from *dicō*.

NOTE 2.—A few derivatives in *ēssō* and *īssō* also occur. They are *intensive* in force, denoting *earnest* rather than *repeated* action, and are of the third conjugation : *faciō*, *facēssō*, 'to do earnestly'; *incipiō*, *incipissō*, 'to begin eagerly.'

1. OTHER EXAMPLES ARE—

Dicitō, 'to say often,' from *dicō*, 'to say'; *spectō*, 'to behold,' from *speciō*, 'to look at'; *facitō*, 'to do often,' from *faciō*, 'to do,' 'make'; *imperitō*, 'to command often,' from *imperō*, 'to command'; *raptō*, 'to snatch,' from *rapitō*, 'to seize.'

337. INCEPTIVES or INCHOATIVES denote the beginning of the action. They are of the third conjugation, and end in *scō* :

¹ Either directly or through the medium of nouns, adjectives, or participles.

² They are thus strictly *denominatives* (335). Intransitive verbs, though without the participle in *tus* or *sus*, may form *frequentatives* after the analogy of transitive verbs: *cursō*, *āre*, 'to run about,' formed as if from *cursus* from *currō*, 'to run'; *venitō*, *āre*, 'to come often,' formed as if from *ventus*, from *veniō*, 'to come.'

³ Remember that the stem of the participle ends in *o*: thus *cantus* = *canto-s*. Observe, therefore, that the verb *cantō*, 'I sing,' is in form like the stem of the participle. *Cantō* was, however, originally produced by adding *ja* to *canta*, the original stem of *cantus*, making *canta-ja*, *cantajō*, *cantaō*, *cantō*; see also 335, foot-note.

⁴ The formation from the participle was doubtless the original method, but at length *tō* was regarded as the suffix, and was accordingly added to present stems, and as in many cases *i* preceded, the stem-vowel finally took this form before the suffix *tō*; see Corssen, II., p. 207.

⁵ Sometimes from frequentatives no longer in use: *āctitō*, 'to act often,' as if from *āctō*, not in use, from *agō*; *scriptitō*, 'to write often,' as if from *scriptō*, not in use, from *scribo*.

gel-ā-scō,	to begin to freeze,	from	gel-ō,	ā-re,	to freeze.
cal-ē-scō,	to become warm,	"	cal-eō,	ē-re,	to be warm.
rub-ē-scō,	to grow red,	"	rub-eō,	ē-re,	to be red.
vir-ē-scō,	to grow green,	"	vir-eō,	ē-re,	to be green.
trem-ī-scō,	to begin to tremble,	"	trem-ō,	e-re,	to tremble.
obdorm-ī-scō,	to fall asleep,	"	obdorm-iō,	ī-re,	to sleep.

338. DESIDERATIVES denote a *desire* to perform the action. They are of the fourth conjugation, and end in **turiō** or **suriō**:

par-turiō,	ire,	to strive to bring forth,	from	pariō,	to bring forth.
ē-suriō,	ire,	to desire to eat,	"	edō,	to eat. ¹

339. DIMINUTIVES denote a *feeble* action.² They are of the first conjugation, and end in **illō**:

cant-illō,	to sing feebly,	from	cantō,	to sing.
cōnscrīb-illō,	to scribble,	"	cōnscrībō,	to write.

NOTE.—For the DERIVATION OF ADVERBS, see 304.

SECTION III.

COMPOSITION OF WORDS.

340. New words may be formed—

I. By the union of two or more words under one principal accent, without change of meaning:

Rēs publica, *rēspūblica*, republic; *agrī cultūra*, *agrīcultūra*, agriculture; *jūris cōsultus*, *jūriscōsultus*, lawyer, one skilled in the law; *quem ad modum*, *quemadmodum*, in what way—*lit.*, to what measure.

NOTE.—These are compounds only in form. The separate words retain in a great measure their identity both in form and in meaning, and may in fact be written separately. *Rēs publica* is the approved form. Other examples of this class are: *lōgis-lātor*, law-giver; *pater-familiās*, father of a family; *senātus-cōsultum*, decree of the senate; *hīc-tenus*, thus far; *saepe-numerō*, often in number; *bene-faciō*, to do well, benefit; *male-dicō*, to revile; *satis-faciō*, to satisfy, do enough for; *animum-ad-vertō*, *anim-ad-vertō*, to notice, turn the mind to.

II. By prefixing an indeclinable particle to an inflected word, generally with some change of meaning:

Ad-sum, to be present; *dē-pōnō*, to lay down; *re-pōnō*, to replace; *ē-discō*, to learn by heart; *im-memor*, unmindful; *per-facilis*, very easy; *prō-cōnsul*,

¹ These are the only desideratives in common use, but a few others occur: *cēnā-turiō*, 'to desire to dine,' from *cēnā*, 'to dine'; *ēmp-turiō*, 'to desire to purchase,' from *emō*, 'to purchase'; *nūp-turiō*, 'to desire to marry,' from *nūbō*, 'to marry.' They were probably formed originally through the medium of a verbal noun in *tor* or *sor* (326, foot-note 2): thus, *cēnā*, *cēnā-tor*, 'one who dines'; *cēnā-tor-ī-re* = *cēnā-tur-ī-re* (o changed to u), 'to desire to dine'; *emō*, *ēmp-tor*, 'a purchaser'; *ēmp-tor-ī-re* = *ēmp-tur-ī-re*, 'to desire to purchase.'

² Probably *denominatives* formed from verb-stems through diminutive verbal nouns.

proconsul, one acting for a consul: *inter-rēgnum*, interregnum, an interval between two reigns.

III. By uniting two or more simple stems or roots, and adding appropriate inflectional suffixes when needed: ¹

Īgni-color,¹ fire-colored; *grandi-aevu-s*,¹ *grand-aevus*, *a, um*, of great age; *omni-potent-s*, *omnipotens*, omnipotent; *māgno-animo-s*, *māgnanimus*, *a, um*, great-souled; *tubi-cen*, trumpeter; *arti-fec-s*, *artifex*, artificer; *alio-qui*, *aliquis*,² any one.

1. In the first element of the compound observe—

1) That the stem-vowel generally takes the °er. of *i*: *capro-corno-s*, *capri-cornus*; *tuba-cen*, *tubi-cen*.

2) That consonant stems sometimes assume *i*: *honōr-i-fico-s*, *honōrificus*, *a, um*, honorable.

3) That the stem-vowel disappears before another vowel: *māgno-animus*, *māgnanimus*.

2. The stem-ending and the inflectional ending of the second element generally remain unchanged in the compound; see examples above. But observe—

1) That they are sometimes slightly changed: *aequo-nocti*, *aequi-noctio-m*,³ *aequinoctium*, equinox; *multa-fōrma*, *multi-fōrmis*, with many forms.

2) That a verbal root or stem may be the second element in a compound noun or adjective: *tubi-cen* (*cen* = *can*, the root of *canō*, to sing), trumpeter; *leti-fer* (*fer*, root of *ferō*, to bear), death-bearing.

NOTE.—The words classed under II. and III. are regarded as real compounds, but those under III. best illustrate the distinctive characteristics of genuine compounds, as they are formed from compound stems and have a meaning which could not be expressed by the separate words. Thus, *māgnus animus* means *a great soul*, but *māgnanimus* means *having a great soul*.⁴

341. In COMPOUND NOUNS, the first part is generally the stem of a noun or adjective, sometimes an adverb or preposition; and the second part is the stem of a noun, or a stem from a verbal root:

<i>arti-fex</i> ,	<i>artist</i> ,	from	<i>arti-fac</i>	in	<i>ars</i>	and	<i>faciō</i> .
<i>capri-cornus</i> ,	<i>capricorn</i> ,	"	<i>capro-cornū</i>	"	<i>caper</i>	"	<i>cornū</i> .
<i>aequi-noctium</i> ,	<i>equinox</i> ,	"	<i>aequo-nocti</i>	"	<i>aequus</i>	"	<i>nox</i> .
<i>nē-mō</i> ,	<i>nobody</i> ,	"	<i>ne-homon</i>	"	<i>nē</i>	"	<i>homō</i> .
<i>prō-nōmen</i> ,	<i>pronoun</i> ,	"	<i>prō-nōmen</i>	"	<i>prō</i>	"	<i>nōmen</i> .

¹ Thus *īgni-color* is formed by the union of two stems without inflectional suffix; but in *grand-aevu-s*, the suffix *s* is added to the stem *grandaevō*, compounded of *grandi* and *aevō*.

² Literally, *any other one*.

³ *Ti*, the stem-ending of *nox*, becomes *tiō*, to which is added the nominative-ending *m*.

⁴ Class II. occupies a position intermediate between I. and III. Some compounds of particles with verbs, for example, have developed a meaning quite distinct from that denoted by the separate parts, while others have simply retained the ordinary meaning of those parts.

1. COMPOUNDS in **ex**, **dex**, **fex**, **cen**, **cīda**, and **cola** deserve special notice:

Remo-ex, *rēmex*,¹ oarsman; *jūs-dex*, *jūdex*,¹ judge; *arti-fex*, artist; *tibia-cen*, *tibi-cen*,² flute-player; *homon-cīda*, *homi-cīda*,³ manslayer; *agri-cola*,⁴ husbandman, one who tills the soil.

NOTE.—*Ex* (for *ag-s*) is from the root *ag* in *agō*, to drive. impel; *dear* (for *dic-s*) from *dic* in *dicō*, to make known; *fex* (for *fac-s*), from *fac* in *faciō*, to make; *cen*, from *can* in *canō*, to sing; *cīda* (for *caed-a*), from *caed* in *caedō*, to cut, slay; *cola* (for *col-a*) from *col* in *colō*, to cultivate.

342. In COMPOUND ADJECTIVES, the first part is generally the stem of a noun or adjective, sometimes an adverb or preposition; and the second is the stem of a noun or adjective, or a stem from a verbal root:

<i>lēti-fer</i> ,	<i>death-bearing</i> ,	from <i>lēti-fer</i>	in <i>lētum</i>	and <i>ferō</i> .
<i>māgn-animus</i> ,	<i>magnanimous</i> ,	" <i>māgno-animo</i>	" <i>māgnus</i>	" <i>animus</i> .
<i>per-facilis</i> ,	<i>very easy</i> ,	" <i>per-facili</i>	" <i>per</i>	" <i>facilis</i> .

1. Compounds in **ceps**, **fer**, **ger**, **dicus**, **ficus**, and **volus** deserve notice:

Parti-ceps, taking part; *auri-fer*, gold-bearing; *armi-ger*, carrying arms; *fāti-dicus*, predicting fate; *miri-ficus*, causing wonder; *bene-volus*, well-wishing.

NOTE.—*Ceps* (for *cap-s*) is from the root *cap* in *capīō*, to take; *fer*, from *fer* in *ferō*, to bear; *ger*, from *ger* in *gerō*, to carry; *dicus* (for *dic-o-s*), from *dic* in *dicō*, to make known; *ficus* (for *fac-o-s*), from *fac* in *faciō*, to make; *volus* (for *vol-o-s*), from *vol* in *volō*, to wish.

343. COMPOUND NOUNS and ADJECTIVES are divided according to signification into three classes:

I. DETERMINATIVE COMPOUNDS, in which the second part is qualified by the first:

Inter-rēx, interrex; *meri-diēs*,⁵ midday; *bene-volus*, well-wishing; *per-māgnus*, very great; *in-dignus*, unworthy.

II. OBJECTIVE COMPOUNDS, in which the second part is limited by the first as object:

Prin-ceps, taking the first place; *belli-ger*, waging war; *jū-dex*, judge, one who dispenses (makes known) justice; *homi-cīda*, one who slays a man; *agri-cola*, one who tills the field. See other examples in 342, 1.

III. POSSESSIVE COMPOUNDS, in origin mostly adjectives. They design-

¹ *O* is dropped in *rēmex*, and *s* in *jūdex*; see 27; 36, 3, note 3.

² *A*, weakened to *i*, unites with the preceding *i*, forming *ī*.

³ *N* dropped, and *o* weakened to *i*; see 36, 3, note 3.

⁴ The stem-vowel *o* of *ugro* is weakened to *i*. *agri*; see 22.

⁵ From *medius* and *diēs*.

nate qualities or attributes as *possessed* by some person or thing, and are often best rendered by supplying *having* or *possessing*:

Aeni-pēs, having bronze feet; ¹ *celeri-pēs*, swift-footed; *āli-pēs*, wing-footed, having wings for feet; *māgn-animus*, having a great soul; *ūn-animus*, having one mind; *long-ævus*, of great age, having a long life.

344. COMPOUND VERBS.—Verbs in general are compounded only with prepositions, originally adverbs: ²

Ab-eō, to go away; *ex-eō*, to go out; *prōd-eō*, to go forth; *con-vocō*, to call together; *dē-cidō*, to fall off; *præ-dicō*, to foretell; *re-dūcō*, to lead back; *re-ficiō*, to repair, to make anew. ³

1. *Faciō* and *fīō* may also unite with verbal stems in *e*:

Cale-faciō, to make warm; *cale-fīō*, to be made warm, become warm; *lābe-faciō*, to cause to totter; *pate-faciō*, to open, cause to be open.

2. Verbs are often united with other words in writing without strictly forming compounds:

Manū mittō or *manū-mittō*, to emancipate, let go from the hand; *satis faciō* or *satis-faciō*, to satisfy, do enough for; *animum ad-vertō* or *anim-ad-vertō*, to notice, turn the mind to.

3. Verbs in *ficō* and *factō*, like the following, are best explained not as compounds but as denominatives: ⁴

Aedi-ficō, to build, from *ædīfex*; *ampli-ficō*, ⁴ to enlarge; *cale-factō*, to make warm, from *cale-factus*.

4. Verbs compounded with prepositions often undergo certain vowel-changes:

1) Short *a* and *e* generally become *i*: *habeō*, *ad-hibeō*; *teneō*, *con-tineō*. But *a* sometimes becomes *e* or *u*: *carpō*, *dē-cerpō*; *calco*, *con-culcō*.

2) *æ* becomes *i*: *caedō*, *in-cidō*.

3) *au* generally becomes *ō* or *ū*: *plaudō*, *ex-plōdō*; *claudō*, *in-clūdō*.

5. FORM AND MEANING OF PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOSITION.—The following facts are added for reference:

Ā, ab, abs.—1. FORM: *ā* before *m* and *v*, and sometimes before *f*; *abs* before *c*, *q*, *t*, and, with the loss of *b*, also before *p* ⁵; *au* in *au-ferō* and *au-fugiō*; *ab* before the other consonants, and before vowels.—2. MEANING: (1) 'away,' 'off': *ā-mittō*, to send away; *abs-condō*, to hide away; *as-portō*,

¹ Observe the force of the compound. *Aenus pīs* means a brazen foot, but *aeni-pēs* means *having brazen feet*; see also 340, III., note.

² The words thus formed are strictly compounds of *verbs with adverbs*, as the original type of these compounds was formed before the adverb became a preposition.

³ Observe in these examples the strict adverbial use of the particles *ab*, *ex*, etc., *away*, *out*, etc. Prepositions, on the other hand, always denote *relations*, and are *auxiliary* to the *case-endings*; see 307, foot-note.

⁴ In some of these the primitive is not found in actual use.

⁵ As *ab-pellō*, *as-pellō*, to drive away.

to carry off; *au-fugiō*, to flee away; *ab-sum*, to be away; *ab-eō*, to go away, *ab-jiciō* or *ab-iciō*,¹ to throw away; (2) in adjectives, generally *negative*: *ā-mēns*, without mind, frantic; *ab-similis*, unlike.

Ad.—1. FORM: *ad* before vowels, and before *b, d, f, h, j, m, n, q,* and *v*, sometimes before *g, l, r,* and *s*, rarely before *p* and *t*; *d* assimilated before *c*, generally before *p* and *t*, and sometimes before *g, l, q, r,* and *s*; generally dropped before *gu, sc, sp,* and *st.*²—2. MEANING: 'to,' 'toward,' 'to one's self'; 'on,' 'at,' 'near,' 'by'; 'besides': *ad-dūcō*, to lead to; *ac-īlō*, to fall to, happen; *ad-moveō*, to move toward; *ac-cipiō*, to receive, take to one's self; *ac-cingō*, to gird on; *ad-lātrō* or *al-lātrō*, to bark at; *ad-sum*, to be present or near; *ad-stō* or *a-stō*, to stand near, to stand by; *ad-discō*, to learn besides.

Ante.—1. FORM: unchanged except in *anti-cipō*, 'to take beforehand,' and in composition with *stō*: *ante-stō* or *anti-stō*, to stand before.—2. MEANING: 'before,' 'beforehand': *ante-currō*, to run before; *ante-habēō*, to prefer—*lit.*, to have or hold before.

Circum.—1. FORM: generally unchanged, but *m* is sometimes dropped in compounds of *eō*, to go: *circum-eō* or *circu-eō*, to go around.—2. MEANING: 'around,' 'about': *circum-mittō*, to send around.

Com.³—1. FORM: *com* before *b, m, p;* *co* before vowels,⁴ *h,* and *gn,*⁵ *on* or *col* before *l*; *cor* before *r*; *con* before the other consonants.—2. MEANING: (1) 'together,' 'with,' in various senses: *com-bibō*, to drink together; *com-mittō*, to let go together; *co-eō*, to go together; *col-loquor*, to talk with. *cōn-fligō*, to contend with; (2) 'completely,' 'thoroughly': *cōn-ficiō*, to complete, make completely; *con-citō*, to rouse thoroughly; *cōn-sūmō*, to consume, take wholly; *con-dēnsus*, very dense.

Ē, ex.—1. FORM: *ex* before vowels and before *c, h, p,*⁶ *q, s,*⁷ *t,* and with assimilation before *f*;⁸ *ē* before the other consonants.⁹—2. MEANING: (1) 'out,' 'forth,' 'without,' implying 'freedom from': *ex-eō*, to go out, go forth; *ex-cidō*, to fall out; *ē-lō*, to put forth; *ex-sanguis*, without blood, bloodless; *ex-onerō*, to unload, disburden; (2) 'thoroughly,' 'completely,' 'successfully': *ex-ūrō*, to burn up; *ē-discō*, to learn by heart; *ēf-ficiō*, to effect, do successfully; *ē-dūrus*, very hard.

In.—1. FORM: *n* sometimes assimilated before *l*, often before *m*¹⁰ and *r*;

¹ See foot-note 1, p. 20.

² Sometimes retained: *ad-gnōscō* or *ā-gnōscō*; *ad-stō* or *a-stō*.

³ An earlier form for *cum*.

⁴ A contraction often takes place: *co-agō*, *cō-gō*. *Com* is sometimes retained before *e* or *i*, and *co* or *con* is used before *i* = *ji*: *com-eō*, *com-itor*, *co-iciō* or *con-iciō* = *con-iciō* or *con-jiciō*; see foot-note 1, p. 20.

⁵ *Cō* also appears in *cō-nectō*, *cō-nīveō*, *cō-nītor*, and *cō-nūbium*.

⁶ But *ē-pōtō* and *ē-pōtus*; *ex-scendō* or *ē-scendō*.

⁷ *S* is sometimes dropped after *ex*: *exspectō* or *ex-pectō*.

⁸ *O* before *f* is not recommended; *ēf-ferō* is better than *ec-ferō*.

⁹ But *ex-lēx*.

¹⁰ *Im* is the approved form before *b, p,* and *m*, especially in *im-perātor*, *im-perō*, and *im-perium*.

often changed to *m* before *b* and *p*; in other situations unchanged.—2. **MEANING**: ‘in,’ ‘into,’ ‘on,’ ‘at,’ ‘against’: *in-colō*, to dwell in; *in-eō*, to go into; *im-migrō*, to move into; *in-nītor*, to lean on; *in-tueor*, to look at; *ir-rīdeō*, to laugh at; *im-pūgnō*, to fight against.

Inter.—1. **FORM**: unchanged, except in *intel-legō*, to understand.—2. **MEANING**: ‘between,’ sometimes involving *interruption*,¹ ‘together’: *inter-venīō*, to come between, intervene; *inter-dicō*, to forbid, interdict; *inter-nectō*, to tie together.

Ob.—1. **FORM**: *b* assimilated before *c*, *f*, *g*, and *p*; dropped in *o-mittā*, to omit, and in *operiō*, to cover; in other situations generally unchanged.²—2. **MEANING**: (1) ‘before,’ ‘in the way,’ ‘toward,’ ‘against,’ especially of an *obstruction* or *opposition*: *of-ferō*, to bring before; *ob-stō*, to stand in the way; *oc-currō*, to run toward, run to meet; *op-pūgnō*, to attack, fight against; (2) ‘down,’ ‘completely’: *oc-cidō*, to cut down, kill; *op-primō*, to press down, to overwhelm.

Per.—1. **FORM**: generally unchanged, but *r* is sometimes assimilated before *l*,³ and is dropped before *j* in compounds of *jūrō*, as *pē-jerō*,⁴ to swear falsely.—2. **MEANING**: ‘through,’ ‘thoroughly,’ sometimes in a *bad sense* with the idea of *breaking through*, *disregarding*: *per-legō*, to read through; *per-discō*, to learn thoroughly; *per-fidus*, perfidious, breaking faith.

Post.—1. **FORM**: unchanged, except in *pō-merium*, the open space on either side of the city-wall, and *pos-meridiānus*,⁵ of the afternoon.—2. **MEANING**: ‘after,’ ‘behind’: *post-habeō*, to place after, have after, esteem less.

Prō, prōd.—1. **FORM**: *prō* is the usual form, both before vowels and before consonants; *prōd*, the original form, is retained in a few words before vowels.⁶—2. **MEANING**: ‘forth,’ ‘forward,’ ‘before,’ ‘for’: *prōd-eō*, to go forth or forward; *prō-currō*, to run forward; *prō-pūgnō*, to fight in front of, fight for; *pro-hibēō*, to hold aloof, i. e., out of one’s reach, hence to prohibit; *prō-mittō*, to send forth, to hold out as a promise, to promise.

Sub.—1. **FORM**: *b* assimilated before *c*, *f*, *g*, and *p*, and often before *m* and *r*; dropped before *sp*; in other situations unchanged. The form *subs*, shortened to *sus*, occurs in a few words: *sus-cipiō*, *sus-pendō*.—2. **MEANING**: ‘under,’ ‘down,’ ‘from under,’ ‘up’; ‘in place of,’ ‘secretly’; ‘somewhat,’ ‘slightly’:⁷ *sub-eō*, to go under; *sub-lābor*, to slip down; *sub-ducō*, to draw from under, withdraw; *sus-cipiō*, to undertake; *sus-citō*, to lift up, arouse;

¹ It is used in several compounds referring to death: *inter-eō*, to die; *inter-ficiō* to kill.

² *Obs* seems to occur in a few words: *obs-olēscō*, *os-tendō* for *obs-tendō* (*b* dropped), though these words are sometimes otherwise explained; thus *ob-solēscō*, as a compound of *solēscō* from *solēō*.

³ As *per-legō*, *pel-legō*; *per-liciō*, *pel-liciō*; but *per* is preferable.

⁴ For *per-jūrō*.

⁵ *Post-meridiānus* is also used; *pō-meridiānus* is not approved, though it occurs.

⁶ As in *prōd-eō*, *prōd-igō*, *prōd-igus*, and before *e* in the compound of *sum*: *prōd-ecē*, *prōd-est*, etc.

⁷ Mostly in adjectives: *sub-absurdus*, somewhat absurd; *sub-dolus*, somewhat crafty; *sub-impudēns*, somewhat impudent; *sub-inolēns*, somewhat odious.

sub-stituō, to put in place of, to substitute; *sub-ripiō*, to take away secretly; *sub-rideō*, to smile, laugh slightly; *sub-difficilis*, somewhat difficult.

Trans.—1. FORM: it generally drops *s* before *s*, and it often drops *n* before *d*, *j*,¹ *l*, *m*, *n*; it is otherwise unchanged.—2. MEANING: ‘across,’ ‘through,’ ‘completely’: *trāns-currō*, to run across; *trā-ducō*, to lead across; *trān-siliō*, to leap across; *trāns-igō*, to transact; to finish, do completely or thoroughly—*lit.*, to drive through.

3. FORM AND MEANING OF THE INSEPARABLE PREPOSITIONS.—The following facts are added for reference:

Ambi, amb.²—1. FORM: *amb* before vowels; *ambi*, *am*, or *an*,³ before consonants.—2. MEANING: ‘around,’ ‘on both sides,’ ‘in two directions’: *amb-iō*,⁴ to go round; *amb-igō*, to act in two ways, move in different directions, to hesitate; *am-putō*, to cut around or off; *an-quirō*, to search round.

Dis, di.—1. FORM: *dis* before *c*, *p*, *q*, *t*, before *s* followed by a vowel, and, with assimilation, before *f*; but *dir* for *dis* before a vowel or *h*; *dī* in most other situations; but both *dis* and *dī* occur before *j*.⁵—2. MEANING: ‘apart,’ ‘asunder,’⁶ ‘between,’ sometimes *negative*⁷ and sometimes *intensive*: *dis-tineō*, to hold apart; *dī-ducō*, to lead apart, divide; *dij-fugio*, to flee asunder, or in different directions; *dir-imō*, to take in pieces, destroy; *dis-sentiō*, to think differently, dissent; *dī-jūdicō*, to judge between; *dis-pliceō*, to displease, not to please; *dij-ficilis*, difficult, not easy; *dī-laudō*, to praise highly.

In.—1. FORM: *n* dropped before *gn*; otherwise like the preposition *in*.—2. MEANING: ‘not,’ ‘un’: *ī-gnōscō*, not to know, not to recollect, to pardon; *im-memor*, unmindful; *in-imīcus*, unfriendly.

Por, for port.⁸—1. FORM: *r* assimilated before *l* and *s*; in other situations, *por*.—2. MEANING: ‘forth,’ ‘forward,’ ‘near’: *pol-liceor*, to hold forth, offer, promise; *pos-sideō*, to possess; ⁹ *por-rigō*, to hold out or forth, to offer.

Red, re.—1. FORM: *red* before vowels, before *h*, and in *red-dō*; *re* in other situations.—2. MEANING: ‘back,’ ‘again,’ ‘in return’: ¹⁰ *red-eō*, to go back; *re-ficiō*, to repair, make again; *red-amō*, to love in return.

Sed, sē.—1. FORM: *sed* before vowels; *sē* before consonants.—2. MEANING: ‘apart,’ ‘aside’: *sē-cēdō*, to go apart, secede; *sē-pōnō*, to put aside or apart.

NOTE.—For the Composition of Adverbs, see 304, I., 2; 304, II., 1, note; 304, IV., note 2.

¹ Or before *i* = *j* or *ji*; see foot-note 1, p. 20.

² Compare *ambō*, both, and *ἀμφί*, around, on both sides.

³ *An* before *c*, *q*, *f*, and *t*.

⁴ For *amb-eō*.

⁵ *Dis-jungō*, *dī-jūdicō*.

⁶ Both *literally* ‘apart’ in respect to place or position, and *figuratively* ‘apart’ in sentiment or opinion.

⁷ Especially in adjectives: *dis-par*, unequal; *dis-similis*, unlike.

⁸ Greek *πρῶτι*, *πρῶτι*, *πρὸς*, to, toward; see Curtius, 381.

⁹ *To sit near and so to control*.

¹⁰ Sometimes *negative*, *not*, *un*—: *re-signō*, to unseal; *re-clūdō*, to open.

¹¹ Probably an old ablative of *suī* and identical with *sed*, but.

PART THIRD.

S Y N T A X .

CHAPTER I.

SYNTAX OF SENTENCES.

I. CLASSIFICATION OF SENTENCES.

345. SYNTAX treats of the construction of sentences.

346. A sentence is a combination of words expressing either a single thought or two or more thoughts.

347. A SIMPLE SENTENCE expresses a single thought;

Deus mundum aedificāvit, God made (built) the world. Cic.

348. A COMPLEX SENTENCE expresses one leading thought with one or more dependent thoughts:

Dōnec eris felix, multōs numerābis amicōs, so long as you shall be prosperous, you will number many friends. Ovid.

NOTE 1.—In this example two simple sentences—(1) ‘*you will be prosperous,*’ and (2) ‘*you will number many friends*’—are so united that the first only specifies the time of the second: *You will number many friends* (when?), *so long as you shall be prosperous.* The parts thus united are called *Clauses* or *Members*.

NOTE 2.—The part of the complex sentence which makes complete sense of itself—*multōs numerābis amicos*—is called the *Principal* or *Independent Clause*; and the part which is dependent upon it—*dōnec eris felix*—is called the *Subordinate* or *Dependent Clause*.

349. A COMPOUND SENTENCE expresses two or more independent thoughts:

Sol ruit et montēs umbrantur, the sun hastens to its setting and the mountains are shaded. Verg.

350. A DECLARATIVE SENTENCE has the form of an assertion:

Miltiadēs accūsātus est, Miltiades was accused. Nep.

351. An INTERROGATIVE SENTENCE has the form of a question:

Quis loquitur, who speaks? Ter. *Quis nōn paupertātem extimēscit, who does not fear poverty?* Cic. *Quid ais, what do you say?* Ter. Ec

quid¹ animadvertis silentium, *do you not notice the silence?* Cic. Quālis est oratiō, *what kind of an oration is it?* Cic. Quot sunt, *how many are there?* Plaut. Ubī sunt, *where are they?* Cic. Ubinam gentium sumus, *where in the world are we?* Cic. Visne fortunam experiri meam, *do you wish to try my fortune?* Cic. Nōne nobilitari volunt, *do they not wish to be renowned?* Cic. Num igitur peccāmus, *are we then at fault?* Cic.

1. INTERROGATIVE WORDS.—Interrogative sentences generally contain some interrogative word—either an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb, or one of the interrogative particles:² *-ne, nōne, num;* see examples above.

NOTE 1.—Questions with *-ne* ask for information: *Scrībitne*, ‘is he writing?’ *Ne* is sometimes appended to *utrum, num*, or *an*, without affecting their meaning, and sometimes inserted in the clause after *utrum*:

Numne ferre arma debuerunt, *ought they to have borne arms?* Cic. *Utrum taceamne*, *an praedicem*, *shall I be silent, or shall I speak?* Ter.

NOTE 2.—Questions with *nōne* expect the answer *yes*: *Nōne scrībit*, ‘is he not writing?’

NOTE 3.—Questions with *num* expect the answer *no*: *Num scrībit*, ‘is he writing?’

NOTE 4.—For questions with *an*, see 353, note 4.

2. The particle *-ne* is always appended to some other word, generally to the emphatic word of the sentence, i. e., to the word upon which the question especially turns; appended to *nōn*, it forms *nōne*:

Visne experiri, *do you wish to try?* Cic. *Tūne id veritus es*, *did you fear this?* Cic. *Omnisne pecūnia solūta est*, *has ALL the money been paid?* Cic. *Hōcinesc* (= *hōcine est* ‘*is this the duty of a father?*’ Ter. *Unquamne vidisti have you EVER seen?* Cic. *Nōne volunt*, *do they NOT wish?* Cic.

3. Sometimes no interrogative word is used, especially in impassioned discourse:

Crēditis, *do you believe?* Verg. *Ego nōn poterō*, *shall I not be able?* Cic.

4. An emphatic *tandem*, meaning *indeed, pray, then*, often occurs in interrogative sentences:

Quod genus tandem est istud glōriae, *what kind of glory is that, pray?* Cic.

NOTE 1.—*Nam*, appended to an interrogative, also adds emphasis:

Numnam haec audivit, *did he hear this, pray?* Ter.

NOTE 2.—For *Two Interrogatives* in the same clause, and for an *Interrogative* with *tantus*, see 454, 3 and 4.

352. ANSWERS.—Instead of replying to a question of fact with a simple particle meaning *yes* or *no*, the Latin usually repeats the verb or some emphatic word, often with *prōrsus, vērō*, and the like, or if negative, with *nōn*:

Dixitne causam, *did he state the cause?* *Dixit*, *he stated it*. Cic. *Possumusne tūti esse*, *can we be safe?* *Nōn possumus*, *we can not*. Cic.

¹ *Ecquid*, though the neuter accusative of an interrogative pronoun, has become in effect a mere particle with the force of *nōne*.

² See 311, 8, foot-note.

³ See 27, note.

NOTE 1.—Sometimes the simple particle is used—affirmatively, *sīnē, etiam, ita, vērō, v̄rtē*, etc.; negatively, *nōn, minīmē*, etc.

Vēnitne, *has he come?* Nōn, *no* Plaut.

NOTE 2.—Sometimes, without an actual repetition of the emphatic word, some equivalent expression is used:

Tuam vestem dētraxit tibi, *did he strip off your coat?* Factum, *he did*—lit., *done*, for *it was done*. Ter

353. DOUBLE or DISJUNCTIVE QUESTIONS offer a *choice* or *alternative*, and generally take one of the following forms:

1. The first clause has *utrum* or *-ne*, and the second *an*:

Utrum ea vestra an nostra culpa est, *is that your fault or ours?* Cic.
Rōmanne veniō an hīc manēō, *do I go to Rome, or do I remain here?* Cic.

2. The first clause omits the particle, and the second has *an*, or *anne*:

Ēloquar an sileam, *shall I utter it, or keep silence?* Verg. Gabiniō dicam anne Pompēiō, *to Gabinius, shall I say, or to Pompey?* Cic.

NOTE 1.—Other forms are rare.¹

NOTE 2.—*Utrum* sometimes stands before a disjunctive question with *-ne* in the first clause and *an* in the second:

Utrum, taceamne, an praedicem, *which, shall I be silent, or shall I speak?* Ter.

NOTE 3.—When the second clause is negative, the particle generally unites with the negative, giving *annōn* or *neque*:

Sunt haec tua verba neque, *are these your words or not?* Cic.

NOTE 4.—By the omission of the first clause, the second often stands alone with *an*, in the sense of *or*, implying a negative answer:

An hōc timēmus, *or do we fear this?* Liv.

NOTE 5.—Disjunctive questions sometimes have three or more members:²

Gabiniō anne Pompēiō an utrique, *to Gabinius, or Pompey, or both?* Cic.

NOTE 6.—*Disjunctive* questions inquire *which alternative* is true. These must be distinguished—

1) From such single questions as inquire whether *either alternative* is true:

Sōlem dicam aut lūnam deum, *shall I call the sun or the moon a god?*³ Cic.

2) From two separate questions, introduced respectively by *nūm*, implying a negative answer, and by *an*, implying an affirmative answer:

Num furis? an lūdis mē? *are you mad? or do you not rather mock me?* Hor.

354. AN IMPERATIVE SENTENCE has the form of a command, exhortation, or entreaty:

Jūstitiam cole, *cultivate justice*. Cic.

355. AN EXCLAMATORY SENTENCE has the form of an exclamation:

Reliquit quōs virōs, *what men he has left!* Cic.

¹ Thus, in Vergil, *-ne* occurs in both clauses, also *-ne* in the first with *seu* in the second. In Horace, *-ne* occurs in the second clause with no particle in the first.

² Cicero, in his oration *Prō Domō*, xxii., 57, has a question of this kind extended to eight clauses, the first introduced by *utrum* and each of the others by *an*.

³ Observe that in this sense *aut*, not *an*, is used.

NOTE 1.—Many sentences introduced by interrogative pronouns, adjectives, or *ad* verbs may be so spoken as to become exclamatory :

Quibus gaudiis exultābis, *in what joys will you exult!* Cic.

NOTE 2.—Some declarative and imperative sentences readily become exclamatory.

NOTE 3.—Exclamatory sentences are often elliptical.

II. ELEMENTS OF SENTENCES.

356. The SIMPLE SENTENCE in its MOST SIMPLE FORM consists of two distinct parts, expressed or implied :

1. The SUBJECT, or that of which it speaks;
2. The PREDICATE, or that which is said of the subject:

Cluilius moritur, *Cluilius dies.*¹ Liv.

357. The SIMPLE SENTENCE in its MOST EXPANDED FORM consists only of these same parts with their various modifiers :

In his castris Cluilius, Albānus rēx, moritur, *Cluilius, the Alban king dies in this camp.*² Liv.

1. The subject and predicate of a sentence are called the *Principal* or *Essential* elements; their modifiers, the *Subordinate* elements.

2. The elements, whether principal or subordinate, may be either simple or complex:

1) *Simple*, when not modified by other words; see 358.

2) *Complex*, when thus modified; see 359.

358. The SIMPLE SUBJECT of a sentence must be a noun, a pronoun, or some word or words used as a noun :³

Rēx decrēvit, *the king decreed.* Nep. Ego scribō, *I write.* Cic. Ībam, *I was walking.* Hor. Vicimus, *we have conquered.* Cic. Videō idem valet, *the word video has the same meaning.* Quint.

359. The COMPLEX SUBJECT consists of the simple subject with its modifiers :

Populus Rōmānus decrēvit, *the ROMAN people decreed.* Cic. Cluilius rēx moritur, *Cluilius THE KING dies.* Liv. Rēx Rutulōrum, *the king OF THE RUTULI.* Liv. Liber de officiis, *the book ON DUTIES.* Cic.

NOTE 1.—The subject is thus modified—

1) By an ADJECTIVE: Populus Rōmānus.

2) By a NOUN IN APPPOSITION: Cluilius rēx.

3) By a GENITIVE: Rēx Rutulōrum.

4) By a NOUN WITH A PREPOSITION: Liber de officiis.

¹ Here *Cluilius* is the subject, and *moritur* the predicate.

² Here *Cluilius, Albānus rēx*, is the subject in its enlarged or modified form, and *in his castris moritur* is the predicate in its enlarged or modified form.

³ A pronominal subject is always contained or implied in the personal ending. Thus *m* in *ība-m* is a pronominal stem = *ego*, and is the true original subject of the verb. See also 247; 368. 2, foot-note.

NOTE 2.—A noun or pronoun used to *explain* or *identify* another noun or pronoun denoting the same person or thing, is called an *Appositive*; as *Cluilius rēx*, 'Cluilius the king.'

NOTE 3.—Any noun may be modified like the subject.

NOTE 4.—Sometimes adverbs occur as modifiers of nouns:

Nōn ignārī sumus ante malōrum, we are not ignorant of PAST misfortunes. Verg.

360. The SIMPLE PREDICATE must be either a verb, or the copula *sum* with a noun or adjective:

Miltiadēs est accusātus, Miltiades was ACCUSED. Nep. *Tū es testis*, you ARE A WITNESS. Cic. *Fortūna caeca est*, fortune IS BLIND. Cic.

NOTE 1.—Like *sum*, several other verbs sometimes unite with a noun or an adjective to form the predicate; see **362**, 2. A noun or an adjective thus used is called a *Predicate Noun* or *Predicate Adjective*.

NOTE 2.—*Sum* with an *adverb* sometimes forms the predicate:

Omnia rectē sunt, all things are RIGHT. Cic.

361. The COMPLEX PREDICATE consists of the simple predicate with its modifiers:

Miltiadēs Athēnās liberāvit, Miltiades liberated ATHENS. Nep. *Labōri student*, they devote themselves TO LABOR. Caes. *Mē rogāvit sententiā*, he asked ME MY OPINION. Cic. *Pōns iter hostibus dedit*, the bridge furnished A PASSAGE TO THE ENEMY. Liv. *Bella feliciter gessit*, he waged wars SUCCESSFULLY. Cic. *In his castris moritur*, he dies (where?) IN THIS CAMP. Liv. *Vere convēnere*, they assembled (when?) IN THE SPRING. Liv.

1. The Predicate, when a verb, is thus modified—

1) By an ACCUSATIVE: *Athēnās liberāvit*.

2) By a DATIVE: *Labōri student*.

3) By two ACCUSATIVES: *Mē rogāvit sententiā*.

4) By an ACCUSATIVE and a DATIVE: *Iter hostibus dedit*.

5) By an ADVERB: *Feliciter gessit*.

6) By an ADVERBIAL PHRASE: *In his castris moritur*.

NOTE 1.—Still other modifiers occur with special predicates; see **406**, **409**, **410**, **422**.

NOTE 2.—No one predicate admits all the modifiers here given. Thus only *transitive* verbs admit an Accusative (**371**); only *intransitive* verbs, a Dative alone (**384**, I.); and only *special* verbs, two Accusatives (**374**).

2. A PREDICATE NOUN is modified like the subject:

Haec virtūs omnium est regīna virtutum, this virtue is the queen OF ALL VIRTUES. Cic. See also **359**, notes 1 and 3.

3. A PREDICATE ADJECTIVE is modified—

1) By an ADVERB: *Satis hūmilis est*, he is SUFFICIENTLY humble. Liv.

2) By an OBLIQUE CASE: *Avidi laudis fuērunt*, they were desirous OF PRAISE. Cic. *Omni aetātī mors est communis*, death is common TO EVERY AGE. Cic. *Digni sunt amicitia*, they are worthy OF FRIENDSHIP. Cic.

NOTE.—Any adjective may be modified like the predicate adjective:

Eques Rōmānus satis litterātus, a Roman knight sufficiently literary. Cic.

CHAPTER II.

SYNTAX OF NOUNS.

SECTION I.

AGREEMENT OF NOUNS.

RULE I.—Predicate Nouns.¹

362. A noun predicated of another noun denoting the same person or thing agrees with it in CASE:²

*Brūtus cūstōs*³ *libertātis* fuit, *Brutus was the* GUARDIAN *of* liberty. Liv.
Servius rēx est dēclārātus, *Servius was declared* KING. Liv. *Orestem* sē esse
 dīxit, *he said that he was* ORESTES. Cic. See 360, note 1.

NOTE.—This rule applies also to nouns predicated of pronouns:⁴
Ego sum nūntius, *I am a messenger*. Liv.

1. A Predicate Noun with different forms for different genders must agree in GENDER as well as in CASE:

*Ūsus magister*⁵ est, *experience is* AN INSTRUCTOR. Cic. *Historia est ma-*
*gistra*⁵ (not *magister*), *history is* AN INSTRUCTRESS. Cic.

2. PREDICATE NOUNS are most frequent with the following verbs:

1) With *sum* and a few intransitive verbs—*evādō*, *existō*, *appāreō*, and the like:

Homō māgnus evāserat, *he had become* (turned out) A GREAT MAN. Cic.
Exstitit vīdex *libertātis*, *he became* (stood forth) THE DEFENDER *of* liberty.
 Cic. See also examples under the rule.

2) With Passive Verbs of *appointing*, *making*, *naming*, *regarding*, *esteeming*, and the like:

Servius rēx est dēclārātus, *Servius was declared* KING. Liv. *Mundus civi-*
līs existimātur, *the world is regarded as* A STATE. Cic.

NOTE 1.—In the poets, Predicate Nouns are used with great freedom after verbs of a great variety of significations. Thus with *audīō* = *appellor*:

Rēx audisti, *you have been called* KING; i. e., have heard yourself so called. Hor.
Ego dīvūm incēdō rēgīna, *I walk as* QUEEN *of the* gods. Verg.

¹ For convenience of reference, the Rules will be presented in a body on page 324.

² For *Predicate Genitive*, see 401.

³ In these examples *cūstōs*, *rēx*, and *Orestem* are all predicate nouns, and agree in case respectively with *Brūtus*, *Servius*, and *sē* (536).

⁴ As all substantive pronouns have the construction of nouns; see 182.

⁵ Observe that in *ūsus magister* est, the masculine form, *magister*, is used to agree in gender with *ūsus*; while in *historia est magistra*, the feminine form, *magistra*, is used to agree in gender with *historia*.

NOTE 2.—For *Predicate Accusative*, see 373, 1.

NOTE 3.—The Dative of the object for which (390), *prō* with the Ablative, and *locō* or *numerō* (or *in numerō*) with the Genitive, are often kindred in force to Predicate Nouns: *hosti, prō hoste, locō hostis, numerō* (or *in numerō*) *hostium*, ‘for an enemy,’ or ‘as an enemy’:

Fuit omnibus bonō, it was A BENEFIT (lit., FOR A BENEFIT) *to all*. Cic. *Sicilia nobis prō aerariō fuit, Sicily was A TREASURY* (FOR A TREASURY) *for us*. Cic. *Quæstori parentis locō fuit, he was A PARENT* (lit., IN THE PLACE OF A PARENT) *to the questor*. Cic. *Is tibi parentis numerō fuit, he was A PARENT to you*. Cic. See also *Predicate Genitive*, 401.

3. PREDICATE NOUNS are used not only with finite verbs, but also with INFINITIVES and PARTICIPLES, and sometimes without verb or participle:

Dēclārātus rēx Numa, Numa having been declared KING. Liv. *Caniniō cōsule, Caninius BEING CONSUL*. Cic. See 431, also *Orestes* under the rule.

NOTE 1.—For a PREDICATE NOMINATIVE after the INFINITIVE *esse*, see 536, 2, 1).

NOTE 2.—For an INFINITIVE or a CLAUSE instead of a Predicate Noun; see 539; 501.

RULE II.—Appositives.

363. An Appositive agrees in CASE with the noun or pronoun which it qualifies:

Cluilius rēx moritur, Cluilius THE KING dies. Liv. *Urbēs Karthagō atque Numantia, the cities CARTHAGE and NUMANTIA*. Cic. *Saguntum, foederatam civitatem, expugnāvit, he took Saguntum, an allied town*. Liv. See 359, note 2.

1. An Appositive with different forms for different genders must agree in GENDER as well as in CASE:

Cluilius rēx,¹ *Cluilius THE KING*. Liv. *Venus rēgina*,¹ *Venus THE QUEEN*. Hor.

2. An Appositive often agrees with the pronoun implied in the ending of the verb:

*Hostis*² *hostem occidere volui, I, AN ENEMY, wished to slay an enemy*. Liv.

3. Appositives are kindred in force—

1) Generally to RELATIVE clauses:

Cluilius rēx, Cluilius (who was) THE KING. Liv.

2) Sometimes to other SUBORDINATE clauses,³ as TEMPORAL, CONCESSIVE, etc.

Furius puer didicit, Furius learned WHEN HE WAS A BOY OR AS A BOY. Cic. *Iunius aedem dictātor dēdicāvit, Junius dedicated the temple WHEN DICTATOR*. Liv.

4. By SYNESIS⁴—a CONSTRUCTION ACCORDING TO SENSE:

¹ See 362, 1, foot-note.

² *Hostis* agrees with *ego*, implied in *volui*, ‘I wished’: see 358, foot-note.

³ This construction is sometimes called *Adverbial Apposition*.

⁴ See *Figures of Speech*, 636, IV., 4.

1) *Possessives* admit a *Genitive* in apposition with the Genitive of the pronoun implied in them :

Tua *ipsius*¹ amicitia, *your own friendship*. Cic. Meum *sōlus* peccātum, *my fault ALONE*. Cic. Nōmen meum *absentis*, *my name IN MY ABSENCE*. Cic.

2) *Locatives* admit as an Appositive a *Locative Ablative* (411, 425), with or without a preposition :

Albae cōstitērunt *in urbe opportūnā*,² *they halted at Alba, A CONVENIENT CITY*. Cic. Corinthī, Achāiae urbe, *at Corinth, A CITY of Achaia*. Tac.

5. CLAUSES.—A noun or pronoun may be in apposition with a clause, or a clause in apposition with a noun or pronoun :

Nōs, *id*³ quod dēbet, patria dēlectat, *our country delights us, as it ought*. Cic. Omnēs interficī jussit, *mūnimentum*⁴ ad praesēns, *he ordered them all to be put to death, A MEANS OF PROTECTION for the present*. Tac. For clauses in apposition with nouns or pronouns, see 499, 3; 501, III.

364. PARTITIVE APPPOSITION.—The parts may be in apposition with the whole, or the whole in apposition with the parts :

Duo rēgēs, *ille bellō, hīc pāce*, civitātem auxērunt, *two kings advanced the state, THE FORMER by war, the LATTER by peace*. Liv. Ptolemaeus et Cleopatra, *rēgēs*⁴ Aegyptī, *Ptolemy and Cleopatra, RULERS of Egypt*. Liv.

SECTION II.

GENERAL VIEW OF CASES.

365. Cases, in accordance with their general force, may be arranged and characterized as follows :

I. Nominative,	Case of the Subject.
II. Vocative,	Case of Address.
III. Accusative,	Case of Direct Object.
IV. Dative,	Case of Indirect Object.
V. Genitive,	Case of Adjective Relations.
VI. Ablative,	Case of Adverbial Relations. ⁵

¹ *Ipsius* agrees with *tui* (of you) involved in *tua*; *sōlus* and *absentis*, with *mē* involved in *meum*. The Genitive of *ipse*, *sōlus*, *ūnus*, and *omnis* is often thus used.

² As a *Locative Ablative* is a genuine *Locative* in sense, there is no special irregularity here, and *in urbe opportūnā* may be explained as a separate modifier of the verb: 'They halted at Alba, at a convenient city.' Thus explained, it is not an appositive at all.

³ *Id* quod dēbet, lit., *that which it owes*. *Id* and *mūnimentum* are in apposition respectively with *nōs dēlectat* and *omnēs interficī*, and are best explained as Accusatives. A Nominative apparently in apposition with a clause is generally best explained either as an appositive to some Nominative, or as the subject of a separate clause.

⁴ In the first example, *ille* and *hīc*, the parts, are in apposition with *rēgēs*, the whole; but in the second example, *rēgēs*, the whole, is in apposition with the parts, *Ptolemaeus* and *Cleopatra*.

⁵ This arrangement is adopted in the discussion of the cases, because, it is thought, it will best present the force of the several cases and their relation to each other.

366. The *Nominative*, *Genitive*, *Dative*, *Accusative*, and *Vocative* have probably retained with very slight modifications their original force as developed in the mother tongue from which the Latin was derived.¹

367. The *Ablative* combines within itself the separate offices of three cases which were originally distinct:²

1. The *Ablative* proper, denoting the relation FROM—the place FROM which.

2. The *Locative*, denoting the relation IN, AT—the place IN or AT which.

3. The *Instrumental*, denoting the relation WITH, BY—the instrument or means WITH or BY which.

SECTION III.

NOMINATIVE.—VOCATIVE.

I. NOMINATIVE.

RULE III.—Subject Nominative.

368. The subject of a finite verb is put in the *Nominative*:³

Servius rēgnāvit, *SERVIVS reigned*. Liv. Patent *portae*, THE GATES are open. Cic. *Rēx vīcit*, THE KING conquered. Liv. *Ego rēgēs ējēcī, vōs tyrannōs intrōdūcītis*, I have banished kings, you introduce tyrants. Cic.

1. The subject is always a substantive, a pronoun, or some word or clause used substantively;⁴ see examples under the rule.

2. A pronominal subject is always expressed or implied in the ending of the verb:⁵

¹ That is, in the primitive Indo-European tongue, from which have been derived, either directly or indirectly, not only the Latin, Greek, and Sanskrit, but also the English, French, German, and indeed nearly all the languages of modern Europe. Upon the general subject of *Cases*, their original formation and meaning, see Bopp, I., pp. 242-519; Merguet, pp. 17-117; Penka, Hübschmann, Holzweissig, Delbrück, and, among the earlier writers, Hartung, 'Ueber die Casus,' etc., and Rumpel, 'Casuslehre.'

² See Delbrück, 'Ablativ, Localis, Instrumentalis.'

³ For the *Subject of the Infinitive*, see 536. For the *Agreement of the verb with its subject*, see 460.

⁴ For clauses used substantively, see 540.

⁵ See 247. Thus *moneo* means *I* (not *you*, *he*, or *we*, but *I*) *instruct*. Indeed, every verb contains a pronominal subject in itself, and in general it is necessary to add a separate subject only when it would otherwise be doubtful to whom the implied pronoun refers. Thus *rēgnāvit*, 'he reigned,' is complete of itself, if the context shows to

Discipulōs moneō¹ ut studia ament, I *instruct pupils to love* (that THEY may love) *their studies*. Quint. Nōn scholae, sed vitae discimus, WE *learn not for the school, but for life*. Sen.

NOTE.—A separate pronominal subject may, however, be added for the sake of clearness, emphasis, or contrast, as in the fourth example under the rule.

3. The verb is sometimes omitted, when it can be readily supplied, especially if it is *est* or *sunt*:

Ecce tuae litterae, *lo your letter* (comes). Cic. Tot sententiae, *there are* (sunt) *so many opinions*. Ter. Cōsul profectus (est), *the consul set out*. Liv.

NOTE 1.—The verb *faciō* is often omitted in short sentences and clauses:

Melius hī, quam vōs, *these have done better than you*. Cic. Rēctō ille, *he does rightly*. Cic. Cotta finem, *Cotta closed, lit., made an end*. Cic. So also in Livy after *nihil aliud* (*amplius, minus, etc.*) *quam*, 'nothing other (more, less, etc.) than' = 'merely'; *nihil praeterquam*, 'nothing except' = 'merely': *Nihil aliud quam steterunt, they merely stood* (did nothing other than). Liv.

NOTE 2.—Certain forms of expression often dispense with the verb:

Quid, what? *quid enim*, what indeed? *quid ergō*, what then? *quid quod*, what of the fact that? *quid plūra*, why more, or why shall I say more? *nō plūra*, not to say more; *nē multa*, not to say much; *quid hōc ad mē*, what is this to me? *nihil ad rem*, nothing to the subject.

NOTE 3.—For the *Predicate Nominative*, see 362.

NOTE 4.—For the *Nominative* as an *Appositive*, see 363.

NOTE 5.—For the *Nominative* in *Exclamations*, see 381, note 3.

II. VOCATIVE.

RULE IV.—Case of Address.

369. The name of the person or thing addressed is put in the Vocative:

Perge, *Laetī*, proceed, LAELIUS. Cic. Quid est, *Catilīna*, why is it, CATILINE? Cic. Tuum est, *Servī*, rēgnum, *the kingdom is yours*, SERVIUS. Liv. Ō dī immortalēs, *O immortal gods*. Cic.

1. An *Interjection* may or may not accompany the Vocative.

2. In poetry, and sometimes in prose, the Nominative in apposition with the subject occurs where we should expect the Vocative:

Audī tū, *populus Albānus*, hear ye, ALBAN PEOPLE. Liv.

3. Conversely, the Vocative by attraction sometimes occurs in poetry where we should expect the Nominative:

Quibus, Hector, ab ōrīs expectātē venīs, *from what shores, Hector, do you ANXIOUSLY AWAITED come?* Verg. Macte novā virtūte, puer, *a blessing on your new valor, boy* (lit., *be ENLARGED by*; supply *estō*). Verg.

whom the pronoun *he* refers; if not, the noun must be added: *Servius rēgnāvit*, lit., *he, Servius*, reigned, or *Servius*, *he* reigned. In the fourth example under the rule, *ego* and *vōs*, though already implied in the form of the verb, are expressed for *emphasis*. In impersonal verbs the subject 'it,' in English, is implied in the personal ending *t*.

¹ See preceding foot-note.

SECTION IV.

ACCUSATIVE.

370. The Accusative is used¹—

- I. As the Direct Object of an Action;
- II. In an Adverbial Sense—with or without Prepositions;
- III. In Exclamations—with or without Interjections.

NOTE 1.—For the *Predicate Accusative*, see 362 and 373, 1.

NOTE 2.—For the *Accusative in Apposition*, see 363.

NOTE 3.—For the *Accusative with Prepositions*, see 433.

NOTE 4.—For the *Accusative as the Subject of an Infinitive*, see 536.

I. ACCUSATIVE AS DIRECT OBJECT.

RULE V.—Direct Object.

371. The Direct Object of an action is put in the Accusative :

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made* (built) **THE WORLD**. Cic. *Liberā rem publicam*, *I free* **THE REPUBLIC**. Cic. *Populī Rōmānī salūtem dēfendite*, *defend* **THE SAFETY of the Roman people**. Cic.

I. The DIRECT OBJECT may be—

1. An *External Object*, the person or thing on which the action of the verb is *directly* exerted, as *salūtem* above.

2. An *Internal Object*; i. e., one already *contained* or *implied* in the action itself. This embraces two varieties :

1) In a STRICT SENSE, the *Cognate Accusative*, an object having a meaning *cognate* or *kindred* to that of the verb :

Servitūtem servīre,² *to serve in bondage* (lit., *to serve* **A SERVITUDE**). Ter.

2) In a FREER SENSE, the *Accusative of Effect*, the object produced by the action :

Librum scribere, *to write* **A BOOK**. Cic.

NOTE.—Participles in *dus*, verbal adjectives in *bundus*, and in Plautus a few verbal nouns, occur with the accusative :

Vitābundus castra, *avoiding the camp*. Liv. *Quid tibi hanc cūratiōst (cūratiō est)*?³ *rem = cūr hanc rem cūrās*, *what care have you of this?* Plaut.

¹ The Accusative is probably the oldest of all the oblique cases known to our family of languages, and was therefore originally the sole modifier of the verb, expressing in a vague and general way several relations now recognized as distinct. This theory accounts for the great variety of constructions in which the Accusative is used in Latin. See Curtius, 'Zur Chronologie,' pp. 71-74; Holzweissig, pp. 34-38.

² The pupil will observe that the idea of *servitūtem*, 'servitude,' 'service,' is contained in the verb *servīre*, 'to serve,' 'to be a slave or servant.'

³ See 27, note.

II. The COGNATE ACCUSATIVE is generally—(1) a noun with an adjective or other modifier, or (2) a neuter pronoun or adjective. It is used quite freely both with *transitive* and with *intransitive* verbs, and sometimes even with verbs in the *passive* voice:

Eam vitam vivere, to live that LIFE. Cic. *Mirum somniare somnium, to dream a wonderful DREAM.* Plaut. *Eadem peccat, he makes THE SAME MISTAKES.*¹ Cic. *Hoc studet unum, he studies this ONE THING (this one study).* Hor. *Perfidum ridens Venus, Venus smiling A PERFIDIOUS SMILE.* Hor. *Id assentior, I assent to THIS (I give THIS assent).* Cic. *Idem gloriari, to make THE SAME BOAST.* Cic. *Quid possunt, how powerful are they, or WHAT power have they?* Caes. *Ea monemur, we are admonished OF THESE THINGS.*² Cic. *Nihil moti sunt, they were NOT AT ALL moved.* Liv.

NOTE.—Here may be mentioned the following kindred constructions:

Vox hominem sonat, the voice sounds HUMAN. Verg. *Saltare cyclopa, to dance THE CYCLOPS.* Hor. *Longam viam ire, to go a long way.* Verg. *Bellum pugnare, to fight A BATTLE.* Verg.

III. SPECIAL VERBS.—Many verbs of FEELING or EMOTION, of TASTE and SMELL, admit the Accusative:

Honores despērat, he despairs of HONORS. Cic. *Haec gemēbant, they were sighing over THESE THINGS.* Cic. *Detrimenta ridet, he laughs at LOSSES.* Hor. *Olet unguenta, he has the odor of PERFUMES.* Ter. *Oratio redolet antiquitatem, the oration smacks of ANTIQUITY.* Cic.

NOTE 1.—Such verbs are: *despērō*, to despair of; *doleō*, to grieve for; *gemō*, to sigh over; *horreō*, to shudder at; *laerimō*, to weep over; *maereō*, to mourn over; *miror*, to wonder at; *rideō*, to laugh at; *sitiō*, to thirst for, etc.; *oleō*, to have the odor of; *sapiō*, to savor of, whether used literally or figuratively.³

NOTE 2.—Many verbs in Latin, as in English, are sometimes transitive and sometimes intransitive; see *augeō*, *dūrō*, *incipiō*, *laxō*, *ruō*, *suppeditō*, *turbō*, etc., in the Dictionary.

NOTE 3.—Many verbs which are usually rendered by *transitive* verbs in English are *intransitive* in Latin, and thus admit only an *indirect* object or some special construction; see 385.

NOTE 4.—The object of a transitive verb is often omitted, when it can be easily supplied: *moveō* = *moveō mē*, 'I move (myself)'; *vertit* = *vertit sē*, 'he turns (himself)':

Castris nōn mōvit, he did not move from his camp. Liv. *Jam verterat fortuna, fortune had already changed.* Liv.

NOTE 5.—For the *Passive Construction*, see 464.

IV. An INFINITIVE or a CLAUSE may be used as Direct Object:

Imperāre cupiunt, they desire TO RULE. Just. *Optō ut id audiātis, I desire THAT YOU MAY HEAR THIS.* Cic.

¹ *Peccat*, 'he makes a mistake'; *idem peccat*, 'he makes the same mistake,' where *idem* represents *idem peccātum*.

² Literally, *we are admonished THESE THINGS*, i. e., these admonitions.

³ Observe that with the Accusative *dēspērō* means not 'to despair,' but 'to despair of,' and is accordingly *transitive*: *doleō*, not 'to grieve,' but 'to grieve for,' etc. With some of the verbs here given the object is properly a *Cognate Accusative*.

372. Many COMPOUNDS of intransitive verbs with prepositions, especially compounds of verbs of motion with *circum*, *per*, *praeter*, *trāns*, and *super*, take the Accusative :

Murmur *contionem* pervāsīt, a murmur went through THE ASSEMBLY. Liv. Rhēnum *trānsiērunt*, they crossed (went across) THE RHINE. Caes. Circumstant *senātum*, they stand around THE SENATE. Cic. *Hereditatem* obire, to enter upon THE INHERITANCE. Cic. Eās *nātiōnēs* adire, to go to those NATIONS. Caes. *Undam* innātāre, to float upon THE WAVE. Verg. *Tela* exire,¹ to avoid THE WEAPONS. Verg. *Gallōs* praecedunt, they surpass THE GAULS. Caes.

RULE VI.—Two Accusatives—Same Person.

373. Verbs of MAKING, CHOOSING, CALLING, REGARDING, SHOWING, and the like, admit two Accusatives of the same person or thing :

Hamilcarem *imperatōrem* fēcērunt, they made Hamilcar COMMANDER. Nep. Ancum *rēgem* populus creāvit, the people elected Ancus KING. Liv. Summum *cōsilium* appellārunt *Senātum*, they called their highest council SENATE. Cic. Sē praestitit *prōpugnātōrem* libertātis, he showed himself THE CHAMPION of liberty. Cic. Flaccum habuit *collēgam*, he had Flaccus AS COLLEAGUE. Nep. Sōcratēs *tōtius mundi* sē *civem* arbitrābātur, Socrates considered himself A CITIZEN of the whole world. Cic.

1. PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE.—One of the two Accusatives is the *Direct Object*, and the other an essential part of the Predicate. The latter may be called a *Predicate Accusative* ; see 362.

NOTE 1.—*Habeo*, 'to have,' admits two Accusatives, but when it means 'to regard,' it usually takes, instead of the Predicate Accusative, the Dative of the *object for which* (384), the Ablative with *in* or *prō*, or the Genitive with *locō*, *numerō* or *in numerō* : *lūdibriō habēre*, 'to regard as an object of ridicule'; *prō hoste habēre*, *in hostibus habēre*, *locō hostiū habēre*, *numerō* or *in numerō hostiū habēre*, 'to regard as an enemy.' These constructions also occur with other verbs meaning to regard :

Ea *honōrī* habent, they regard these things AS AN HONOR. Sall. Illum *prō hoste habēre*, to regard him AS AN ENEMY. Caes. Jam *prō factō* habēre, to regard it AS ALREADY DONE. Cic. In *hostiū numerō* habuit, he regarded them AS ENEMIES (lit., in the number of, etc.). Caes. Mē *prō dēridiculō* putat, he regards me AS AN OBJECT OF RIDICULE. Ter.

NOTE 2.—The *Predicate Accusative* is sometimes an adjective :

Hominēs *caecōs* reddit *avaritia*, avarice renders men BLIND. Cic. *Templa deōrum sancta* habēbat, he regarded the temples of the gods AS SACRED. Nep.

2. In the PASSIVE these verbs take two Nominatives—a *Subject* and a *Predicate*—corresponding to the two Accusatives of the Active :

Servius *rē* est *dēclārātus*, Servius was declared KING. Liv. See also 362, 2.

¹ Observe that an *intransitive* verb may become *transitive* by being compounded with a preposition which does not take the Accusative.

RULE VII.—Two Accusatives—Person and Thing.

374. Some verbs of ASKING, DEMANDING, TEACHING, and CONCEALING, admit two Accusatives—one of the *person* and the other of the *thing*:

Mē sententiam rogāvit, he asked me MY OPINION. Cic. *Philosophia nōs rēs omnēs docuit, philosophy has taught us all THINGS.* Cic. *Auxilia rēgent ōrābant, they asked AUXILIARIES from the king.* Liv. *Pācem tē poscimus, we demand PEACE of you.* Verg. *Nōn tē cēlāvī sermōnem, I did not conceal from you THE CONVERSATION.* Cic.

1. In the PASSIVE the PERSON becomes the subject, and the Accusative of the thing is retained:

Mē sententiam rogāvit, he asked me MY OPINION. Cic. *Ego sententiam rogātus sum, I was asked MY OPINION.* Cic. *Artēs ēdoctus fuerat, he had been taught THE ARTS.* Liv.

2. Two ACCUSATIVES are generally used with *cēlō, doceō, ēdoceō*; often with *rogō, poscō, reposcō*; sometimes with *dēdoceō, exposeō, flagitō, ōrō*, etc., *cōnsulō, interrogō, percontor*; rarely with *monēō, admoneō, and postulō*.

NOTE 1.—*Cēlō*, 'to conceal,' takes—(1) in the Active generally two Accusatives, as under the rule, but sometimes the Accusative of the person and the Ablative of the thing with *dē*; (2) in the Passive, the Accusative of a neuter pronoun or the Ablative with *dē*:

Mē dē hōc librō cēlāvī, he kept me ignorant of this BOOK. Cic. *Id cēlārī, to be kept ignorant OF THIS.* Nep. *Cēlārī dē cōsiliō, to be kept ignorant OF THE PLAN.* Cic.

NOTE 2.—*Doceō* and *ēdoceō* generally follow the rule,¹ but sometimes they take the Accusative of the person and the Ablative of the thing with or without *dē*,² and sometimes the Accusative³ of the person with the *Impersonal* or a Subjunctive Clause:

Dē suā rē mē docet, he informs me IN REGARD TO his CASE. Cic. *Litteris Graecis doctus, instructed IN Greek LITERATURE.* Sall. *Sōcratem fidibus³ docuit, he taught Socrates (with) THE LYRE.* Cic. *Tē sapere docet, he teaches you TO BE WISE.* Cic.

NOTE 3.—Most verbs of asking and demanding sometimes take two Accusatives, but verbs of asking, questioning, generally take the Accusative of the person⁴ and the Ablative of the thing⁴ with *dē*, and verbs of imploring, demanding, generally the Accusative of the thing⁴ and the Ablative of the person⁴ with *ā* or *ab*:

Tē his dē rēbus interrogō, I ask you IN REGARD TO these THINGS. Cic. *Victōriam ab diis exposcere, to implore victory FROM THE GODS.* Caes. *Id ab eō flagitāre, to demand this FROM HIM.* Caes.

¹ Other verbs of teaching—*ēruditiō, institutiō, infirmō, instruō*, etc.—generally take the Ablative of the thing with or without a preposition, as *in* or *dē*; see Dictionary.

² *Doceō*, in the sense of *inform*, takes *dē* with the Ablative.

³ The Accusative may be omitted. With *fidibus* supply *canere*.

⁴ The Accusative or Ablative of the person is often omitted, and a clause often takes the place of the Accusative or Ablative of the thing. For examples and for special constructions, see, in the Dictionary, *cōnsulō, interrogō, rogō*; also *flagitō, ōrō, poscō, exposcō, and reposcō*.

NOTE 4.—*Petō* and *postulō* generally take the *Accusative* of the *thing*¹ and the *Ablative* of the *person* with *ā* or *ab*; *quaerō*, the *Accusative* of the *thing*¹ and the *Ablative* of the *person* with *ē* or *ex*, *ā*, *ab*, or *dē*:

Pācem ab Rōmanis petierunt, they asked peace FROM THE ROMANS. *Caes.* *Aliquid ab amicis postulāre*, to demand something FROM FRIENDS. *Cic.* *Quaerit ex sōlō ea*, etc., he asks OF HIM IN PRIVATE (from him alone) those questions, etc. *Caes.*

375. A NEUTER PRONOUN or ADJECTIVE as a *Cognate*² *Accusative* occurs in connection with a Direct Object with many verbs which do not otherwise take two *Accusatives*:

Hōc tē hortor, I exhort you to THIS, I give you THIS exhortation. *Cic.* *Ea admonemur*, we are admonished of THESE THINGS. *Cic.* So with *velle*, *Caes.*, *B. G. I.*, 34.

376. A few COMPOUNDS of *trāns*, *circum*, and *ad* admit two *Accusatives*, dependent the one upon the verb, the other upon the preposition:

Ibērū cōpiās trājēcit, he led his forces across THE EBRO. *Liv.* *Animum adverti columellam*, I noticed (turned my mind to) A SMALL COLUMN. *Cic.*

NOTE.—In the Passive these compounds and some others admit an *Accusative* depending upon the preposition:

Praetervehor ōstia Pantagiae, I am carried by THE MOUTH of the *Pantagias*. *Verg.* *Locum sum praetervectus*, I have been carried by THE PLACE. *Cic.*

377. In POETRY, rarely in prose, verbs of clothing, unclothing—*induo*, *exuo*, *cingō*, *accingō*, *induco*, etc.—are sometimes used reflexively in the Passive, like the Greek Middle, and thus admit an *Accusative*:

Galeam induitur, he puts on HIS HELMET. *Verg.* *Inutile ferrum cingitur*, he girds on HIS useless sword. *Verg.* *Virginēs longam indūtae vestem*, maidens attired in long ROBES. *Liv.*

NOTE.—A few other verbs sometimes admit a similar construction in the poets:

Antiquum saturāta dolōrem, having satisfied her old RESENTMENT. *Verg.* *Suspēnsi loculōs lacertō*, with SATCHELS hung upon the arm (having hung, etc.). *Hor.* *Pāscuntur silvās*, they browse on THE FORESTS. *Verg.*

II. ACCUSATIVE IN AN ADVERBIAL SENSE.

RULE VIII.—Accusative of Specification.

378. A verb or an adjective may take an *Accusative* to define its application:⁴

¹ The *Ablative* of the person is often omitted, and, instead of the *Accusative* of the thing, a clause is often used. With *postulō* and *quaerō* the *Ablative* with *dē* occurs. For examples and for other special constructions, see Dictionary.

² See 371, II.

³ As a rare exception, *monēō* admits a *noun* as the *Accusative* of the thing; see *Plaut.*, *Stich.*, 1, 2, 1.

⁴ The *Accusative* of Specification is closely related to the *Cognate Accusative* and to the *Poetic Accusative* after Passive verbs used reflexively, both of which readily pass into an adverbial construction. Thus *capita* in *capita nōlāmur* and *galeam* in *galeam*

Capita vėlāmur, we have OUR HEADS veiled (are veiled as to OUR HEADS, or have veiled OUR HEADS). Verg. *Nūbe humerōs amictus, with HIS SHOULDERS enveloped in a cloud*. Hor. *Miles frāctus membra labōre, the soldier with LIMBS shattered with labor* (broken as to his limbs). Hor. *Aenēās ōs deō similis, Aeneas like a god in APPEARANCE*. Verg.

1. In a strict sense, the *Accusative of Specification* generally specifies the part to which the action or quality particularly belongs. In this sense, it is mostly poetic, but occurs also in prose. See *Ablative of Specification*, 424.

2. In a freer sense, this *Accusative* includes the adverbial use of *partem, vicem, nihil*, of *id* and *genus* in *id temporis, id aetātis* (at this time, age), *id genus*,¹ *omne genus, quod genus* (for *ejus generis*, etc.), etc.; also of *secus, rēs*, and of many neuter pronouns and adjectives—*hōc, illud, id, quid* (454, 2), *multum, summum, cetera, reliqua*, etc. In this sense, it is common in prose:

Māximam partem lacte vivunt, they live mostly (as to the largest PART) *upon milk*. Caes. *Locus id temporis vacuus erat, the place was AT THIS time vacant*. Cic. *Aliquid id genus¹ scribere, to write something OF this KIND*. Cic. *Aliās rēs est improbus, IN other THINGS* (as to the rest) *he is unprincipled*. Plaut. *Quaerit, quid possint, he inquires how powerful they are*. Caes. *Quid vēnistī, WHY have you come?* Plaut.

RULE IX.—Accusative of Time and Space.

379. DURATION OF TIME and EXTENT OF SPACE are expressed by the *Accusative*:

Rōmulus septem et trīgintā rēgnāvit annōs, Romulus reigned thirty-seven YEARS. Liv. *Cȳrus quadrāgintā annōs nātus rēgnāre coepit, Cyrus began to reign (when) forty YEARS old* (having been born forty YEARS). Cic. *Quīnque mīlia passuum ambulāre, to walk five MILES*. Cic. *Pedēs octōgintā distāre, to be eighty FEET distant*. Caes. *Nix quattuor pedēs alta, snow four FEET deep*. Liv. But—

1. DURATION OF TIME is sometimes expressed by the *Ablative*, or by the *Accusative* with a preposition:

Pugnātum est hōris quinque, the battle was fought five HOURS. Caes. *Per annōs viginti certātum est, the war was waged FOR twenty YEARS*. Liv.

2. DISTANCE is sometimes expressed by the *Ablative*:

Milibus passuum sex ā Caesaris castris cōnsēdit, he encamped AT THE DISTANCE OF six MILES from Caesar's camp. Caes.

NOTE.—*Ab* used adverbially, meaning *off*, sometimes accompanies the *Ablative*:

Ab milibus passuum duōbus castra posuērunt, they pitched their camp two miles OFF. Caes.

induitur are similar constructions, while *quid* in *quaerit quid possint* may be explained either as a *Cognate Accusative* (371, I., 2) or as an *Adverbial Accusative*.

¹ Some grammarians treat *genus* in all such cases as an *Appositive*: *aliquid, id genus*, something, this kind: see Draeger, I., p. 2.

RULE X.—Accusative of Limit.

380. The PLACE TO WHICH is designated by the Accusative:¹

I. Generally with a preposition—**ad** or **in** :

Legiōnēs *ad urbem* addūcit, *he is leading the legions TO OR TOWARD THE CITY.* Cic. *Ad mē* scribunt, *they are writing to ME.* Cic. *In Asiam* redit, *he returns INTO ASIA.* Nep. Cōnfūgit *in aram*, *he fled TO THE ALTAR.* Nep.

II. In names of towns without a preposition :

Nūntius *Rōmam* redit, *the messenger returns TO ROME.* Liv. Platō *Tarentum* vēnit, *Plato came TO TARENTUM.* Cic. Fūgit *Tarquinios*, *he fled TO TARQUINII.* Cic. But—

NOTE.—Verbs meaning *to collect, to come together, etc.*—*conveniō, cōgō, convocō, etc.*—are usually treated as verbs of *motion*, and thus take the Accusative, generally with a preposition; but verbs meaning *to place—locō, collocō, pōnō, etc.*—are usually treated as verbs of *rest*, and thus take the Ablative (425), generally with a preposition:

Ūnum *in locum* convenire, *to meet IN one PLACE.* Caes. Cōpiās *in ūnum locum* cōgere, *to collect forces IN one PLACE.* Caes. *In alterius manū* vitam pōnere, *to place one's life IN THE HAND of another.* Cic.

1. In the NAMES OF TOWNS the Accusative with **ad** occurs—(1) to denote *to, toward, in the direction of, into the vicinity of*, and (2) in contrast with *ā* or *ab* :

Tres sunt viae *ad Mutinam*, *there are three roads TO MUTINA.* Cic. *Ad Zamam* pervēnit, *he came TO THE VICINITY OF ZAMA.* Sall. *Ā Dianiō ad Sinōpēn*, *from Dianium TO SINOPE.* Cic.

2. Like NAMES OF TOWNS are used—

1) The Accusatives **domum, domōs, rūs** :

Scipiō *domum* reductus est, *Scipio was conducted HOME.* Cic. *Domōs* abducti, *led TO THEIR HOMES.* Liv. *Rūs* ēvolāre, *to hasten INTO THE COUNTRY.* Cic. *Domum* reditiō, *a return HOME.* Caes.

2) Sometimes the Accusative of names of islands and peninsulas :

Lātōna cōnfūgit *Delum*, *Latona fled TO DELOS.* Cic. Pervēnit *Chersonēsum*, *he went TO THE CHERSONESUS.* Nep.

3) Rarely a few other Accusatives, as *exsequiās, infitiās, etc.*:²

Ille *infitiās* ibit, *he will deny (will proceed TO A DENIAL).* Ter.

3. The preposition is sometimes omitted before names of countries, and, in the poets, before names of nations and even before common nouns :

¹ Originally the *place to which* was uniformly designated by the Accusative *without* a preposition. Names of towns have retained the original construction, while most other names of places have assumed a preposition.

² See also the Supine in *um*, 546.

Aegyptum profūgit, *he fled to EGYPT.* Cic. *Italiam* vēnit, *he came to ITALY.* Verg. *Ībinus Afrōs*, *we shall go to the AFRICANS.* Verg. *Lāvīnia* vēnit *litora*, *he came to the Lavinian SHORES.* Verg.

4. A POETICAL DATIVE occurs for the Accusative, with or without a preposition:

It clāmor caelō (for *ad caelum*), *the shout ascends to HEAVEN.* Verg. *Faci-*
lis dēscēnsus Avernō, *easy is the descent to HADES.* Verg. See 385, 4.

III. ACCUSATIVE IN EXCLAMATIONS.

RULE XI.—Accusative in Exclamations.

381 The Accusative, either with or without an interjection, may be used in exclamations:

Heu mē miserum, *ah me unhappy!* Cic. *Mē miserum*, *me miserable!*¹ Cic. *Ō fallācem spem*, *O deceptive HOPE!* Cic. *Mē caecum*, *blind that I am!* Cic. *Frō deōrum fidem*, *in the name of the gods!* Cic. *Hancine audāciam*, *this AUDACITY?*² Cic. But—

NOTE 1.—An adjective or Genitive generally accompanies this Accusative, as in the examples.

NOTE 2.—*Ō*, *heu*, and *heu* are the interjections most frequently used with the Accusative, though others occur.

NOTE 3.—Other cases also occur in exclamations:

1) The *Vocative*—when an address as well as an exclamation is intended:

Pro sancte Juppiter, *O holy JUPITER.* Cic. *Infelix Didō*, *unhappy Dido.* Verg.

2) The *Nominative*—when the exclamation approaches the form of a statement:

En dextra, *lo the right hand (there is, or that is the right hand)!* Verg. *Ecce tuae litterae*, *lo your LETTER (comes)!* Cic.

3) The *Dative*—to designate the person after *ei*, *vae*, and sometimes after *ecce*, *en*, *hem*.³

Ei mihi, *woe to me.* Verg. *Vae tibi*, *woe to you.* Ter. *Ecce tibi*, *lo to you (lo here is to you = observe).* Cic. *En tibi*, *this for you (lo I do this for you).* Liv.

SECTION V.

DATIVE.

382. The Dative is the case of the Indirect Object, and designates the PERSON TO or FOR WHOM,⁴ or the THING TO or FOR WHICH, anything is or is done.⁵

¹ See Milton, 'Paradise Lost,' IV., 78.

² The exclamation may of course be interrogative in character.

³ This is an *Ethical Dative*; see 389.

⁴ The *Indirect Object* is generally a *person*, or *something personified*. Unlike the Direct Object, it is never contained in the action or produced by it, but is in most instances the *interested recipient* of it.

⁵ Whether this was the original meaning of the Dative is not known. Delbrück

383. The Dative is used—

- I. With a large class of Verbs* and Adjectives ;
- II. With a few special Nouns and Adverbs.

RULE XII.—Dative with Verbs.

384. The INDIRECT OBJECT of an action is put in the Dative. It is used—

I. With INTRANSITIVE and PASSIVE Verbs :

Tibī serviō, I am devoted to YOU. Plaut. *Serviunt populō, they are devoted to THE PEOPLE.* Cic. *Imperiō pārēbant, they were obedient to (obeyed) AUTHORITY.* Caes. *Temporī cēdit, he yields to the time.* Cic. *Labōrī student, they devote themselves to labor.* Caes. *Mundus deō pārēt, the world obeys God.*¹ Cic. *Caesarī supplicābō, I will supplicate Caesar.*¹ Cic. *Nōbīs vīta data est, life has been granted to us.* Cic. *Numitōrī dēditur, he is delivered to Numitor.* Liv.

II. With TRANSITIVE Verbs, in connection with the DIRECT OBJECT :

Agrōs plēbī dedit, he gave lands to THE COMMON PEOPLE. Cic. *Tibī grātias agō, I give thanks to YOU.* Cic. *Nātūra hominem conciliat hominī, Nature reconciles man to MAN.* Cic. *Pōns iter hostibus dedit, the bridge gave a passage to the enemy.* Liv. *Lēgēs cīvitatibus suis scrīpsērunt, they prepared laws for their states.* Cic.

1. The INDIRECT OBJECT may be—

1) The DATIVE OF INFLUENCE,² designating the *person to whom* something is or is done :

Serviunt populō, they are devoted to THE PEOPLE. Cic. *Agrōs plēbī dedit, he gave lands to THE COMMON PEOPLE.* Cic.

2) The DATIVE OF INTEREST,² designating the *person for whom* something is or is done :

Sibi Megarēnsēs vicit, he conquered the Megarians for HIMSELF. Just.

3) The DATIVE OF PURPOSE or END,² designating the *object or end for which* something is or is done :

Receptū cecinit, he gave the signal for A RETREAT. Liv.

thinks that this case originally designated the *place or object toward which* the action tended. See Kuhn's 'Zeitschrift,' vol. xviii., p. 81.

¹ *Is subject to God ; will make supplication to Caesar.*

² Observe that the Dative of Influence is very closely connected with the verb, and is, in fact, essential to the completeness of the sentence ; while the Dative of Interest and the Dative of Purpose are merely added to sentences which would be complete without them. Thus *Megarēnsēs vicit* is complete in itself.

2. DOUBLE CONSTRUCTION.—A few verbs admit—(1) the Dative of the person and the Accusative of the thing, or (2) the Accusative of the person and the Ablative of the thing: *alicui rem dōnāre*, ‘to present a thing to any one,’ or *aliquem rē dōnāre*, ‘to present any one with a thing’:¹

Praedam militibus dōnat, he gives the booty TO THE SOLDIERS. Caes. *Athēniēnsēs frūmentō dōnavit*, he presented the Athenians WITH GRAIN. Nep.

NOTE.—This construction may also be used of objects which are in a measure *personified*, or which involve *persons*:

Mūrum urbī circumdedit, he built a wall around THE CITY. Nep. *Deus animum circumdedit corpore*, God has encompassed the soul WITH A BODY. Cic.

3. To and for are not always signs of the Dative. Thus—

1) To, denoting mere *motion* or *direction*, is generally expressed by the Accusative with or without a preposition (380):

Vēnī ad urbem, I came TO THE CITY. Cic. *Delum vēnimus*, we came TO DELOS. Cic.

NOTE 1.—But the Dative occurs in the poets; see 380, 4, and 385, 4.

NOTE 2.—*Mittō*, ‘to send,’ and *scribō*, ‘to write,’ take the Dative, or the Accusative with *ad*, to denote the *person to whom*:

Scribit Labiōnō, he writes TO LABIENUS. Caes. *Scribēs ad mē*, you will write TO ME. Cic.

2) For, in defence of, in behalf of, is expressed by the Ablative with *prō*; for the sake of, for the purpose of, sometimes by the Accusative with *in*:

Prō patriā morī, to die FOR ONE’S COUNTRY. Hor. *Dīmicāre prō libertāte*, to fight FOR LIBERTY. Cic. *Satis in ūsum*, enough FOR USE. Liv.

4. The Dative sometimes depends, not upon the verb alone, but upon the *Predicate as a whole*:

*Tegimenta galeīs*² *militēs facere jubet*, he orders the soldiers to make coverings FOR THEIR HELMETS. Caes. *Liberis divitēs esse volumus*, we wish to be rich FOR THE SAKE OF OUR CHILDREN. Cic. *Quis huic rē testis est*, who testifies TO THIS (lit., is a witness FOR this THING). Cic.

NOTE 1.—The Dative is used with verbs modified by *satis*, *bene*, and *male*, whether written as compounds or not:

Illis satis facere (also written *satisfacere*), to satisfy THEM.³ Caes. *Cui bene dixit unquam*, FOR WHOM has he ever spoken a good word? Cic. *Optimō virō maledicere*, to revile a most excellent MAN. Cic.

NOTE 2.—A Dative is sometimes thus added to the predicate when the English idiom would lead us to expect a *Genitive* depending upon a noun:

In cōspectum vēnerat hostibus,⁴ he had come in sight OF THE ENEMY (lit., TO THE

¹ This double construction occurs chiefly with *aspergō*, *circumdō*, *circumfundō*, *dōnō*, *exuō*, *impertiō*, *induō*, *inspergō*, *intercludō*.

² *Galeīs* is best explained as depending upon *tegimenta facere*, rather than upon *facere* alone; *liberis*, as depending upon *divitēs esse volumus*, and *rē* upon *testis est*.

³ Literally, to do enough FOR THEM.

⁴ *Hostibus* does not depend at all upon *cōspectum*, but upon the entire predicate, *in cōspectum vēnerat*.

ENEMY). Cic. *Caesarī ad pedēs prōicere, to cast at the feet of CAESAR* (lit., TO CAESAR, at the feet). Caes. *Mihī horror membra quatit, a shudder shakes my limbs*. Verg. *Urbi fūndāmenta jacere, to lay the foundations of (for) the city*. Liv.

NOTE 3.—The Dative is sometimes very loosely connected with the predicate, merely designating the person with reference to whom the statement is true :

Tū illi pater es, you are a father to HIM. Tac. *Triduī iter expeditis erat, it was a journey of three days for LIGHT-ARMED SOLDIERS*. Liv. *Est urbe ēgressis tumulus, there is a mound as you go out of the city*.¹ Verg.

5. WITH IMPERSONAL PASSIVE.—Verbs which admit only an *Indirect Object* in the Active are *Impersonal* in the Passive, but they may retain the Dative :

Hostibus resistunt, they resist THE ENEMY. Caes. *His sententiis resistitur, resistance is offered to these OPINIONS*. Caes. *Nē mihī noceant, that they may not injure ME*. Cic. *Mihī nihil nocērī potest, no injury can be done to ME* (lit., injury can be done TO ME not at all). Cic.

385. WITH SPECIAL VERBS.—The *Dative* of the *Indirect Object* is used with many verbs which require special mention. Thus—

I. With verbs signifying *to benefit* or *injure*, *please* or *displease*, *command* or *obey*, *serve* or *resist*, and the like :

Sibi prōsunt, they benefit THEMSELVES. Cic. *Nocēre alterī, to injure ANOTHER*. Cic. *Zēnōnī placuit, it pleased ZENO*. Cic. *Displicet Tullō, it displeases TULLUS*. Liv. *Cupiditatibus imperāre, to command desires*. Cic. *Deō pārēre, to obey God*. Cic. *Rēgī servīre, to serve the king*. Cic. *Hostibus resistere, to resist the enemy*. Caes.

II. With verbs signifying *to indulge*, *spare*, *pardon*, *threaten*, *believe*, *persuade*, and the like :

Sibi indulgēre, to indulge ONE'S SELF. Cic. *Vitae parcere, to spare LIFE*. Nep. *Mihī ignōscere, to pardon ME*. Cic. *Minitāns patriae, threatening his country*. Liv. *Irāscī amīcīs, to be angry with friends*. Cic. *Mihī crēde, believe me*. Cic. *Iis persuādēre, to persuade them*. Caes.

NOTE 1.—Some verbs of this class take the Accusative: *dēlectō, jūvō, laedō, offēdō*, etc.:

Marium jūvit, he helped Marius. Nep. *Nōn mē fāma dēlectat, fame does not delight me*. Cic.

NOTE 2.—For *fīdō* and *cōnfīdō* with the Ablative. see 425, 1, 1), note.

NOTE 3.—The force of the Dative is often found only by attending to the strict mean-

¹ Other examples are: *Ā Pylis euntī locō altō sitī sunt, they are situated in an elevated place as you come* (lit., to one coming) *from Pylae*. Liv. *Dēscendentibus inter duōs lūcōs, as you descend* (lit., to those descending) *between the two groves*. Liv. *Exāccendentibus ad templum māceria erat, there was an enclosure as you ascended to the temple*. Liv. *In ūniversum aestimantī plūs penes peditem rōboris est, to make a general estimate* (lit., to one making, etc.), *there is more strength in the infantry*. Tac.

ing of the verb: *nūbō*, 'to marry' (strictly, *to veil one's self*, as the bride *for* the bridegroom); *medeor*, 'to cure' (to administer a remedy *to*); *satisfaciō*, 'to satisfy' (to do enough *for*), etc.

1. Some verbs admit either the *Accusative* or the *Dative*, but with a difference of meaning:

Cavēre aliquem, *to ward off some one*; *cavēre alicui*, *to care FOR some one*.

Cōsulere aliquem, *to consult*, etc.; *alicui*, *to consult FOR*, etc.

Metuere, timēre aliquem, *to fear*; *alicui*, *to fear FOR*.

Prōspicere, prōvidēre aliquid, *to foresee*; *alicui*, *to provide FOR*.

Temperāre, moderārī aliquid, *to govern, direct*; *alicui (of things)*, *to restrain, put a check UPON*; *temperāre alicui (of persons)*, *to spare*:¹

Hunc tū cavētō, *be on your guard against THIS ONE* (lit., *ward HIM off*). *Hor. Eī cavēre volō*, *I wish to care FOR HIM* (i. e., *to protect him*). *Cic. Perfidiā timāmus*, *we fear PERFDY*. *Cic. Sibi timuerant*, *they had feared FOR THEMSELVES*. *Caes.*

NOTE.—*Dare litterās ad aliquem* means *to address a letter TO SOME ONE*; but *dare litterās alicui* generally means *to deliver a letter TO ONE AS A CARRIER OR MESSENGER*:

Litterae mihi ad Catilinam datae sunt, *a letter addressed TO CATILINE was delivered TO ME*. *Cic.*

2. A DATIVE rendered **from** occurs with a few verbs of *differing, dis-senting, repelling, taking away*, etc.:

Differre cuius, *to differ FROM ANY ONE*. *Nep. Sibi dissentire*, *to dissent FROM HIMSELF*. *Cic. Somnum mihi adimere*, *to take sleep FROM ME*. *Cic.*

NOTE.—For the *Poetical Dative*, see 4, below; and for the *Ablative* with verbs of *Separation or Difference*, see 413.

3. A DATIVE rendered **with** occurs with *miscēō, admisceō*, etc., and sometimes with *faciō*:

Sevēritātem miscēre cōmitātī, *to unite severity WITH AFFABILITY*. *Liv. Quid huic hominī faciās*, *what are you to do WITH (TO) this MAN?* *Cic.* See 4 below.

4. DATIVE IN POETRY.—In the poets and in late prose-writers, the Dative is used much more freely than in classical prose. Thus it occurs with more or less frequency with the following classes of verbs:

1) With verbs denoting *Motion* or *Direction*—for the Accusative with *ad* or *in*:

Multōs dēmittimus Orcō (for *ad* or *in Orcum*), *we send many down TO ORCUS*. *Verg. Caelō (for ad caelum) palmās tetendit*, *he extended his hands TOWARD HEAVEN*. *Verg. It clamor caelō*, *the shout goes to heaven*. *Verg.* See also 392, I.

2) With verbs denoting *Separation* or *Difference*²—instead of the Ablative with *ab* or *dē*, or the Accusative with *inter*:

Sōlstitium pecorī (for *ā pecore*) *dēfendite*, *keep off the heat FROM THE FLOCK*. *Verg. Scurrae distābit amicus*, *a friend will differ FROM A JESTER*. *Hor. Serta capitī dēlāpsa*, *garlands fallen from his head*. *Verg.*

¹ Many other verbs take different constructions with different meanings; see *cēdō conveniō, cupiō, dēficiō, doleō, maneō, parcō, petō, solvō*, and *volō* in the Dictionary.

² Thus with *arceō, absum, differō, dissentiō, dissideō, distō*, etc.; see Dictionary

3) With verbs denoting *Union, Comparison, Contention*, and the like¹—instead of the Ablative with *cum*, or the Accusative with *inter* :

Miscet² *viris*, *he mingles WITH THE MEN*. Verg. *Concurrere hosti* (for *cum hoste*), *to meet THE ENEMY*. Ov. *Solus tibi certat*, *he alone contends with you*. Verg. *Placitōne pugnābis amōri*, *will you contend with acceptable love?* Verg.

4) In still other instances, especially in expressions of *Place* :

Haeret lateri (for *in latere*) *arundō*, *the arrow sticks IN HER SIDE*. Verg. *Ārdet apex capiti*, *the helmet gleams UPON HIS HEAD*. Verg.

386. DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS.—The Dative is used with many verbs compounded with—

ad,	ante,	con,	dē,	in,	inter,
ob,	post,	prae,	prō,	sub,	super :

Adsum amicis, *I am present WITH MY FRIENDS*. Cic. *Omnibus antestāre*, *to surpass ALL*. Cic. *Terris cohaeret*, *it cleaves TO THE EARTH*. Sen. *Hōc Caesurī dēfuit*, *this failed (was wanting to) CAESAR*. Caes. *Voluptātī inhaerēre*, *to be connected with pleasure*. Cic. *Interfuit pūgnae*, *he participated in the battle*. Nep. *Cōnsiliis obstāre*, *to oppose plans*. Nep. *Liberatī opēs postferre*, *to sacrifice wealth to liberty*. Liv. *Populō praesunt*, *they rule the people*. Cic. *Tibī prōsunt*, *they are profitable to you*. Cic. *Succumbere doloribus*, *to yield to sorrows*. Cic. *Superfuit patrī*, *he survived his father*. Liv.

1. TRANSITIVE VERBS thus compounded admit both the Accusative and the Dative :

Sē opposuit hostibus, *he opposed HIMSELF TO THE ENEMY*. Cic. *Capiti subdūxerat ensem*, *she had removed my sword from my head*. Verg. See also *Libertatī opēs postferre*, above.

2. COMPOUNDS OF OTHER PREPOSITIONS, especially of *ab*, *ex*, and *circum*, sometimes admit the Dative ; while several of the compounds specified under the rule admit the Ablative with or without a preposition :³

Sibi libertātem abjūdicat, *he deprives HIMSELF (sentences himself to the loss) of liberty*. Cic. *Mihī timōrem cripe*, *free ME from fear* (lit., *snatch away fear FOR ME*). Cic. *Pūgnā assuēscere*, *to be accustomed to (trained in) battle*. Liv. *Dicta cum factis compōnere*, *to compare words with deeds*. Sall.

3. MOTION OR DIRECTION.—Compounds expressing mere motion or direction generally take the Accusative with or without a preposition :⁴

¹ Thus, with *cōpulo*, *jungō*, *miscēo*, *admiscēo*, *permiscēo*, *necto*, *socio*, etc. ; *certō*, *contendō*, *lūctor*, *pūgnō*, etc.

² *Miscēo*, as a transitive verb, occurs with the Accusative and Dative even in classical prose ; see 385, 8 ; also 371, III., note 2.

³ See *assuēscō*, *assuūfaciō*, *acquiescō*, *coeo*, *cohaereo*, *collidō*, *communicō*, *compino*, *concordō*, *cōferō*, *cōfligō*, *congruō*, *conjungō*, *cōsentio*, *cōstō*, *insistō*, *invideo*, *insum*, and *interdicō*, in the Dictionary. See also Draeger, I., pp. 406-426

⁴ See *accido*, *accidō*, *addo*, *adferō*, *adhaerescō*, *adhibeo*, *adjungō*, *adnitor*, *adscribo*, *adsum*, *iludo*, *incido*, *incumbo*, *incurro*, *inferō*, *offerō*, *oppōnō*, in the Dictionary

Adire *arās*, to approach THE ALTARS. Cic. *Ad cōsulēs adire*, to go to THE CONSULS. Cic. *In bellum insistit*, he devotes himself to the war. Caes. *Ad omne periculum oppōnitur*, he is exposed to every peril. Cic.

4. Several compounds admit either the Accusative or the Dative without any special difference of meaning :¹

Mūnitīonibus adjacent, they are near THE FORTIFICATIONS. Tac. *Mare illud adjacet*, they are near that SEA. Nep. *Quibus timor incesserat*, whom fear had seized. Sall. *Timor patrēs incessit*, fear seized the fathers. Liv.

5. Many compounds which usually take the Accusative or the Ablative with a preposition in classical prose, admit a Dative in poetry :

Quid contendat hirundō cyenīs (for *cum cyenīs*), why should the swallow contend WITH SWANS? Lucr. *Contendis Homērō*, you contend WITH HOMER. Prop. *Animīs illābi nostrīs* (for *in unimōs nostrōs*), to sink into our minds. Verg.

NOTE.—Instead of the compounds of *ad*, *ante*, etc., the poets sometimes use in the same sense the simple verbs² with the Dative :

Qui haeserat (= *adhaeserat*) *Ērandrō*, who had joined himself to EVANDER. Verg. *Pōnis* (= *appōnis*) *mihī* porcum, you offer ME (place BEFORE ME) swine's flesh. Martial.

387. The DATIVE OF THE POSSESSOR is used with the verb *sum* :

Mihī est noverca, I have (there is TO ME) a stepmother.³ Verg. *Fonti nōmen Arethūsa est*, THE FOUNTAIN has (there is TO THE FOUNTAIN) the name *Arethusa*. Cic. But—

NOTE 1.—The DATIVE OF THE NAME as well as of the possessor is common in expressions of naming : *nōmen est*, *nōmen datur*, etc. :

Scipiōnī Africānō cōgnōmen fuit, SCIPIO had the surnamē AFRICANUS. Sall. Here *Africānō*, instead of being in apposition with *cōgnōmen*, is put by attraction in apposition with *Scipiōnī*.

NOTE 2.—The GENITIVE OF THE NAME dependent upon *nōmen* occurs :

Nōmen Mercuri est mihī, I have the name of MERCURY. Plaut.

NOTE 3.—By a GREEK IDIOM, *volēns*, *cupiēns*, or *inveitūs* sometimes accompanies the Dative of the possessor :

Quibus bellum volentibus erat, who liked the war (lit., to whom WISHING the war was). Tac.

388. The DATIVE OF THE APPARENT AGENT is used with the *Gerundive*, and with the *Passive Periphrastic Conjugation* :

¹ Such are *adjaeō*, *adīlor*, *antecēdō*, *anteō*, *cōnītor*, *dēspērō* (also with *dē*), *illūdō*, *incēdō*, *insulto*, *invādō*, *praecurro*, *praesto*, *praestolor*.

² Thus *ferō* for *adferō*, *prōferō*; *haereō* for *adhaereō*; *pōnō* for *appōnō*, *dēpōnō*, *impōnō*, etc.

³ The *Dative* with *est* usually expresses *simple possession* or *ownership*, like the English *have*. *Haereō* is sometimes used in the same sense, but it more commonly expresses some of the shades of meaning denoted by *hold*, *keep*, *regard*, and the like : *arcem habēre*, 'to hold the citadel'; *aliquem in obsidiōne habēre*, 'to hold or keep one in siege'; *prō hoste habēre*, 'to regard as an enemy.'

*Proelia conjugibus loquenda, battles FOR WOMEN to talk about.*¹ Hor. *Suum cuique incommodum ferendum est, EVERY ONE has his own trouble to bear, or must bear his own trouble.* Cic.

NOTE.—Instead of the Dative of the Apparent Agent, the Ablative with *ā* or *ab* is sometimes used :

*Quibus est ā vobis*² *cōsulendum, for whom measures must be taken BY YOU.* Cic.

1. The DATIVE OF THE APPARENT AGENT is sometimes used with the compound tenses of passive verbs :

*Mihī cōsiliū captū jam diū est, I have a plan long since formed.*¹ Cic.

NOTE.—HABEŌ with the Perfect Participle has the same force as EST MIHĪ with the Participle :

Bellum habuit indictum, he had a war (already) declared. Cic.

2. The REAL AGENT, with Passive verbs, is in classical prose denoted by the Ablative with *ā* or *ab*;³ see 415, I.

3. The DATIVE is used with the tenses for incomplete action, to designate the person who is at once *Agent* and *Indirect Object*, the person BY whom and FOR (TO) whom the action is performed :

Honesta bonis viris quaeruntur, honorable things are sought BY good MEN (i. e., for themselves). Cic.

4. In the POETS, the Dative is often used for the Ablative with *ā* or *ab*, to designate simply the agent of the action :

Nō intellegor ulli, I am not understood BY ANY ONE. Ovid. *Rēgnāta arva Saturnō, lands ruled BY SATURN.* Verg.

389. The ETHICAL DATIVE, denoting the person to whom the thought is of special interest, is often introduced into the Latin sentence:⁴

At tibi venit ad mē, but LO, he comes to me. Cic. *Ad illa mihi intendat animum, let him, I PRAY, direct his attention to those things.* Liv. *Quō mihi abis, whither are you going, PRAY?* Verg. *Quid mihi Celsus agit, what is MY Celsus doing?* Hor.

¹ The Dative with the *Gerundive*, whether alone or in the *Periphrastic Conjugation*, designates the person who *has the work to do*; while with the compound tenses of passive verbs it designates the person who *has the work already done*.

² Here *ā vobis* is necessary, to distinguish the Agent from the Indirect Object, *quibus*; but the Ablative with *ā* or *ab* is sometimes used when this necessity does not exist.

³ The Dative with the *Gerundive* is best explained as the *Dative of Possessor* or *of Indirect Object*. Thus, *suum cuique incommodum est* means 'every one has his trouble' (*cuique*, Dative of Possessor); and *suum cuique incommodum ferendum est*, 'every one has his trouble to bear.' So too, *mihī cōsiliū est*, 'I have a plan'; *mihī cōsiliū captū est*, 'I have a plan (already) formed.'

⁴ Compare the following from Shakespeare: 'He plucked me ope his doublet and offered them his throat to cut.' Julius Caesar, Act I., Scene II. 'It ascends me into the brain.' Henry IV., Part II., Act IV., Scene III. 'He presently steps me a little higher.' Henry IV., Part I., Act IV., Scene III.

NOTE 1.—The ETHICAL DATIVE is always a personal pronoun.

NOTE 2.—The ETHICAL DATIVE occurs with VOLŪ and with INTERJECTIONS:

Quid vōbīs vultis, *what do you wish, intend, mean?* Liv. Avāritia quid sibi vult, *what does avarice mean? or what object can it have?* Cic. Ei mihi, *ah me!* Verg. Vae tibi, *woe to you.* Ter. See 381, note 3, 8).

RULE XIII.—Two Datives—To which and For which.

390. Two Datives—the OBJECT TO WHICH and the OBJECT OR END FOR WHICH—occur with a few verbs:

I. With INTRANSITIVE and PASSIVE verbs:

Malō est hominibus avāritia, *avarice is an evil to men* (lit., *is to men for an evil*). Cic. Est mihi cūrae, *it is a care to me*. Cic. Domus dēdecori dominō fit, *the house becomes a disgrace to its owner*. Cic. Vēnit Atticīs auxiliō, *he came to the assistance of the Athenians*. Nep. Hōc illi tribuēbātur ignāviae, *this was imputed to him as cowardice* (for *cowardice*). Cic. Eis subsidiō missus est, *he was sent to them as aid*. Nep.

II. With TRANSITIVE verbs in connection with the AC-CUSATIVE:

Quīnque cohortēs castrīs praesidiō reliquit, *he left five cohorts for the defence of the camp* (lit., *to the camp for a defence*). Caes. Periclēs agrōs suōs dōnō rēi publicae dedit, *Pericles gave his lands to the republic as a present* (lit., *for a present*). Just.

NOTE 1.—The verbs which take two DATIVES are—

1) Intransitive verbs signifying *to be, become, go*, and the like: *sum, fiō*, etc.
2) Transitive verbs signifying *to give, send, leave, impute, regard, choose*, and the like: *dō, dōnō, dūcō, hubeō, mittō, relinquō, tribuō, vertō*, etc. These take in the Active two Datives with an Accusative; but in the Passive two Datives only, as the direct object of the Active becomes the subject of the Passive; see 464.

NOTE 2.—One of the Datives is often omitted, or its place supplied by a predicate noun.

Ea sunt ūsuī, *these things are of use* (FOR USE). Caes. Tū illi pater es, *you are a father to him*. Tac. See 362, 2, note 3.

NOTE 3.—With *audiēns* two Datives sometimes occur, *dictō* dependent upon *audiēns*, and a personal Dative dependent upon *dictō audiēns*, and sometimes *dictō oboediēns* is used like *dictō audiēns*:

Dictō sum audiēns, *I am listening to the word*. Plaut. Nōbīs dictō audiēns est, *he is obedient to us*. Cic. Magistrō dictō oboediēns, *obedient to his master*. Plaut.

RULE XIV.—Dative with Adjectives.

391. With adjectives the OBJECT TO WHICH the quality is directed is put in the Dative:

Patriae solum omnibus cārum est, *the soil of their country is dear to all*. Cic. Id aptum est temporī, *this is adapted to the time*. Cic. Omnī aetātī mors est commūnis, *death is common to every age*. Cic. Canis similis lupō

est, a dog *vs* similar to a wolf. Cic. Nātūrae accommodātum, adapted to nature. Cic. Graeciae ūtile, useful to Greece. Nep.

I. ADJECTIVES which take the DATIVE are chiefly those signifying—

Agreeable, easy, friendly, like, near, necessary, suitable, subject, useful, together with others of a similar or opposite meaning,¹ and verbals in *bilis*.

II. OTHER CONSTRUCTIONS sometimes occur where the learner would expect the Dative:

1. *The Accusative with a Preposition*: (1) *in, ergā, adversus*, with adjectives signifying friendly, hostile, etc., and (2) *ad*, to denote the object or end for which, with adjectives signifying useful, suitable, inclined, etc.

Perindulgēs *in* patrem, very kind TO HIS FATHER. Cic. Multās *ad* rēs perūtilis, very useful FOR many THINGS. Cic. Prōnus *ad* luctum, inclined to mourning. Cic.

2. *The Accusative without a Preposition* with *propior, prōximus*:

Propior montem, nearer THE MOUNTAIN. Sall. Prōximus mare, nearest to the sea. Caes. See 433 and 437.

3. *The Ablative with or without a Preposition*:

Aliēnum ā vitā meā, foreign TO my LIFE. Ter. Homīne aliēnissimum, most foreign TO or FROM MAN. Cic. Ei cum Rōsciō communis, common to him and Roscius (with Roscius). Cic.

4. *The Genitive*: (1) with adjectives used substantively; (2) with adjectives meaning like,² unlike,² near, belonging to, and a few others:³

Amīcissimus hominū, the best friend OF THE MEN (i. e., the most friendly to them). Cic. Alexandrī similis, like ALEXANDER (i. e., in character). Cic. Dispar sui, unlike ITSELF. Cic. Cūjus parēs, like whom. Cic. Populī Rōmāni est propria libertās, liberty is characteristic of the Roman people. Cic.

NOTE 1.—*Idem* occurs with the Dative, especially in the poets:

Idem faci. occidenti, he does the same AS TO KILL, or AS HE WHO KILLS. Hor.

NOTE 2.—For the *Genitive* and *Dative* with an adjective, see 399, I., note 1.

RULE XV.—Dative with Nouns and Adverbs.

392. The Dative is used with a few special nouns and adverbs:

I. With a few nouns from verbs which take the Dative:

Jūstitia est obtemperātiō⁴ lēgibus, justice is obedience TO LAWS. Cic.

¹ Such as *accommodātus, aequālīs, aliēnus, amīcus, inimīcus, aptus, cārus, facilis, difficilis, fidēlis, infidelis, fīnītimus, grātus, ingrātus, idōneus, jucundus, injucundus, molestus, necessariū, nōtus, ignotus, noxiū, pār, dispar, perniciosus, propinquus, proprius, salutaris, similis, dissimilis, diversus, vicinus*, etc.

² The *Genitive* is used especially of likeness and unlikeness IN CHARACTER.

³ As *amīlis, dissimilis, assimilis, consimilis, pār, dispar; adfīnis, fīnītimus, propinquus; proprius, acer, communis; aliēnus, contrārius, insuetus*, etc.

⁴ From *obtemperō*, which takes the Dative.

Sibi respōnsiō, *a reply to himself*. Cic. *Opulentō hominī servitūs dūra est, serving (servitude to) a rich man is hard*. Plaut. *Facilis dēscēsus¹ Avernō, easy is the descent to Avernus*. Verg.

II. With a few adverbs from adjectives which take the Dative :

Congruenter² nātūrae vivere, to live in accordance with nature. Cic. *Sibi* convenienter dicere, *to speak consistently with himself*. Cic. *Prōxi-
mē hostium castris, next to the camp of the enemy*. Caes.

NOTE 1.—In rare instances the Dative occurs with a few nouns and adverbs not included in the rule :

*Tribūnicia potestās, mūnimentum libertātī, tribunician power, a defence for LIB-
ERTY*. Liv. *Huic unā = unā cum hōe, with this one*. Verg.

NOTE 2.—For the Dative of *Gerundives* with official names, see 544, note 3.

NOTE 3.—For the Dative with *interjections*, see 381, note 3; 389, note 2.

SECTION VI.

GENITIVE.

393. The Genitive in its ordinary use corresponds to the English possessive, or the objective with *of*, and expresses various adjective relations.³

NOTE.—But the Genitive, especially when *objective* (396, III.), is sometimes best rendered *to, for, from, in, on account of*, etc. :

Beneficīi grātia, gratitude for a favor. Cic. *Labōrum fuga, escape from labors*. Cic. *Ēreptae virginis ira, anger on account of the rescue of the maiden*. Verg.

394. The Genitive is used chiefly to qualify or limit nouns and adjectives,⁴ though it also occurs with verbs and adverbs.

RULE XVI.—Genitive with Nouns.

395. Any noun, not an appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive :

Catōnis orātiōnēs, Cato's orations. Cic. *Castra hostium, the camp of the enemy*. Liv. *Mors Hamilcaris, the death of Hamilcar*. Liv. *Deūm metus, the fear of the gods*. Liv. *Vir cōsiliī magnī, a man of great prudence*. Caes. *Pars populī, a part of the people*. Cic.

¹ From *dēscendō*, which admits the Dative in poetry; see 385, 4, 1).

² From *congruēns*, which takes the Dative.

³ The Genitive has nearly the force of an adjective, and means simply *of* or *belonging to*. Thus, *rēgis*, equivalent to *rēgius*, means *of* or *belonging to a king*. On the origin and use of the Genitive, see Hübschmann, p. 106; Merguet, p. 69; Holzweissig, pp. 26 and 73; Draeger, I., pp. 447-493; Roby, II., pp. 116-137.

⁴ Doubtless originally it limited only nouns and adjectives.

NOTE 1.—For the *Appositive*, see 363.

NOTE 2.—An ADJECTIVE is sometimes used for the Genitive:

Bellica glōria = belli glōria, *the glory of war*. Cic. Conjūx Hectoris = conjūx Hectoris, *the wife of Hector*. Verg. Pūna Marathōnia, *the battle of Marathon*. Cic. Dīana Ephesia, *Diana of Ephesus*. Cic. See 393, foot-note.

NOTE 3.—For the *Predicate Genitive*, see 401.

NOTE 4.—For *special uses* of the Dative, see 384, 4, note 2.

396. The qualifying Genitive may be—

I. A POSSESSIVE GENITIVE,¹ designating the *author* and the *possessor*:

Xenophōntis librī, *the books of Xenophon*. Cic. Fānum Neptūnī, *the temple of Neptune*. Nep.

II. A SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE, designating the *subject* or *agent* of the action, feeling, etc.:

Serpentis morsus, *the bite of the serpent*. *Cic. Pavor Numidārum, *the fear of the Numidians*. Liv.

NOTE.—The POSSESSIVE PRONOUN is regularly used for the *Subjective Genitive* of Personal pronouns:

Mea domus, *my house*. Cic. Fāma tua, *your fame*. Cic.

III. An OBJECTIVE GENITIVE, designating the *object* toward which the action or feeling is directed:

Amor glōriae, *the love of glory*. Cic. Memoria malōrum, *the recollection of sufferings*. Cic. Deūm metus, *the fear of the gods*. Liv.

NOTE 1.—For the OBJECTIVE GENITIVE, the Accusative with *in*, *ergā*, or *adversus* is sometimes used:

Odiū in hominū genus, *hatred of or toward the race of men*. Cic. Ergā vōs amor, *love toward you*. Cic.

NOTE 2.—The POSSESSIVE occurs, though rarely, for the *Objective Genitive* of Personal pronouns:

Tua fidūcia, *reliance on you*. Cic.

IV. A PARTITIVE GENITIVE, designating the *whole* of which a *part* is taken:

Quis vestrū, *which of you?* Cic. Vitae pars, *a part of life*. Cic. Omnium sapientissimus, *the wisest of all men*. Cic.

V. A DESCRIPTIVE GENITIVE, also called a GENITIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC, designating *character* or *quality*, including *value*, *price*, *size*, *weight*, *age*, etc.

Vir mājimi cōsiliī, *a man of very great prudence*. Nep. Mitis ingenii juvenis, *a youth of mild disposition*. Liv. Vestis mājni pretiī, *a garment of great value*. Cic. Exsilium decem annōrum, *an exile of ten years*. Nep. Corōna parvi ponderis, *a crown of small weight*. Liv. See 404.

¹ It will be found convenient thus to characterize the different uses of the Genitive by the relation actually existing between the words united by it, though that special relation is not expressed by the case itself, but merely suggested by the meaning of the words thus united.

NOTE 1.—The *Descriptive Genitive* must be accompanied by an adjective or some other modifier, unless it be a compound containing a modifier; as *hujusmodi* = *hujus modi*; *tridui*, from *trēs diēs*; *bidui*, from *duo (bis) diēs*.

NOTE 2.—For *id genus* = *ejus generis*, *omne genus* = *omnis generis*, see 378, 2.

NOTE 3.—For the *Descriptive Ablative*, see 419, II., with note.

VI. AN APPositionAL GENITIVE, having the general force of an *Appositive* (363):

Virtūs continentiae, the virtue of self-control. Cic. *Oppidum Antiochiæ*, the city of Antioch. Cic. *Tellūs Ausoniæ*, the land of Ausonia. Verg.

397. The PARTITIVE GENITIVE designates the whole of which a part is taken. It is used—

1. With *pars*, *nēmō*, *nihil*; with nouns of quantity, number, weight, etc., as *modius*, *legiō*, *talentum*; and with any nouns used partitively:

Equōrum pars, a part of the horses. Liv. *Nihil novī* (441, 2), nothing new (of new). Cic. *Nihil reliquī* (441, 2), nothing left (lit., of the rest). Sall. *Medimnum tritici*, a bushel of wheat. Cic. *Pecūniæ talentum*, a talent of money. Nep. *Quōrum Gaius*, of whom Gaius. Cic.

2. With *Numerals* used substantively:¹

Quōrum quattuor, four of whom. Liv. *Equitum centum*, a hundred of the cavalry. Curt. *Sapientum octāvus*, the eighth of the wise men. Hor. *Ūnus pontium*, one of the bridges. Caes.

NOTE.—In good prose the Genitive is not used when the two words refer to the same number of objects, even though of be used in English:

Quī (not *quōrum*) *duo supersunt*, of whom two survive. Cic. *Omnēs hominēs*, all men. Cic. But see p. 209, note 4, with foot-note.

3. With *Pronouns* and *Adjectives* used substantively, especially with comparatives, superlatives, and neuters:²

Quis vestrum, which of you? Cic. *Num quidnam novī*, is there anything new (of new)? Cic. *Cōsulum alter*, one of the consuls. Liv. *Prior hōrum*, the former of these. Nep. *Gallōrum fortissimī*, the bravest of the Gauls. Caes. *Id temporis*, that (of) time. Cic. *Multum operæ*, much (of) service. Cic.

NOTE 1.—Pronouns and adjectives, except neuters, when used with the Partitive Genitive, take the gender of the Genitive, unless they agree directly with some other word; see *cōsulum alter*, above.

NOTE 2.—*Uterque*, 'each,' 'both,' is generally used as an adjective; but when it is combined in the singular number with another pronoun, it usually takes that pronoun in the Genitive:

Uterque exercitus, each army. Caes. *Quæ utraque*, both of which. Sall. *Utrique nostrū*³ *grātum*, acceptable to each of us. Cic.

¹ Numerals used adjectively agree with their nouns: *mille hominēs*, 'a thousand men'; *mille hominum*, 'a thousand of men'; *multi hominēs*, 'many men'; *multi hominum*, 'many of the men.'

² As *hōc*, *id*, *illud*, *quid*; *multum*, *plus*, *plūrimum*, *minus*, *minimum*, *tantum*, *quantum*, etc.

³ A Partitive Genitive, because a pronoun.

NOTE 3.—For the *Partitive Genitive*, the Accusative with *inter* or *ante*, or the Ablative with *ex*, *dē*, or *in*, is sometimes used:

Inter rēgēs opulentissimus, the most wealthy of (among) kings. Sen. *Ūnus ex viris, one of the heroes*. Cic. *Ūnus¹ dē lēgātis*, one of the lieutenants. Cic.

NOTE 4.—Poets and late prose writers make a very free use of the *Partitive Genitive* after adjectives:

Sancta deārūm, holy goddess. Enn. *Sancte deōrūm*, O holy god. Verg. *Fēstōs diērum*, festival days. Hor. *Levēs cohortium*, the light-armed cohorts. Tac. *Inclutū philosophōrūm*, the renowned philosopher. Just. *Rēliquūm diēi*, the rest of the day. Liv. *Multūm diēi*, much of the day. Liv. *Rēliquūm noctis*, the rest of the night. Tac. *Strāta viārūm* = *strātae viae*, paved streets. Verg. *Vāna rērum* = *vānae rēs*, vain things. Hor. *Hominū cūctī*, all of the men.² Ovid. *Cūcta terrārūm*, all lands. Hor. See also 438, 5.

NOTE 5.—The *Neuter* of pronouns and adjectives with the *Partitive Genitive* is sometimes used of persons:

Quid hōc est hominīs, WHAT KIND OF A MAN is this? Plaut. *Quidquid erat patrū reōs dicerēs*, you would have said that ALL THE SENATORS (lit., WHATEVER there was OF FATHERS) were accused. Liv. *Quid hūc tantū hominū incedunt*, why are SO MANY MEN (SO MUCH OF MEN) coming hither? Plaut.

4. The *Partitive Genitive* also occurs with a few adverbs, especially when they are used substantively:³

Armōrūm adfatim, abundance of arms. Liv. *Lūcis nimis*, too much (of) light. Ovid. *Sapientiae parūm*, little (of) wisdom. Sall. *Partim cōpiārūm*, a portion of the forces. Liv. *Quod ejus facere potest*, as far as (what of it) he is able to do. Cic. *Nūquam gentium*, nowhere in the world. Cic. *Hūc arrogantiae*, to this degree of insolence. Tac. *Māximē omnium*, most of all. Cic.

398. GENITIVE IN SPECIAL CONSTRUCTIONS.—Note the following:

1. The *GOVERNING WORD* is often omitted. Thus—

Aedēs, templūm, discipulū, homō, juvenis, puer, etc.; *causa, grātia*, and indeed any word when it can be readily supplied:

Ad Jovis (sc. aedem), near the temple of Jupiter. Liv. *Hannibal annōrum novem* (sc. puer), Hannibal, a boy nine years of age. Liv. *Aberant bidui* (sc. viam or spatium), they were two days' journey distant. Cic. *Cōnferre vitam Trebōni cum Dolābellae* (sc. vitā), to compare the life of Trebonius with that of Dolabella. Cic.

NOTE 1.—The governing word is generally omitted when it has been expressed before another Genitive, as in the last example; and then the second Genitive is sometimes attracted into the case of the governing word:

¹ *Ūnus* is generally followed by the Ablative with *ex* or *dē*, but sometimes by the Genitive.

² Observe that in this case the *partitive* idea has entirely disappeared, and that the construction is *partitive in form*, but not in *sense*.

³ As with adverbs of QUANTITY—*abundē, adfatim, nimis, parūm, partim, quoad, satis*, etc.; of PLACE—*hīc, hūc, nūquam, ubī*, etc.; of EXTENT, DEGREE, etc.—*eō, hūc, quō*; and with *superlatives*. As adverbs are substantives or adjectives in origin, it is not strange that they are thus used with the Genitive.

Nātūra hominis bēluis (for *bēluārum nātūrae*) antecēdit, *the nature of man surpasses* (that of) *the brutes*. Cic.

NOTE 2.—In many cases where we supply *son, daughter, husband, wife*, the ellipsis is only apparent, the Genitive depending directly on the proper noun expressed:

Hasdrubal Giscōnis, *Gisco's Hasdrubal*, or *Hasdrubal the son of Gisco*. Liv. Hectoris Andromachē, *Hector's Andromache*, or *Andromache the wife of Hector*. Verg.

2. Two GENITIVES are sometimes used with the same noun. One is generally *subjective*, the other either *objective* or *descriptive*:

Memmi odium potentiae, *Memmius's hatred of power*. Sall. Helvētiōrum injūriāe populi Rōmāni, *the wrongs done by the Helvetii to the Roman people*. Caes. Superiōrum diērum Sabīni cunctātiō, *the delay of Sabinus during* (lit., of) *the preceding days*. Caes.

3. A GENITIVE sometimes accompanies a POSSESSIVE, especially the Genitive of *ipse, solus, unus, or omnis*:

Tua ipsius amicitia,¹ *your own friendship*. Cic. Meum solus peccatum, *my fault alone*. Cic. Nōmen meum absentis, *my name in my absence*. Cic.

4. The Genitive is used with *instar*, 'likeness,' 'image,' in the sense of *as large as, of the size of, equal to*:

Instar montis equus, *a horse of the size of a mountain*. Verg.

5. The Genitive is used with *pridie, postridie, ergo, and tenus*:²

Pridie ejus diei, *on the day before that day*. Caes. Postridie ejus diei, *on the day after that day*. Caes. Virtutis ergo, *on account of virtue*. Cic. Lumborum tenus, *as far as the loins*. Cic. For *tenus* with the Ablative, see 434.

RULE XVII.—Genitive with Adjectives.

399. Many adjectives take a Genitive to complete their meaning:

Avidus laudis, *desirous of praise*. Cic. Ōti cupīdus, *desirous of leisure*. Liv. Cōnsciū conjūrātiōnis, *cognizant of the conspiracy*. Sall. Amāns suī virtūs, *virtue fond of itself*. Cic. Efficiēns voluptātis, *productive of pleasure*. Cic. Glōriāe memor, *mindful of glory*. Liv.

NOTE.—This Genitive corresponds to the *Objective Genitive* with nouns:

Amor glōriāe, *the love of glory*. Cic. Appetēns glōriāe, *desirous of* (eager for) *glory*. Cic.

I. The Genitive is used with adjectives denoting—

1. DESIRE or AVERSION:³

¹ *Ipsius* may be explained as agreeing with *tui* (of you), involved in *tua*, and *solus* and *absentis* as agreeing with *mei* (of me), involved in *meum*.

² These words are strictly *nouns*, and, as such, govern the Genitive. *Pridie* and *postridie* are Locatives; *ergo* is an Ablative, and *tenus*, an Accusative; see 304; 307, note 1.

³ Such are—(1) *avidus, cupidus, studiosus; fastidiosus*, etc.; (2) *gnārus, ignōrus, cōnsultus, cōnsciū, īnsciū, nesciū, certus, incertus; prōvidus, prūdēns, imprū*

Contentiōnis cupidus, *desirous of contention*. Cic. Sapientiae studiōsus, *studies of* (student of) *wisdom*. Cic. Terrae fastidiōsus, *weary of the land*. Hor.

2. KNOWLEDGE, SKILL, RECOLLECTION, with their contraries :¹

Rēi gnārus, *acquainted with the thing*. Cic. Prūdēns rēi militaris, *skilled in military science*. Nep. Peritus belli, *skilled in war*. Nep. Insuētus labōris, *unaccustomed to labor*. Caes. Glōriae memor, *mindful of glory*. Liv. Immemor beneficii, *forgetful of kindness*. Cic.

3. PARTICIPATION, GUILT, FULNESS, MASTERY, with their contraries :¹

Adfinis culpaē, *sharing the fault*. Cic. Ratiōnis particeps, *endowed with* (sharing) *reason*. Cic. Ratiōnis expers, *destitute of reason*. Cic. Manifestus rērum capitālium, *convicted of capital crimes*. Sall. Vita metus plēna, *a life full of fear*. Cic. Mei potēns sum, *I am master of myself*. Liv. Virtūtis compos, *capable of virtue*. Cic.

NOTE 1.—The Genitive and Dative sometimes occur with the same adjective :

Mēns sibi cōscia rēcti, *a mind conscious to itself of rectitude*. Verg. Sibi cōscii culpaē, *conscious to themselves of fault*. Cic.

NOTE 2.—For the Genitive with adjectives used *substantively*, and with adjectives meaning *like, unlike, near, belonging to*, etc., see 391, II., 4.

NOTE 3.—For the Genitive with *dignus* and *indignus*, see 421, note 3.

II. The Genitive is used with VERBALS in *āx*, and with PRESENT PARTICIPLES used adjectively :

Virtūtum ferāx, *productive of virtues*. Liv. Tenāx propositi, *tenacious* (steadfast) *of purpose*. Hor. Amāns patriae, *fond of his country*.² Cic. Fugiēns labōris, *shunning labor*. Caes.

III. In the poets and in late prose writers, especially in Tacitus, the Genitive is used—

1. With adjectives of almost every variety of signification, simply to define their application :³

Aevi matūrus, *mature in age*. Verg. Ingēns virium, *mighty in strength*. Sall. Sēri studiōrum, *late in studies*. Hor. Integer aevi, *unimpaired in age* (i. e., in the bloom of youth). Verg. Aeger animi,⁴ *afflicted in spirit*. Liv. Anxius animi,⁴ *anxious in mind*. Sall. Fidēns animi, *confident in spirit*. Verg.

2. With a few adjectives, to denote cause :

Laetus labōrum, *pleased with the labors*. Verg. Nōtus animi paterni, *distinguished for paternal affection*. Hor.

dēns; peritus, imperitus, rudis, insuētus; memor, immemor, etc.; (3) adfinis, cōsors, eorsors, expers, particeps, manifestus, novius; plēnus, fertilis, refertus, egēnus, inops, vacuus; potēns, impotēns, compos, etc.

¹ See foot-note 3, page 210.

² Amāns patriae, 'fond of his country,' represents the affection as *permanent and constant*; whereas the participial construction, amāns patriam, 'loving his country,' designates a *particular instance or act*.

³ Like the Ablative of Specification; see 424. For vōti reus, 'bound to fulfil a vow,' see 410, III., note 2.

⁴ Probably a Locative in origin, as animi is used in similar instances in the plural.

400. Adjectives which usually take the Genitive, sometimes admit other constructions:

1. The DATIVE:

Manūs subitis avidae, *hands ready for sudden events*. Tac. Insuētus mōribus Rōmānis, *unaccustomed to Roman manners*. Liv. Facinorī mēns cōnscia, *a mind conscious of crime*. Cic. See 391.

2. The ACCUSATIVE WITH A PREPOSITION:

Insuētus ad pūgnam, *unaccustomed to battle*. Liv. Fertilis ad omnia, *productive for all things*. Plin. Avidus in novās rēs, *eager for new things*. Liv.

3. The ABLATIVE WITH OR WITHOUT A PREPOSITION:

Prūdēns in jūre civīli, *learned in civil law*. Cic. His dē rēbus cōnscius, *aware of these things*. Cic. Vacuus de dēfēnsōribus, *destitute of defenders*. Caes. Cūris vacuus, *free from cares*. Cic. Refertus bonis, *replete with blessings*. Cic. See 414, III.

RULE XVIII.—Predicate Genitive.

401. A noun predicated of another noun denoting a different person or thing is put in the Genitive:

Omnia hostium erant, *all things belonged to the enemy*.¹ Liv. Senātus Hannibalīs erat, *the senate was HANNIBAL'S* (i. e., in his interest). Liv. Jūdicis est vērū sequī, *to follow the truth is the duty of a judge*.² Cic. Parvī pretiī est, *it is of small value*. Cic. Tyrus mare suae diciōnis³ fēcīt, *Tyre brought the sea under* (lit., made the sea of) *her sway*. Curt.

NOTE 1.—For a noun predicated of another noun denoting the same person or thing, see 362; 373, 1.

NOTE 2.—A PREDICATE GENITIVE is often nearly or quite equivalent to a *Predicate adjective* (360, note 1): *hominis est* = *hūmānum est*, 'it is the mark of a man,' 'is human'; *stultī est* = *stultum est*, 'it is foolish.' The Genitive is the regular construction in adjectives of one ending: *sapiētis est* (for *sapiēns est*), 'it is the part of a wise man,' 'is wise.'

NOTE 3.—Possessive pronouns in agreement with the subject supply the place of the Predicate Genitive⁴ of personal pronouns:

Est tuum (not *tuū*) *vidēre*, *it is your duty to see*. Cic.

NOTE 4.—*Aequī*, *bonī*, and *rēliqū* occur as Predicate Genitives in such expressions as *aequī facere*, *aequī bonique facere*, *bonī cōnsulere*, 'to take in good part,' and *rēliqū facere*, 'to leave':

Aequī bonique faciō, *I take it in good part*. Ter. *Militēs nihil rēliqū vīctīs fecēre*, *the soldiers left nothing to the vanquished*. Sall.

¹ Literally, *were OF THE ENEMY*, or *were THE ENEMY'S*.

² Literally, *is OF A JUDGE*.

³ Here *diciōnis*, denoting a different thing from *mare*, of which it is predicated, is put in the Genitive.

⁴ This is another illustration of the close relationship between a Predicate Genitive and a Predicate Adjective; see also note 2.

402. The PREDICATE GENITIVE is generally *Possessive* or *Descriptive*, rarely *Partitive* :

Haec hostium erant, these things were of (belonged to) THE ENEMY. Liv. *Est imperatoris superare, it is the duty of a COMMANDER to conquer.* Caes. *Summae facultatis est, he is (a man) of the highest ability.* Cic. *Opera magni fuit, the assistance was of great value.* Nep. *Fies nobilium fontium,*¹ *you will become one of the noble fountains.* Hor.

403. The PREDICATE GENITIVE occurs most frequently with *sum* and *facio*, but sometimes also with verbs of *seeming*, *regarding*, etc. :

Oram Romanae ditionis fecit, he brought the coast under (made the coast of) Roman rule. Liv. *Hominis videtur, it seems to be the mark of a man.* Cic. See also examples under **401**.

NOTE.—Transitive verbs of this class admit in the active an Accusative with the Genitive, as in the first example.

404. The PREDICATE GENITIVE of PRICE or VALUE is used with *sum* and with verbs of *valuing* :

Magni sunt tuae litterae, your letters are of GREAT VALUE. Cic. *Pluris esse, to be of GREATER VALUE.* Cic. *Parvi pendere, to think lightly of.* Sall. *Auctoritatem tuam magni aestimo, I prize your authority highly.* Cic.

NOTE 1.—With these verbs the Genitive of price or value is generally an adjective,² as in the examples, but *pretii* is sometimes used :

Parvi pretii est, it is of little value. Cic.

NOTE 2.—*Nihili* and, in familiar discourse, a few other Genitives³ occur :

Nihili facere, to take no account of. Cic. *Non flocci pendere, not to care a straw (lock of wool) for.* Plant.

405. *Tanti*, *quantum*, *pluris*, and *minoris* are also used as GENITIVES OF PRICE with verbs of *buying* and *selling* :⁴

Emit hortos tanti, he purchased the gardens AT SO GREAT A PRICE. Cic. *Vendo frumentum pluris, I sell grain AT A HIGHER PRICE.* Cic.

NOTE.—For the Ablative of price, see **422**.

RULE XIX.—Genitive with Special Verbs.

406. The Genitive is used—

I. With *misereor* and *miserescō* :

Miserere laborum, pity the labors. Verg. *Miserescite regis, pity the king.* Verg.

¹ *Facultatis* and *magni* are *Descriptive*, but *fontium* is *Partitive*.

² The following adjectives are so used : *magni*, *parvi*, *tanti*, *quantum* ; *pluris*, *minoris* ; *plurimum*, *maximum*, and *minimum*.

³ As *assis*, *floci*, *nauci*, and *pili*.

⁴ Observe that verbs of *buying* and *selling* admit the Genitive of price only when one of these adjectives is used. In other cases they take the Ablative of price.

II. With **recordor**, **memini**, **reminiscor**, and **obliscor**:¹

Meminit praeteritōrum, *he remembers the past*. Cic. Oblitus sum mei, *I have forgotten myself*. Ter. Flāgitiōrum recordārī, *to recollect base deeds*. Cic. Reminiscī virtūtis, *to remember virtue*. Caes.

III. With **rēfert** and **interest**:

Illōrum rēfert, *it concerns them*. Sall. Interest omnium, *it is the interest of all*. Cic.

NOTE.—The expression, *Venit in mentem*, 'it occurs to mind,' is sometimes construed with the Genitive and sometimes with the Nominative:

Venit mihi Platōnis in mentem,² *the recollection of Plato comes to my mind*, or *I recollect Plato*. Cic. Nōn venit in mentem pūna, *does not the battle occur to your mind?* Liv.

407. Verbs of REMEMBERING and FORGETTING often take the *Accusative* instead of the *Genitive*:

Memineram Paullum, *I remembered Paullus*. Cic. Triumphōs recordārī, *to recall triumphs*. Cic. Ea reminiscere, *remember those things*. Cic.

NOTE 1.—The *Accusative* is the common construction (1) with *recordor* and (2) with the other verbs, if it is a neuter pronoun or adjective, or designates an object remembered by a contemporary or an eye-witness.

NOTE 2.—The *Ablative* with *dē* is rare:

Recordāre dē cōteris, *bethink yourself of the others*. Cic.

408. The CONSTRUCTION with *rēfert* and *interest* is as follows:

I. The PERSON or THING interested is denoted—

1. By the *Genitive*, as under the rule.

2. By the *Ablative Feminine* of the *Possessive*.³ This takes the place of the *Genitive* of personal pronouns:

Meā rēfert, *it concerns me*. Ter. Interest meā, *it interests me*. Cic.

3. By the *Dative*, or *Accusative* with or without *Ad*; but rarely, and chiefly with *rēfert*, which moreover often omits the person:

Quid rēfert viventī, *what does it concern one living?* Hor. Ad mē rēfert, *it concerns me*. Plaut.

II. The SUBJECT OF IMPORTANCE, or that which involves the interest, is expressed by an Infinitive or Clause, or by a Neuter Pronoun:

¹ The Genitive with verbs of *pitying*, *remembering*, and *forgetting* probably depends upon the substantive idea contained in the verbs themselves; see *Internal Object*, 371, I., 2. Thus, *memini* with the *Accusative* means *I remember distinctly and fully*, generally used of an *eye-witness* or of a *contemporary*; but with a *Genitive*, it means *to have some recollection of*. With *rēfert* the *Genitive* depends upon *rē*, the *Ablative* of *rēs*, contained in the verb, and with *interest* it may be a *Predicate Genitive*, or may simply follow the analogy of *rēfert*.

² With *venit in mentem*, the *Genitive* *Platōnis* supplies the place of subject. It probably limits the pronominal subject already contained in *venit*, as in every Latin verb *it* or *that* of *Plato*, the *recollection* of *Plato*.

³ See foot-note 1, above.

Interest omnium rectē facere : *to do right is the interest of all.* Cic. Vestrā aōc interest, *this interests you.* Cic.

III. The DEGREE OF INTEREST is expressed by an Adverb, by a Neuter used adverbially, or by a Genitive of Value (404):

Vestrā maximē interest, *it especially interests you.* Cic. Quid nostrā rēfert, *what does it concern us?* Cic. Magni interest meā, *it greatly interests me.* Cic.

IV. The OBJECT OR END for which it is important is expressed by the Accusative with *ad*, rarely by the Dative:

Ad honōrem nostrum interest, *it is important for our honor.* Cic.

RULE XX.—Accusative and Genitive.

409. The ACCUSATIVE of the PERSON and the GENITIVE of the THING are used with a few transitive verbs:

I. With verbs of reminding, admonishing: ¹

Tē amicitiae commonefacit, *he reminds you of FRIENDSHIP.* Cic. Militēs necessitātis monet, *he reminds the soldiers of the necessity.* Ter.

II. With verbs of accusing, convicting, acquitting: ¹

Virōs sceleris arguis, *you accuse men of CRIME.* Cic. Levitātis eum convincere, *to convict him of levity.* Cic. Absolvere injūriā eum, *to acquit him of injustice.* Cic.

III. With miseret, paenitet, pudet, taedet, and piget: ²

Eōrum nōs miseret, *we pity THEM (it moves our pity of THEM).* Cic. Cōsiliū mē paenitet, *I repent of my purpose.* Cic. Mē stultitiae meae pudet, *I am ashamed of my folly.* Cic.

NOTE 1.—The Genitive of the Thing designates, with verbs of reminding, etc., that to which the attention is called; with verbs of accusing, etc., the crime, charge; and with miseret, paenitet, etc., the object which produces the feeling; see examples.

NOTE 2.—The personal verbs included under this rule retain the Genitive in the Passive:

Accūsātus est prōditionis, *he was accused of TREASON.* Nep.

¹ The Genitive with verbs of reminding and admonishing may be explained like that with verbs of pitying, remembering, and forgetting; see foot-note 1, page 214. With verbs of accusing, etc., the Genitive may also be explained in the same way, or may depend upon nōmine, crimine, or jūdicio, understood. Sometimes one of these nouns is expressed; see 410, II., 1.

² The Genitive with paenitet, pudet, etc., like that with venit in mentem (see 406, note, with foot-note), depends upon the impersonal subject contained in the verb. Thus, te haec pudet means *these things shame you*, and mē stultitiae meae pudet, literally rendered, means *of my folly* (i. e., the thought of it, or something about it), *shames me*. The Genitive with miseret may be explained either in the same way, or like that with misereor; see foot-note 1, page 214.

NOTE 3.—In *judicial* language a few verbs not otherwise so used are treated as verbs of *accusing*. Thus *condico* occurs with the Genitive in Livy, I., 32.

410. SPECIAL CONSTRUCTIONS.—The following deserve notice:

I. Verbs of REMINDING and ADMONISHING sometimes take, instead of the Genitive—

1. The *Accusative* of a neuter pronoun or adjective, rarely of a substantive, thus admitting two accusatives:

Illud mē admonēs, you admonish me OF THAT. Cic.

2. The *Ablative* with *dē*—*moneō* and its compounds generally so:

Dē proeliō vōs admonuī, I have reminded you OF THE BATTLE. Cic.

II. Verbs of ACCUSING, CONVICTING, sometimes take, instead of the Genitive of the crime, etc.—

1. The *Genitive* with *nōmine*, *crimine*, *jūdiçiō*, or some similar word:

Nōmine conjuratiōnis damnāti sunt, they were condemned on the charge of conspiracy. Cic. *Innocentem jūdiçiō capitis arcēssere, to arraign an innocent man on a capital charge.* Cic.

2. The *Accusative* of a neuter pronoun or adjective, rarely:

Id mē accūsās, you accuse me of that. Plaut.

3. The *Ablative* alone or with a preposition, generally *dē*:

Dē pecūniis repetundis damnātus est, he was convicted of extortion. Cic.

III. With verbs of CONDEMNING, the *Penalty* is generally expressed by the *Ablative*,¹ or by the *Accusative with a preposition*, usually *ad*:

Tertiā parte damnārī, to be condemned to forfeit a third of one's land. Liv. *Capite damnāre, to condemn to death.* Cic. *Morte multāre, to punish with death.* Cic. *Ad bēstias condemnāre, to condemn to the wild beasts.* Suet.

NOTE 1.—In the poets the penalty is sometimes expressed by the Dative:

Mortī damnātus, condemned to death. Lucr.

NOTE 2.—The Genitive occurs in such special expressions as *capitis condemnāre*, 'to condemn to death'; *vōtī damnārī*, 'to be condemned to fulfil a vow' = 'to obtain a wish'; *damnārī longī labōris*, 'to be condemned to long labor'; *vōtī reus*² = *vōtī damnātus*, 'condemned to fulfil a vow':

Aliquem capitis condemnāre, to condemn one to death. Cic. *Damnātus longī labōris, condemned to long labor.* Hor.

IV. With MISERET, PAENITET, PUDET, TAEDET, and PIGET, an *Infinitive* or *Clause* is sometimes used, rarely a neuter pronoun or *nihil*:

Mē paenitet vixisse, I repent having lived. Cic. *Tē haec pudet, these things shame you.* Ter.

NOTE 1.—Like *miseret* are sometimes used *miserēscit*, *commiserēscit*, *miserētur*, *commiserētur*. Like *taedet* are used *pertaedet*, *pertaesum est*.

NOTE 2.—*Pudet* sometimes takes the Genitive of the person before whom one is ashamed:

Mē tui pudet, I am ashamed in your presence. Ter. *Pudet hominum, it is a shame in the sight of men.* Liv.

¹ Regularly so when the penalty is a definite sum of money.

² Best explained as a substantive.

NOTE 3.—*Pertaeus* admits the Accusative of the object :

Pertaeus ignāviam suam, disgusted with his own inaction. Suet.

V. Many other verbs sometimes take the Genitive.¹ Thus—

1. Some verbs of *plenty* and *want*, as *compleō, impleō*,¹ *egeō, indigeō*, like adjectives of the same meaning (399, I., 3) :

Virtūs exercitātōnis indiget, virtue requires exercise. Cic. *Auxilii egēre, to need aid.* Caes. *Multitudinem religiōnis implevit*,² *he inspired (filled) the multitude with religion.* Liv. *Rerum satagere, to be occupied with (to do enough of) business.* Ter.

2. Some verbs of *desire, emotion, or feeling*, like adjectives of the same meaning (399, I., 1) :

Cupiunt tui, they desire you. Plaut. *Tui testimoniū veritus, fearing your testimony.* Cic. *Animī³ pendeō, I am uncertain in mind.* Cic. *Discrucior animī, I am troubled in spirit.* Plaut. *Tē angis animī, you make yourself anxious in mind.* Plaut. *Dēsipere mentis, to be foolish in mind, or mistaken in opinion.* Plaut.

3. A few verbs denoting *mastery or participation*, like adjectives of the same meaning (399, I., 3), *potior*,⁴ *adipiscor, regnō* :

Siciliae potitus est, he became master of Sicily. Nep. *Rerum adeptus est, he obtained the power.* Tac. *Regnavit populōrum, he was king of the peoples.* Hor.

4. In the poets, a few verbs⁵ take the Genitive, instead of the Ablative of Separation or Cause (413) :

Abstinēre irarum, to abstain from anger. Hor. *Labōrum dēcipitur, he is beguiled of his labors.* Hor. *Dēsine querelārum, cease from complaints.* Hor. *Dēsistere pūgnac, to desist from the battle.* Verg. *Eum culpae liberāre, to free him from blame (i. e., to acquit him).* Liv. *Mirārī labōrum, to admire because of toils.* Verg. *Damnī infecti prōmittere, to give surety in view of expected damage.* Cic.

NOTE.—For the Genitive of Gerunds and Gerundives, see 542, I.; 544.

SECTION VII.

ABLATIVE.

411. The LATIN ABLATIVE performs the duties of three cases originally distinct :⁶

I. The ABLATIVE PROPER, denoting the relation FROM :

Expulsus est patriā, he was banished FROM HIS COUNTRY. Cic.

¹ Transitives of this class of course admit the Accusative with the Genitive.

² See 421, II.

³ *Animī* in such instances is probably a Locative in origin, as *animis* is used in the same way in the plural. See foot-note on *animī*, 399, III., 1.

⁴ *Potior* takes the Genitive regularly when it means to reduce to subjection.

⁵ As *abstinēō, dēcipiō, desinō, dēvistiō, levō, liberō*, etc.; *miror*, etc.

⁶ These three cases, still recognized in the Sanskrit, originally had distinct forms but in the Latin, under the influence of phonetic change and decay, these forms have

II. The INSTRUMENTAL, denoting the relation WITH, BY:
Sōl omnia lūce collūstrat, the sun illumines all things WITH ITS LIGHT. Cic.

III. The LOCATIVE, denoting the relation IN, AT:

Sē oppidō tenet, he keeps himself IN THE TOWN. Cic.

I. ABLATIVE PROPER.

RULE XXI.—Place from which.

412. The PLACE FROM WHICH is denoted by the Ablative:

I. Generally *with a preposition*—**ā, ab, dē, or ex** :

Ab urbe proficiscitur, he sets out FROM THE CITY. Caes. *Dē forō, from he forum.* Cic. *Ex Africā, from (out of) Africa.* Liv.

II. In NAMES OF TOWNS *without a preposition* :¹

Platōnem Athēnīs arcēssivit, he summoned Plato FROM ATHENS. Nep. *Fūgit Corinthō, he fled from Corinth.* Cic.

1. Many names of *islands*, and the Ablatives *domō* and *rūre*, are used like names of towns :

Domō profūgit, he fled FROM HOME. Cic. *Dēlō proficiscitur, he proceeds FROM DELOS.* Cic.

2. The Ablative of places not towns is sometimes used *without a preposition*, especially in poetry :

Cadere nūbibus, to fall FROM THE CLOUDS. Verg. *Lābī equō, to fall FROM A HORSE.* Hor.

3. The *preposition* is sometimes used with names of towns, especially for *emphasis* or *contrast* :

Ab Ardeā Rōmān vērērunt, they came FROM ARDEA to Rome. Liv.

NOTE.—The preposition is generally used when the *vicinity*, rather than the town itself, is meant :

Discessit ā Brundisiō, he departed from Brundisium (i. e., from the port). Caes.

RULE XXII.—Separation, Source, Cause.

413. Separation, Source, and Cause are denoted by the Ablative *with or without a preposition* :

SEPARATION.—*Caedem ā vōbīs dēpellō, I ward off slaughter FROM YOU.* Cic. *Hunc ā tuīs ārīs arcēbis, you will keep this one FROM YOUR ALTARS.*

become identical, and their uses have been blended in a single case called the Ablative. On the general subject of the Ablative and its use, see Merguet, pp. 109–117; Delbrück Hübschmann, pp. 82–106; Holzweissig, pp. 28 and 75; Draeger, I., pp. 494–571; Roby II., pp. 68–115.

¹ This was the original construction for all places alike.

Cic. Expulsus est patriā, *he was banished from his country*. Cic. Urbem commeātū privāvit, *he deprived the city of supplies*. Nep. Cōnātū dēstī-tērunt, *they desisted from the attempt*. Caes. Vāginā ēripe ferrum, *draw your sword from its scabbard*. Verg.

SOURCE.—Hōc audīvī dē parente meō, *I heard this FROM MY FATHER*. Cic. Oriundī ab Sabīnīs, *descended FROM THE SABINES*. Liv. Statua ex aere facta, *a statue made of bronze*. Cic. Abiete puppis, *the stern made of fir*. Verg. Jove nātus, *son of Jupiter*. Cic.

CAUSE.—Ars ūtilitāte laudātur, *an art is praised BECAUSE OF ITS USEFUL-NESS*. Cic. Lacrimō gaudiō, *I weep FOR (on account of) JOY*. Ter. Vestrā hōc causā volēbam, *I desired this on your account*. Cic. Rogātū vēneram, *I had come by request*. Cic. Ex vulnere aeger, *ill in consequence of his wound*. Cic. Aeger erat vulneribus, *he was ill in consequence of his wounds*. Nep.

NOTE 1.—*Transitive Verbs* admit an Accusative with the Ablative; see examples.

NOTE 2.—The *prepositions* most frequently used with the Ablative of Separation and Source are *ā, ab, dē, ē, ex*, and with the Ablative of Cause, *dē, ē, ex*.

NOTE 3.—With the *Ablative of Separation* the preposition is more freely used when the separation is *local* and *literal* than when it is *figurative*: *dē forō*, 'from the forum'; *ex Asiā*, 'out of Asia'; but *levāre metū*, 'to relieve from fear'; *cōnātū dēsistere*, 'to desist from the undertaking.'

NOTE 4.—For the *Genitive* instead of the *Ablative of Separation*, see 410, V., 4; and for the *Dative* similarly used, see 385, 2.

414. The ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION designates that from which anything is separated, or of which it is deprived, and is generally used *without a preposition* in the following situations:

I. With *verbs* meaning *to relieve, deprive, need, be without*:¹

Levā mē hōc onere, *relieve me OF THIS BURDEN*. Cic. Vinculis exsolvere, *to release FROM CHAINS*. Plaut. Molestiā expedire, *to relieve of trouble*. Cic. Militem praedā fraudāre, *to defraud the soldiery of booty*. Liv. Nōn egeo medicinā, *I do not need a remedy*. Cic. Vacare culpā, *to be free from fault*. Cic. See also examples under 413.

II. With *moveō* in special expressions:²

Signum movēre locō, *to move the standard FROM THE PLACE*. Cic.

III. With *adjectives* meaning *free from, destitute of*:³

Animus liber cūrā, *a mind free FROM CARE*. Cic. Experts metū, *free FROM FEAR*. Cic. Urbs nūda praesidiō, *a city destitute of defence*. Cic.

NOTE.—For a similar use of the *Genitive*,⁴ see 399, I., 3.

IV. With *opus* and *ūsus*, meaning *need*:

¹ As *expediō, exonerō, levō, relevō, liberō, relaxō, solvo, absolvo, exsolvo; exuo, fraudō, nūdo, orbo, spoliō, privō*, etc.

² As in *movēre locō, movēre senātū, movēre tribū, movēre vestigiō*.

³ *Ā* or *ab* is generally used with names of persons and sometimes with other words.

⁴ *Egēnus, indīgus, sterilis*, and some others are freely used with the *Genitive*: see 399, I., 3.

Auctoritāte tuā nobis opus est, we need (there is to us a need of) **YOUR AUTHORITY**. Cic. *Ūsus est tuā mihi operā, I need your aid*. Plaut.

NOTE 1.—In most other instances a preposition accompanies the Ablative of Separation, though often omitted in poetry and in late prose.

NOTE 2.—*Opus est* and *ūsus est* admit the Dative of the person with the Ablative of the thing; see examples.

NOTE 3.—With *opus* and *ūsus*, the Ablative is sometimes a perfect participle, or, with *opus*, a noun and a participle:

Consultō opus est, there is need of deliberation. Sall. *Opus fuit Hirtiō conventō there was need of meeting Hirtius*. Cic.

NOTE 4.—With *opus est*, rarely with *ūsus est*, the thing needed may be denoted—

1) By the Nominative, rarely by the Genitive or Accusative:

Dux nobis opus est, we need a leader, or a leader is necessary (a necessity) *for us* Cic. *Temporis opus est, there is need of time*. Liv. *Opus est cibum, there is need of food*. Plaut.

2) By an Infinitive, a Clause, or a Supine:

Opus est tē valēre, it is necessary that you be well. Cic. *Opus est ut lavem, it is necessary for me to bathe* (that I bathe). Plaut. *Dictū est opus, it is necessary to be told*. Ter.

415. The ABLATIVE OF SOURCE more commonly takes a preposition; see examples under 413. It includes *agency, parentage, material*, etc.

I. The *agent* or *author* of an action is designated by the Ablative with *ā* or *ab*:

Occisus est ā Thēbānīs, he was slain by the Thebans. Nep. *Occidit ā forti Achille, he was slain* (lit., *fell*) *by brave Achilles*. Ov.

1. The Ablative without a preposition may be used of a *person*, regarded not as the *author* of the action, but as the *means* by which it is effected:

Cornua Numidīs¹ firmat, he strengthens the wings with NUMIDIANS. Liv.

NOTE 1.—The Accusative with *per* may be used of the *person through whose agency* the action is effected:

Ab Oppianicō per Fabriciōs¹ factum est, it was accomplished by Oppianicus THROUGH THE AGENCY OF THE FABRICII. Cic.

NOTE 2.—For the *Dative of Agent*, see 388.

2. When anything is personified as agent, the Ablative with *ā* or *ab* may be used as in the names of persons:

Vinci ā voluptāte, to be conquered by pleasure. Cic. *Ā fortunā datam occasionem, an opportunity furnished by fortune*. Nep.

II. PERFECT PARTICIPLES denoting parentage or birth—*genitus, nātus, ortus*, etc.—generally take the Ablative without a preposition:

Jove nātus, son of Jupiter. Cic. *Tantalō prōgnātus, descended from Tantalus*. Cic. *Parentibus nātī humilibus, born of humble parents*. Cic.

¹ Here note the distinction between the Ablative with *ab* (*ab Oppianicō*), denoting the *author* of the action, the Accusative with *per* (*per Fabriciōs*), the *person through whose agency* the action was performed, and the Ablative alone (*Numidīs*), the *means* of the action.

NOTE.—In designating REMOTE ANCESTRY, *ā* or *ab* is generally used; but after *nātus* and *ortus*, the Ablatives *familiā*, *genere*, *locō*, and *stirpe*, when modified by an adjective, omit the preposition:

Oriundī ab Sabīnīs, *descended from the Sabines*. Liv. Ortī ab Germānīs, *sprung from the Germans*. Caes. Nōbīlī genere nātus, *born of a noble family*. Sall.

III. With the ABLATIVE OF MATERIAL, *ē* or *ex* is generally used, though often omitted, especially in poetry:

Statua ex aere facta, *a statue made of bronze*. Cic. Pōcula ex aurō, *cups of gold*. Cic. Aere cavō clipeus, *a shield of concave bronze*. Verg. Abiete puppis, *the stern made of fir*. Verg.

NOTE 1.—A special use of the Ablative, kindred to the above, is seen with *faciō*, *fiō*, and *sum* in such expressions as the following:

Quid hōc homine faciās, *what are you to do with this man?* Cic. Quid illō fiet, *what will become of him?* Cic. Quid tē futūrum est, *what will become of you?* Cic.

NOTE 2.—The Dative or the Ablative with *dē* occurs in nearly the same sense:
Quid huic homini faciās, *what are you to do with (or to) this man?* Cic. Quid dē tē futūrum est, *what will become of you?* Cic.

416. The ABLATIVE OF CAUSE is generally used without a preposition.¹ It designates that *by reason of which*, *because of which*, *in accordance with which* anything is or is done, and is used both with verbs and with adjectives;² see examples under 413.

I. CAUSE is sometimes denoted—

1) By the Ablative with *ā*, *ab*, *dē*, *ē*, *ex*, *prae*:

Ab eādē superbiā³ nōn venīre, *not to come because of the same haughtiness*. Liv. Ex vulnere³ aeger, *ill in consequence of his wound*. Cic. Ex invidiā labōrāre, *to suffer from unpopularity*. Cic. Nōn prae lacrimīs scribere, *not to write in consequence of tears*. Cic.

2) By the Accusative with *ob*, *per*, *propter*:

Per aetātem inūtīlēs, *useless because of (lit., through) their age*. Caes. In oppidum propter timōrem sēsē recipiunt, *they betake themselves into the city on account of their fear*. Caes.

NOTE 1.—With transitive verbs the *motive* which prompts the action is often expressed by the Ablative with a perfect passive participle:

Rēgnī cupiditāte⁴ inductus conjuratiōnem fecit, *influenced by the desire of ruling, he formed a conspiracy*. Caes.

NOTE 2.—That *in accordance with which* anything is done is often denoted by the Ablative with *ē* or *ex*:

¹ The Ablative of Cause is very far removed from the original meaning of the Ablative, and indeed in some of its uses was probably derived from the Instrumental Ablative; see 418.

² This includes such Ablatives as *meō iūdicīō*, *in accordance with my opinion*; *meō sententiā*, *jussū*, *impulsū*, *monitū*, etc.; *causā*, *grātiā*; also the Ablative with *dē*—*scipio*, *doleō*, *exsiliō*, *exsultō*, *gaudeō*, *labōrō*, *lacrimō*, *laetor*, *triumphō*, etc.

³ See note 2, foot-note.

⁴ Here *cupiditāte* must be construed with *inductus*, yet it really expresses the *cause* of the action, *fecit*.

Rēs ex foedere repetuntur, restitution is demanded in accordance with the TREATY. Liv. *Diēs ex praeceptis tuīs actus, a day passed in accordance with your PRECEPTS.* Cic. *Ex veritate aestimāre, to estimate in accordance with the truth* Cic. *Ex auctoritate¹ senātūs cōfirmāre, to ratify on the authority of the senate.* Liv.

RULE XXIII.—Ablative with Comparatives.

417. Comparatives without QUAM are followed by the Ablative :²

Nihil est amābilius virtūte,³ nothing is more lovely THAN VIRTUE. Cic. *Quid est melius bonitāte,³ what is better THAN GOODNESS?* Cic. *Scīmus sōlem māiorem esse terrā,³ we know that the sun is larger than the earth.* Cic. *Amīcitia, quā nihil melius habēmus, friendship, than which we have nothing better.* Cic. *Lacrimā nihil citius arēscit, nothing dries sooner than a tear.* Cic. *Potiorem irā salūtem habet, he regards safety as better than anger.* Liv.

1. COMPARATIVES WITH QUAM are followed by the Nominative, or by the case of the corresponding noun before them :

Hibernia minor quam Britannia existimātur, Ireland is considered smaller than BRITAIN. Caes. *Agris quam urbī terribilior, more terrible to the country than TO THE CITY.* Liv.

NOTE 1.—The construction with *quam* is the full form for which the Ablative is an abbreviation. The Ablative is freely used for *quam* with a *Subject Nominative* or *Subject Accusative*—regularly so for *quam* with the Nominative or Accusative of a *relative pronoun*, as in the fourth example under the rule. In other cases *quam* is retained in the best prose, though sometimes omitted in poetry.

NOTE 2.—After *plūs, minus, amplius, or longius*, in expressions of number and quantity, *quam* is often omitted without influence upon the construction ;⁴ sometimes also after *māior, minor*, etc. :

Tēcum plūs annum vixit, he lived with you more than a year. Cic. *Minus duo milia, less than two thousand.* Liv.

NOTE 3.—Instead of the Ablative after a comparative, a preposition with its case, as *ante, prae, praeter, or suprā*, is sometimes used :

Ante aliōs immānior, more monstrous than (before) the others. Verg.

NOTE 4.—*Alius*, involving a comparison, *other than*, is sometimes used with the Ablative.

¹ These and similar Ablatives with prepositions show the transition from *source* to *cause*, and illustrate the manner in which the latter was developed from the former. The Ablative with the preposition seems in general to retain something of the idea of *source*.

² This Ablative furnishes the *standard* of comparison—that from which one starts. Thus, if *virtue* is taken as the standard of what is lovely, nothing is more so. This Ablative is sometimes explained as instrumental (418), but that view is controverted by a similar use of the Greek Genitive, which does not contain the instrumental Ablative, and of the Sanskrit Ablative, which is often distinct from the instrumental.

³ *Virtūte* = *quam virtūs* ; *bonitāte* = *quam bonitās* ; *terrā* = *quam terram*, (sc. *esse*).

⁴ So in expressions of age : *nātus plūs trigintā annōs*, ‘having been born more than thirty years.’ The same meaning is also expressed by *māior trigintā annōs nātus, māior trigintā annīs, māior quam trigintā annōrum*, or *māior trigintā annōrum*.

Quaerit alia his, he seeks other things than these. Plaut. Alius sapiente, other than a wise man. Hor.

NOTE 5.—*Quam prô* denotes disproportion, and many Ablatives—*opinione, spê, aequô, jûstô, solitô*, etc.—are often best rendered by clauses:

Minor caedês quam prô victoriâ, less slaughter than was proportionate to the victory. Liv. Sêrius spê vênit, he came later than was hoped (than hope). Liv. Plûs aequô, more than is fair. Cic.

2. With *Comparatives*, the MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE,¹ the amount by which one thing surpasses another, is denoted by the Ablative:

Hibernia dimidiô minor quam Britannia, Ireland smaller BY ONE HALF than Britain. Caes.

II. INSTRUMENTAL ABLATIVE.

418. The Instrumental Ablative denotes both *Accompaniment* and *Means*.²

RULE XXIV.—Ablative of Accompaniment.

419. The Ablative is used—

I. To denote ACCOMPANIMENT. It then takes the preposition **cum**:

Vivit cum Balbô, he lives WITH BALBUS. Cic. Cum gladiis stant, they stand with swords (i. e., armed WITH SWORDS). Cic.

II. To denote CHARACTERISTIC OR QUALITY. It is then modified by an adjective or by a Genitive:

Summâ virtûte adulêscêns, a youth OF THE HIGHEST VIRTUE. Caes. Quîdam mâgnô capite, ôre rubicundô, mâgnis pedibus, a certain one with a large head, with a red face, and with large feet. Plaut. Catilîna ingenîô malô fuit, Catiline was a man of a bad spirit. Sall. Ūrî sunt specîe taurî, the urus is (lit., the urî are) of the appearance of a bull. Caes.

NOTE.—The Ablative, when used to denote characteristic or quality, may be called either the *Descriptive Ablative* or the *Ablative of Characteristic*.

III. To denote MANNER.³ It then takes the preposition **cum**, or is modified by an adjective or by a Genitive:

¹ See 423.

² The idea of *means* was probably developed from that of *accompaniment*, as seen in such expressions as *cum omnibus copiis sequitur*, 'he pursues with all his forces'—*accompaniment*, which readily suggests *means*, as he employs his *forces* as *means*; *equis inêrunt*, 'they went with horses'—*accompaniment* and *means*. Some scholars have conjectured that originally *accompaniment* and *means* were expressed by separate case-forms, but of this there seems to be little proof.

³ Note the close connection between these three uses of the Ablative—the first designating an attendant person or thing—with *Balbus*, with *swords*; the second, an attendant quality—a youth with (attended by) the highest virtue; the third, an attend-

Cum virtute vixit, he lived VIRTUOUSLY. Cic. *Summā vī proelium commiserunt, they joined battle WITH THE GREATEST VIOLENCE.* Nep. *Duobus modis fit, it is done in two ways.* Cic.

NOTE 1.—The Ablative of *manner* sometimes takes *cum* even when modified by an adjective:

Magnā cum cūrā scripsit, he wrote WITH GREAT CARE. Cic.

NOTE 2.—But the Ablative of a few words is sometimes used without *cum*, even when unattended by an adjective, as *iure*, 'rightly'; *injuriā*, 'unjustly'; *ordine*, 'in an orderly manner'; *ratione*, 'systematically'; *silentiō*, 'in silence,' etc.¹

NOTE 3.—*Per*, with the Accusative, sometimes denotes *MANNER*: *per vim*, 'violently'; *per ludum*, 'sportively.'

1. On the ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT, observe—

1) That *cum* is often omitted—(1) especially when the Ablative is qualified by an adjective, and (2) after *jungō*, *miscēō*, and their compounds:

Ingenti exercitū profectus est, he set out with a large army. Liv. *Improbitas scelere juncta, depravity joined with crime.* Cic.

2) That the Ablative with *cum* is often used of hostile encounters:

Cum Gallis certare, to fight with the Gauls. Sall. *Nobiscum hostes contenderunt, the enemy contended with us.* Cic.

NOTE.—For the *Dative* with verbs denoting union or contention, see 385, 4, 3).

2. On the DESCRIPTIVE ABLATIVE, as compared with the DESCRIPTIVE GENITIVE, observe—

1) That in descriptions involving *size and number*, the Genitive is used; see examples under 396, V.

2) That in most descriptions involving *external characteristics, parts of the body, and the like*, the Ablative is used, as in the second and fourth examples under 419, II.

3) That in other instances either case may be used.

4) That the Ablative, like the Genitive, may be used either with nouns, as in the first and second examples under 419, II., or with verbs in the predicate, as in the other examples.

RULE XXV.—Ablative of Means.

420. INSTRUMENT and MEANS are denoted by the Ablative:

Cornibus tauri se tütantur, bulls defend themselves WITH THEIR HORNS. Cic. *Gloriā ducitur, he is led BY GLORY.* Cic. *Sol omnia luce collustrat, the sun illumines all things with its light.* Cic. *Lacte vivunt, they live upon milk.* Caes. *Tellus saucia vomeribus, the earth turned (wounded) with the ploughshare.* Ovid.

ant circumstance—to live with virtue, virtuously. Compare *cum Balbo vivere* and *cum virtute vivere*.

¹ But perhaps most Ablatives which never take *cum* are best explained as the Ablative of cause—as *lege*, 'according to law'; *consuetudine*, 'according to custom'; *consilio*, 'on purpose,' etc.

NOTE.—This Ablative is of frequent occurrence, and is used both with *verbs* and with *adjectives*.

1. The following expressions deserve notice :

1) Quadrāgintā hostiis sacrificāre, *to sacrifice with forty victims*. Liv. Facere vitulā, *to make a sacrifice of* (lit., WITH) *a female calf*. Verg.

2) Fidibus cantāre, *to play upon a stringed instrument*. Cic. Pilā lūdere, *to play at ball* (lit., WITH THE BALL). Hor.

3) Aurēliā viā proficisci, *to set out by the Aurelian way*. Cic. Eōdem itinere ire, *to go by the same road*. Liv. Esquilinā portā ingredi, *to enter by the Esquiline gate*. Liv.

4) Virtūte praeditus, *possessed of virtue*. Cic. Legiōnēs pulchris armis praeditas, *legions furnished with beautiful arms*. Plaut.

2. Adficiō with the Ablative forms a very common circumlocution : *honōre adficere* = *honōrāre*, *to honor* ; *admīrātiōne adficere* = *admīrārī*, *to admire* ; *pōnā adficere* = *pūnīre*, *to punish*, etc. :

Omnēs laetitīā adficit, *he gladdens all*. Cic.

RULE XXVI.—Ablative in Special Constructions.¹

421. The Ablative is used—

I. With ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor, and their compounds :

Plūrimīs rēbus fruimur et ūtimur, *we enjoy and use VERY MANY THINGS*. Cic. Māgnā est praedā potitus, *he obtained GREAT BOOTY*. Nep. Lacte et carne vescēbantur, *they lived upon milk and flesh*. Sall.

II. With VERBS and ADJECTIVES OF PLENTY :

Villa abundat lacte, cāscō, melle ; *the villa abounds IN MILK, CHEESE, and HONEY*. Cic. Urbs referta copiīs, *a city filled WITH SUPPLIES*. Cic. Virtūte praeditus, *endowed with virtue*. Cic. Deus bonīs explēvit mundum, *God has filled the world with blessings*. Cic.

III. With dignus, indignus,² and contentus :

Dignī sunt amicitīā, *they are worthy OF FRIENDSHIP*. Cic. Vir patre dignus, *a man worthy OF HIS FATHER*. Cic. Honōre indignissimus, *most unworthy of honor*. Cic. Nātūra parvō contenta, *nature content with little*. Cic.

NOTE 1.—Transitive verbs of Plenty³ take the Accusative and Ablative :

Armīs nāvēs onerat, *he loads the ships with arms*. Sall. See also the last example under 421, II.

NOTE 2.—Dignor, as a Passive verb meaning 'to be deemed worthy,'

¹ This Ablative is readily explained as the Ablative of *means* : thus, ūtor, 'I use,' 'I serve myself *by means of* ;' fruor, 'I enjoy,' 'I delight myself *with* ;' vescor, 'I feed upon,' 'I feed myself *with*,' etc.

² The nature of the Ablative with *dignus* and *indignus* is somewhat uncertain. On etymological grounds it is explained as *instrumental* ; see Delbrück, p. 72 ; Corssen, 'Krit. Beitr.,' p. 47.

³ Transitive verbs of *plenty* mean 'to fill,' 'to furnish with,' etc., as *cumulō, complēō, impleō, imbuō, instruō, onerō, ōrnō*, etc.

takes the Ablative; but as a *Deponent* verb meaning 'to deem worthy,' used only in poetry and late prose, it takes the Accusative and Ablative:

Honore dignāti sunt, *they have been deemed worthy of honor.* Cic. Mē dignor honore, *I deem myself worthy of honor.* Verg.

NOTE 3.—*Dignus* and *indignus* occur with the Genitive:

Dignus salutis, *worthy of safety.* Plaut. Indignus avorum, *unworthy of their ancestors.* Verg.

NOTE 4.—*Ūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, and *rescor*, originally transitive, are occasionally so used in classic authors. Their participle in *dus* is passive in sense. *Ūtor* admits two Ablatives of the same person or thing:

Mē ūtetur patre, *he will find (use) me a father.* Ter.

NOTE 5.—For the Genitive with *potior*, see 410, V., 3. For the Genitive with verbs and adjectives of *plenty*, and for the Accusative and Genitive with transitive verbs of *plenty*, see 410, V., 1, with foot-note, and 399, I., 3.

RULE XXVII.—Ablative of Price.

422. PRICE is generally denoted by the Ablative:

Vēdidit aurō patriam, *he sold his country FOR GOLD.* Verg. Condūxit māg-nō domum, *he hired a house AT A HIGH PRICE.* Cic. Multō sanguine Poenīs victōria stetit, *the victory cost the Carthaginians (stood to the Carthaginians at) much blood.* Liv. Quinquāgintā talentis aestimāri, *to be valued at fifty talents.* Nep. Vile est vīginti minis, *it is cheap at twenty minae.* Plaut.

NOTE 1.—The ABLATIVE OF PRICE is used (1) with verbs of *buying*, *selling*, *hiring*, *letting*; (2) of *costing*, of *being cheap* or *dear*; ¹ (3) of *valuing*; (4) with adjectives of *value*.¹

NOTE 2.—With verbs of EXCHANGING—*mūtō*, *commūtō*, etc.—(1) the thing *received* is generally treated as the *price*, as with verbs of *selling*, but (2) sometimes the thing *given* is treated as the *price*, as with verbs of *buying*, or is put in the Ablative with *cum*:

Pāce bellum mūtāvit, *he exchanged war FOR PEACE.* Sall. Exsilium patriā mūtāvit, *he exchanged HIS COUNTRY for exile.* Curt. Cum patriae caritate glōriam commū-tāvit, *he exchanged love of country for glory.* Cic.

NOTE 3.—For the GENITIVE OF PRICE, see 405.

RULE XXVIII.—Ablative of Difference.

423. The MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE is denoted by the Ablative:

Ūnō diē longiorem mēsem faciunt, *they make the month ONE DAY longer (longer BY ONE DAY).* Cic. Biduō mē antecessit, *he preceded me BY TWO DAYS.* Cic. Sōl multis partibus māior est quam terra, *the sun is very much (lit., BY MANY PARTS) larger than the earth.* Cic.

NOTE 1.—The Ablative is thus used with all words involving a comparison, but ad-verbs often supply its place: *multum rōbustior*, 'much more robust.'

NOTE 2.—The Ablative of *difference* includes the Ablative of *distance* (379, 2), and the Ablative with *ante*, *post*, and *abhinc* in expressions of time (430).

¹ As *stō*, *cōnstō*, *liceō*, *sum*, etc.; *cārus*, *vēnālīs*, etc.

RULE XXIX.—Specification.

424. A noun, adjective, or verb may take an Ablative to define its application :

Agēsilaus nōmine, nōn potestāte fuit rēx, *Agesilaus was king IN NAME, not IN POWER.* Nep. Claudus alterō pede, lame IN ONE FOOT. Nep. Mōribus similēs, *similar in character.* Cic. Reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praeceḋunt, *they surpass the other Gauls in courage.* Caes.

NOTE 1.—This ABLATIVE shows in *what respect* or *particular* anything is true: thus, *king* (in what respect?) *in name.*

NOTE 2.—For the ACCUSATIVE OF SPECIFICATION, see 378.

III. LOCATIVE ABLATIVE.

RULE XXX.—Place in which.

425. The PLACE IN WHICH is denoted—

I. Generally by the *Locative Ablative*¹ with the preposition **in** :

Hannibal in Italiā fuit, *Hannibal was IN ITALY.* Nep. In nostris castris, *in our camp.* Caes. In Appiā viā, *on the Appian way.* Cic.

II. In NAMES OF TOWNS by the *Locative*,² if such a form exists, otherwise by the *Locative Ablative* :

Rōmae fuit, *he was AT ROME.* Cic. Corinthī puerōs docēbat, *he taught boys AT CORINTH.* Cic. Athēnis fuit, *he was AT ATHENS.* Cic. Hōc facis Argīs, *you do this at Argos.* Hor. Karthāgine rēgēs creābantur, *kings were elected (created) at Carthage.* Nep. Gādibus vīxit, *he lived at Gades.* Cic.

NOTE.—For the construction with verbs meaning *to collect* *to come together*, and with those meaning *to place*, see 380, note.

1. In the names of places which are not towns, the LOCATIVE ABLATIVE is often used without a preposition :

1) When the idea of *means*, *manner*, or *cause* is combined with that of *place* :³

Castris sē tenuit, *he kept himself IN CAMP.* Caes. Aliquem tēctō recipere, *to receive any one in ONE'S OWN HOUSE.* Cic. Proeliō cadere, *to fall IN BATTLE.* Caes. Adulēscētibz dēlectārī, *to take pleasure in the young.* Cic. Suā

¹ The learner will remember that the *Locative Ablative* does not differ in form from any other Ablative; see 411.

² See 48, 4; 51, 8; 66, 4. The Locative was the original construction in all names of places.

³ In some cases *place* and *means* are so combined that it is difficult to determine which is the original conception.

victoriā glōriantur, *they glory in their victory*. Caes. Nullō officiō assuefacti, *trained in no duty*. Caes.

NOTE.—The Ablative is generally used with *fidō*, *cōfīdō*, *nitor*, *innitor*, and *frētus*:

Nēmō fortunae stabilitate cōfīdit, *no one trusts (confides in) the stability of fortune*. Cic. Salūs vērītate nititur, *safety rests upon truth*. Cic. Frētus amicis, *relying upon his friends*. Liv.

2) When the idea of *place* is *figurative* rather than *literal*:

Nova pectore versat cōsilia, *she devises (turns over) new plans IN HER BREAST*. Verg. Stāre iūdicīis, *to abide BY (stand IN) THE DECISIONS*. Cic. Prōmissis manēre, *to remain true to promises (lit., remain IN)*. Verg. Pendēre animis,¹ *to be perplexed in mind*. Cic. Intimis sēnsibus angī, *to be troubled in one's inmost feelings*. Cic. Ferōx bellō, *valiant in war*. Hor. Jūre perītus, *skilled in law*. Cic.

2. The Ablatives *locō*, *locīs*, *parte*, *partibus*, *dextrā*, *laevā*, and *sinistrā* are often used without the preposition. *Terrā* and *marī* and Ablatives with *tōtus* are generally so used.

Aliquid locō pōnere, *to put anything IN ITS PLACE*. Cic. Terrā marique, *on land and sea*. Liv. Tōtā Graeciā, *in all Greece*. Nep.

NOTE 1.—The Ablative *librō*, 'book,' generally takes the preposition when used of a portion of a work, but omits it when used of an entire treatise:

In eō librō, *in this book* (referring to a portion of the work). Cic. Aliō librō, *in another work*. Cic.

NOTE 2.—Other Ablatives sometimes occur without the preposition, especially when qualified by *omnis*, *medius*, or *universus*:

Omnibus oppidīs, *in all the towns*. Caes.

NOTE 3.—In *poetry* the Locative Ablative is often used without the preposition:

Lūcis opacis, *in shady groves*. Verg. Silvis agrisque, *in the forests and fields*. Ov. Theātris, *in the theatres*. Hor. Ferre umerō, *to bear upon the shoulder*. Verg.

3. ABLATIVE FOR THE LOCATIVE.—Instead of the Locative in names of towns the Ablative is used, with or without a preposition—

1) When the proper name is qualified by an adjective or adjective pronoun:

In ipsā Alexandriā,² *in Alexandria itself*. Cic. Longā Albā, *at Alba Longa*. Verg.

2) Sometimes when not thus modified:

In monte Albānō. Lavinioque, *on the Alban mount and at Lavinium*. Liv. In Alexandriā,³ *at Alexandria*. Liv.

NOTE.—The following *special constructions* deserve notice:

In oppidō Citiō,⁴ *in the town Citium*. Nep. Albae,⁴ *in urbe opportūnā, at Alba, a convenient city*. Cic.

¹ In the singular *animī* is generally used, a Locative probably both in form and in signification; see p. 211, foot-note 4.

² At *Alexandria* would regularly be expressed by the Locative, *Alexandriāe*.

³ Here *Citiō* is in apposition with *oppidō*, the usual construction in such cases, though a Genitive limiting *oppidō* occurs: In oppidō Antiochiāe, *in the city of Antioch*. Cic.

⁴ A Locative may thus be followed by *in urbe*, or *in oppidō*, modified by an adjective; but see 363, 4. 2). The preposition *in* is sometimes omitted.

426. LIKE NAMES OF TOWNS are used—

1. Many NAMES OF ISLANDS:

Lesbī vixit, *he lived in Lesbos.* Nep. Conōn Cypri vixit, *Conon lived in Cyprus.* Nep.

2. The LOCATIVES domī, rūri, humī, militiae, and bellī:

Domī militiaeque, *at home and in the field.* Cic. Rūri agere vitam, *to spend life in the country.* Liv.

NOTE.—A few other *Locatives* also occur:

Rōmae Numidiaequē, *at Rome and in Numidia.* Sall. Domum Chersonēsī habuit *he had a house in the Chersonesus.* Nep. Truncum reliquit arēnae,¹ *he left the body in the sand.* Verg.

427. SUMMARY.—The NAMES OF PLACES NOT TOWNS are generally put—

I. In the *Accusative* with **ad** or **in**, to denote the PLACE TO WHICH:

In Asiam redit, *he returns to (into) Asia.* Nep.

II. In the *Ablative* with **ab**, **dē**, or **ex**, to denote the PLACE FROM WHICH:

Ab urbe proficiscitur, *he sets out from the city.* Caes.

III. In the *Locative Ablative* with **in**, to denote the PLACE AT OR IN WHICH:

Hannibal in Italiā fuit, *Hannibal was in Italy.* Nep.

NOTE.—For *qualifications* and *exceptions*, see 380, 3 and 4; 412, 2; 425, 1 and 2.

428. SUMMARY.—The NAMES OF TOWNS are put²—

I. In the *Accusative*, to denote the PLACE TO WHICH:

Nūntius Rōmam redit, *the messenger returns to Rome.* Liv.

II. In the *Ablative*, to denote the PLACE FROM WHICH:

Fūgit Corinthō, *he fled from Corinth.* Cic.

III. In the *Locative*, or in the *Locative Ablative*,³ to denote the PLACE AT OR IN WHICH:

Corinthī puerōs docēbat, *he taught boys at Corinth.* Cic. Gādibus vixit, *he lived at Gades.* Cic.

NOTE.—For *qualifications* and *exceptions*, see 380, 1; 412, 3; 425, 8.

RULE XXXI.—Time.

429. The TIME of an Action is denoted by the Ablative:

Octogēsīmō annō est mortuus, *he died in his eightieth year.* Cic. Vere convēnere, *they assembled in the spring.* Liv. Nātālī diē suō, *on his birth-*

¹ So also *terrae* and *viciniae*.

² This, the original construction for all names of places, has been retained unchanged only in the names of towns and in a few other words. Most names of places have assumed a *preposition* with the *Accusative* and *Ablative*, and have substituted the *Locative Ablative* with a *preposition* in place of the *Locative*; see 411, III.

³ That is, the *Locative* is used if any such form exists; if not, the *Locative Ablative* supplies its place.

day. Nep. Hieme et aestate, *in winter and summer*. Cic. Sôlis occāsū, *at sunset*. Caes. Adventū Caesaris, *on the arrival of Caesar*. Caes. Lūdīs, *at the time of the games*. Cic. Vix decem annīs, *scarcely in ten years*. Nep. His vigintī annīs, *within these twenty years*. Cic.

1. Certain relations of TIME are denoted by the Ablative with **in** or **dē**:

In tali tempore,¹ *at such a time* (i. e., under such circumstances). Liv. In diēbus prōximis decem,¹ *in the next ten days*. Sall. Dē mediā nocte, *in* (lit., *from, out of*) *the middle of the night*. Caes.

2. Certain relations of TIME are denoted by the Accusative with **ad**, **in**, **inter**, **intrā**, **sub**, etc.:

Ad cōstitūtā diē, *at the appointed day*. Cic. Ad cēnam invitāre in posterum diē, *to invite to dinner for the next day*. Cic. Intrā vigintī diēs, *within twenty days*. Plaut. Inter tot annōs, *within so many years*. Cic. Sub noctem, *toward night*. Caes.

430. The INTERVAL between two events may be denoted by the Accusative or Ablative with **ante** or **post**:²

Aliquot post mēnsēs³ occisus est, *he was put to death some months after*. Cic. Post diēs paucōs vēnit, *he came after a few days*. Liv. Paucīs ante diēbus,³ *a few days before*. Cic. Homērus annis multis fuit ante Rōmulum, *Homer lived many years before Romulus*. Cic. Paucīs diēbus post ejus mortem, *a few days after his death*. Cic. Annis quingentīs post, *five hundred years after*. Cic. Quārtum post annum quam redierat, *four years after he had returned*. Nep. Nōnō annō postquam, *nine years after*. Nep. Sextō annō quam erat expulsus, *six years after he had been banished*. Nep.

NOTE 1.—In these examples observe—

1) That the numeral may be either cardinal, as in the sixth example, or ordinal, as in the last three.⁴

2) That with the Accusative *ante* and *post* either precede the numeral and the noun, or stand between them; but that with the Ablative they either follow both, or stand between them.⁵

3) That *quam* may follow *ante* and *post*, as in the seventh example; may be united with them, as in the eighth, or may be used for *postquam*, as in the ninth.

NOTE 2.—The ABLATIVE OF THE RELATIVE may be used for *postquam*:

Quatriduō, quō occisus est, *four days after he was killed*. Cic.

¹ The Ablative with *in* is used to denote (1) the *circumstances* of the time, and (2) the time *in* or *within which*. In the second sense it is used especially after numeral adverbs and in designating the periods of life: *bis in diē*, 'twice in the day'; *in pueritiā*, 'in boyhood,' etc.

² In two instances the Ablative with *abhinc* is used like the Ablative with *ante*: *Abhinc trigintā diēbus*, *thirty days before*. Cic.

³ The Accusative after *ante* and *post* depends upon the preposition, but the Ablative is explained as the *measure of difference* (423).

⁴ Thus, 'five years after' = *quīnque annīs post*, or *quīntō annō post*; or *post quīnque annōs*, or *post quīntum annum*; or with *post* between the numeral and the noun, *quīnque post annīs*, etc.

⁵ Any other arrangement is rare.

NOTE 3.—The *time since* an event may be denoted by the Accusative with *abhinc* or *ante*, or by the Ablative with *ante*:¹

Abhinc annōs trecentōs fuit, *he lived three hundred years ago*. Cic. Paucis ante diebus erūpit ex urbe, *he broke out of the city a few days ago*. Cic.

RULE XXXII.—Ablative Absolute.²

431. A noun and a participle may be put in the Ablative to add to the predicate an attendant circumstance :

Serviō rēgnante viguērunt, *they flourished in the reign of Servius* (Servius reigning).³ Cic. Rēgibus exāctis, cōsulēs creati sunt, *after the banishment of the kings,*⁴ *consuls were appointed*. Liv. Equitātū praemissō, subsequēbātur, *having sent forward his cavalry, he followed*. Caes. Rēgnum haud satis prōsperum neglēctā rēligiōne, *a reign not sufficiently prosperous because religion was neglected*. Liv. Perditis rēbus omnibus tamen virtūs sē sustentāre potest, *though all things are lost, still virtue is able to sustain itself*. Cic. Obsidibus imperātis, hōs Aeduīs trādit,⁵ *having demanded hostages, he delivers them to the Aedui*. Caes.

1. The Ablative Absolute, much more common than the English Nominative Absolute, generally expresses the *time, cause, or some attendant circumstance* of an action.

2. This Ablative is generally best rendered—(1) by a *noun with a preposition*—*in, during, after, by, with, through, etc.*; (2) by an *active participle with its object*; or (3) by a *clause with when, while, because, if, though, etc.*; ⁶ see examples above.

3. A connective sometimes accompanies the Ablative :

Nisi mūnitis castris, *unless the camp should be fortified*. Caes.

4. A *noun and an adjective, or even two nouns, may be in the Ablative Absolute*:⁷

¹ The Accusative is explained as *duration of time* (379), the Ablative as *measure of difference* (423).

² This Ablative is called *absolute*, because it is not directly dependent for its construction upon any other word in the sentence. Originally *Locative*, it was first used to denote *situation or time*, a meaning from which its later uses may be readily derived. Thus, while the force of a Locative Ablative is apparent in *Serviō rēgnante* and in *rēgibus exāctis*, it is recognized without difficulty in *neglēctā rēligiōne* as indicating the *situation or state of things* in which the reign was not prosperous. In some instances, however, the Ablative Absolute may be *instrumental or causal*.

³ Or, *while Servius was reigning or was king*.

⁴ Or, *after the kings were banished*.

⁵ In this example *obsidibus* and *hōs* refer to the same persons. This is unusual, as in this construction the Ablative generally refers to some person or thing not otherwise mentioned in the clause to which it belongs.

⁶ The first method of translation comes nearer the original Latin conception, but the other methods generally accord better with the English idiom.

⁷ This construction is peculiar to the Latin. In the corresponding constructions in Sanskrit, Greek, and English, the present participle of the verb 'to be' is used.

Serēnō caelō, *when the sky is clear*. Sen. Caniniō cōsule, *in the consulship of Caninius*. Cic.

NOTE 1.—An *infinitive* or *clause* may be in the Ablative Absolute with a neuter participle or adjective :

Auditō Dāriūm mōvisse, pērgit, *having heard that Darius had withdrawn* (that Darius had, etc., having been heard), *he advanced*. Curt. Multi, incertō quid vitārent, interiērent, *many, uncertain what they should avoid* (what they, etc., being uncertain), *perished*. Liv.

NOTE 2.—A *participle* or *adjective* may stand alone in the Ablative Absolute :

Multum certātō, pērvicit, *he conquered after a hard struggle*.¹ Tac.

NOTE 3.—*Quisque* or *ipse* in the *Nominative* may accompany the Ablative Absolute :

Multis sibi quisque petentibus, *while many sought, each for himself*. Sall. Causā ipse prō sē dictā damnātur, *having himself advocated his own cause, he is condemned*. Liv.

NOTE 4.—For the use of *absente* and *praesente* in the Ablative Absolute with a plural noun or pronoun, see 438, 6, note.

SECTION VIII.

CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS.

RULE XXXIII.—Cases with Prepositions.

432. The Accusative and Ablative may be used with prepositions :²

Ad amicum scripsi, *I have written to a friend*. Cic. In cūriam, *into the senate-house*. Liv. In Italiā, *in Italy*. Nep. Prō castris, *before the camp*.

433. The ACCUSATIVE is used with—

Ad, adversus (adversum), ante, apud, circā, circum, circiter, eis, citrā, contrā, ergā, extrā, infrā, inter, intrā, juxtā, ob, penes, per, pōne, post, praeter, prope, propter, secundum, suprā, trāns, ūltrā, versus :

Ad urbem, *to the city*. Cic. Adversus deōs, *toward the gods*. Cic. Ante lucem, *before light*. Cic. Apud concilium, *in the presence of the council*. Cic. Circā forum, *around the forum*. Cic. Citrā flūmen, *on this side of the river*. Cic. Contrā natūram, *contrary to nature*. Cic. Intrā mūrōs, *within the walls*. Cic. Post castra, *behind the camp*. Caes. Secundum natūram, *according to nature*. Cic. Trāns Alpēs, *across the Alps*. Cic.

NOTE 1.—*Exadversus* (um) also occurs with the Accusative :

Exadversus eum locum, *over against that place*. Cic. See also 437.

NOTE 2.—*Versus* (um) and *usque*, as adverbs, often accompany prepositions, especially *ad* and *in* :

Ad oceanum versus, *toward the ocean*. Caes. Ad meridiem versus, *toward the south*. Liv. Usque ad castra hostium, *even to the camp of the enemy*. Caes.

¹ Literally, *it having been much contested*. The participle is used impersonally.

² On the general subject of Prepositions and their Use, see Roby, II., pp. 351-456. Draeger, I., pp. 574-665; Kühner, II., pp. 355-432.

NOTE 3.—For *propius*, *prōximē*, *propior*, and *prōximus*, with the Accusative, see *prope*, note 2, under I., below.

NOTE 4.—For compounds of prepositions, see 372 and 376.

I. The following uses of prepositions with the Accusative deserve notice:

Ad, TO, the opposite of *ab*, FROM—(1) TO, TOWARD, TILL; (2) NEAR, AT, ON: *ad mē*, 'to me,' 'near me,' 'at my house'; *ad urbem*, 'to the city,' 'near the city'; *ad dextram*, 'on the right'; *ad multam noctem*, 'till late in the night'; *ad lucem*, 'till daybreak'; *ad hōc*, 'besides this,' 'moreover'; *ad verbum*, 'word for word'; *ad hunc modum*, 'after this manner'; *ad ūltimum*, 'at last'; *ad unum omnēs*, 'all to a man,' 'all without exception.'

ApuD, NEAR, AT, BEFORE, IN THE PRESENCE OF: *apud oppidum*, 'near or before the town'; *apud mē*, 'at my house'; *sum apud mē*, 'I am at home' or 'I am in my right mind'; *apud Platōnem*, 'in the works of Plato.'

Ante, BEFORE, IN FRONT OF, ABOVE, IN PREFERENCE TO: *ante suōs annōs*, 'before his time,' 'too early'; *ante tempus*, 'before the proper time'; *ante annum*, 'a year before'; *ante urbem conditam*, 'before the founding of the city'; *ante aliōs pulcherrimus omnēs*, 'the most beautiful above all others.'

Circum, *circā*, *circiter*,² ROUND, AROUND, ABOUT: *circum forum*, 'around the forum'; *circā sē*, 'around or with himself'; *circā eandem hōram*, 'about the same hour'; *circiter meridiem*, 'about midday.'

NOTE.—*Circum*, the oldest of these forms, is used only of *place*; *circā*, both of *place* and of *time*; *circiter*, rare as a preposition, chiefly of *time*. They are all freely used as adverbs: *circum convenīre*, 'to gather around'; *circā esse*, 'to be around'; *circiter pars quarta*, 'about the fourth part.'

Cis, *citrā*,³ ON THIS SIDE—*cis* opposed to *trāns*, ACROSS, ON THE OTHER SIDE; *citrā* opposed to *ultrā*, BEYOND: *cis flūmen*, 'on this side of the stream'; *cis paucōs diēs*, 'within a few days'; *citrā veritatem*, 'short of the truth'; *citrā auctoritatem*, 'without authority.'

Contrā,³ OPPOSITE TO, OVER AGAINST, AGAINST, CONTRARY TO: *contrā eas regiones*, 'opposite to those regions'; *contrā populum*, 'against the people'; *contrā naturam*, 'contrary to nature.'

Ergā,⁴ TOWARD, TO, AGAINST: *ergā parentēs*, 'toward parents'; *odium ergā Rōmānōs*, 'hatred to the Romans'; *ergā regem*, 'against the king.'

Extrā, OUTSIDE, WITHOUT, FREE FROM, EXCEPT: *extrā portam*, 'outside the gate'; *extrā culpam*, 'without fault,' 'free from fault'; *extrā ducem*, 'except the leader,' 'besides the leader.'

Infra,⁵ BELOW, UNDER, BENEATH, LESS THAN, AFTER, LATER THAN, opposed to *suprā*, ABOVE: *infra lunam*, 'beneath the moon'; *infra mē*, 'below me'; *infra trēs pedes*, 'less than three feet'; *infra Lyeūrgum*, 'after Lyeurgus.'

¹ For the form and meaning of prepositions in composition, see 344, 5.

² These three forms are all derived from *circus*, 'a circle' (i. e., from its stem); see 304; 307, note 1.

³ These are often adverbs.

⁴ According to Vanicek, from *ē* and the root *reg* in *regō*; 'in the direction of' (lit. from the direction of). In Tacitus, sometimes IN RELATION TO: *ergā domum suam* 'in relation to his own household.'

⁵ *Infra* = *inferā parte*, 'in the lower part'

Inter,¹ BETWEEN, AMONG, IN THE MIDST OF: *inter urbem et Tiberim*, 'between the city and the Tiber'; *inter bonōs*, 'among the good'; *inter manūs*, 'in the hands,' 'within reach,' 'tangible'; *inter nōs*, 'between us,' 'in confidence'; *inter sē amāre*, 'to love one another'; *inter sē differre*, 'to differ from one another'; *inter paucōs*, *inter pauca*, 'especially,' 'preëminently'; *inter paucōs disertus*, 'preëminently eloquent'; *inter purpuram atque aurum*, 'in the midst of purple and gold.'

Intrā, WITHIN, LESS THAN, BELOW, opposed to *extrā*, ON THE OUTSIDE, WITHOUT: *intrā castra*, 'within the camp'; *intrā mē*, 'within me';² *intrā sē*, 'in his mind' or 'in their minds';³ *intrā centum*, 'less than one hundred'; *intrā modum*, 'within the limit'; *intrā fāmam*, 'below his reputation.'

Ob, BEFORE, IN VIEW OF, IN REGARD TO, ON ACCOUNT OF: *ob oculōs*, 'before one's eyes'; *ob stultitiā tuā*, 'in view of your folly,' or 'in regard to your folly'; *ob hanc rem*, 'in view of this thing,' 'for this reason,' 'on this account'; *quā ob rem*, 'in view of which thing,' 'wherefore.'

Per,⁴ THROUGH, BY THE AID OF: *per forum*, 'through the forum'; *per aliōs*, 'through others,' 'by the aid of others'; *per sē*, 'by his own efforts,' also 'in himself,' 'in itself'; *per metum*, 'through fear'; *per aetātem*, 'in consequence of age'; *per ludum*, 'sportively'; *per vim*, 'violently'; *per mē licet*, 'it is allowable as far as I am concerned' (i. e., I make no opposition).

Post, BEHIND, AFTER, SINCE: *post montem*, 'behind the mountain'; *post dedicātiōnem templi*, 'after the dedication of the temple'; *post hominū memoriā*, 'since the memory of man.'

Praeter,⁵ BEFORE, ALONG, PAST, BY, BEYOND, BESIDES, EXCEPT, CONTRARY TO: *praeter oculōs*, 'before their eyes'; *praeter oram*, 'along the coast'; *praeter ceterōs*, 'beyond others,' 'more than others'; *praeter haec* = *praeter-eā*, 'besides these things,' 'moreover'; *praeter mē*, 'except me'; *praeter spem*, 'contrary to expectation.'

Prope, propter, NEAR, NEAR BY. **Prope**, NEAR; **propter** = *prope-ter*, a strengthened form of *prope*,⁶ VERY NEAR, ALONGSIDE OF, also IN VIEW OF, ON ACCOUNT OF: *prope hostes*, 'near the enemy'; *prope metum*, 'near to fear,' 'almost fearful'; *propter mare*, 'near the sea'; *propter timōrem*, 'on account of fear'; *propter sē*, 'on his own account,' 'on their own account.'

NOTE 1.—*Prope*, as an adverb, is sometimes combined with *ā*, *ab*, or *ad*: *prope ā Siciliā*, 'near Sicily,' 'not far from Sicily'; *prope ad portās*, 'near to the gates.'

NOTE 2.—Like *prope*, the derivatives *propius* and *prōximē*, and sometimes even *propior* and *prōximus*, admit the Accusative:⁷

Propius periculum, *nearer to danger*. Liv. *Prōximē deōs*, *very near to the gods*.

¹ Formed from *in* by the ending *ter*, like *prae-ter* from *prae* (434, I.), *prop-ter* from *prope* (433, I.), and *sub-ter* from *sub* (435, I.).

² Often equivalent to *in meō animō*, 'in my mind.'

³ Sometimes, *in his country*, or *in their country*.

⁴ In origin kindred to the Greek *παρά*.

⁵ Formed from *prae* (434, I.), like *in-ter* from *in*; see *inter*, with foot-note.

⁶ See *inter*. with foot-note.

⁷ Perhaps by a construction according to sense, following the analogy of *prope*, though in most cases a preposition may readily be supplied.

Cic. *Propior montem, nearer to the mountain.* Sall. *Prōximus mare, nearest to the sea.* Caes.

Secundum,¹ FOLLOWING, NEXT AFTER, NEXT BEHIND, ALONGSIDE OF, CONFORMING TO, ACCORDING TO, IN FAVOR OF: *secundum āram*, 'behind the altar'; *secundum deōs*, 'next after the gods'; *secundum lūdōs*, 'after the games'; *secundum flūmen*, 'along the river'; *secundum nātūram*, 'according to nature,' 'following nature'; *secundum causam nostram*, 'in favor of our cause.'²

Suprā,³ ON THE TOP, ABOVE, BEFORE, TOO HIGH FOR; opposed to *infrā*, BELOW: *suprā lūnam*, 'above the moon'; *suprā hanc memoriā*, 'before our time';⁴ *suprā hominem*, 'too high for a man.'

Trāns, ACROSS, ON THE OTHER SIDE, opposed to *cis*, ON THIS SIDE: *trāns Rhēnum*, 'across the Rhine'; *trāns Alpēs*, 'on the other side of the Alps.'

Ūltrā, BEYOND, ACROSS, ON THE OTHER SIDE, MORE THAN, LONGER THAN, AFTER, opposed to *citrā*, ON THIS SIDE: *ūltrā eum locum*, 'beyond that place'; *ūltrā eum*, 'beyond him'; *ūltrā pignus*, 'more than a pledge'; *ūltrā fidem*, 'beyond belief,' 'incredible'; *ūltrā pueriles annōs*, 'after (beyond) the years of boyhood.'

434. The ABLATIVE is used with—

Ā or ab (abs),	absque,	cōram,	cum,	dē,
ē or ex,	prae,	prō,	sine,	tenus.

Ab urbe, *from the city.* Caes. Cōram conventū, *in the presence of the assembly.* Nep. Cum Antiochō, *with Antiochus.* Cic. Dē forō, *from the forum.* Cic. Ex Asiā, *out of Asia.* Nep. Sine corde, *without a heart.* Cic.

NOTE 1.—Many verbs compounded with *ab*, *dē*, *ex*, or *super* admit the Ablative dependent upon the preposition, but the preposition is often repeated,⁵ or some other preposition of kindred meaning is used:

Abire magistratū, *to retire from office.* Tac. Pugnā excedunt, *they retire from the battle.* Caes. Dē vitā decēdere, *to depart from life.* Cic. Decēdere ex Asiā, *to depart out of Asia.* Cic.

NOTE 2.—Ā and ē are used only before consonants, *ab* and *ex* before either vowels or consonants. *Ads* is antiquated, except before *tē*.

NOTE 3.—For *cum* appended to the Ablative of a personal pronoun or of a relative, see 184, 6, and 187, 2.

NOTE 4.—*Tenus* follows its case. In its *origin* it is the Accusative of a noun,⁶ and as such it often takes the Genitive:

Collō tenus, *up to the neck.* Ov. Lumbōrum tenus, *as far as the loins.* Cic.

¹ Properly the neuter of *secundus*, 'following,' 'second'; but *secundus* is a gerundive from *sequor*, formed like *dīcundus* from *dīco* (239). For the change of *qu* to *c* before *u* in *sec-undus* for *sequ-undus*, see 26, foot-note.

² Like the adjective *secundus* in *ventus secundus*, 'a favoring wind'—one that follows us on our course; *flūmine secundō*, 'with a favoring current' (i. e., down the stream).

³ *Suprā* = *superā parte*, 'on the top.'

⁴ Literally, *before this memory.* For *hīc* meaning *my* or *our*, see 450, 4, note 1.

⁵ Though in such cases the first element of the compound is not strictly a preposition, but an adverb (344, with foot-note). Thus, in *dē vitā decēdere*, *dē* in the verb retains its adverbial force, so that, strictly speaking, the preposition is used only once.

⁶ From the root *tan*, *ten*, seen in *ten-dō*, *ten-eo*, and in the Greek *τείνω*.

NOTE 5.—For the Ablative with or without *dē*, as used with *faciō*, *fiō*, and *sum*, see 415, III., note.

I. The following uses of prepositions with the Ablative deserve notice :

Ā, ab,¹ abs, FROM, BY, IN, ON, ON THE SIDE OF. 1. Of *Place*; FROM, ON, ON THE SIDE OF: *ā Galliā*, 'from Gaul'; *ab ortū*, 'from the east'; *ā fronte*, 'in front' (lit., *from the front*); *ā tergō*, 'in the rear'; *ab Sēquanīs*, 'on the side toward the Sequani.' 2. Of *Time*; FROM, AFTER: *ab hōrā tertiā*, 'from the third hour'; *ā puerō*, 'from boyhood'; *ab cohortātiōne*, 'after exhorting.' 3. In *other relations*; FROM, BY, IN, AGAINST: *ā poenā liber*, 'free from punishment'; *missus ab Syrācūsis*, 'sent by the Syracusans'; *ab equitatū firmus*, 'strong in (lit., *from*) cavalry'; *ab animō aeger*, 'diseased in mind'; *ab eis defendere*, 'to defend against (*from*) them'; *esse ab aliquō*, 'to be on one's side'; *ā nobīs*, 'in our interest'; *servus ā pedibus*, 'a footman.'

NOTE.—*Absque*, rare in classical prose, is found chiefly in Plautus and Terence.

Cum,² WITH, in most of its English meanings: *cum patre habitāre*, 'to live with one's father'; *Caesar cum quinque legiōnibus*, 'Caesar with five legions'; *cōsul cum summō imperiō*, 'the consul with supreme command'; *servus cum telō*, 'a slave with a weapon,' 'an armed slave'; *cum primā luce*, 'with the early dawn,' 'at the early dawn'; *cōsentire cum aliquō*, 'to agree with any one'; *cum Caesare agere*, 'to treat with Caesar'; *cum aliquō dimicāre*, 'to contend with any one'; *multis cum lacrimīs*, 'with many tears'; *cum virtūte*, 'virtuously'; *cum eō ut*, or *cum eō quod*, 'with this condition that,' 'on condition that.' See also 419, III.

Dē, DOWN FROM, FROM, OF. 1. Of *Place*; DOWN FROM, FROM: *dē caelō*, 'down from heaven'; *dē forō*, 'from the forum'; *dē mājōribus audire*, 'to hear from one's elders.' 2. Of *Time*; FROM, OUT OF, DURING, IN, AT, AFTER: *dē prandiō*, 'from breakfast'; *dē diē*, 'by day,' 'in the course of the day'; *dē tertiā vigiliā*, 'during the third watch'; *dē mediā nocte*, 'at about midnight.' 3. In *other relations*; FROM, OF, FOR, ON, CONCERNING, ACCORDING TO: *dē summō genere*, 'of the highest rank'; *factum dē marmore signum*, 'a bust made of marble'; *homō dē plebe*, 'a man of plebeian rank,' 'a plebeian'; *triumphus dē Galliā*, 'a triumph over (*concerning*) Gaul'; *gravī dē causā*, 'for a grave reason'; *dē mōre vetustō*, 'according to ancient custom'; *dē industriā*, 'on purpose'; *dē integrō*, 'anew.' See also 415, III., note 2.

E, ex,³ OUT OF, FROM. 1. Of *Place*; OUT OF, FROM, IN, ON: *ex urbe*, 'from the city,' 'out of the city'; *ex equō pugnāre*, 'to fight on horseback'; *ex vinculis*, 'in chains' (lit., *out of or from chains*); *ex itinere*, 'on the march.' 2. Of *Time*; FROM, DIRECTLY AFTER, SINCE: *ex eō tempore*, 'from that time'; *ex tempore dicere*, 'to speak extemporaneously'; *diem ex diē*, 'from day to day.' 3. In *other relations*; FROM, OUT OF, OF, ACCORDING TO, ON ACCOUNT OF, THROUGH: *ex vulneribus perire*, 'to perish of (*because of*) wounds'; *ūnus ē filiis*, 'one of the sons'; *ex commutātiōne*, 'on account of the change'; *ex cōsuetūdine*, 'according to custom'; *ē vestigiō*, 'on the spot'; *ex parte magnā*, 'in great part'; *ex imprōvisō*, 'unexpectedly.'

¹ Greek ἀπό.

² Compare Greek ἔνν, σύν, *with*.

³ Compare Greek ἐκ, *out of*.

Prae, BEFORE, IN COMPARISON WITH, IN CONSEQUENCE OF, BECAUSE OF: *prae manū esse*, 'to be at hand'; *prae manū habere*, 'to have at hand'; *prae se ferre*, 'to show, display, exhibit'; *prae nobis beātus*, 'happy in comparison with us'; *nōn prae lacrimis*¹ *posse*, 'not to be able because of tears.'

Prō, BEFORE; IN BEHALF OF, IN DEFENCE OF, FOR; INSTEAD OF, AS; IN RETURN FOR, FOR; ACCORDING TO, IN PROPORTION TO: *prō castris*, 'before the camp'; *prō libertate*, 'in defence of liberty'; *prō patriā*, 'for the country'; *prō cōsule* = *prōcōsul*, 'a proconsul' (one acting *for a consul*); *prō certō habere*, 'to regard as certain'; *prō eō, quod*, 'for the reason that,' 'because'; *prō tuā prudenceiā*, 'in accordance with your prudence'; *prō imperiō*, 'imperiously'; *prō se quisque*, 'each according to his ability.'

435. The ACCUSATIVE or ABLATIVE is used with—

In, sub, subter, super:

In Asiam profūgit, *he fled into Asia*. Cic. Hannibal in Ītaliā fuit, *Hannibal was in Italy*. Nep. Sub montem, *toward the mountain*. Caes. Sub monte, *at the foot of the mountain*. Liv. Subter togam, *under the toga*. Liv. Subter testūdine, *under a tortoise or shed*. Verg. Super Numidiam, *beyond Numidia*. Sall. Hāc super rē scribam, *I shall write on this subject*. Cic.

NOTE 1.—*In* and *sub* take the Accusative after verbs implying motion, the Ablative after those implying rest; see examples.

NOTE 2.—*Subter* and *super* generally take the Accusative; but *super*, when it means concerning, of, on (of a subject of discourse), takes the Ablative; see examples.

I. The following uses of *in, sub, subter, and super* deserve notice:

In, with the Accusative, INTO, TO, TOWARD, TILL. 1. Of *Place*; INTO, TO, TOWARD, AGAINST, IN: *ire in urbem*, 'to go into the city'; *in Persās*, 'into the country of the Persians'; *in aram*, 'to the altar'; *unum in locum convenire*, 'to meet in one place' (380, with note). 2. Of *Time*; INTO, TO, FOR, TILL: *in noctem*, 'into the night'; *in multam noctem*, 'until late at night'; *in diem*, 'into the day,' also 'for the day'; *in diēs*, 'from day to day,' 'daily'; *invitare in posterum diem*, 'to invite for the following day.' 3. In *other relations*; INTO, AGAINST, TOWARD, ON, FOR, AS, IN: *divisa in partēs trēs*, 'divided into three parts'; *in hostem*, 'against the enemy'; *in id certāmen*, 'for this contest'; *in memoriam patris*, 'in memory of his father'; *in spem pacis*, 'in the hope of peace'; *in rem esse*, 'to be useful,' 'to be to the purpose.'

In, with the Ablative, IN, ON, AT. 1. Of *Place*; IN, AT, WITHIN, AMONG, UPON: *in urbe*, 'in the city'; *in Persis*, 'among the Persians'; *sapientissimus in septem*, 'the wisest among or of the seven.' 2. Of *Time*; IN, AT, DURING, IN THE COURSE OF: *in tāli tempore*, 'at such a time'; *in tempore*, 'in time.' 3. In *other relations*; IN, ON, UPON, IN THE CASE OF: *esse in armis*, 'to be in arms'; *in summō timōre*, 'in the greatest fear'; *in hōc homine*, 'in the case of this man.'

Sub, with the Accusative, UNDER, BENEATH, TOWARD, UP TO, ABOUT, DIRECT-

¹ This causal meaning is developed from the local. The noun in the Ablative is thought of as an obstacle or hindrance: *nōn prae lacrimis posse*, 'not to be able before, in the presence of, because of such a hindrance as tears.'

LY AFTER: *sub jugum mittere*, 'to send under the yoke'; *sub nostram aciem*, 'toward our line'; *sub astra*, 'up to the stars'; *sub vesperum*, 'toward evening'; *sub eas litteras*, 'directly after that letter'; *sub imperium redactus*, 'brought under one's sway.'

Sub, with the Ablative, UNDER, AT, AT THE FOOT OF, IN, ABOUT: *sub terrā*, 'under the earth'; *sub pellibus*, 'in tents';¹ *sub brūmā*, 'at the time of the winter solstice'; *sub luce*, 'at dawn'; *sub hōc verbō*, 'under this word'; *sub iudice*, 'in the hands of the judge' (i. e., not yet decided).

NOTE.—*Subter*, a strengthened form² of *sub*, meaning UNDER, generally takes the Accusative, though it admits the Ablative in poetry: *subter mare*, 'under the sea'; *subter togam*, 'under the toga'; *subter dēnsā testiūdine*, 'under a compact testudo.'

Super, with the Accusative, OVER, UPON, ABOVE: *sedens super arma*, 'sitting upon the arms'; *super Numidiā*, 'beyond Numidia'; *super sexāgintā milia*, 'upward of sixty thousand'; *super nātūram*, 'supernatural'; *super omnia*, 'above all.'

Super, with the Ablative, UPON, AT, DURING, CONCERNING, OF, ON: *strātō super ostrō*, 'upon purple couches' (lit., *upon the spread purple*); *nocte super mediā*, 'at midnight'; *hāc super rē scribere*, 'to write upon this subject'; *multa super Priamō rogitāns*, 'asking many questions about Priam.'

NOTE.—The Ablative is rare with *super*, except when it means *concerning*. *about*, *on* (of the subject of discourse). It is then the regular construction.

436. Prepositions were originally adverbs (307, note 1), and many of the words generally classed as prepositions are often used as adverbs³ in classical authors:

Ad milibus quattuor, *about four thousand*. Caes. *Omnia contrā circāque*, *all things opposite and around*. Liv. *Prope ā Siciliā*, *not far from Sicily*. Cic. *Juxtā positus*, *placed near by*. Nep. *Suprā, infrā esse*, *to be above, below*. Cic. *Nec citrā nec ūltrā*, *neither on this side nor on that side*. Ov.

437. Conversely, several words generally classed as adverbs are sometimes used as prepositions. Such are—

1. With the ACCUSATIVE, *propius*, *prōximē*, *vridiē*, *postridiē*, *usque*, *dēsuper*:

Propius periculum, *nearer to danger*. Liv. *Pridiē Idūs*, *the day before the Ides*. Cic. *Usque pedēs*, *even to the feet*. Curt.

2. With the ABLATIVE, *intus*, *palam*, *procul*, *simul* (poetic):

Tālī intus templō, *within such a temple*. Verg. *Palam populō*, *in the presence of the people*. Liv. *Procul castris*, *at a distance from the camp*. Tac. *Simul his*, *with these*. Hor.

3. With the ACCUSATIVE OR ABLATIVE, *clam*, *insuper*:

Clam patrem, *without the father's knowledge*. Plaut. *Clam vōbīs*, *without your knowledge*. Caes.

¹ That is, *in camp* (lit., *under skins*).

² Formed from *sub*, like *in-ter* from *in*; see 433, I., *inter*, foot-note.

³ They are, in fact, sometimes adverbs and sometimes prepositions.

CHAPTER III.

SYNTAX OF ADJECTIVES.

RULE XXXIV.—Agreement of Adjectives.

438. An adjective agrees with its noun in GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE:

Fortūna caeca est, fortune is blind. Cic. *Vērae amīcitiae, true friendships.* Cic. *Magister optimus, the best teacher.* Cic. *Quā in rē privātās injūriās ultus est, in which thing he avenged private wrongs.* Caes. *Sōl oriēns diem cōnficit, the sun rising makes the day.* Cic.

1. *Adjective Pronouns* and *Participles* are ADJECTIVES in construction, and accordingly conform to this rule, as in *quā in rē, sōl oriēns*.

2. When an adjective unites with the verb (generally *sum*) to form the predicate, as in *caeca est*, 'is blind,' it is called a PREDICATE ADJECTIVE (360, note 1); but when it simply qualifies a noun, as in *vērae amīcitiae*, 'true friendships,' it is called an ATTRIBUTIVE ADJECTIVE.

3. AGREEMENT WITH CLAUSE, ETC.—An adjective may agree with any word or words used substantively, as a *pronoun, clause, infinitive*, etc.:

Quis clārior, who is more illustrious? Cic. *Certum est liberōs amāri, it is certain that children are loved.* Quint. See 42, note.

NOTE.—An adjective agreeing with a clause is sometimes plural, as in Greek:

Ut Aenōās jactētur nōta tibi, how Aeneas is tossed about is known to you. Verg.

4. A NEUTER ADJECTIVE used as a *substantive* sometimes supplies the place of a Predicate Adjective: ¹

Mors est extrēmum, death is the last thing. Cic. *Triste lupus stabulīs, a wolf is a sad thing for the flocks.* Verg.

5. A NEUTER ADJECTIVE WITH A GENITIVE is often used instead of an adjective with its noun, especially in the Nominative and Accusative:

*Multum operae, much service.*² Cic. *Id temporis, that time.*² Cic. *Vāna rērum, vain things.*² Hor. *Opāca viārum, dark streets.* Verg. *Strāta viārum, paved streets.* Verg. See also 397, 3, note 4.

6. SYNESIS.³—Sometimes the adjective or participle conforms to the *real meaning* of its noun, without regard to grammatical gender or number:

Pars certāre parātī, a part (some), prepared to contend. Verg. *Īnspēranti nōbīs, to us (me) not expecting it.* Catul. *Dēmōsthēns cum cēteris erant expulsi, Demosthenes with the others had been banished.* Nep.

¹ As in Greek: οὐκ ἀγαθὸν πολυκοινωνίη, *the rule of the many is not a good thing.*

² *Multum operae* = *multa opera* or *multam operam*; *id temporis* = *id tempus*; *vāna rērum* = *vānae rēs* or *vānās rēs*.

³ A construction according to sense; see 636, IV., 4.

⁴ *Parātī* is plural, to conform to the meaning of *pars*, 'part,' 'some,' plural in sense;

NOTE.—In the Ablative Absolute (431) *absente* and *praesente* occur in early Latin with a plural noun or pronoun :¹

Praesente ¹ *ibus* (*eīs*),² *in their presence* (lit., *they being present*). Plaut. *Praesente testibus*, *in the presence of witnesses*. Plaut.

7. AGREEMENT WITH ONE NOUN FOR ANOTHER.—When a noun governs another in the Genitive, an adjective belonging in sense to one of the two nouns, sometimes agrees with the other :

Mājōra (for *mājōrum*) *rerum initia*, *the beginnings of greater things*. Liv. *Cursus iustī* (*iustus*) *amnis*, *the regular course of the river*. Liv.

NOTE 1.—In the passive forms of verbs the *participle* sometimes agrees with a *predicate noun* or with an *appositive* ; see 462.

NOTE 2.—An adjective or participle predicated of an Accusative is sometimes attracted into the Nominative to agree with the subject :

Ostendit sē dextra (for *dextram*), *she shows herself favorable*. Verg.

439. An adjective or participle, belonging to TWO OR MORE NOUNS, may agree with them all *conjunctly*, or may agree with *one* and be understood with the others :

Castor et Pollux visī sunt, *Castor and Pollux were seen*. Cic. *Dubitāre visus est Sulpicius et Cotta*, *Sulpicius and Cotta seemed to doubt*. Cic. *Temeritās ignōratiōque vitiōsa est*, *rashness and ignorance are bad*. Cic.

1. The ATTRIBUTIVE ADJECTIVE generally agrees with the nearest noun :

Agri omnēs et maria, *all lands and seas*. Cic. *Cūncta maria terraeque*, *all seas and lands*. Sall.

2. A plural adjective or participle, agreeing with two or more NOUNS OF DIFFERENT GENDERS, is generally *masculine* when the nouns denote persons or sentient beings, and in other cases generally *neuter* :

Pater et māter mortuī sunt, *father and mother are dead*. Ter. *Honōrēs, victōriae fortuīta sunt*, *honors and victories are accidental things*. Cic. *Labor voluptāsque inter sē sunt iūncta*, *labor and pleasure are joined together*. Liv.

NOTE.—When nouns denoting *sentient beings* are combined with those denoting *things*, the plural adjective or participle in agreement with them sometimes takes the gender of the *former* and sometimes of the *latter*, and sometimes is *neuter* irrespective of the gender of the nouns :

Rēx rēgiaque clāssis profectī sunt, *the king and the royal fleet set out*. Liv. *Rēgem rēgnumque sua futūra sciunt*, *they know that the king and the kingdom will be theirs*. Liv. *Iniūica* ³ *inter sē sunt libera civitās et rēx*, *a free state and a king are hostile to each other*. Liv.

3. With nouns denoting inanimate objects, the adjective or participle is often neuter, irrespective of the gender of the nouns :

Labor et dolor sunt finitima, *labor and pain are kindred* (things). Cic.

īnspēranti is singular, because *nōvīs* is here applied to one person, *the speaker* (446, note 2) ; *expulsi* is plural, because *Dēmōsthenēs cum cēterīs* means *Demosthenes and the others*.

¹ In this construction *absente* and *praesente* appear to be treated as adverbs.

² See p. 78, foot-note 2.

³ Perhaps best explained *substantively*—*things hostile* ; see 438, 4.

Nox atque praeda hostis remorāta sunt, *night and plunder detained the enemy*. Sall.

4. TWO OR MORE ADJECTIVES in the singular may belong to a plural noun: *Prima et vicēsima legiōnēs*, *the first and the twentieth legions*. Tac.

NOTE.—In the same way two or more *praenōmina*¹ in the singular may be combined with a family name in the plural:

Gnaeus et Pūblius Scipionēs, *Gnaeus and Publius Scipio*. Cic. Pūblius et Servius Sullae, *Publius and Servius Sulla*. Sall.

USE OF ADJECTIVES.

440. The adjective in Latin corresponds in its general use to the adjective in English.

1. In Latin, as in English, an adjective may qualify the complex idea formed by a noun and another adjective:

Duae potentissimae gentēs, *two very powerful races*. Liv. *Māgnum aes aliēnum*, *a large debt*. Cic. *Nāvēs longās trīgintā veterēs*, *thirty old vessels of war*. Liv.²

NOTE.—In general no connective is used when adjectives are combined, as in *duae potentissimae gentēs*, etc.; but if the first adjective is *multi* or *plūrimī*, the connective is usually inserted:

Multae et māgnae cōgitationēs, *many great thoughts*. Cic. *Multa et praeclāra facinora*, *many illustrious deeds*. Sall.

2. PROLEPSIS OR ANTICIPATION.—An adjective is sometimes applied to a noun to denote the *result* of the action expressed by the verb:

*Submersās*³ *obruē* *puppēs*, *overwhelm and sink the ships* (lit., *overwhelm the sunken ships*). Verg. *Scūta latentia*³ *condunt*, *they conceal their hidden shields*. Verg.

NOTE 1.—Certain adjectives often designate a PARTICULAR PART of an object: *prīma nox*, the first part of the night; *mediū aestāte*, in the middle of summer; *summus mōns*, the top (highest part) of the mountain.

NOTE 2.—The adjectives thus used are *prīmus*, *medius*, *ūltimus*, *extrēmus*, *postrēmus*, *intimus*, *summus*, *infīmus*, *imū*, *suprēmus*, *rēliquus*, *cētera*, etc.

NOTE 3.—In the poets, in Livy, and in late prose writers, the neuter of these adjectives with a Genitive sometimes occurs:

Libyae extrēma, *the frontiers of Libya*. Verg. *Ad ūltimum inopiāe* (*for ad ūltimam inopiām*), *to extreme destitution*. Liv.

NOTE 4.—Adjectives are often combined with *Rēs*: *rēs adversae*, adversity; *rēs secundae*, prosperity; *rēs novae*, revolution; *rēs pūblica*, republic.

¹ For Roman names, see 649.

² Here *duae* qualifies not simply *gentēs*, but *potentissimae gentēs*; *māgnum* qualifies *aes aliēnum*, 'debt' (lit., *money belonging to another*); *veterēs* qualifies *nāvēs longās*, 'vessels of war' (lit., 'long vessels'), while *trīgintā* qualifies the still more complex expression, *nāvēs longās veterēs*.

³ Observe that *submersās* gives the *result* of the action denoted by *obruē*, and is not applicable to *puppēs* until that action is performed; *latentia* likewise gives the *result* of *condunt*.

441. Adjectives and participles are often used SUBSTANTIVELY :¹

Bonī, the good ; *mortāles*, mortals ; *doctī*, the learned ; *sapientēs*, the wise ; *multī*, many persons ; *multa*, many things ; *praefectus*, a prefect ;² *nātus*, a son.³

1. In the plural, masculine adjectives and participles often designate PERSONS, and neuter adjectives THINGS : *fortēs*, the brave ; *divitēs*, the rich ; *pauperēs*, the poor ; *multī*, many ; *paucī*, few ; *omnēs*, all ; *meī*, my friends ; *discentēs*, learners ; *spectantēs*, spectators ; *futūra*, future events ; *ūtīlia*, useful things ; *mea*, *nostra*, my things, our things ; *omnia*, all things ; *haec*, *illa*, these things, those things.

2. In the singular, adjectives and participles are occasionally used SUBSTANTIVELY, especially in the Genitive, or in the Accusative or Ablative with a preposition : *doctus*, a learned man ; *adulescēns*, a young man ; *vērū*, a true thing, the truth ; *falsū*, a falsehood ; *nihil sincērī*, nothing of sincerity, nothing sincere ; *nihil humānī*, nothing human ; *nihil reliquī*, nothing left ;³ *aliquid novī*, something new ; *ā primō*, from the beginning ; *ad extrēmum*, to the end ; *ad summū*, to the highest point ; *dē integrō*, afresh ; *dē imprōvisō*, unexpectedly ; *ex aequō*, in like manner ; *in praesentī*, at present ; *in futurū*, for the future ; *prō certō*, as certain.⁴

NOTE 1.—For the neuter participle with *opus* and *ūsus*, see 414, IV., note 8.

NOTE 2.—For the use of adjectives instead of nouns in the Genitive, see 395, note 2.

3. A few substantives are sometimes used as adjectives, especially verbal nouns in *tor* and *triv* :⁵ *victor exercitus*, a victorious army ; *homō gladiātōr*, a gladiator, a gladiatorial man ; *victoriōs Athēnae*, victorious (conquering) Athens ; *populus latē rēx*, a people of extensive sway.⁶

442. EQUIVALENT TO A CLAUSE.—Adjectives, like nouns in apposition, are sometimes equivalent to clauses :

Nēmō saltat sōbrius, no one dances when he is sober, or when sober. Cic. *Hortēnsium vivum amāvī*, I loved Hortensius, while he was alive. Cic. *Homō nūquam sōbrius*, a man who is never sober. Cic.

NOTE.—*Prior*, *primus*, *ūltimus*, *postrēmus*, are often best rendered by a relative clause : *Primus mōrem solvit*, he was the first who broke the custom.⁷ Liv.

443. ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS.—Adjectives are sometimes used where our idiom employs adverbs :

Sōcratēs venēnum laetus hausit, Socrates CHEERFULLY drank the poison. Sen. *Senātus frequēns convēnit*, the senate assembled IN GREAT NUMBERS. Cic. *Rōscius erat Rōmae frequēns*, Roscius was frequently at Rome. Cic.

¹ That is, words which were originally adjectives or participles sometimes become substantives ; indeed, many substantives were originally adjectives ; see 323, foot-note ; 324, foot-note.

² *Praefectus*, from *praeficiō* (lit., one appointed over) ; *nātus*, from *nāscor* (lit., one born).

³ See 397, 1. For *nihil reliquī facere*, see 401, note 4.

⁴ Numerous adverbial expressions are thus formed by combining the neuter of adjectives with prepositions.

⁵ That is, these words are generally substantives, but sometimes adjectives.

⁶ See Verg., Aen., I., 21.

⁷ With the adverb *primū* the thought would be, he first broke the custom (i. e., before doing anything else). Compare the corresponding distinction between the Greek adjective *πρῶτος* and the adverb *πρῶτον*.

NOTE 1.—The adjectives chiefly thus used are—(1) Those expressive of joy, knowledge, and their opposites: *laetus, libens, invitus, tristis, sciens, insciens, prudens, imprudens*, etc. (2) *Nullus, solus, totus, unus; prior, primus, propior, proximius*, etc.

NOTE 2.—In the poets a few adjectives of time and place are used in the same manner: *Domesticus otior, I idle about home. Hor. Vespertinus pete tectum, at evening seek your abode. Hor.*

NOTE 3.—In rare instances adverbs seem to supply the place of adjectives:

Omnia recte sunt, all things are right. Cic. Non ignari sumus ante malorum,¹ we are not ignorant of PAST misfortunes. Verg. Nunc hominum¹ morēs, the character of men OF THE PRESENT DAY. Plaut.

NOTE 4.—Numeral adverbs often occur with titles of office: ²

Flaminius, cōsul iterum, Flaminius, when consul for the second time. Cic.

444. A COMPARISON between two objects requires the comparative degree; between more than two, the superlative:

Prior hōrum, the former of these (two). Nep. Gallōrum fortissimī, the bravest of the Gauls. Caes.

1. The comparative sometimes has the force of TOO, UNUSUALLY, SOMEWHAT, and the superlative, the force of VERY: *doctior, too learned, or somewhat learned; doctissimus, very learned.*

NOTE.—Certain superlatives are common as titles of honor: *clārissimus, nōbilissimus*, and *summus*—especially applicable to men of consular or senatorial rank; *fortissimus, honestissimus, illustrissimus*, and *splendidissimus*—especially applicable to those of the equestrian order.

2. COMPARATIVE AFTER QUAM.—When an object is said to possess one quality in a higher degree than another, the two adjectives thus used either may be connected by *magis quam*³ or may both be put in the comparative:⁴

Disertus magis quam sapiens, more fluent than wise.³ Cic. Praeclārum magis quam difficile, more noble than difficult, or noble rather than difficult. Cic. Ditiōrēs quam fortiōrēs, more wealthy than brave.⁴ Liv. Clārīor quam grātior, more illustrious than pleasing. Liv.

NOTE 1.—In a similar manner two adverbs may be connected by *magis quam*, or may both be put in the comparative:

Magis audācter quam parātē, with more audacity than preparation. Cic. Bellum fortius quam felicius gerere, to wage war with more valor than success. Liv.

NOTE 2.—The form with *magis*, both in adjectives and in adverbs, may sometimes be best rendered *rather than*:

Ars magis magna quam difficilis, an art extensive rather than difficult. Cic. See also the second example under 2, above.

NOTE 3.—In the later Latin the *positive* sometimes follows *quam*, even when the regular *comparative* precedes, and sometimes *two positives* are used:

Vehementius quam cautō appetere, to seek more eagerly than cautiously. Tac. Clārīs quam vetustis, illustrious rather than ancient. Tac.

NOTE 4.—For the use of *comparatives* before *quam* *prō*, see 417, 1, note 5.

¹ Like the Greek τῶν πλὴν κακῶν and τῶν νῦν ἀνθρώπων.

² The want of a present participle in the verb *sum* brings these adverbs into close connection with nouns.

³ As in English, *more fluent than wise*. This is the usual method in Cicero.

⁴ As in Greek, πλείους ἢ βελτίους, *more numerous than good*. This method, common in Livy, is rare in the earlier writers.

3. **STRENGTHENING WORDS.**—Comparatives and superlatives are often strengthened by a preposition with its case, as by *ante*, *prae*, *praeter*, *suprà* (417, 1, note 3). Comparatives are also often strengthened by *etiam*, even, still; *multò*, much; and superlatives by *longè*, *multò*, by far, much; *vel*, even; *únus*, *únus omnium*, alone, alone of all, without exception, far, by far; *quam*, *quam* or *quantus* with the verb *possum*, as possible; *tam quam quí*, *ut quí*, as possible (lit., as *he who*):

Mājorēs etiam varietātēs, even greater varieties. Cic. *Multò etiam gravius queritur*, he complains even much more bitterly. Caes. *Multò máxima pars*, by far the largest part. Cic. *Quam saepissimè*, as often as possible. Cic. *Ūnus omnium doctissimus*, without exception the most learned of men. Cic. *Rēs ūna omnium difficillima*, a thing by far the most difficult of all. Cic. *Quam máximae cōpiae*, forces as large as possible. Sall. *Quantam máximam potest vastitātem ostendit*, he exhibits the greatest possible desolation (lit., as great as the greatest he can). Liv.

CHAPTER IV.

SYNTAX OF PRONOUNS.

RULE XXXV.—Agreement of Pronouns.

445. A pronoun agrees with its antecedent in GENDER, NUMBER, and PERSON:

Animal *quoa* sanguinem habet, an animal which has blood. Cic. Ego, *quí* tē cōfirmō, I who encourage you. Cic. Vis est in virtūtibus, *eās* excitā, there is strength in virtues, arouse THEM. Cic.

NOTE.—The antecedent is the word or words to which the pronoun refers, and whose place it supplies. Thus, in the examples under the rule, *animal* is the antecedent of *quod*; *ego*, of *quí*; and *virtūtibus*, of *eās*.

1. This rule applies to all pronouns when used as nouns. Pronouns used as adjectives conform to the rule for adjectives; see 433.

2. When the antecedent is a demonstrative in agreement with a personal pronoun, the relative agrees with the latter:

Tū es qui mē ornāstī, you are the one who commended me. Cic.

3. When a relative, or other pronoun, refers to TWO OR MORE ANTECEDENTS, it generally agrees with them conjointly, but it sometimes agrees with the nearest or the most important:

*Pietās, virtūs, fidēs, quārum*¹ *Rōmae templa sunt*, piety, virtue, and faith, whose temples are at Rome. Cic. *Peccātum ac culpa, quae*,¹ error and fault, WHICH. Cic.

¹ *Quārum* agrees with *pietās, virtūs, and fidēs* conjointly, and is accordingly in the plural; but *quae* agrees simply with *culpa*.

NOTE 1.—With antecedents of *different genders*, the pronoun conforms in gender to the rule for adjectives (439, 2 and 3):

Pueri mulierisque qui,¹ boys and women who. Caes. Incōstantia et temeritās, quae¹ digna nōn sunt deō, inconstancy and rashness which are not worthy of a god. Cic.

NOTE 2.—With antecedents of *different persons*, the pronoun prefers the first person to the second, and the second to the third, conforming to the rule for verbs (463, 1):

Ego ac tū inter nōs² loquimur, you and I converse together. Tac. Et tū et collēgae tu, qui² spērāstis, both you and your colleagues, who hoped. Cic.

4. By ATTRACTION, a pronoun sometimes agrees with a PREDICATE NOUN or an APPOSITIVE instead of the antecedent:

Animal quem (for quod) vocāmus hominem, the animal which we call man.³ Cic. Thēbae, quod (quae) caput est, Thebes, which is the capital. Liv. Ea (id) erat cōfessiō, THAT (i. e., the action referred to) was a confession. Liv. Flūmen Rhēnus, qui, the river Rhine, WHICH. Caes.

5. By SYNESIS, the pronoun is sometimes construed according to the real meaning of the antecedent, without regard to grammatical form; and sometimes it refers to the class of objects to which the antecedent belongs:

Quia fessum militem habebat, hīs quietem dedit, as he had an exhausted soldiery, he gave them (THESE) a rest. Liv. Equitatus, qui viderunt, the cavalry who saw. Caes. Dē aliā rē, quod ad mē attinet, in regard to another thing which pertains to me. Plaut. Eārum rerum utrumque, EACH of these things. Cic. Dēmocritum omittāmus; apud istōs; let us omit Democritus; with SUCH (i. e., as he). Cic.

6. ANTECEDENT OMITTED.—The antecedent of the relative is often omitted when it is indefinite, is a demonstrative pronoun, or is implied in a possessive pronoun, or in an adjective:

Sunt qui cēseant, there are some who think. Cic. Terra reddit quod accēpit, the earth returns what it has received. Cic. Vestrā, qui cum integritate vixistis, hōc interest, this interests you who have lived with integrity. Cic. Servilis tumultus quōs, the revolt of the slaves whom. Caes.

7. CLAUSE AS ANTECEDENT.—When the antecedent is a sentence or clause, the pronoun, unless attracted (445, 4), is in the Neuter Singular, but the relative generally adds *id* as an appositive to such antecedent:

Nōs, id quod dēbet, patria dēlectat, our country delights us, as it ought (lit., that which it owes). Cic. Rēgem, quod nūquam antea acciderat, necāverunt, they put their king to death, which had never before happened. Cic.

8. RELATIVE ATTRACTED.—The relative is sometimes attracted into the case of the antecedent, and sometimes agrees with the antecedent repeated:

Jūdice quō (for quem) nōstī, the judge whom you know. Hor. Diēs instat,

¹ Qui agrees with *pueri* and *mulierēs* conjointly, and is in the masculine, according to 439, 2; but *quae* is in the neuter, according to 439, 3.

² Nōs, referring to *ego ac tū*, is in the first person; while *qui*, referring to *tū et collēgae*, is in the second person, as is shown by the verb *spērāstis*.

³ In these examples, the pronouns *quem*, *quod*, and *ea* are attracted, to agree with their predicate nouns, *hominem*, *caput*, and *cōfessiō*; but *qui* agrees with the appositive, *Rhēnus*.

quō diē, *the day is at hand, on which day.* Caes. Cūmae, quam urbem tenēbant, *Cumae, which city they held.* Liv.

9. ANTECEDENT ATTRACTED.—In poetry, rarely in prose, the antecedent is sometimes attracted into the case of the relative; and sometimes incorporated in the relative clause with the relative in agreement with it:

Urbem, quam statuō, vestra est, *the city which I am building is yours.* Verg.¹ Malārum, quās amor cūrās habet, oblivisci (for malārum cūrārum quās), *to forget the wretched cares which love has.* Hor.¹ Quōs vōs implōrāre debētis, ut, quam urbem pulcherrimam esse voluerunt, hanc² dēfendant, *these (lit., whom) you ought to implore to defend this city, which they wished to be most beautiful.* Cic.

USE OF PRONOUNS.

446. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.—The Nominative of Personal Pronouns is used only for emphasis or contrast :³

Significāmus quid sentiāmus, *we show what we think.* Cic. Ego rēgēs ejēci, vōs tyrannōs intrōducitis, *I have banished kings, you introduce tyrants.* Cic.

NOTE 1.—With *quidem* the pronoun is usually expressed, but not with *equidem*:

Facis amicē tū quidem, *you act indeed in a friendly manner.* Cic. Nōn dubitā-
jam equidem, *I did not doubt indeed.* Cic.

NOTE 2.—A writer sometimes speaks of himself in the plural, using *nōs* for *ego*, *nos-
ter* for *meus*, and the plural verb for the singular:

Vidēs nōs (for *mē*) multa cōnārī, *you see that we (for I) are attempting many things.* Cic. Sermō explicābit nostram (for *meam*) sententiam, *the conversation will unfold our (my) opinion.* Cic. Dīximus (for *dīxī*) multa, *I have said many things.* Cic.⁴

NOTE 3.—*Nostrī* and *vestrī* are generally used in an objective sense; *nostrū* and *vestrū* in a partitive sense:

Habētis ducem memorem *vestrī*, *you have a leader mindful of your interests (of you).* Cic. Minus habeo virium quam *vestrū* utervis, *I have less strength than either of you.* Cic. Quis *nostrū*, *who of us?* Cic.

NOTE 4.—With *ab*, *ad*, or *apud*, a personal pronoun may designate the residence or abode of a person:

Ā nobīs egreditur, *he is coming from our house.* Ter. Vēni ad *mē*, *I came to my house.* Cic. Eāmus ad *mē*, *let us go to my house.* Ter. Apud *tē* est, *he is at your house.* Cic. Rūri apud *sē* est, *he is at his residence in the country.* Cic. See also 433, I., *ad*, *apud*, etc.

447. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS, when not emphatic, are seldom expressed, if they can be supplied from the context:

Manūs lavā, *wash your hands.* Cic. Mihī mea vīta cāra est, *my life is dear to me.*⁵ Plaut.

¹ For other examples, see Verg., Aen., V., 28–30; Hor., Sat., I., 10, 16.

² *Quam urbem, hanc* = *hanc urbem, quam.*

³ The learner will remember that a pronominal subject is actually contained in the ending of the verb; see 368, 2, foot-note.

⁴ For other examples, see Hor., Sat., I., 9, 7, and Car., I., 82.

⁵ In this example *mea* is expressed for emphasis.

NOTE 1.—Possessive Pronouns sometimes mean *favorable, propitious*, as *aliēnus* often means *unfavorable* :

Tempore tuō pūgnāstī, *you fought at a favorable time*. Liv. Ferunt sua flāmina clāssēm, *favorable winds bear the fleet*. Verg. Aliēnō locō proelium committunt, *they engage in battle in an unfavorable place*. Caes.

NOTE 2.—For the Possessive Pronoun in combination with a Genitive, see 398, 8. For certain other uses of Possessives, see 396, II., N.; III., N. 2.

448. REFLEXIVE USE OF PRONOUNS.—*Suī* and *suus* have a reflexive sense ;¹ sometimes also the other personal and possessive pronouns :

Miles sē ipsum interfēcit, *the soldier killed himself*. Tac. Tēlō sē dēfendit, *he defends himself with a weapon*. Cic. Suā vī movētur, *he is moved by his own power*. Cic. Mē cōsōlor, *I console myself*. Cic. Vōs vestra tēcta dēfendite, *defend your houses*. Cic.

NOTE.—*Inter nōs, inter vōs, inter sē*, have a reciprocal force, *each other, one another, together*; but instead of *inter sē*, the noun may be repeated in an oblique case :

Colloquimur inter nōs, *we converse together*. Cic. Amant inter sē, *they love one another*. Cic. Hominēs hominibus ūtilēs sunt, *men are useful to men* (i. e., to each other). Cic.

449. *Suī* and *suus* generally refer to the Subject of the clause in which they stand :

Sē diligit, *he loves himself*. Cic. Jūstitia propter sēsē colenda est, *justice should be cultivated for its own sake*. Cic. Annulum suum dedit, *he gave his ring*. Nep. Per sē sibi quisque cārus est, *every one is in his very nature through or in himself* dear to himself. Cic.

1. In SUBORDINATE CLAUSES expressing the sentiment of the principal subject, *suī* and *suus* generally refer to that subject :

Sentit animus sē vī suā movērī, *the mind perceives that it is moved by its own power*. Cic. Ā mē petivit ut sēcum essem, *he asked (from) me to be with him* (that I would be). Cic. Pervestigat quid suī civēs cōgitent, *he tries to ascertain what his fellow-citizens think*. Cic.

1) As *suī* and *suus* thus refer to subjects, the demonstratives, *is, ille*, etc., generally refer either to other words, or to subjects which do not admit *suī* and *suus* :

Deum agnōscis ex ejus operibus, *you recognize a god by (from) his works*. Cic. Obligat civitātem nihil eōs mutātūrōs, *he binds the state not to change anything* (that they will). Just.

2) In some subordinate clauses the writer may at pleasure use either the reflexive or the demonstrative, according as he wishes to present the thought as that of the principal subject, or as his own :

Persuādēt Tulingis utī cum his² proficiscantur, *they persuade the Tulingi to depart with them*. Caes.

3) Sometimes reflexives and demonstratives are used without any apparent distinction :

¹ *Suī*, of himself; *sibi*, for himself; *sē*, himself.

² Here *cum iis* is the proper language for the writer without reference to the sentiment of the principal subject; *sēcum*, which would be equally proper, would present the thought as the sentiment of that subject.

Caesar Fabium cum legiōne suā¹ remittit, *Caesar sends back Fabius and (with) his legion.* Caes. Omittō Isocratem discipulōsque ejus,¹ *I omit Isocrates and his disciples.* Cic.

2. SUUS, in the sense of HIS OWN, FITTING, etc., may refer to subject or object:

Jūstitia suum cuique tribuit, *justice gives to every man his due (his own).* Cic.

3. SYNESIS.—When the subject of the verb is not the real agent of the action, *suū* and *suus* refer to the agent:

Ā Caesare invitōr sibi ut sim lēgātus, *I am invited by Caesar (real agent) to be his lieutenant.* Cic.

4. THE PLURAL OF SUUS, meaning HIS FRIENDS, THEIR FRIENDS, THEIR POSSESSIONS, etc., is used with great freedom, often referring to oblique cases:

Fuit hōc lūctuosum suīs, *this was afflicting to his friends.*² Cic.

5. SUĪ and SUUS sometimes refer to an omitted subject:

Dēforme est dē sē praedicāre, *to boast of one's self is disgusting.* Cic.

6. TWO REFLEXIVES.—Sometimes a clause has one reflexive referring to the principal subject, and another referring to the subordinate subject:

Respondit nēmīnem sēcum sine suā perniciē contendisse, *he replied that no one had contended with him without (his) destruction.*³ Caes.

450. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.—*Hīc*, *iste*, *ille*, are often called respectively demonstratives of the First, Second, and Third Persons, as *hīc* designates that which is near the speaker; *iste*, that which is near the person addressed; and *ille*, that which is remote from both:

Cūstōs hūjus urbis, *the guardian of this city* (i. e., of our city). Cic. Mūtā istam mentem, *change that purpose of yours.* Cic. Ista quae sunt ā tē dicta, *those things which were spoken by you.* Cic. Sī illōs, quōs vidēre nōn possumus, negligis, *if you disregard those (far away, yonder) whom we can not see.* Cic.

1. *Hīc* designates an object conceived as near, and *ille* as remote, whether in space, time, or thought:

Nōn antiquō illō mōre, sed hōc nostrō fuit ēruditus, *he was educated, not in that ancient, but in this our modern way.* Cic. Hōc illud fuit, *was it (that) this?* Verg.

NOTE.—The idea of contempt often implied in clauses with *iste* is not strictly contained in the pronoun itself, but derived from the context:⁴

Animi est ista mollitiēs, nōn virtūs, *that is an effeminate spirit, not valor.* Caes.

¹ Observe that the reflexive is used in the first example, and the demonstrative in the second, though the cases are entirely alike.

² Here *suīs* refers to an oblique case in the preceding sentence.

³ Here *sē* refers to the subject of *respondit*, and *suā* to *nēmīnem*, the subject of the subordinate clause.

⁴ The idea of contempt is readily explained by the fact that *iste* is often applied to the views of an opponent, to a defendant before a court of justice, and the like.

2. **FORMER AND LATTER.**—In reference to two objects previously mentioned, (1) *hic* generally follows *ille* and refers to the *latter* object, while *ille* refers to the *former*; but (2) *hic* may precede and may refer to the *former*, and *ille* refer to the *latter*:

Inimicī, amicī; illī, hī, *enemies, friends; the former, the latter*. Cic. Certa pax, spērāta victōria; haec (pax) in tuā, illa in deōrum potestāte est, *sure peace, hoped-for victory; the former is in your power, the latter in the power of the gods*. Liv.

NOTE.—*Hic* refers to the *former* object, when that object is conceived of as *nearer in thought*, either because of its importance, or because of its *close connection* with the subject under discussion.¹

3. *Hic* and *ille* are often used of what immediately follows in discourse:

Hic verbis epistolam misit, *he sent a letter in these words* (i. e., in the following words). Nep. Illud intellegō, omnium ōra in mē conversa esse, *tho' I understand, that the eyes of all are turned upon me*. Sall.

4. *Ille* is often used of what is **WELL KNOWN, FAMOUS**:

Mēdēa illa, *that well-known Medea*. Cic. Ego, ille ferōx, tacuī, *I, that haughty one, was silent*. Ovid.

NOTE 1.—*Hic* is sometimes equivalent to *meus* or *noster*, rarely to *ego*, and *hic* homō to *ego*:

Suprā hanc memoriā, *before our time* (lit., *before this memory*). Cic. His meis litteris, *with this letter of mine* (from me). Cic. Hic homō est omnium hominum, etc., *of all men I am*, etc. (lit., *this man is*). Plaut.

NOTE 2.—*Hic, ille*, and *is* are sometimes redundant, especially with *quidem*:

Scipiō nōn multum ille dicebat, *Scipio did not indeed say much*. Cic. Graeci volūnt illi quidem, *the Greeks indeed desire it*. Cic. Ista tranquillitās ea ipsa est beāta vīta, *that tranquillity is itself a happy life*.² Cic.

NOTE 3.—A demonstrative or relative is sometimes equivalent to a Genitive, or to a preposition with its case: *hic amor* = *amor huius rei*, 'the love of this'; *haec cūra* = *cūra de hoc*, 'care concerning this.'

NOTE 4.—Adverbs derived from demonstrative pronouns share the distinctive meanings of the pronouns themselves:

Hic plūs mali est, quam illic boni, *there is more of evil here, than of good there*. Ter. See also 304; 305.

451. *Is* and *īdem* refer to preceding nouns, or are the antecedents of relatives:

Dionysius aufūgit, *is est in prōvinciā, Dionysius has fled, he is in the province*. Cic. Is qui satis habet, *he who has enough*. Cic. Eadem audire mālunt, *they prefer to hear the same things*. Liv.

1. The pronoun *is*, the weakest of the demonstratives, is often understood, especially before a relative or a Genitive:

Flēbat pater de filiī morte, de patris filius, *the father wept over the death of the son, the son over (that) of the father*. Cic. See also 445, 6.

¹ Thus, in the last example, *haec* refers to *certa pax* as the more prominent object in the mind of the speaker, as he is setting forth the *advantages* of a *sure peace* over a *hoped-for victory*.

² For other examples, see Verg., Aen., I., 8; III., 490; and XI., 809. For the use of personal pronouns with *quidem*, see 446, note 1.

2. *Is*, with a conjunction, is often used for emphasis, like the English, *and that too* and *that indeed* :

Ūnam rem explicābō, eamque mǎximam, *one thing I will explain, and that too a most important one*. Cic. Audire Cratippum, idque Athēnīs, *to hear Cratippus, and that too at Athens*.¹ Cic.

3. *Idem* is sometimes best rendered *also*, *at the same time*, *at once*, *both*, *yet* :

Nihil ūtile, quod non idem honestum, *nothing useful, which is not also honorable*. Cic. Cum dicat, negat idem, *though he asserts, he yet denies* (the same denies). Cic. Rēx Anius, rēx idem hominum Phœbique sacerdos, *King Anius, both king of men and priest of Apollo*. Verg.

4. *Is—quī* means *he—who, such—as, such—that* :

Ū sumus, quī esse debēmus, *we are such as we ought to be*. Cic. Ea est gēns quae nesciat, *the race is such that it knows not*. Liv.

5. *Idem—quī* means *the same—who, the same—as* ; *idem—ac* (atque, et, que), *idem—ut*, *idem—cum* with the Ablative, *the same—as* :

Eīdem mōrēs, quī, *the same manners which or as*. Cic. Est idem ac fuit, *he is the same as he was*. Ter. Eōdem mēcum patre genitus, *the son of the same father as I* (with me). Tac.

6. For the DISTINCTION BETWEEN *IS* and *SUĪ* in subordinate clauses, see 449, 1, 2).

452. *Ipsē* adds emphasis, generally rendered *self* :

Ipsē Pater fulmina molitur, *the Father himself* (Jupiter) *hurls the thunderbolts*. Verg. *Ipsē* dixit, *he himself said it*. Cic. *Ipsē* Caesar, *Caesar himself*. Cic. Fac ut tē ipsum cūstodiās, *see that you guard yourself*. Cic.

1. *Ipsē* belongs to the emphatic word, whether subject or object, but with a preference for the subject :

Mē ipse cōsolor, *I myself* (not another) *console myself*. Cic. *Ipsē* sē quisque diligit, *every one* (himself) *loves himself*. Cic. Sē ipsum interfecit, *he killed himself*. Tac.

NOTE.—*Ipsē* is sometimes accompanied by *sēcum*, 'with himself,' 'alone,' or by *per sē*, 'by himself,' 'unaided,' 'in and of himself,' etc. :

Aliud genitor sēcum ipse volūtat, *the father* (Jupiter) *himself alone ponders another plan*. Verg. Quod est rēctum ipsumque per sē laudābile, *which is right, and in and of itself praiseworthy*. Cic.

2. *Ipsē* is often best rendered by *very* :

Ipsē ille Gorgiās, *that very Gorgias*. Cic.

3. With numerals, *ipse* means *just so many, just*; so also in *nunc ipsum*, 'just at this time'; *tum ipsum*, 'just at that time' :

Trigintā diēs ipsī, *just thirty days*. Cic. Nunc ipsum sine tē esse nōn possum, *just at this time I cannot be without you*. Cic.

4. *Ipsē* in the Genitive with possessives has the force of *own, one's own* :

Nostra ipsōrum amicitia, *our own friendship*. Cic. See 398, 3.

5. *Ipsē* in a subordinate clause sometimes refers to the principal subject, like an emphatic *eui* or *suus* :

Lēgātōs misit quī ipsī vitam peterent, *he sent messengers to ask life for himself*. Sall.

6. *Et ipse* and *ipse quoque* may often be rendered *also, likewise, even he* :³

Alius Achillēs nātus et ipse deā, *another Achilles likewise* (lit., *himself also*) *born of a goddess*. Verg.

¹ *Id*, thus used, often refers to a clause, or to the general thought, as in this example.

² Applied to Pythagoras by his disciples. *Ipsē* is often thus used of a *superior*, as of a *master, teacher*, etc.

³ Compare the Greek καὶ αὐτός.

7. For the use of the Nominative *ipse* in connection with the Ablative Absolute, see 431, note 3.

453. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.—The relative is often used where the English idiom requires a demonstrative or personal pronoun ; sometimes even at the beginning of a sentence :

Rēs loquitur ipsa, quae semper valet, the fact itself speaks, and this (which) ever has weight. Cic. *Quī proelium committunt, they engage in battle.* Caes. *Quae cum ita sint, since these things are so.* Cic.

1. RELATIVES and DEMONSTRATIVES are often correlatives to each other. *hic—quī, iste—quī, etc.* These combinations generally retain the ordinary force of the separate words, but see *is—quī, idem—quī, 451, 4 and 5.*

NOTE.—The neuter *quidquid*,¹ accompanied by an adjective, a participle, or a Genitive, may be used of persons :

Mātrēs et quidquid tecum invalidum est dēlige, select the mothers and whatever feeble persons there are with you (lit, whatever there is with you feeble). Verg. *Quidquid erat patrum, whatever fathers there were.* Liv. See also 397, 3, note 5.

2. In TWO SUCCESSIVE CLAUSES, the *relative* may be—(1) expressed in both, (2) expressed in the first and omitted in the second, (3) expressed in the first and followed by a demonstrative in the second .

Nōs quī sermōnī nōn interfuissemus et quibŭs Cotta sententiās trādidisset, we who had not been present at the conversation, and to whom Cotta had reported the opinions. Cic. *Dumnorix quī principātum obtinēbat ac plēbī acceptus erat, Dumnorix, who held the chief authority, and who was acceptable to the common people.* Caes. *Quae nec habērēmus nec hī ūtērēmur, which we should neither have nor use.* Cic.

NOTE 1.—Several relatives may appear in successive clauses :

Omnēs quī vestitum, quī tēcta, quī cultum vitae, quī praesidia contrā ferās invēnērunt, all who introduced (invented) clothing, houses, the refinements of life, protection against wild beasts. Cic.

NOTE 2.—A relative clause with *is* is often equivalent to a substantive : *ī quī audiunt = auditōrēs, 'hearers.'*

3. TWO RELATIVES sometimes occur in the same clause :

Artēs quās quī tenent, arts, whose possessors (which who possess). Cic.

4. A RELATIVE CLAUSE is sometimes equivalent to the Ablative with *prō* :

Spērō, quae tua prūdētia est, tē valēre, I hope you are well, such is your prudence (which is, etc.). Cic.

NOTE.—*Quae tua prūdētia est = quā es prūdētiū = prō tuā prūdētiū, means such is your prudence, or you are of such prudence, or in accordance with your prudence, etc.*

5. RELATIVE WITH ADJECTIVE.—Adjectives belonging in sense to the antecedent, especially comparatives, superlatives, and numerals, sometimes stand in the relative clause in agreement with the relative :

Vāsa, quae pulcherrima viderat, the most beautiful vessels which he had seen (vessels, which the most beautiful he had seen). Cic. *Dē servis suis, quem habuit fidēlissimum, misit. he sent the most faithful of the slaves that he had.* Nep.

6. The neuter, *quod*, used as an adverbial Accusative, often stands at the beginning

¹ Of the general or indefinite relative *quisquis*.

of a sentence or clause, especially before *sī, nē, nisi, etsī*, and sometimes before *quia, quoniam, utinam*, etc., to indicate a close connection with what precedes. In translating it is sometimes best omitted, and sometimes best rendered by *now, in fact, but, and*:

Quod *sī* ceciderint, *but if they should fall*.¹ Cic. Quod *sī* ego rescivissem id prius, *now if I had learned this sooner*.¹ Ter.

7. *Quī dicitur, quī vocatur*, or the corresponding active, *quem dicunt, quem vocant* are often used in the sense of *so-called, the so-called, what they or you call*, etc.:

Vestra quae dicitur *vīta*, mors est, *your so-called life* (lit., *your, which is called life*) is death. Cic. *Lēx ista quam vocās nōn est lēx*, *that law, as you call it, is not a law*. Cic.

454. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.—The Interrogative *quis* is used substantively; *quī*, adjectively:

Quis ego sum, *who am I*? Cic. Quid faciet, *what will he do*? Cic. Quī vir fuit, *what kind of a man was he*? Cic.

1. Occasionally *quis* is used adjectively and *quī* substantively:

Quis rēx unquam fuit, *what king was there ever*? Cic. Quī sis, cōsiderā, *consider who you are*. Cic.

NOTE.—The neuter, *quid*, is sometimes used of persons; see 397, 3, note 5.

2. QUID, *why, how is it that*, etc., is often used adverbially (378, 2), or stands apparently unconnected:² *quid*, 'why?' 'what?' *quid enim*, 'why then?' 'what then?' 'what indeed?' *quid ita*, 'why so?' *quid quod*, 'what of the fact that?' *quid sī*, 'what if?':

Quid vēnistī, *why have you come*? Plaut. Quid enim? metusne conturbet, *what then? would fear disturb us*? Cic. Quid quod delectantur, *what of the fact that they are delighted*? Cic.

3. TWO INTERROGATIVES sometimes occur in the same clause:

Quis quem frandāvit, *who defrauded, and whom did he defraud* (lit., *who defrauded whom*)? Cic.

4. *Tantus* sometimes accompanies the interrogative pronoun:

Quae fuit unquam in ūllō homine tanta cōstantia, *was there ever so great constancy in any man*? Cic.

455. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.³—*Aliquis, quis, quī*, and *quispiam*, are all indefinite—*some one, any one*:

Est aliquis, *there is some one*. Liv. Sēnsus aliquis esse potest, *there may be some sensation*. Cic. Dixit quis, *some one said*. Cic. Sī quis rēx, *if any king*. Cic. Alia rēs quaequam, *any other thing*. Cic.

1. *Quis* and *quī* are used chiefly after *sī, nisi, nē*, and *num*. *Aliquis* and *quis* are generally used substantively, *aliquī* and *quī* adjectively. *Aliquis* and *aliquī* after *sī, nisi*, etc., are emphatic:

Sī est aliquī sēnsus in morte, *if there is any sensation whatever in death*. Cic.

2. *Nesciō quis* and *nesciō quī* often supply the place of indefinite pronouns:

¹ Here *quod* refers to something that precedes, and means *in reference to which*, *in reference to this*, *in this connection*, etc. For other examples, see Caesar, B. G., I., 14, and VII., 88.

² In some instances *quid* is readily explained by the *ellipsis* of some form of *dicō* or of *sum*.

³ For a full illustration of the use of indefinite pronouns, see Draeger, I., pp. 87–108.

Nesciō quis loquitur, *some one speaks* (lit., *I know not who speaks, or one speaks, I know not who*). Plaut. Nesciō quid mihi animus praesāgit malī, *my mind forebodes some evil* (191, note). Ter.

456. *Quīdam*, 'a certain one,' is less indefinite than *aliquis*:

Quīdam rhētor antiquus, *a certain ancient rhetorician*. Cic. Accurrit quīdam, *a certain one runs up*. Hor.

1. *Quīdam* with an adjective is sometimes used to qualify or soften the statement:

Iūstitia mirifica quaedam vidētur, justice seems somewhat wonderful. Cic.

2. *Quīdam* with *quasi*, and sometimes without it, has the force of *a certain, a kind of, as it were*:

Quasi alumna quaedam, a certain foster-child, as it were. Cic.

457. *Quisquam* and *ullus* are used chiefly in negative and conditional sentences, and in interrogative sentences implying a negative:

Neque mē quisquam agnōvit, nor did any one recognize me. Cic. *Si quisquam, if any one*. Cic. *Num cēnsēs ullum animal esse, do you think there is any animal?* Cic.

1. *Nēmō* is the negative of *quisquam*, and like *quisquam* is generally used substantively, rarely adjectively:

Nēmīnem laesit, he harmed no one. Cic. *Nēmō poēta, no poet*. Cic.

2. *Nūllus* is the negative of *ullus*, and is generally used adjectively, but it sometimes supplies the Genitive and Ablative of *nēmō*, which generally wants those cases:

Nūllum animal, no animal. Cic. *Nūllūs aurēs, the ears of no one*. Cic.

3. *Nūllus* and *nihil* are sometimes used for an emphatic *nōn*:

Nāllus vēnit, he did not come. Cic. *Mortuī nūlli sunt, the dead are not*. Cic.

458. *Quīvīs, quilibet*, 'any one whatever,' and *quisque*, 'every one,' 'each one,' are general indefinites (190):

Quaelibet rēs, anything. Cic. *Tuōrum quisque necessariōrum, each one of your friends*. Cic.

1. *Quisque* with superlatives and ordinals is generally best rendered by *all*, or by *ever, always*; with *primus* by *very, possible*:

Epicūrōs doctissimus quisque contemnit, all the most learned despise the Epicureans, or the most learned ever despise, etc. Cic. *Primō quōque diē, the earliest day possible, the very first*. Cic.

2. *Ut quisque—ita* with the superlative in both clauses is often best rendered, *the more—the more*:

Ut quisque sibi plūrimum cōfīdit, ita māximō excellit, the more one confides in one's self, the more one excels. Cic.

459. *Alius* means 'another, other'; *alter*, 'the one,' 'the other' (of two), 'the second,' 'a second.' They are often repeated: *alius—alius*, one—another; *aliū—aliū*, some—others; *alter—alter*, the one—the other; *alterī—alterī*, the one party—the other:

Lēgātōs alium ab aliō aggreditur, he tampers with the ambassadors one after another. Sall. *Alii glōriæ serviunt, aliī pecūniæ, some are slaves to glory, others to money*. Cic. *Quidquid negat alter, et alter, whatever one denies, the*

other denies. Hor. Alter erit Tiphys, *there will be a second Tiphys.* Verg. Tū nunc eris alter ab illō, *you will now be next after him.* Verg. Alteri dīmicant, alterī timent, *one party contends, the other fears.* Cic.

1. *Alius* or *alter* repeated in different cases, or combined with *aliūs* or *aliter*, often involves an ellipsis :

Alius aliā viā civitātem auxerunt, *they advanced the state, one in one way, another in another.* Liv. Aliter alii vivunt, *some live in one way, others in another.* Cic.

2. After *alius*, *aliter*, and the like, *atque*, *ac*, and *et* often mean *than* :

Nōn alius essem atque sum, *I would not be other than I am.* Cic.

3. When *alter*—*alter* refer to objects previously mentioned, the first *alter* usually refers to the latter object, but may refer to either :

Inimicus, competitor, cum alterō—cum alterō, *an enemy, a rival, with the latter—with the former.* Cic.

4. *Uterque* means *both, each of two*. In the plural it generally means *both, each of two parties*, but sometimes *both, each of two persons or things*; regularly so with nouns which are plural in form but singular in sense :

Utrique victōriam crudēlīter exercēbant, *both parties made a cruel use of victory* Sall. Palmās utrāque tetendit, *he extended both his hands.* Verg.

CHAPTER V.

SYNTAX OF VERBS.

SECTION I.

AGREEMENT OF VERBS.—USE OF VOICES.

RULE XXXVI.—Agreement of Verb with Subject.

460. A finite verb agrees with its subject in **NUMBER** and **PERSON** :

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made (built) the world.* Cic. Ego rēgēs ejēcī, vōs tyrannōs intrōdūcītis, *I have banished kings, you introduce tyrants.* Cic.

1. PARTICIPLES IN COMPOUND TENSES agree with the subject according to 438. See also 301, 1 and 2 :

Thēbānī accūsātī sunt, *the Thebans were accused.* Cic.

NOTE 1.—In the compound forms of the Infinitive, the participle in *um* sometimes occurs without any reference to the gender or number of the subject :

Diffidentīa futurum quae imperāvisset, *from doubt that those things which he had commanded would take place.* Sall.

NOTE 2.—A General or Indefinite subject is often denoted—

1) By the First or Third Person Plural, and in the Subjunctive by the Second Person

Singular: *dicimus*, 'we (people) say'; *dicunt*, 'they say'; *dicās*, 'you (any one) may say':

Si beātī esse volumus, if we wish to be happy. *Cic.* *Agere quod agās cōsiderātē decet*, you (one) should do considerably whatever you do (one does). *Cic.*

2) By an Impersonal Passive:

Ad fānum concurritur, they rush to the temple. *Cic.* *Nisi cum virtūte vivātur*, unless they live (unless one lives) virtuously. *Cic.*

NOTE 3.—For the *Pronominal Subject* contained in the verb, see 368, 2.

NOTE 4.—For the OMISSION OF THE VERB, see 368, 3.

461. SYNESIS.—Sometimes the predicate is construed according to the *real meaning* of the subject without regard to grammatical gender or number. Thus—

1. With collective nouns, *pars*, *multitūdō*, and the like:

Multitūdō abeunt, the multitude depart. *Liv.* *Pars per agrōs dilāpsi*, a part (some) dispersed through the fields. *Liv.*

NOTE 1.—Here *multitūdō* and *pars*, though singular and feminine in form, are plural and masculine in sense; see also 438, 6. Conversely, the Imperative singular may be used in addressing a multitude individually:

Addē defectionē Siciliæ, add (to this, soldiers) the revolt of Sicily. *Liv.*

NOTE 2.—Of two verbs with the same collective noun, the former is often *singular* and the latter *plural*:

Juventūs ruit certantque, the youth rush forth and contend. *Verg.*

2. With *mīlia*, often masculine in sense:

Caesī sunt tria milia, three thousand men were slain. *Liv.*

3. With *quisque*, *uterque*, *alius*—*alium*, *alter*—*alterum*, and the like:

Uterque ēdūcunt, they each lead out. *Caes.* *Alter alterum vidēmus*, we see each other. *Cic.*

4. With singular subjects accompanied by an Ablative with *cum*:

Dux cum principibus capiuntur, the leader with his chiefs is taken. *Liv.* *Quid hūc tantum hominum (= tot hominēs) incēdunt*, why are so many men coming hither? *Plaut.* See also 438, 6.

5. With *partim*—*partim* in the sense of *pars*—*pars*:

Bonōrum partim necessariā, partim nōn necessariā sunt, of good things some are necessary, others are not necessary. *Cic.*

462. Sometimes the verb agrees, not with its subject, but with an **APPOSITIVE** or with a **PREDICATE NOUN**:

Volsiniī, oppidum Tuscōrum, concremātum est, *Volsinii*, a town of the *Tuscans*, was burned. *Plin.* *Nōn omnis error stultitia est dicenda*, not every error should be called folly. *Cic.* *Pueri Trōjānum dicitur āgmen*, the boys are called the *Trojan band*. *Verg.*

NOTE 1.—The verb regularly agrees with the appositive when that is *urbis*, *oppidum*, or *civitās*, in apposition with plural names of places, as in the first example.

NOTE 2.—The verb agrees with the predicate noun when that is nearer or more emphatic than the subject, as in the second example.

NOTE 3.—The verb sometimes agrees with a noun in a subordinate clause after *quāvis*, *nisi*, etc. :

Nihil aliud nisi pax quaesita est, *nothing but peace was sought*. Cic.

463. With TWO OR MORE SUBJECTS the verb agrees—

I. With one subject, and is understood with the others :

Aut mōrēs spectārī aut fortūna solet, *either character or fortune is wont to be regarded*. Cic. Homērus fuit et Hēsiodus ante Rōmam conditam, *Homer and Hesiod lived (were) before the founding of Rome*. Cic.

II. With all the subjects conjointly, and is accordingly in the plural number :

Lentulus, Scipiō periērunt, *Lentulus and Scipio perished*. Cic. Ego et Cicerō valēmus, *Cicero and I are well*. Cic. Tū et Tullia valētis, *you and Tullia are well*. Cic.

1. With SUBJECTS DIFFERING IN PERSON, the verb takes the first person rather than the second, and the second rather than the third ; see examples.

2. For PARTICIPLES IN COMPOUND TENSES, see 439.

3. Two SUBJECTS AS A UNIT.—Two singular subjects forming in sense a unit or whole, admit a singular verb :

Senātus populusque intellegit, *the senate and people* (i. e., the state as a unit) *understand*. Cic. Tempus necessitāsque postulat, *time and necessity* (i. e., the crisis) *demand*. Cic.

4. With AUT OR NEC.—When the subjects connected by *aut*, *vel*, *nec*, *neque* or *seu*, *differ in person*, the verb is usually in the plural ; but when they are of the *same person*, the verb usually agrees with the nearest subject :

Haec neque ego neque tū fēcimus, *neither you nor I have done these things*. Ter. Aut Brūtus aut Cassius iūdicāvit, *either Brutus or Cassius judged*. Cic.

464. VOICES.—With transitive verbs, a thought may at the pleasure of the writer be expressed either actively or passively. But—

I. That which in the active construction would be the *object* must be the *subject* in the passive ; and—

II. That which in the active would be the *subject* must be put in the *Ablative* with *ā* or *ab* for *persons*, and in the *Ablative alone* for *things* (415, I. ; 420) :

Deus omnia cōstituit, *God ordained all things*. Ā Deō omnia cōstitutā sunt, *all things were ordained by God*. Cic. Deī prōvidentia mundum administrat, *the providence of God rules the world*. Deī prōvidentiā mundus administratur, *the world is ruled by the providence of God*. Cic.

465. The PASSIVE VOICE, like the Greek Middle,¹ is sometimes equivalent to the Active with a reflexive pronoun :

Lavantur in flūminibus, *they bathe* (wash themselves) *in the rivers*. Caes.

¹ Most Passive forms once had both a *Middle* and a *Passive* meaning, as in Greek ; but in Latin the *Middle* or *Reflexive* meaning has nearly disappeared, though retained to a certain extent in special verbs.

Nōn hīc victōria vertitur, *not upon this point (here) does victory turn (turn itself)*. Verg.

1. INTRANSITIVE VERBS (193) have regularly only the active voice, but they are sometimes used impersonally in the passive:

Curritur ad praetōrium, *they run to the praetorium* (it is run to). Cic. Mihī cum iis vivendum est, *I must live with them*. Cic.

NOTE.—Verbs which are usually *intransitive* are occasionally used *transitively*, especially in poetry:

Ego cūr invidēor, *why am I envied?* Hor.

2. DEPONENT VERBS, though passive in form, are in signification transitive or intransitive:

Illud mirābar, *I admired that*. Cic. Ab urbe proficisci, *to set out from the city*. Caes.

NOTE 1.—Originally many deponent verbs seem to have had the force of the Greek Middle voice: *glōrior*, ‘I boast myself,’ ‘I boast’; *vescor*, ‘I feed myself.’

NOTE 2.—SEMI-DEPONENTS have some of the active forms and some of the passive, without change of meaning; see 268, 3.

SECTION II.

THE INDICATIVE AND ITS TENSES.

I. PRESENT INDICATIVE.

466. The Present Indicative represents the action of the verb as taking place at the present time:

Ego et Cicerō valēmus, *Cicero and I are well*. Cic. Hōc tē rogō, *I ask you for this*. Cic.

NOTE.—The Present of the Active Periphrastic Conjugation denotes an *intended* or *future* action; that of the Passive, a *present necessity* or *duty*:

Bellum scriptūrus sum, *I intend to write the history of the war*.¹ Sall. Legendus est hīc orātor, *this orator ought to be read*.¹ Cic.

467. Hence the Present Tense is used—

I. Of actions and events which are actually taking place at the present time, as in the above examples.

II. Of actions and events which, as belonging to all time, belong of course to the present, as *general truths* and *customs*:

Nihil est amābilius virtūte, *nothing is more lovely than virtue*. Cic. Fortēs fortūna adjuvat, *fortune helps the brave*. Ter.

III. Of past actions and events which the writer wishes, for effect, to picture before the reader as present. The Present, when so used, is called the *Historical Present*:

¹ *Scriptūrus sum* may be variously rendered, *I intend to write, am about to write, am to write, am destined to write, etc.*; *legendus est* means *he ought to be read, deserves to be read, must be read, etc.*

Jugurtha vallō moenia circumdat, *Jugurtha surrounded the city with a rampart.* Sall.

1. The HISTORICAL PRESENT is used much more freely in Latin than in English. It is therefore generally best rendered by a past tense.

2. The Present is often used of a *present* action which has been going on for some time, especially after *jamdiū*, *jamdūdum*, etc. :

Jamdiū ignōrō quid agās, I have not known for a long time what you have been doing. Cic.

3. The Present in Latin, as in English, may be used of authors whose works are extant :

Xenophōn facit Sōcratem disputantem, Xenophon represents Socrates discussing. Cic.

4. With *dum*, 'while,' the Present is generally used, whether the action is present, past, or future :

Dum ea parant,¹ Saguntum oppugnābatur, while they were (are) making these preparations, Saguntum was attacked. Liv. *Dum haec geruntur, Caesarī nūtiātum est, while these things were taking place, it was announced to Caesar.* Caes.

NOTE.—But with *dum*, meaning *as long as*, the Present can be used only of *present* time.

5. The Present is sometimes used of an action really future, especially in animated discourse and in conditions :

Quam prēndimus arcem, what stronghold do we seize, or are we to seize? Verg. *Si vincimus, omnia tūta erunt, if we conquer, all things will be safe.* Sall.

6. The Present is sometimes used of an *attempted* or *intended* action :

Virtūtem accendit, he tries to kindle their valor. Verg. *Quid mē terrēo why do you try to terrify me?* Verg.

II. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.

468. The Imperfect Indicative represents the action as taking place in past time :

Stabant nōbilissimī juvenēs, there stood (were standing) most noble youths. Liv. *Collēs oppidum cingēbant, hills encompassed the town.* Caes. *Mōtūrus exercitum erat, he was intending to move his army.* Liv.

NOTE.—For the Imperfect of the Periphrastic Conjugations in conditional sentences, see 511, 2

469. Hence the Imperfect is used especially—

I. In *lively description*, whether of scenes or events :

Ante oppidum plānitēs patēbat, before the town extended a plain. Caes. *Fulgentēs gladiōs vidēbant, they saw (were seeing) the gleaming swords.* Cic.

II. Of *customary* or *repeated* actions and events, often rendered *was wont*, etc. :

¹ Here the time denoted by *parant* is present relatively to *oppugnābatur*, and therefore really past.

Pausaniās epulābātur mōre Persārum, Pausaniās was wont to banquet in the Persian style. Nep.

1. The Imperfect is sometimes used of an *attempted* or *intended* action :¹

Sēdābant tumultūs, they attempted to quell the seditions. Liv.

2. The Imperfect is often used of a past action which had been going on for some time, especially with *jamdīū, jamdūdum*, etc. :¹

Domicilium Rōmæ multōs jam annōs habēbat, he had already for many years had his residence at Rome. Cic.

3. The Latin sometimes uses the Imperfect where the English requires the Present :²

Pāstum animantibus nātūra eum qui cuique aptus erat, comparāvit, nature has prepared for animals that food which is adapted to each. Cic.

NOTE 1.—For the *Imperfect* in LETTERS, see 472, 1.

NOTE 2.—For the *Descriptive Imperfect* in NARRATION, see 471, 6.

NOTE 3.—For the *Historical Tenses* in expressions of DUTY, PROPRIETY, NECESSITY, etc., see 476, 4.

III. FUTURE INDICATIVE.

470. The Future Indicative represents the action as one which will take place in future time :

Scribam ad tē, I shall write to you. Cic. *Nūquam aberrābimus, we shall never go astray.* Cic.

1. In Latin, as in English, the Future Indicative sometimes has the force of an Imperative :

Cūrābis et scribēs, you will take care and write. Cic.

2. Actions which really belong to future time are almost invariably expressed by the Future tense, though sometimes put in the Present in English :

Nātūram sī sequēmur, nūquam aberrābimus, if we follow nature, we shall never go astray. Cic.

IV. PERFECT INDICATIVE.

471. The Perfect Indicative has two distinct uses :

I. As the PRESENT PERFECT or PERFECT DEFINITE, it represents the action as *at present completed*, and is rendered by our Perfect with *have* :

Dē genere belli dixi, I have spoken of the character of the war. Cic.

II. As the HISTORICAL PERFECT or PERFECT INDEFINITE, it represents the action simply as an *historical fact* :

¹ Observe that the peculiarities of the Present reappear in the Imperfect. This arises from the fact that these two tenses are precisely alike in representing the action in its *progress*, and that they differ only in *time*. The one views the action in the present, the other transfers it to the past.

² This occurs occasionally in the statement of general truths and in the description of natural scenes, but in such cases the truth or the scene is viewed not from the *present* but from the *past*.

Miltiadēs est accūsātus, *Miltiades was accused*. Nep. Quid factūri fuistis, *what did you intend to do, or what would you have done?* Cic.

NOTE.—For the Perfect of the Periphrastic Conjugations in conditional sentences, see 476, 1.

1. The Perfect is sometimes used—

1) Instead of the Present to denote the *suddenness* of the action:

Terra tremit, mortālia corda strāvit pavor, *the earth trembles, fear overwhelms* (has overwhelmed) *the hearts of mortals*. Verg.

2) To contrast the *past* with the *present*, implying that what *was* true then is *not* true now:

Habuit, non habet, *he had, but has not*. Cic. Fuit Īlium, *Ilium was*. Verg.

2. The Perfect Indicative with *paene*, *prope*, may often be rendered by *might*, *would*, or by the Pluperfect Indicative:

Brūtum nōn minus amō, *paene dixi*, quam tē, *I love Brutus not less, I might almost say, or I had almost said, than I love you*. Cic.

3. The Latin sometimes employs the Perfect and Pluperfect where the English uses the Present and Imperfect, especially in repeated actions, and in verbs which want the Present (297):

Meminit praeteritōrum, *he remembers¹ the past*. Cic. Cum ad villam vēnī, hōc mē delectat, *when I come (have come) to a villa, this pleases me*. Cic. Memineram Paullum, *I remembered Paullus*. Cic.

4. Conjunctions meaning *as soon as*² are usually followed by the Perfect; sometimes by the Imperfect or Historical Present. But the Pluperfect is sometimes used, especially to denote the *result* of a completed action:

Postquam cecidit Īlium, *after* (as soon as) *Ilium fell*, or *had fallen*. Verg. His ubi nātum prōsequitur³ dictis, *when he had addressed his son with these words*. Verg. Posteaquam cōsul fuerat, *after he had been consul*.⁴ Cic. Annō tertio postquam profugerat, *in the third year after he had fled*. Nep.

5. In SUBORDINATE CLAUSES after *cum* (quum), *si*, etc., the Perfect is sometimes used of REPEATED ACTIONS, GENERAL TRUTHS, and CUSTOMS:⁵

Cum ad villam vēnī, hōc mē delectat, *whenever I come (have come) to a villa, this delights me*. Cic.

NOTE.—In such cases the principal clause generally retains the Present, as in the example just given, but in *poetry* and in *late prose* it sometimes admits the Perfect:

Tullit pūctum quī miscuit ūtile dulci, *he wins (has won) favor who combines (has combined) the useful with the agreeable*. Hor.

6. In ANIMATED NARRATIVE, the Perfect usually narrates the leading events, and the Imperfect describes the attendant circumstances:

Cultum mutāvit, veste Mēdicā utebātur, epulābātur mōre Persārum, *he changed his mode of life, used the Median dress, feasted in the Persian style*.

¹ Literally, *has recalled*, and so remembers, as the *result* of the act. The Latin presents the *completed act*, the English the *result*.

² As *postquam*, *ubi*, *ubi primum*, *ut*, *ut primum*, *simul atque* (*ac*), etc.

³ Historical present; lit., *when he attends*.

⁴ And so *was* then a man of consular rank.

⁵ This use of the Latin Perfect corresponds to the *Gnomic Aorist* in Greek.

Nep. Sē in oppida recēpērunt mūrisque sē tenēbant, *they betook themselves into their towns and kept themselves within their walls.* Liv.

NOTE 1.—The *Compound Tenses* in the *Passive* often denote the *result* of the action. Thus, *doctus est* may mean either *he has been instructed*, or *he is a learned man* (lit., *an instructed man*):

Fuit doctus ex disciplinā Stōicōrum, *he was instructed in* (lit., *out of*) *the learning of the Stoics.* Cic. Nāvis parāta fuit, *the vessel was ready* (lit., *was prepared*). Liv.

NOTE 2.—For the *Perfect* in *LETTERS*, see 472, 1.

NOTE 3.—For the *Historical Tenses* in expressions of *DUTY, PROPRIETY, NECESSITY*, etc., see 476, 4.

V. PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE.

472. The *Pluperfect Indicative* represents the action as completed at some past time :

Pyrrii temporibus jam Apollō versūs facere dēsierat, *in the times of Pyrrhus Apollo had already ceased to make verses.*¹ Cic. Cōpiās quās prō castris collocāverat, redūxit, *he led back the forces which he had stationed before the camp.* Caes. Cum esset Dēmōsthenēs, multī ōrātōrēs clārī fuērunt et antea fuerant, *when Demosthenes lived there were many illustrious orators, and there had been before.* Cic.

1. In *LETTERS*, the writer often adapts the tense to the time of the reader, using the *Imperfect* or *Perfect* of present actions and events, and the *Pluperfect* of those which are past :²

Nihil habebam quod scriberem ; ad tuās omnēs epistulās rescripseram pridie,³ *I have (had) nothing to write ; I replied to all your letters yesterday.* Cic. Pridie Idūs haec scripsi ; eō diē⁴ apud Pompōnium eram cēnātūrus,⁴ *I write this on the day before the Ides ; I am going to dine to-day with Pomponius.* Cic.

2. The *PLUPERFECT* after *cum, si, etc.*, is often used of *REPEATED ACTIONS, GENERAL TRUTHS, and CUSTOMS* :⁵

Si hostēs dētērrere nēquiverant circumveniēbant, *if they were (had been) unable⁶ to deter the enemy, they surrounded them.* Sall.

NOTE 1.—For the *Pluperfect* in the sense of the English *Imperfect*, see 471, 3.

NOTE 2.—For the *Historical Tenses* in expressions of *DUTY, PROPRIETY, NECESSITY*, etc., see 476, 4.

¹ Observe that *dēsierat* represents the action as already completed at the time designated.

² This change is by no means uniformly made, but is subject to the pleasure of the writer. It is most common near the beginning and the end of letters.

³ Observe that the adverbs and the adverbial expressions are also adapted to the time of the reader. *Hieri*, 'yesterday,' becomes to the reader *pridie*, 'the day before'—i. e., the day before the writing of the letter. In the same way *hodiā*, 'to-day,' 'THIS day,' becomes to the reader *eō diē*, 'THAT day.'

⁴ The *Imperfect* of the *Periphrastic Conjugation* is sometimes thus used of *future events* which are expected to happen *before* the receipt of the letter. Events which will be future to the reader as well as to the writer must be expressed by the *Future*.

⁵ See the similar use of the *Perfect*, 471, 5.

⁶ That is, *whenever they were unable*.

VI. FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE.

473. The Future Perfect Indicative represents the action as one which will be completed at some future time:

Rōmam cum vēnerō, scribam ad tē, *when I shall have reached Rome, I will write to you.* Cic. Dum tū haec legēs, ego illum fortasse convēnerō, *when you read this, I shall perhaps have already met him.* Cic.

1. The FUTURE PERFECT is sometimes used to denote the *complete* accomplishment of the work:

Ego meum officium praestiterō, *I shall discharge my duty.* Caes.

2. The FUTURE PERFECT is sometimes found in conditional clauses where we use the Present:

Si interpretārī potuerō, his verbis ūtītur, *if I can (shall have been able to) understand him, he uses these words.* Cic.

VII. USE OF THE INDICATIVE.

RULE XXXVII.—Indicative.

474. The Indicative is used in treating of facts:

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made (built) the world.* Cic. Nōnne expulsus est patriā, *was he not banished from his country?* Cic. Hōc fēcī dum licuit, *I did this as long as it was permitted.* Cic.

475. The Indicative is thus used in treating of facts—

I. In *Principal Clauses*,¹ whether Declarative as in the first example or Interrogative as in the second.

II. In *Subordinate Clauses.* Thus—

1. In *Relative Clauses*:

Dixit id quod dignissimum rē publicā fuit, *he stated that which was most worthy of the republic.* Cic. Quicquam bonum est, quod nōn cum quī id possidet meliōrem facit, *is anything good which does not make him better who possesses it?* Cic.

NOTE.—For the *Subjunctive* in Relative Clauses, see 497; 500; 503; 507, 2, etc.

2. In *Conditional Clauses*:

Si haec civitās est, civis sum ego, *if this is a state, I am a citizen.* Cic.

NOTE 1.—For the special uses of the *Indicative* in Conditional Sentences, see 508.

NOTE 2.—For the *Subjunctive* in Conditional Sentences, see 509; 510.

3. In *Concessive Clauses*:

Quamquam intellegunt, tamen nūquam dicunt, *although they understand they never speak.* Cic.

NOTE.—For the *Subjunctive* in Concessive Clauses, see 515.

¹ Including, of course, all simple sentences.

4. In Causal Clauses:

Quoniam supplicatiō dēcrēta est, *since a thanksgiving has been decreed.* Cic.
 Quia honōre dignī habentur, *because they are deemed worthy of honor.* Curt.

NOTE.—For the *Subjunctive* in Causal Clauses, see 516; 517.

5. In Temporal Clauses:

Cum quiescunt, probant, *while they are silent they approve.* Cic. Priusquam lūcet, adsunt, *they are present before it is light.* Cic.

NOTE.—For the *Subjunctive* in Temporal Clauses, see 519; 520; 521.

476. SPECIAL USES.—The Indicative is sometimes used where our idiom would suggest the Subjunctive:

1. The *Indicative* of the *Periphrastic Conjugations* is often so used in the historical tenses, especially in conditional sentences (511, 2):

Haec condiō nōn accipiēda fuit, *this condition should not have been accepted.* Cic.

2. The *Historical Tenses* of the *Indicative*, particularly the *Pluperfect*, are sometimes used for *effect*, to represent as an actual fact something which is shown by the context never to have become fully so:

Vicerāmus, nisi recēpisset Antōnium, *we should have (lit., had) conquered, had he not received Antony.* Cic. See 511, 1.

3. *Pronouns* and *Relative Adverbs*, made general by being doubled or by assuming the suffix *cumque* (187, 3), take the *Indicative*:

Quisquis est, is est sapiēs, *whoever he is, he is wise.* Cic. Hōc ūltimum, utcunque initum est, proelium fuit, *this, however it was commenced, was the last battle.* Liv. Quidquid oritur, quālecumque est, causam habet, *whatever comes into being, of whatever character it may be (lit., is), it has a cause.* Cic.

4. In expressions of *Duty*, *Propriety*, *Necessity*, *Ability*, and the like, the Latin often uses the *Indicative*, chiefly in the historical tenses, in a manner somewhat at variance with the English idiom:

Nōn suscipi bellum oportuit, *the war should not have been undertaken.*¹ Liv. Eum contumēliis onerāstī, quem colere dēbēbās, *you have loaded with insults one whom you should have (ought to have) revered.* Cic. Multōs possum bonōs virōs nōmināre, *I might name (lit., I am able to name) many good men.* Cic. Hanc mēcum poterās requiescere noctem, *you might rest (might have rested) with me this night.* Verg.

5. The *Indicative* of the verb *sum* is often used with *longum*, *aequum*, *aequius*, *difficile*, *iustum*, *melius*, *pār*, *utilius*, etc., in such expressions as *longum est*, 'it would be tedious,' *melius erat*, 'it would have been better':

Longum est persequi utilitatēs, *it would be tedious (is a long task) to recount the uses.* Cic. Melius fuerat, prōmissum nōn esse servātum, *it would have been better that the promise should not have been kept.* Cic.

¹ Literally, *it was fitting or proper that the war should not be undertaken.*

SECTION III.

GENERAL VIEW OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE
AND ITS TENSES.

477. The Latin Subjunctive¹ has two principal uses—

I. It may represent an action as WILLED or DESIRED :

Amēmus patriam, LET US LOVE our country. Cic.

II. It may represent an action as PROBABLE or POSSIBLE :

Quaerat quispiam, some one MAY INQUIRE. Cic.

478. TENSES IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE do not designate the time of the action so definitely as in the Indicative.

479. The PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE in principal clauses² embraces in a vague and general manner both *present* and *future* time :³

Amēmus patriam, let us love our country (now and ever). Cic. *Quaerat quispiam, some one may (or will) inquire* (at any time). Cic.

480. The IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE in principal clauses relates sometimes to the *past* and sometimes to the *present* :

Crēderēs victōs, vanquished you would have thought them. Liv. *Utinam possem, would that I were able* (now). Cic.

481. The PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE in principal clauses relates sometimes to the *past*, but more frequently to the *present* or *future* :

¹ The Latin Subjunctive, it will be remembered (p. 117, foot-note 4), contains the forms and the meaning of two kindred moods, the *Subjunctive* proper, and the *Optative*. In Latin, the forms characteristic of these two moods, used without any difference of meaning, are made to supplement each other. Thus, in the Present, the *Optative* forms are found in the First Conjugation, and the *Subjunctive* forms in the Second, Third, and Fourth. In their origin they are only special developments of certain forms of the Present Indicative, denoting continued and attempted action. From this idea of *attempted* action was readily developed on the one hand *desire, will*, as we attempt only what we desire, and on the other hand *probability, possibility*, as we shall very likely accomplish what we are already attempting. These two meanings, united in one word, lie at the basis of all Subjunctive constructions in Latin. On the *origin, history, and use* of the Subjunctive, see Delbrück, 'Conjunctiv und Optativ'; Curtius, 'Verbum,' II., pp. 55-95; Draeger, II., pp. 439-743; Roby, II., pp. 202-348; also a paper by the author on 'The Development of the Latin Subjunctive in Principal Clauses,' Transactions Am. Phil. Assoc., 1879.

² For the tenses of the Subjunctive in *Subordinate* clauses, see 490.

³ The Present Subjunctive in its origin is closely related both in form and in meaning to the Future Indicative. Thus, in the Third and Fourth Conjugations, no future forms for the Indicative have been developed, but Subjunctive and Optative forms supply their place, as *regam, audiam* (Subjunctive), and *regēs, reget*, etc., and *audiēs, audiet*, etc. (Optative).

Fuerit malus cīvis, *he may have been* (admit that he was) a bad citizen. Cic. Nē trānsieris¹ Ibērum, *do not cross the Ebro* (now or at any time). Liv.

482. The PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE in principal clauses relates to the *past*:

Utinam potuissē, *would that I had been able*. Cic.

SECTION IV.

SUBJUNCTIVE IN PRINCIPAL CLAUSES.

RULE XXXVIII.—Subjunctive of Desire, Command.

483. The Subjunctive is used to represent the action NOT AS REAL, but AS DESIRED:

Valeant cīvēs, *MAY the citizens BE WELL*. Cic. Amēmus patriam, *LET US LOVE our country*. Cic. Ā nōbīs diligātur, *LET HIM BE LOVED by us*. Cic. Scribere nē pigrēre, *do not NEGLECT to write*. Cic.

1. The *Subjunctive of Desire* is often accompanied by *utinam*, and sometimes, especially in the poets, by *ut, si, o si*:

Utinam cōnāta efficere possim, *may I be able to accomplish my endeavors*. Cic. Ut illum di perdant, *would that the gods would destroy him*. Ter.

2. FORCE OF TENSES.—The Present and Perfect imply that the wish may be fulfilled; the Imperfect and Pluperfect, that it can not be fulfilled:

Sint beātī, *may they be happy*. Cic. Nē trānsieris Ibērum, *do not cross the Ebro*. Liv. Utinam possem, utinam potuissē, *would that I were able, would that I had been able*. Cic.

NOTE.—The Imperfect and Pluperfect may often be best rendered *should, should have, ought to have*:

Hōc diceret, *he should have said this*. Cic. Mortem oppetiissēs, *you should have met death*. Cic.

3. NEGATIVES.—With the *Subjunctive of Desire*, the negative is *nē*, rarely *nōn*; with a connective, *nēve, neu*, rarely *neque*:

Nē audeant, *let them not dare*. Cic. Nōn recēdāmus, *let us not recede*. Cic. Amīs dici pater, neu sinās, etc., *may you love to be called father, and may you not permit*, etc. Hor. Nēve minor neu sit prōductior, *let it be neither shorter nor longer*. Hor.

NOTE.—*Nēdum*, 'not to say,' 'much less,' is used with the Subjunctive:

Vix in tētis frigus vitātur, nēdum in mari sit facile abesse ab injuriā, *the cold is avoided with difficulty in our houses, much less is it easy to escape (to be absent from) injury on the sea*. Cic.

4. The first person of the Subjunctive is often found in earnest or solemn AFFIRMATIONS:

¹ Observe that the *Perfect* thus used does not at all differ *in time* from the *Present*, but that it calls attention to the *completion* of the action.

Moriar, si putō, *may I die, if I think*. Cic. Nē sim salvus, si scribō, *may I not be safe, if I write*. Cic. Sollicitat, ita vivam, *as I live, it troubles me*.¹ Cic.

5. The *Subjunctive of Desire* is sometimes used in *RELATIVE CLAUSES*:

Quod faustum sit, rēgem creāte, *elect a king, and may it be an auspicious event* (may which be auspicious). Liv. Senectūs, ad quam utinam perveniātis, *old age, to which may you attain*. Cic.

NOTE.—For the *Subjunctive of Desire* in Subordinate Clauses, see 486, III., note, with foot-note.

6. *Modo, modo nē*, may accompany the *Subjunctive of Desire*:

Modo Juppiter adsit, *only let Jupiter be present*. Verg. Modo nē laudent, *only let them not praise*. Cic.

484. The *Subjunctive of Desire* may be in meaning—

I. OPTATIVE, as in *prayers and wishes*:

Sint beāti, *may they be happy*. Cic. Di bene vertant, *may the gods cause it to turn out well*. Plaut.

II. HORTATIVE, as in *exhortations and entreaties*:

Cōsulāmus bonis, *let us consult for the good*. Cic.

III. CONCESSIVE, as in *admissions and concessions*:

Fuerint pertinacēs, *grant (or admit) that they were obstinate*. Cic.

IV. IMPERATIVE, as in *mild commands, admonitions, warnings, etc.*, used chiefly in *prohibitions*:

Illum jocum nē sis aspernātus, *do not despise that jest*. Cic. Scribere nē pigrēre, *do not neglect to write*. Cic.

NOTE 1.—In *prohibitions*, the Perfect tense is generally used:

Nē trānsieris Ibērum, *do not cross the Ebro*. Liv.

NOTE 2.—Except in *prohibitions*, the Second Person Singular in the best prose is used almost exclusively of an *indefinite you*, meaning *one, any one*:

Istō bonō ūtāre, *you should use* (i. e., one should use) *that advantage*. Cic.

V. DELIBERATIVE, as in *deliberative questions*, to ask what should be:

Huic cēdāmus, hūjus condiciōnēs audiāmus, *shall we yield² to him, shall we listen to his terms?* Cic. Quid facerem, *what was I to do?*³ Verg.

RULE XXXIX.—Potential Subjunctive.

485. The *Subjunctive* is used to represent the action NOT AS REAL, but AS POSSIBLE:

Hic quaerat quispiam, *here some one MAY INQUIRE*. Cic. Ita laudem inveniās, *thus you WILL (OR MAY) OBTAIN praise*. Ter. Ita amīcōs parēs, *thus you WILL MAKE friends*. Ter. Vix dicere ausim, *I SHOULD scarcely DARE to*

¹ Here *ita vivam* means, *may I so live* (i. e., may I live only in case this is true).

² Or, *ought we to yield, is it your wish that we should yield?*

³ Or. *what should I have done?*

say. Liv. Crēderēs victōs, *vanquished you would have thought them*. Liv. Forsitan quaerātis,¹ *perhaps you may inquire*. Cic. Hōc nēmō dixerit, *no one would say this*. Cic. Quis dubitet (= nēmō dubitat), *who would doubt (or who doubts = no one doubts)?* Cic. Hōc quis ferre possit, *who would be able to endure this?* Cic.

NOTE 1.—In the Potential Subjunctive, the Perfect often has nearly the same force as the Present, and the Imperfect is often used where we should expect the Pluperfect: *dicerēs*, 'you would have said'; *crēderēs*, *putārēs*, 'you would have thought'; *viderēs*, *cernerēs*, 'you would have seen':

Tū Platōnem laudārērēs, *you would praise Plato*. Cic. Maestī, crēderēs victōs, redeunt in castra, *sad, vanquished you would have thought them, they returned to the camp*. Liv.

NOTE 2.—On *Tenses*, see also 478–482.

NOTE 3.—The Second Person Singular, especially of the Imperfect, is often used of an indefinite *you*, meaning *one*, *any one*: *crēderēs*, 'you would have thought,' 'any one would have thought.'

486. In the Potential sense, the Subjunctive is used—

I. In *Declarative Sentences*, to express an affirmation *modestly*, *doubtfully*, or *conditionally*; see examples.

NOTE 1.—Thus, in the language of politeness and modesty, the Potential Subjunctive is often used in verbs of *wishing* and *thinking*: *velim*, 'I should wish,' for *volō*, 'I wish'; *nōlim*, 'I should be unwilling'; *mālim*, 'I should prefer':

Ego censeam, *I should think*, or *I am inclined to think*. Liv. Mihī dari velim, *I should like to have it given to me*. Cic.

NOTE 2.—The Potential Subjunctive is used in the conclusion of conditional sentences; see 507, 1, with foot-note.

II. In *Interrogative Sentences*, to ask not what *is*, but what is *likely* to be, what *may be* or *would be*, generally implying a negative answer, as in the last two examples under the rule.

NOTE.—The Subjunctive with *ut*, with or without the interrogative *ne*, occurs in questions expressive of *impatience* or *surprise*:²

Tū ut ūlla rēs frangat, *how should anything subdue you?* Cic. Egone ut mentiar, *that I should speak falsely?* Plaut.

III. In *Subordinate Clauses*, whatever the connective, to represent the action as *possible* rather than *real*:

Quamquam epulis careat senectūs, *though old age may be without its feasts*. Cic. Quoniam nōn possent, *since they would not be able*. Caes. Ubī rēs posceret, *whenever the case might demand*. Liv.

NOTE.—From the Subjunctive of Desire and the Potential Subjunctive in principal clauses have been developed the various uses of the Subjunctive in subordinate clauses.³

¹ After *forsitan* = *fors sit an*, 'the chance may be whether,' 'perhaps,' the Subjunctive was originally in an indirect question (529), but it may be best treated as Potential. So also with *forsan* and *fortasse*.

² Some grammarians assume an ellipsis of a predicate, as *crēdibile est*, *ferī potest*, etc.

³ Thus, the Subjunctive of Desire is used in *final*, *conditional*, and *concessive* clauses; the Potential Subjunctive in clauses of *result*, and in various others denoting

SECTION V.

THE IMPERATIVE AND ITS TENSES.

RULE XL.—Imperative.

487. The Imperative is used in COMMANDS, EXHORTATIONS, and ENTREATIES :

Iūstitiam cole, practice justice. Cic. *Tū nē cēde malīs, do not yield to misfortunes.* Verg. *Sī quid in tē peccāvī, ignōsce, if I have sinned against you, pardon me.* Cic.

1. The PRESENT IMPERATIVE corresponds to the Imperative in English :

Iūstitiam cole, practice justice. Cic. *Pēge, Catilina, go, Catiline.* Cic.

2. The FUTURE IMPERATIVE corresponds to the imperative use of the English Future with *shall*, or to the Imperative *let*, and is used—

1) In COMMANDS involving *future* rather than present action :

Rem peditōte, you shall consider the subject. Cic. *Crās petitō, dabitur, ask to-morrow, it shall be granted.* Plaut.

2) In LAWS, ORDERS, PRECEPTS, etc., especially in PROHIBITIONS :

Cōsulēs nīminī pārentō, the consuls shall be subject to no one. Cic. *Salūs populi sup̄rēma lēx estō, the safety of the people shall be the supreme law.* Cic.

NOTE.—The general distinction between the *Present* Imperative and the *Future* is often disregarded, especially in poetry :¹

Ubi aciem viderīs, tum ōrdinēs dissipā, when you shall see the line of battle, then scatter the ranks. Liv. *Quoniam supplicatiō dēcrēta est, celebrātōte illōs diēs, since a thanksgiving has been decreed, celebrate those days.* Cic.

3. An Imperative clause may be used instead of a Conditional clause :

Lacēsse, jam vidēbis furem, provoke him (i. e., if you provoke him), *you will at once see him frantic.* Cic.

4. The place of the Imperative may be supplied by the Subjunctive of Desire (483), or by the Future Indicative :

Nē audeant, let them not dare. Cic. *Quod optimum vidēbitur, faciēs, you will do what shall seem best.* Cic.

488. In prohibitions or negative commands, the negative *nē*, rarely *nōn*, accompanies the Imperative, and if a connective is required, *nēve* or *neu* is generally used, rarely *neque* :

Tū nē cēde malīs, do not yield to misfortunes. Verg. *Hominem mortuum in urbe nē sepelitō, nēve uritō, thou shalt not bury nor burn a dead body in the city.* Cic.

what is likely to be. Moreover, from these two leading uses was developed the idea of a conceived or assumed action, which probably lies at the foundation of all the other uses of this mood, as in causal and temporal clauses, in indirect questions, and in the subordinate clauses of the indirect discourse.

¹ Thus the Future is especially common in certain verbs; and, indeed, in some verbs, as *sciō, meminī*, etc., it is the only form in common use.

489. Instead of *nē* with the Present Imperative, the best prose writers generally use—

1) *Nōlī* and *nōlīte* with the Infinitive:

Nōlīte putāre, *do not think* (be unwilling to think). Cic.

2) *Fac nē* or *cavē*, with the Subjunctive:

Fac nē quid aliud cūrēs hōc tempore, *do not attend to anything else at this time*. Cic. *Cavē* faciās, *beware of doing it, or see that you do not do it*. Cic.

3) *Nē* with the Perfect Subjunctive, rarely with the Present; see 484, IV., note 1.

SECTION VI.

MOODS IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.

I. TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.

490. In subordinate clauses the tenses of the Subjunctive conform to the following rule:

RULE XLI.—Sequence of Tenses.

491. Principal tenses depend upon principal tenses; historical upon historical:

Nititur ut vincat, *he strives to conquer*.¹ Cic. *Nēmō* erit quī cēnseat, *there will be no one who will think*.¹ Cic. *Quaesierās* nōnne putārem, *you had asked whether I did not think*. Cic. *Ut* honōre dīgnus essem labōrāvī, *I strove to be worthy of honor*. Cic.

492. In accordance with this rule, the Subjunctive dependent upon a principal tense,² *present, future, future perfect*, is put—

1. In the PRESENT, to denote *incomplete action*:

Quaeritur cūr dissentiant, *the question is asked why they disagree*. Cic. *Nēmō* erit quī cēnseat, *there will be no one who will think*. Cic.

NOTE.—Observe that in these examples the action denoted by the Subjunctive belongs either to the *present* time or to the *future*.

2. In the PERFECT, to denote *completed action*:

Quaerāmus quae vitia fuerint, *let us inquire what faults there were*. Cic. *Rogitābit* mē ubī fuerim, *he will ask me where I have been*. Ter.

NOTE 1.—In the sequence of tenses, the Perfect is occasionally treated as a *principal* tense:³

Oblitus es quid dixerim, *you have forgotten what I said*. Cic.

NOTE 2.—For further illustrations of the sequence of tenses, see 493, 2, note 2.

¹ The Present Subjunctive generally denotes *present* time in relation to the principal verb. Accordingly, *vincat* depending upon the *present*, *nititur*, denotes *present* time, while *cēnseat* depending upon the *future*, *erit*, denotes *future* time.

² For the treatment of the Perfect in the sequence of tenses, see 495.

493. The Subjunctive dependent upon an historical tense, *imperfect, historical perfect, pluperfect*, is put—

1. In the IMPERFECT, to denote *incomplete action* :

Timēbam nē evenirent ea, *I was fearing that those things would take place* (i. e., at some future time). Cic. Quaesierās nōne putārem, *you had inquired whether I did not think* (i. e., at that time). Cic.

NOTE.—Observe that in these examples the time of the action denoted by the Subjunctive is either the same as that of the principal verb or subsequent to it.

2. In the PLUPERFECT, to denote *completed action* :

Themistocles, cum Graeciam liberasset, expulsus est, *Themistocles was banished, though he had liberated Greece*. Cic.

NOTE 1.—The Pluperfect after an historical tense, like the Perfect after a principal tense, may represent the action as *completed in future time*; see 496, II.

NOTE 2.—The *sequence of tenses* may be further illustrated as follows :¹

Nescit quid faciās,	<i>He knows not what you are doing.</i>
Nesciet quid faciās,	<i>He will not know what you will do.</i> ²
Nesciverit quid faciās,	<i>He will not have known what you will do.</i>
Nescit quid feceris,	<i>He knows not what you have done, or what you did.</i> ³
Nesciet quid feceris,	<i>He will not know what you will have done.</i> ⁴
Nesciverit quid feceris,	<i>He will not have known what you will have done.</i>
Nesciebat quid facerēs,	<i>He did not know what you were doing.</i> ⁵
Nescivit quid facerēs,	<i>He did not know what you were doing.</i> ⁵
Nesciverat quid facerēs,	<i>He had not known what you were doing.</i>
Nesciebat quid fecissēs,	<i>He did not know what you had done.</i>
Nescivit quid fecissēs,	<i>He did not know what you had done.</i>
Nesciverat quid fecissēs,	<i>He had not known what you had done.</i>

494. The periphrastic forms in **rus** and **dus** conform to the general rule for the sequence of tenses :

Incertum est quam longa vīta futura sit, *it is uncertain how long life will continue*. Cic. Incertum erat quō missurū classem forent, *it was uncertain whither they would send the fleet*. Liv.

495. PECULIARITIES IN SEQUENCE.—The following peculiarities in the sequence of tenses deserve notice :

I. In the sequence of tenses the *Latin Perfect* is generally treated as an historical tense, even when rendered with *have*, and thus admits the *Imperfect* or *Pluperfect* :

Quoniam quae subsidia habērēs exposuī,⁶ nunc dicam, *since I have shown*

¹ It is not intended to give all the possible meanings of the Subjunctive clauses here used, but simply to illustrate the sequence of tenses.

² Or, *he will not know what you are doing*. Thus, *quid faciās* may represent the direct question, *quid faciēs*, 'what shall you do?' or *quid facēs*, 'what are you doing?'

³ Or, *what you were doing*.

⁴ Or, *what you have done, or what you did*.

⁵ Or, *what you would do*. *Nescivit* may sometimes be rendered, *he has not known*.

⁶ *Exposuī*, though best rendered by our Perfect Definite with *have*, is in the Latin

what aid, you have, I will now speak. Cic. Haec nōn ut vōs excitārem locūtus sum, *I have not spoken this to arouse (that I might arouse) you.* Cic.

NOTE.—For the *Perfect* as a *principal* tense, see 492, 2, note 1.

II. The *Historical Present* (467, III.) is generally treated as an *historical* tense, but sometimes as a *principal* tense:

Persuādet Casticō ut rēgnum occupāret, *he persuaded Casticus to seize the government.* Caes. Ubii orant ut sibi parcat, *the Ubii implore him to spare them.* Caes.

NOTE.—The *Historical Present* includes the *Present* used of authors (467, 3), the *Present* with *dum* (467, 4), the *Historical Infinitive* (536, 1), etc.:

Chrýsippus disputat Aethera esse eum quem hominēs Jovem appellārent, *Chrysippus contends that he whom men call Jupiter is Aether.* Cic.

III. The *Imperfect Subjunctive*, even when it refers to present time, as in conditional sentences, is generally treated as an *historical* tense, though sometimes as a *principal* tense:

Nisi ineptum putārem, iurārem mē ea sentīre quae dicerem, *if I did not think it improper, I would take an oath that I believe those things which I say.* Cic. Memorāre possem quibus in locis hostēs populus Rōmānus fūderit, *I might state in what places the Roman people routed the enemy.* Sall.

IV. The *Perfect Infinitive* is generally treated as an *historical* tense, but the *Present* and the *Future Infinitive*, the *Present* and the *Future Participle*, as also *Gerunds* and *Supines*, share the tense of the verb on which they depend, as they express only *relative time* (537, 550):

Satis videor docuisse, hominis nātūra quantō antēret animantēs, *I think I have sufficiently shown how much the nature of man surpasses that of the other animals (lit., surpassed animals).* Cic. Spērō fore¹ ut contingat, *I hope it will happen.* Cic. Nōn spērāverat fore ut ad sē deficerent, *he had not hoped that they would revolt to him.* Liv. Misērunt Delphōs cōsultum quidnam face-rent, *they sent to Delphi to ask what they should do.* Nep.

V. Clauses containing a *general truth* usually conform to the law for the sequence of tenses, at variance with the English idiom:

Quanta cōscientiae vīs esset, ostendit, *he showed how great is the power of conscience.* Cic.

VI. Clauses denoting *consequence* or *result* generally express *absolute time*, and are thus independent of the law of sequence.² They thus admit the *Present* or *Perfect* after historical tenses:

Epaminōndās fidē sic ūsus est, ut possit iudicārī,² *Epaminondas used such*
treated as the *Historical Perfect*. The thought is as follows: *Since in the preceding topics I set forth the aids which you have, I will now speak, etc.*

¹ Literally, *I hope it will be that it may happen.* Here *fore* shares the tense of *spērō*, and is accordingly followed by the *Present*, *contingat*; but below it shares the tense of *spērāverat*, and is accordingly followed by the *Imperfect*, *deficerent*.

² This peculiarity arises from the fact that the *result* of a *past action* may itself be

fidelity that it may be judged. Nep. Adeo excellēbat Aristidēs abstinentiā, ut Iustus sit appellatus, *Aristides so excelled in self-control, that he has been called the Just.* Nep.

VII. For the *sequence of tenses* in the indirect discourse, see 525.

496. FUTURE TIME IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE.—When the Future is used in the principal clause, the Future and Future Perfect tenses, wanting in the Latin Subjunctive, are supplied in the subordinate clauses as follows:

I. The *Future* is supplied—(1) after a *principal* tense by the PRESENT, and (2) after an *historical* tense by the IMPERFECT:

Omnia sic agentur ut bellum sedētur,¹ *all things shall be so managed that the war will be brought to a close.* Cic. Loquēbantur, etiam cum vellet¹ Caesar, sese nōn esse pugnātūrōs, *they were saying that they would not fight even when Caesar should wish it.* Caes.

II. The *Future Perfect* is supplied—(1) after a *principal* tense by the PERFECT, and (2) after an *historical* tense by the PLUPERFECT:

Respondet si id sit factum, se nocitūrum nēminī, *he replies that if this should be done (shall have been done) he will harm no one.* Caes. Appārēbat regnātūrum, qui vicisset, *it was evident that he would be king who should conquer.* Liv.

NOTE 1.—The *Future* and the *Future Perfect* tenses are often supplied in the same way, even when the Future does not occur in the principal clause. provided the idea of future time can be easily inferred from the context:

Vereor nō labōrem augeam, *I fear that I shall increase the labor.* Cic. Quid diēs ferat incertum est, *what a day will bring forth is uncertain.* Cic. Quid hostēs cōsiliī caperent, expectābant, *they waited to see what plan the enemy would adopt.* Caes. Delitui, dum vēla dedissent, *I hid myself until they should have set sail.* Verg.

NOTE 2.—When the idea of future time must be especially emphasized in the subordinate clause, the periphrastic forms in *rus* are used: ²

Incertum est quam longa vita futura sit, *it is uncertain how long life will continue.* Cic. Incertum erat quō missūri classem forent, *it was uncertain whither they would send the fleet.* Liv.

NOTE 3.—The *Future Perfect* is sometimes supplied in the Passive by *futūrus sim* and *futūrus essem* with the Perfect Participle: ²

Nōn dubitō quin cōfecta jam res futura sit, *I do not doubt that the thing will have been already accomplished.* Cic.

present, and may thus be expressed by a principal tense. When the result belongs to the present time, the Present is used: *possit iudicārī*, 'may be judged now'; when it is represented as completed, the Perfect is used: *sit appellātus*, 'has been called' (i. e., even to the present day); but when it is represented as *simultaneous* with the action on which it depends, the Imperfect is used in accordance with the general rule (491).

¹ *Sedētur*, referring to the same time as *agentur*, and *vellet*, referring to the same time as *esse pugnātūrōs*, both denote *future* time.

² Other traditional periphrastic forms, rarely used in either voice, are—for the FUTURE, *futūrum sit ut* with the Present Subjunctive, and *futūrum esset ut* with the Imperfect; and for the FUTURE PERFECT, *futūrum sit ut* with the Perfect, and *futūrum esset ut* with the Pluperfect.

II. SUBJUNCTIVE IN CLAUSES OF PURPOSE.

RULE XLII.—Purpose.

497. The Subjunctive is used to denote PURPOSE:¹

I. With the relative *quī*, and with relative adverbs, as *ubi*, *unde*, etc.:

Missi sunt qui (= ut iī) cōsulerent Apollinem, they were sent to CONSULT Apollo (who should, or that they should). Nep. Missi sunt dēlecti qui Thermopylās occupārent, picked men were sent to TAKE POSSESSION OF Thermopylae. Nep. Domum, ubi habitāret, lēgit, he selected a house where he might dwell (that he might dwell in it). Cic. Locum petit, unde (= ut inde) hostem invādat, he seeks a position from which he may (that from it he may) attack the enemy. Liv.

II. With *ut*, *nē*, *quō*. *quōminus*, *quō minus*:

Enītitur ut vincat, he strives that HE MAY CONQUER. Cic. Pūnit nē peccētur, he punishes that crime MAY NOT BE COMMITTED. Sen. Lēgum idcirco servī sumus, ut liberī esse possīmus, we are servants of the law for this reason, that we may be free. Cic. Medicō dare quō sit studiōsior, to give to the physician, that (by this means) he may be more attentive. Cic. Nōn recūsāvit quōminus poenam subīret, he did not refuse to submit to punishment. Nep.

1. *Ut* or *utī* and *nē* are the usual conjunctions in clauses denoting purpose. A correlative, *idēō*, *idcirco*, *eō*, etc., sometimes precedes, as in the third example under II.

NOTE.—With a connective *nē* becomes *nēve*, *neu*, rarely *neque*; see 483, 3:

Lēgem tulit nē quis accūsārētur nēve multārētur, he proposed a law that no one should be accused or punished. Nep.

2. *Quō*, 'by which,' 'that,' is sometimes used in clauses denoting purpose, especially with comparatives, as in the fourth example under II. *Quōminus*, 'by which the less,' 'that thus the less,' 'that not,' is simply *quō* with the comparative *minus*. It is sometimes used after verbs of *hindering*, *opposing*, and the like, as in the last example under II.

NOTE.—*Quō sētius* also occurs in the sense of *quōminus*; see Cic. Inv., II., 45.

498. CLAUSES OF PURPOSE readily pass into *Object Clauses*,²

¹ The Subjunctive of *Purpose* is doubtless in origin a Subjunctive of *Desire*, expressing the *desire* or *command* implied in the action of the principal verb: *Tē rogō ut eum juvēs, I ask you to aid him* (I ask you, so aid him). Here the second clause, originally independent, contains the *desire*, *wish*, involved in *rogō*. *Vereor nē labōrem augeam, I fear that I shall increase the labor* (I fear, let me not increase the labor). *Praestō erit pontifex, quī comitia habeat, the pontiff will be present to hold the comitia* (the pontiff will be present, let him hold the comitia). Liv. See Delbrück, 'Conjunctiv und Optativ,' pp. 59–62.

² An *Object Clause* is one which has become virtually the *object* of a verb. Thus, in '*opto ut id audiātis*,' the clause *ut id audiātis* has become the object of *opto*, 'I desire.'

but they still retain the Subjunctive. Thus the Subjunctive is used—

I. With verbs signifying DESIRE and its EXPRESSION; hence *decision, decree, etc.*:¹

Optō ut id audiātis, *I desire (pray) that you may hear this.* Cic. Ut mihi aedēs aliquās condūcās volō, *I wish that you would hire a house for me.* Plaut. Senātus cēnsuerat, uti Aeduōs dēfenderet, *the senate had decreed that he should defend the Aedui.* Caes. Servis imperat ut filiam dēfendant, *he commands his servants to defend his daughter.* Cic. Tē hortor ut legās, *I exhort you to read.* Cic. Tē rogō ut eum juvēs, *I ask you to aid him.* Cic. Ā rēge petiverunt nē inimicissimum suum sēcum habēret, *they asked from the king that he would not keep his worst enemy with him.* Nep.

NOTE.—Verbs of DETERMINING, DECIDING—*statuō, cōstituō, dēcernō, etc.*—generally take the Subjunctive when a new subject is introduced, otherwise the Infinitive (533, I, 1):

Cōstituerat, ut tribūnus quererētur, *he had arranged that the tribune should enter the complaint.* Sall. Senātus dēcrevit, darent operam cōsules, *the senate decreed that the consuls should attend to it.* Sall. Manēre dēcrevit, *he decided to remain.* Nep.

II. With verbs and expressions denoting EFFORT (*striving for a purpose, attaining a purpose*) or IMPULSE (*urging to effort*):²

Contendit ut vincat, *he strives to conquer.* Cic. Cūrāvī ut bene viverem, *I took care to lead a good life.* Sen. Effecit ut imperātor mitterētur, *he caused a commander to be sent (attained his purpose).* Nep. Movēmur ut bonī simus, *we are influenced to be good.* Cic.

NOTE 1.—Some verbs of ENDEAVORING, STRIVING, as *cōnor, contendō, nitor, studeō, and tento*, generally take the Infinitive when no new subject is introduced: see 533:

Locum oppugnāre contendit, *he proceeds to storm the city.* Caes. Tentābō dē hōc dicere, *I will attempt to speak of this.* Quint.

NOTE 2.—*Ut* with the Subjunctive sometimes forms with *faciō* or *agō*, rarely with *est*, a circumlocution for the Indicative: *faciō ut dicam* = *dicō*; *faciō ut scribam* = *scribō*: *Invitus faciō ut recorder, I unwillingly recall.* Cic.

III. With verbs and expressions denoting FEAR, ANXIETY, DANGER:³

Timeō, ut labōrēs sustineās, *I fear that you will not endure the labors.*⁴ Cic. Timēbam nē evenirent ea, *I feared that those things would happen.* Cic. Vereor nē labōrem augeam, *I fear that I shall increase the labor.*⁴ Cic. Pericūlum est nē ille tē verbis obruat, *there is danger that he will overwhelm you with words.* Cic.

NOTE 1.—By a difference of idiom, *ut* must here be rendered by *that not*, and *nē* by *that or lest*. The Latin treats the clause as a wish or purpose.⁴

¹ As *optō, postulō; censeō, dēcernō, statuō, cōstituō, etc.; volō, mālō; admoneō, moneō, hortor; orō, rogō; imperō, praecipio, etc.*

² As *enitor, contendō, studeō; cūrō, id agō, operam dō, etc.; faciō, efficiō, impetro, cōsequor, etc.; cōgō, impellō, moveō, etc.*

³ As *metuō, timeō, vereor; pericūlum est, cūra est, etc.*

⁴ The Subjunctive of Desire is manifest if we make the subordinate clause inde

NOTE 2.—After verbs of FEARING, *nē nōn* is sometimes used for *ut*—regularly so after negative clauses :

Vereor *nē nōn* possit, *I fear that he will not be able.* Cic.

NOTE 3.—Verbs of FEARING admit the *Infinitive* in the same sense as in English :

Vereor laudāre, *I fear (hesitate) to praise.*¹ Cic.

499. PECULIARITIES.—Expressions of Purpose present the following peculiarities :

1. **Ut nē**, rarely **ut nōn**, is sometimes used for **nē** :

Praedixit, *ut nē* lēgātōs dimitterent, *he charged them not to (that they should not) release the delegates.* Nep. *Ut plūra nōn dicam, not to say more* (i. e., that I may not). Cic.

2. **Ut** is sometimes omitted, especially after *volō, nōlō, mālō, faciō*, and after verbs of DIRECTING, URGING, etc. **Nē** is often omitted after *cavē* :

Tū velim sis, *I desire that you may be.* Cic. Fāc habeās, *see (make) that you have.* Cic. Senātus dēcrēvit darent operam cōsulēs, *the senate decreed that the consuls should see to it.* Sall. Cavē faciās, *beware of doing it, or see that you do not do it.* Cic.

NOTE.—Clauses with *ut* or *nē* are sometimes inserted parenthetically in sentences :

Amicōs, optimam vitae, *ut ita dicam,*² suppellectilem, *friends, the best treasure (furniture), so to speak, of life.* Cic.

3. *Clauses of Purpose* sometimes pass into *Substantive Clauses*, which, like indeclinable nouns, are used in a variety of constructions :

Per eum stetit quōminus dīmīcārētur,³ *it was owing to him (stood through him) that the battle was not fought.* Caes. Volō *ut* mihī respondeās,³ *I wish that you would answer me.* Cic. Fecit pacem his condiciōnibus, *nē* quī adficerentur exiliō,³ *he made peace on these terms, that none should be punished with exile.* Nep.

NOTE 1.—For the *Different Forms of Substantive Clauses*, see 540.

NOTE 2.—Clauses with *quōminus* sometimes lose the original idea of *Purpose* and denote *Result* :⁴

Nōn dēterret sapientem mors quōminus rēi publicae cōsulat, *death does not deter a wise man from deliberating for the republic.* Cic.

pendent, as it was originally : *I fear, so may you endure the labors*, an affirmative wish ; *I fear, may I not increase the labor*, a negative wish ; hence *nē*.

¹ Compare *vereor laudāre*, 'I fear to praise,' with *vereor nē laudem*, 'I fear THAT I SHALL PRAISE.'

² The Subjunctive in this and similar clauses may be explained either as a Subjunctive of *Purpose* dependent upon a verb understood, or as a Subjunctive of *Desire* ; see 483.

³ In the first example, the clause *quōminus dīmīcārētur* has become apparently the subject of *stetit* ; in the second, *ut mihī respondeās*, the object of *volō* ; and in the third, *nē quī adficerentur exiliō*, an appositive to *condiciōnibus*.

⁴ Such a transition from *Purpose*, denoting an *Intended Result*, to a *Simple Result* is easy and natural.

III. SUBJUNCTIVE IN CLAUSES OF RESULT.

RULE XLIII.—Result.

500. The Subjunctive is used to denote RESULT¹—

I. With the relative **quī**, and with relative adverbs, as **ubī**, **unde**, **cūr**, etc. :

Nōn is sum *quī* (= *ut ego*) *hīs ūtar*, *I am not such a one as* *TO USE* *these things*. Cic. *Innocentia* est *adfectiō tālis animī*, *quae* (= *ut ea*) *noceat nēmīni*, *innocence is such a state of mind as* *INJURES* *no one*, or *as* *TO INJURE* *no one*. Cic. *Neque quisquam fuit ubī nostrum jās obtinērīmus*, *nor was there any one with whom* (where) *we could obtain our right*. Cic. *Est vērō cūr quis Jūnōnem laedere nōlit*, *there is indeed a reason why* (so that) *one would be unwilling to offend Juno*. Ovid.

II. With *ut*, *ut nōn*, *quīn* :

Ita vixit ut Athēniēnsibus esset cārissimus, *he so lived that* *HE WAS* *very dear to the Athenians*. Nep. *Ita laudō, ut nōn pertimēscam*, *I so praise as not* *TO FEAR*. Cic. *Ego in publicīs causis ita sum versātus ut dēfenderim multōs*, *I have been so occupied in public suits that I have defended many*. Cic. *Nihil est tam difficile quīn (ut nōn) investigārī possit*, *nothing is so difficult that it may not be investigated*. Ter.

NOTE 1.—*Quī* is often preceded by *is*, *tālis*, *tantus*, or some similar word; and *ut*, by *ita*, *sic*, *tam*, *adeō*, *tantopere*, or some similar particle; see examples.

NOTE 2.—In Plautus and Terence *ut* sometimes accompanies *quī* :

Ita ut quī neget, so that he refuses. Ter.

NOTE 3.—For the Subjunctive denoting a result after *quōminus*, see 499, 3, note 2.

501. CLAUSES OF RESULT readily pass into *Substantive Clauses*, but they still retain the Subjunctive. Thus the Subjunctive is used—

I. In SUBJECT CLAUSES. Thus—

1. With *impersonal verbs* signifying *it happens*, *remains*, *follows*, *is lawful*, *is allowed*, *is distant*, *is*, etc. :²

Fit ut quisque delectētur, *it happens that every one is delighted*. Cic. *Sequitur ut falsum sit*, *it follows that it is false*. Cic. *Restat ut doceam*, *it remains that I should show*. Cic. *Ex quō efficitur ut voluptās nōn sit summum bonum*, *from which it follows that pleasure is not the highest good*. Cic.

2. With *predicate nouns and adjectives* :

Mōs est ut nōlint, *it is their custom not to be willing* (that they are unwilling). Cic. *Prōximum est, ut doceam*, *the next point is, that I show*. Cic. *Nōn est dubium quīn beneficium sit*, *that it is a benefit, is not doubtful*. Sen.

¹ The Subjunctive of *Result* is doubtless in origin a *Potential Subjunctive* : *Nōn is sum quī hīs ūtar*, 'I am not one who would use (or is likely to use) these things.' Hence this Subjunctive takes the negative *nōn* (*ut nōn*) like the *Potential Subjunctive*, while the Subjunctive of *Purpose* takes the negative *nē* like the Subjunctive of *Desire*.

² As *accidit*, *contingit*, *evenit*, *fit*, *restat*, *sequitur*, *licet*, *abest*, *est*, etc.

NOTE.—For the Subjunctive with *ut*, with or without *ne*, in questions expressive of *impatience* or *surprise*, see 486, II., note.

II. In OBJECT CLAUSES. Thus—

1. In clauses introduced by *ut* after *faciō*, *efficiō*, of the action of irrational forces :

Sol efficit ut omnia floreant, the sun causes all things to bloom (i. e., produces that result). Cic. *Splendor vester facit ut peccare sine periculo non possitis*, your conspicuous position causes this result, that you can not err without peril. Cic. See 498, II.

2. In clauses introduced by *quā* after verbs of *Doubting* :

Non dubitabis quin sint beati, you will not doubt that they are happy. Cic.

III. In CLAUSES IN APPPOSITION with nouns or pronouns :

Habet hoc virtus ut delectet, virtue has this advantage, that it delights. Cic. *Est hoc vitium, ut invidia glorie comes sit*, there is this fault, that envy is the companion of glory. Nep.

NOTE.—For the different forms of substantive clauses, see 540.

502. PECULIARITIES.—Expressions of Result present the following peculiarities :

1. *Ut* is sometimes omitted—regularly with *oportet*, generally with *opus est* and *neesse est* :

Tē oportet virtus trahat, it is necessary that virtue should attract you. Cic. *Causam habeat neesse est*, it is necessary that it should have a cause. Cic.

2. The Subjunctive occurs with *quam*—with or without *ut* :

Liberalius quam ut posset, too freely to be able (more freely than so as to be able). Nep. *Imponēbat amplius quam ferre possent*, he imposed more than they were able to bear.

3. After *tantum abest ut*, denoting result, a second *ut* of result sometimes occurs :

Philosophia, tantum abest ut laudetur, ut etiam vituperetur, so far is it from the truth (so much is wanting) that philosophy is praised, that it is even censured. Cic.

503. In RELATIVE CLAUSES, the Subjunctive of RESULT shows the following SPECIAL CONSTRUCTIONS :

I. The Subjunctive is used in relative clauses to characterize an *Indefinite* or *General Antecedent* :¹

Quid est quod tē delectare possit, what is there which can delight you ? Cic. *Nunc dicis aliquid quod ad rem pertineat*, now you state something which belongs to the subject. Cic. *Sunt qui putent*, there are some who think. Cic. *Nemo est qui non cupiat*, there is no one who does not desire. Cic.

¹ Here *tam*, *tālis*, or some such word, is often understood.

NOTE 1.—Restrictive clauses with *quod*, as *quod sciam*, 'as far as I know,' *quod meminero*, 'as far as I remember,' etc., take the Subjunctive:

Nōn ego tē, quod sciam, unquam ante hunc diem vidi, AS FAR AS I KNOW, I have never seen you before this day. Plaut.

NOTE 2.—*Quod*, or a relative particle, *ubi*, *unde*, *quō*, *cūr*, etc., with the Subjunctive, is used after *est*, 'there is reason'; *nōn est, nihil est*, 'there is no reason'; *quid est*, 'what reason is there?' *nōn habeo, nihil habeo*, 'I have no reason':

Est quod gaudeās, there is reason why you should rejoice, or so that you may. Plaut. Nōn est quod credās, there is no reason why you should believe. Sen. Nihil habeo, quod incūsem senectūtem, I have no reason why I should accuse old age. Cic. Quid est cūr virtūs ipsa nōn efficiat beatūs, what reason is there why virtue itself should not make men happy? Cic.

NOTE 3.—The Indicative is freely used in relative clauses after indefinite antecedents:

1) In poetry¹ and late prose:

Sunt quīs juvat, there are some whom it delights. Hor.

2) Even in the best prose, when the fact itself is to be made prominent:

Sunt qui nōn audent dicere, there are some who do not dare to speak. Cic. Multa sunt, quae dici possunt, there are many things which may be said. Cic.

II. The Subjunctive is used in relative clauses—

1. After *ūnus*, *sōlus*, and the like:

Sapientia est ūna, quae maestitiam pellat, wisdom is the only thing which dispels sadness (which would dispel). Cic. Sōli centum erant qui creārī possent, there were only one hundred who could be appointed (such that they could be). Liv.

2. After *dignus*, *indignus*, *idōneus*, and *aptus*:

Fābulae dignae sunt, quae legantur, the fables are worthy to be read (that they should be read). Cic. Rūsum Caesar idōneum iudicāverat quem mitteret, Caesar had judged Rufus a suitable person to send (whom he might send). Caes.

3. After comparatives with *quam*:

Damna mājōra sunt quam quae (= ut ea) aestimārī possint, the losses are too great to be estimated (greater than so that they can be). Liv.

504. *Quīn*,² 'who not,' 'that not,' etc., is often used to introduce a result after negatives and interrogatives implying a negative.³ Thus—

¹ Especially in early poetry, as in Plautus and Terence.

² *Quīn* is a compound of the relative *quī* and *nē*, and appears to be used both as an indeclinable relative pronoun, *who not*, and as a relative particle, *by which not, how not*, etc. Some clauses with *quīn* may perhaps be best explained as *indirect questions* (529, I.). *Quīn*, meaning *why not?* often used in independent clauses, is a compound of the interrogative *quīs* or *quī*, and *nē*: *Quīn tū hōc facis*, 'why do you not do it?' Liv.

³ As *nēmō, nūllus, nihil, quis? nōn dubito, nōn dubium est; nōn multum abest, paulum abest, nihil abest, quid abest? nōn, vix, aegrē abstineo; mihi nōn temperō; nōn retineor; nōn, nihil praetermittō; facere nōn possum, fieri nōn potest; nūnquam* with a large class of verbs.

1. *Quin* is often used in the sense of *quā nōn*, *quae nōn*, etc., as after *nēmō*, *nullus*, *nihil*, *quis*?

Adest nēmō, *quin videat*, *there is no one present who does not see*. Cic. *Nēmō est quin audierit*, *there is no one who has not heard*. Cic. *Quis est quin cernat*, *who is there who does not perceive?* Cic. *Nūlla fuit civitas quin mitteret*, *there was no state which did not send*. Caes. *Nūlla pictūra fuit quin (=quam non) inspēxerit*, *there was no painting which he did not inspect*. Cic. *Nūllum intermisi diem, quin (=quō nōn or ut eō nōn) aliquid darem*, *I allowed no day to pass without giving something (on which I would not give something)*. Cic.

NOTE.—*Quin* can often be best rendered by *but* or by *without* or *from* with a participial noun in -ING: see the last example under 1; also the last under 2.

2. *Quin* is often used in the ordinary sense of *ut nōn*:

Nēmō est tam fortis quin perturbetur, *no one is so brave as not to be disturbed*. Caes. *Nihil est tam difficile quin investigārī possit*, *nothing is so difficult that it may not be investigated*. Ter. *Retinērī nōn poterant quin tela cōicerent*,¹ *they could not be restrained from hurling their weapons*. Caes.

NOTE.—*Is* or *id* is sometimes expressed after *quin*:

Nihil est quin id intereat, *there is nothing which does not perish*. Cic.

3. *Quin* is used in the sense of *ut nōn* or of *ut* in subject and object clauses (501):

1) With *facere nōn possum*, *fiērī nōn potest*, etc., in the sense of *ut nōn*:

Facere nōn possum quin litterās mittam, *I can not but send a letter*. Cic. *Effici nōn potest quin eōs oderim*, *it can not be (be effected) that I should not hate them*. Cic.

2) With negative expressions implying doubt and uncertainty, in the sense of *ut*:

Agamemnōn nōn dubitat quin Trōja sit peritūra, *Agamemnon does not doubt that Troy will fall (perish)*. Cic. *Nōn dubitārī debet quin fuerint poētae*, *it ought not to be doubted that there were poets*. Cic. *Quis ignorat quin tria genera sint*, *who is ignorant that there are three races?* Cic.

4. *Quin* is sometimes used in the sense of *quōminus*:²

Quin loquar haec, nūquam mē potes deterre, *you can never deter me from saying this*. Plaut. *Nōn deterret sapientem mors quōminus rē publicae cōsulat*, *death does not deter a wise man from deliberating for the republic*. Cic. *Nōn recusavit, quōminus poenam subiret*, *he did not refuse to submit to punishment*. Nep. *Neque recusare quin armis contendat*, *and that they do not refuse to contend in arms*. Caes.

NOTE.—For *nōn quin* in Causal Clauses, see 516, 2.

¹ Pronounced as if written *cōjicerent*; see 36, 4, with foot-note 1.

² As after verbs of *hindering*, *refusing*, and the like. Observe that in the examples *deterreo* and *recuso* are used both with *quin* and with *quōminus*. They also admit the Subjunctive with *nē* or the Infinitive; see 505, II.

505. CONSTRUCTION OF SPECIAL VERBS.—Some verbs admit two or more different constructions. Thus—

I. *Dubitō* admits—

1. **Quīn**, WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE, if it stands in a negative sentence; see 504, 3, 2).

2. **AN INDIRECT QUESTION** (529, I.):

Nōn dubitō quid putēs, I do not doubt what you think. Cic. *Dubitō an pōnam, I doubt whether I should not place.*¹ Nep.

3. **THE ACCUSATIVE WITH THE INFINITIVE:**

Quis dubitat patēre Eurōpam, who doubts that Europe is exposed? Curt.

4. **THE SIMPLE INFINITIVE**, when it means *to hesitate*:

Nōn dubitem dicere, I should not hesitate to say. Cic. *Dubitāmus virtutem extendere factis, do we hesitate to extend our glory (valor) by our deeds?* Verg.

II. Verbs of hindering, opposing, refusing, and the like, admit—

1. **THE SUBJUNCTIVE WITH *nē*, *quīn*, or *quōminus*:**²

Impedior nē plūra dicam, I am prevented from saying (that I may not say) more. Cic. *Sententiam nē diceret recūsavit, he refused to give an opinion.* Cic. *Neque recūsare quīn armis contendant, and that they do not refuse to contend in arms.* Caes. *Interclūdor dolōre quōminus plura scribam, I am prevented by sorrow from writing more.* Cic.

2. **THE ACCUSATIVE WITH THE INFINITIVE, or the simple INFINITIVE:**

Num ignōbitās sapientem beatū esse prohibēbit, will obscurity prevent a wise man from being happy? Cic. *Quae facere recūsem, which I should refuse to do.* Hor.

IV. MOODS IN CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

506. Every conditional sentence consists of two distinct parts, expressed or understood—the *Condition* and the *Conclusion*:

*Sī negem, mentiar, if I should deny it, I should speak falsely.*³ Cic.

RULE XLIV.—Conditional Sentences with *sī*, *nisi*, *nī*, *sīn*.

507. Conditional sentences with *sī*, *nisi*, *nī*, *sīn*, take—

I. THE INDICATIVE in both clauses *to assume* the supposed case:

¹ That is, *I am inclined to think that I should place*. Observe that *dubitō an* means 'I doubt whether not'='I am inclined to think,' and *dubitō num*, 'I doubt whether': *Dubitō num dēbeam*, 'I doubt whether I ought.' Plin.

² For the use of *quīn*, see 504. *Nē* and *quōminus* may follow either *affirmatives* or *negatives*.

³ Here *sī negem* is the condition, and *mentiar*, the conclusion.

Sī spiritum dūcit, vīvit, if he breathes, he is alive. Cic. *Sī tot exempla virtūtis nōn movent, nihil unquam movēbit, if so many examples of valor do not move (you), nothing will ever move (you).* Liv.

II. The PRESENT OR PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE in both clauses to represent the supposed case as *possible* :

Diēs dēficiat, sī velim causam dēfendere, the day would fail me, if I should wish to defend the cause. Cic. *Improbē fēcērīs, nisi monuerīs, you would do wrong, if you should not give warning.* Cic.

III. The IMPERFECT OR PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE in both clauses to represent the supposed case as *contrary to fact* :

Plūribus verbīs ad tē scriberem, sī rēs verba dēsiderāret, I should write to you more fully (with more words), if the case required words. Cic. *Sī voluisset, dīmicāset, if he had wished, he would have fought.* Nep.

1. Two clauses without any conjunction sometimes have the force of a conditional sentence :

Negat quis, negō, does any one deny, I deny. Ter. *Rogēs mē, nihil respondeam, ask me, I shall make no reply.* Cic. *Tū māgnam partem, sineret dolor, habērēs, you would have had a large share, had grief permitted.*¹ Verg. *Lacēsse* ; *jam vidēbis furentem, provoke him* (i. e., if you provoke him), *you will at once see him frantic.* Cic.²

2. A condition is sometimes introduced by the relative **quī, quae**, etc. = *sī is, sī quis, sī quī*, etc. :

Quī sēcum loquī poterit, sermōnem alterīus nōn requirēt, if any one (lit., he who) shall be able to converse with himself, he will not need the conversation

¹ See 510, note 2.

² From these examples it is manifest that a conditional particle is not an essential part of a conditional sentence. Originally the two clauses, the *condition* and the *conclusion*, were independent, and the mood in each was determined by the ordinary principles which regulate the use of moods in principal clauses; see 483: 485. Hence the Indicative was used in treating of facts, and the Subjunctive or Imperative in all other cases. *Sī*, probably the Locative case of a pronoun, meaning (1) *at that time* or *in that manner*, and (2) *at any time* or *in any manner*, has nothing whatever to do with the mood, but merely denotes that the conclusion is connected with the condition. Thus: *negat, negō*, 'he denies (i. e., assume that he denies), I deny'; *sī negat, negō*, 'he denies at some time, then I deny'; *diēs dēficiat, sī velim*, etc., 'let me wish (Subjunctive of Desire) at any time, etc., then the day would fail me.' The Subjunctive in conditions is a *Subjunctive of Desire* with nearly the force of the Imperative, which may indeed be used for it when *sī* is omitted, as *lacēsse*, 'provoke him (i. e., if you provoke him)'. In conclusions the Subjunctive is generally *potential*, as *diēs dēficiat*, 'the day would fail,' but sometimes it is the *Subjunctive of Desire*, for which the Imperative may be substituted; as, *peream, sī poterunt*, 'may I perish if they shall be able'; *sī peccāvi, ignōsce*, 'if I have erred, pardon me.' See Delbrück, 'Conjunctiv und Optativ,' pp. 70-74; 171-182.

of another. Cic. Errat longē, quī crēdat, etc., *he greatly errs who supposes*, etc. (i. e., if any one supposes, he greatly errs). Ter. Haec quī videat, nōne cōgātūr cōfiteri, etc., *if any one should see these things, would he not be compelled to admit*, etc.? Cic.

3. A condition is sometimes introduced by **cum** :

Ea cum dīxissent, quid responderēs, *if (when) they had said that, what should you reply?* Cic.

NOTE 1.—The condition is sometimes ironical, especially with *nisi vērō*, *nisi forte*, with the Indicative, and with *quasi*, *quasi vērō*, with the Present or Perfect Subjunctive:

Nisi forte insānit, *unless perhaps he is insane*. Cic. Quasi vērō necesse sit, *as if indeed it were necessary*. Caes.

NOTE 2.—*Ita—sī*, 'so—if,' means *only—if*. *Sī quidem*, 'if indeed,' sometimes has nearly the force of *since* :

Hōc ita iūstum est, sī est voluntārium, *this is just only if (on condition that) it is voluntary*. Cic. Antīquissimum est genus poētārum. sī quidem Homērus fuit ante Rōmam conditam, *the class of poets is very ancient, since Homer lived before the founding of Rome*. Cic.

NOTE 3.—*Nisi* or *nī*, 'if not,' is sometimes best rendered *but* or *except* :

Nesciō, nisi hōc videō, *I know not, but (except that) I observe this*. Cic.

NOTE 4.—*Nisi sī* means *except if, unless perhaps, unless* :

Nisi sī quī scripsit, *unless some one has written*. Cic.

NOTE 5.—For *sī* to be rendered to *see if, to see whether*, etc., see 529, 1, note 1.

NOTE 6.—For *quod sī*, *quod nī*, *quod nisi*, see 453, 6.

NOTE 7.—The condition may be variously supplied, as by a participle, by the ablative absolute, or by the oblique case of a noun :

Nōn potestis, voluptāte omnia dirigentēs (= *sī dirigitis*), retinēre virtutē, *you can not retain your manhood, if you arrange all things with reference to pleasure*. Cic. Rēctē factō (= *sī rēctē factum erit*), laus prōpōnitur, *if it is (shall be) well done, praise is offered*. Cic. Nēmō sine spē (= *nisi spem haberet*) sē offerret ad mortem, *no one without a hope (if he had not a hope) would expose himself to death*. Cic.

NOTE 8.—For Conditional Sentences in the INDIRECT DISCOURSE, see 527.

508. FIRST FORM.—Conditional sentences with the *Indicative in both clauses*, assuming the supposed case as *real*, may base upon it any statement which would be admissible if the supposed case were a known fact :

Sī haec civitas est, cīvis sum ego, *if this is a state, I am a citizen*. Cic. Sī nōn licēbat, nōn necesse erat, *if it was not lawful, it was not necessary*. Cic. Sī vis, dabō tibi testēs, *if you wish, I will furnish you witnesses*. Cic. Plūra scribam, sī plūs ōtiī habuerō, *I will write more if I shall have (shall have) more leisure*. Cic. Dolōrem sī nōn poterō frangere, occultābō, *if I shall not be able to overcome sorrow, I shall conceal it*. Cic. Parvī sunt foris arma, nisi est cōsiliū domī, *arms are of little value abroad, unless there is wisdom at home*. Cic. Sī domī sum, etc.; sin¹ foris sum, etc., *if I am at home, etc.; but if I am abroad, etc.* Plaut. Nī putō, *if I do not think*. Cic.

¹ *Sīn* from *sī nē*, 'if not,' 'if on the contrary,' 'but if,' properly introduces a condition in contrast with another condition expressed or implied. Thus, *sin foris* is in contrast with *sī domī*, and means *but if abroad*.

1. The **CONDITION** is generally introduced, when affirmative, by *sī*, with or without other particles, as *quidem*, *modo*, etc., and when negative, by *sī nōn*, *nisi*, *nī*.

2. The **TIME** may be *present*, *past*, or *future*, but it need not be the same in both clauses. Thus the **Present** or the **Future Perfect** in the condition is often followed by the **Future**, as in the third and fourth examples.¹

3. *Sī nōn* and *nisi* are often used without any perceptible difference of meaning; but strictly *sī nōn* introduces the negative condition on which the conclusion depends, while *nisi* introduces a qualification or an exception. Thus, in the second example above, the meaning is, *if it was not lawful*, it follows that *it was not necessary*; while in the fourth the meaning is, *arms are of little value abroad, except when there is wisdom at home*.

4. The **CONCLUSION** irrespective of the condition may assume a considerable variety of form. Thus:

Redargue mē sī mentior, refute me if I speak falsely. Cic. *Moriar, nī putō, may I die, if I do not think.* Cic. *Quid timeam, sī beātus futūrus sum, why should I fear if I am going to be happy?* Cic. *Sī quid habēs certius, velim scire, if you have any information (anything more certain), I should like to know it.* Cic.

5. **GENERAL TRUTHS** may be expressed conditionally—

1) By the *Indicative* in both clauses, as in the sixth example under 508.

2) By the *Second Person* of the *Subjunctive* used of an indefinite *you* (= any one) in the condition, with the *Indicative* in the conclusion:

Memoria minuitur, nisi eam exercēas, the memory is impaired, if you do not (one does not) exercise it. Cic. *Nūlla est excūsatiō peccāti, sī amīci causā peccāveris, it is no excuse for a fault, that you have committed it for the sake of a friend.* Cic.

509. SECOND FORM.—Conditional sentences with the *Present* or *Perfect Subjunctive* in both clauses represent the condition as *possible*:

Hæc sī tecum patria loquātur, nōne impetrāre dēbeat, if your country should speak thus with you, ought she not to obtain her request? Cic. *Improbē feceris, nisi monueris, you would do wrong, if you should not give warning.* Cic. See also 507, II.

NOTE 1.—The **TIME** denoted by these tenses, the *Present* and the *Perfect*, is generally either *present* or *future*, and the difference between the two is that the former regards the action in its *progress*, the latter in its *completion*. Thus, *loquātur*, 'should speak' (now or at any future time); so of *dēbeat*; but *feceris*, though referring to the same time as *loquātur*, regards the action as *completed*.²

NOTE 2.—The *Present Subjunctive* is occasionally used in conditional sentences, even when the condition is in itself *contrary to fact*:

¹ A conditional sentence with the **Future Perfect** in the condition and the **Future** in the conclusion, as *plūra scribam, sī plūs ōtīi habuerō*, corresponds to the Greek with *ἐάν* or *ἂν* with the **Aorist Subjunctive** in the condition, and the **Future Indicative** in the conclusion; as, *véos ἂν ποιήσης, γῆρας ἔξεις εὐθαλές, if you will labor while young, you will have a prosperous old age*.

² Observe that in each of these examples the mood in the conclusion is entirely independent of the condition. Thus, *redargue* is a command; *moriar*, a prayer, *Subjunctive* of Desire; *quid timeam*, a deliberative question (484, V.); and *velim*, a Potential *Subjunctive* (486, note 1).

³ As the *Present Subjunctive* in point of time is very closely related to the **Future Indicative** in conditional sentences, so the **Perfect Subjunctive** is very closely related to the **Future Perfect Indicative**, though it may refer to past time.

Tū gē hīc sīs, aliter sentiās, *if you were I (if you were in my place), you would think differently.* Ter.

NOTE 3.—When dependent upon an historical tense, the Present and Perfect are of course generally changed to the Imperfect and Pluperfect, by the law for Sequence of Tenses (490):

Metuit nē, sī iret, retraherētur, *he feared lest, if he should go, he would be brought back.* Liv.

510. THIRD FORM.—Conditional sentences with the *Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive in both clauses* represent the supposed case as *contrary to fact*, and simply state what would have been the result if the condition had been fulfilled :

Sapientia nōn expeterētur, sī nihil efficeret, *wisdom would not be sought (as it is), if it accomplished nothing.* Cic. Sī optima tenēre possemus, haud sāne cōsiliō egērēmus, *if we were able to secure the highest good, we should not indeed need counsel.* Cic. Sī voluisset, dimicasset, *if he had wished, he would have fought.* Nep. Nūquam abisset, nisi sibi viam mūnisset, *he would never have gone, if he had not prepared for himself a way.* Cic. See also 507, III.

NOTE 1.—Here the *Imperfect* generally relates to *present*¹ time, as in the first and second examples; the *Pluperfect* to *past* time, as in the third and fourth examples.

NOTE 2.—The *Imperfect* sometimes relates to *past* time, especially when it expresses a *continued* action, or is accompanied by any word denoting past time :

Nec, sī cuperēs, tibi id facere licuisset, *nor would you have been permitted to do it, if you had desired.* Cic. Num Opimium, sī tum essēs, temerarium civem putārēs, *would you have thought Opimius an audacious citizen if you had lived at that time?* Cic.

511. A CONCLUSION of the **FIRST FORM** is sometimes combined with a **CONDITION** of the **SECOND** or **THIRD FORM**. Thus—

1. The *Indicative* is often thus used in the conclusion (1) to denote a *general truth*, and (2) to emphasize a *fact*, especially with a condition introduced by *nisi* or *nē*.²

Turpis excusātiō est, sī quis fateātur, etc., *it is a base excuse, if one admits,* etc. Cic. Intrāre, si possim, castra hostium volō, *I wish to enter the camp of the enemy, if I am able.* Liv. Certāmen aderat, nī Fabius rem expedisset, *a contest was at hand, but Fabius had not adjusted the affair.*³ Liv. Nec vēnī, nisi fāta locum dedissent, *nor should I have come, had not the fates assigned the place.*³ Verg.

¹ This use of the Imperfect to denote present time was developed from the ordinary force of the Subjunctive tenses. Thus the Present denotes that which *is likely to be*, the Imperfect that which *was likely to be*, and so by implication that which *is not*. Compare *fuit* in the sense of *was*, but *is not*, 471, 1, 2).

² Here the condition merely introduces a *qualification* or an *exception*; see 508, 3.

³ The force of the Indicative can not be easily shown in a translation, but the Latin conception is, *I have not come without the divine guidance* (expressed in the condition).

NOTE 1.—The *Future Indicative* is sometimes used in the conclusion because of its near relationship in force to the Present Subjunctive :¹

Si mittat, quid respondēbis, *if he should send, what answer shall you give?* Lucr. Nec si cupiās, licebit, *nor, if you should desire it, will it be allowed.* Cic.

NOTE 2.—In a negative conclusion with a negative condition, the verb *possum* is generally in the Indicative :²

Neque amicitiam tuāri possumus, nisi amicos diligāmus, *nor should we be able to preserve friendship, if we should not love our friends.* Cic.

NOTE 3.—The *Historical Tenses* of verbs denoting *Duty, Propriety, Necessity, Ability*, and the like, in the conclusion of conditional sentences, are generally in the Indicative :

Quem, si ūlla in tē pietās esset, colere dōbēbās, *whom you ought to have honored (and would have honored), if there were any filial affection in you.* Cic. Vix castra, si oppugnārētur, tūtāri poterat, *he was hardly able to defend the camp, if he should be attacked.* Liv. Delēri exercitus potuit, si persecūtī victōrēs essent, *the army might have been destroyed (and would have been), if the victors had pursued.* Liv.

NOTE 4.—The *Historical Tenses* of the Indicative of still other verbs are sometimes similarly used when accompanied by *paene* or *prope* :

Pōns iter paene hostibus dedit, nī ūnus vir fuisset, *the bridge almost furnished a passage to the enemy (and would have furnished it), had there not been one man.* Liv.

2. The *Periphrastic Forms* in *rus* and *dus* in the conclusion of conditional sentences are generally in the Indicative :³

Quid si hostēs veniant, factūri estis, *what shall you do if the enemy should come?* Liv. Si quaeratur, indicandum est, *if inquiry should be made, information must be given.* Cic. Relictūri agrōs erant, nisi litterās misisset, *they would have left⁴ their lands, had he not sent a letter.* Cic. Quid futūrum fuit, si plēbs agitāri coepta esset, *what would have been the result, if the plebeians had begun to be agitated?* Liv. Si vērū respondere vellēs, haec erat dicenda, *if you wished to answer truly, this should have been said.* Cic. Si morātī essētis, moriendum omnibus fuit, *if you had delayed, you must all have perished.* Liv.

NOTE.—When the Perfect Indicative in the conclusion with the Subjunctive in the condition is brought into a construction which requires the Subjunctive, the tense remains unchanged, irrespective of the tense of the principal verb :

Adeō est inopiā coactus ut, nisi timuisset, Galliam repetitūrus fuerit,⁵ *he was so*

¹ See 479, with foot-note 3. A conditional sentence with the Present Subjunctive in the condition, and the Future Indicative in the conclusion, corresponds to the Greek *ἐάν* with the Present Subjunctive in the condition, and the Future Indicative in the conclusion: τοῦτο ἐάν σκοπήτε, εὐρήσετε, *if you examine this, you will find.*

² Here, too, the use of the Indicative grows out of the relationship between the meaning of *possum*, denoting *ability*, and that of the *Potential Subjunctive* denoting *possibility*.

³ The Indicative is here explained by the close relationship between the ordinary meaning of the Subjunctive, and that of the forms in *rus* and *dus* denoting that something is *about to be done* or *ought to be done*.

⁴ Lit., *were about to leave*, and so *would have left, had he not.* etc.

⁵ Here *repetitūrus fuerit* is in the Subjunctive, not because it is in a conditional sentence, but because it is the Subjunctive of Result with *ut*; but it is in the Perfect, because, if it were not dependent, the Perfect Indicative would have been used.

pressed by want that, if he had not feared, he would have returned to Gaul. Liv. Haud dubium fuit, quin nisi firmata extrema agminis fuissent, ingens accipienda cladis fuerit, *there was no doubt that, had not the rear of the line been made strong, a great disaster must have been sustained.* Liv. Quaeris quid potuerit amplius assequi, si Scipionis fuisset filius, *you ask what more he could have attained, if he had been the son of Scipio.* Cic.

512. A CONCLUSION of the THIRD FORM (510) is sometimes combined with a CONDITION of the SECOND FORM (509):

Si tecum loquantur, quid responderes, if they should speak with you, what answer would you give? Cic.

RULE XLV.—Conditional Clauses with *dum, modo, ac si, ut si, etc.*

513. Conditional clauses take the Subjunctive—

I. With *dum, modo, dummodo*,¹ 'if only,' 'provided that'; *dum nē, modo nē, dummodo nē*, 'if only not,' 'provided that not':²

Manent ingenia, modo permaneat industria, mental powers remain, if only industry remains. Cic. *Dum res maneat, verba fingant, let them make words, if only the facts remain.* Cic. *Dummodo repellat periculum, provided he may avert danger.* Cic. *Dum nē tibi videar, nōn laborō, provided I do not seem so to you, I do not care.* Cic.

II. With *ac si, ut si, quam si, quasi, tanquam, tanquam si, velut, velut si*, 'as if,' 'than if,' involving an ellipsis of the real conclusion:

Perinde habebō, ac si scripsissēs, I shall regard it just as if (i. e., as I should if) you had written. Cic. *Jacent, tanquam omnino sine animo sint, they lie as if (i. e., as they would lie if) they were entirely without mind.* Cic. *Quam si vixerit tecum, as if he had lived with you.* Cic. *Miserior es, quam si oculos nōn habērēs, you are more unhappy than (you would be) if you had not eyes.* Cic. *Crūdelitatem, velut si adesset, horrebant, they shuddered at his cruelty as (they would) if he were present.* Caes. *Ut si in suam rem aliēna convertant, as if they should appropriate others' possessions to their own use.* Cic. *Tanquam audiant, as if they may hear.* Sen.

NOTE 1.—In this form of conditional sentences, the *Present*³ or *Imperfect* is used of *present* time, and the *Perfect*³ or *Pluperfect* of *past* time; see examples above.

¹ When not used in conditions, these conjunctions often admit the Indicative: *Dum lēgēs vigēbant, while the laws were in force.* Cic.

² This Subjunctive is best explained as the *Subjunctive of Desire*, as indicated by the negative *nē* (483, 3). Thus, *modo permaneat industria*, 'only let industry remain'; *dum nē tibi videar*, 'let me not meanwhile seem so to you.' After *dum* and *dummodo* the Subjunctive may perhaps be explained as *Potential*, but the negative *nē* renders such an explanation very doubtful.

³ The English idiom would lead us to expect only the *Imperfect* and *Pluperfect*, as under 510; but the Latin often regards the condition as *possible*, and thus uses the *Present* and *Perfect*, as under 509.

NOTE 2.—*Ceu* and *sicuti* are sometimes used like *ac sī, ut sī*, etc. :

Ceu bella forent, as if there were wars. Verg. *Sicuti audiri possent, as if they could be heard.* Sall.

V. MOODS IN CONCESSIVE CLAUSES.

514. A concessive clause is one which concedes or admits something, generally introduced in English by *though* or *although* :¹

Quamquam itinere fessi erant, tamen prœcedunt, although they were weary with the journey, they still (yet) advanced. Sall.

NOTE.—The concessive particle is sometimes omitted :

Sed habeat, tamen, etc., but grant that he has it, yet, etc. Cic.

RULE XLVI.—Moods in Concessive Clauses.

515. Concessive clauses take—

I. Generally the *Indicative* in the best prose, when introduced by *quamquam* :

Quamquam intellegunt, tamen nūquam dicunt, though they understand, they never speak. Cic. *Quamquam festinās, nōn est mora longa, though you are in haste, the delay is not long.* Hor.

II. The *Indicative* or *Subjunctive*, when introduced by *etsī, etiāmsī, tametsī*, or *sī*, like conditional clauses with *sī*. Thus—

1. The *Indicative* is used to represent the supposed case as a *fact* :

Gaudeō, etsī nihil sciō quod gaudeam, I rejoice, though I know no reason why I should rejoice. Plaut.

2. The *Present* or *Perfect Subjunctive*, to represent the supposed case as *possible* :

Etsī nihil habeat in sē glōria, tamen virtūtem sequitur, though glory may not possess anything in itself, yet it follows virtue. Cic.

3. The *Imperfect* or *Pluperfect Subjunctive*, to represent the supposed case as *contrary to fact* :

Etiāmsī mors oppetenda esset, domī māllem, even if death ought to be met, I should prefer to meet it at home. Cic.

III. The *Subjunctive*, when introduced by *licet*,² *quamvis*, *ut*, *nē*, *cum*, or the relative *quī* :

¹ Concessive clauses bear a close resemblance to conditional clauses both in form and in use. *Sī optimum est*, 'if it is best,' is a condition; *etsī optimum est*, 'even if (or though) it is best,' is a concession; the one *assumes* a supposed case, the other *admits* it. The Subjunctive in concessive clauses is in general best explained in the same way as in conditional clauses; see 507, 1, foot-note 2.

² In origin *licet* is simply the impersonal verb of the same form, and the Subjunctive

Licet irrideat, plūs tamen ratiō valēbit, *though he may deride, reason will yet avail more.* Cic. Nōn tū possis, quamvis excellās, *you would not be able, although you excel.* Cic. Ut dēsint virēs, tamen est laudanda voluntās, *though the strength fails, still the will should be approved.* Ovid. Nē sit summum malum dolor, malum certē est, *though pain may not be the greatest evil, it is certainly an evil.* Cic. Cum domī divitiae adfluerent, fuēre tamen cīvēs, etc., *though wealth abounded at home, there were yet citizens, etc.* Sall. Absolvite Verrem, quī (cum is) sē fateātur pecūniās cēpisse, *acquit Verres, though he confesses (who may confess) that he has accepted money.* Cic.

NOTE 1.—*Quamquam* takes the Subjunctive—

1) When the thought, irrespective of the concessive character of the clause, requires that mood :

Quamquam epulis careat senectūs, *though old age may be without its feasts.* Cic.

2) Sometimes, even in the best prose, apparently without any special reason :

Quamquam nē id quidem suspiciōnem habuerit, *though not even that gave rise to any suspicion.* Cic.

3) In poetry and in late prose, the Subjunctive with *quamquam* is not uncommon. In Tacitus it is the prevailing construction :

Quamquam invicti essent, *although they were invincible.* Verg. *Quamquam* plerique ad senectam pervenirent, *although very many reached old age.* Tac.

NOTE 2.—*Quamquam* and *etsi* sometimes have the force of *yet, but yet, and yet* :

Quamquam quid loquor, *and yet why do I speak?* Cic. *Etsi* tibi assentior, *and yet I assent to you.* Cic.

NOTE 3.—*Quamvis* in the best prose takes the Subjunctive almost without exception, generally also in Livy and Nepos; but in poetry and in late prose it often admits the Indicative :

Erat dignitāte regiā, *quamvis* cārēbat nōmine, *he was of royal dignity, though he was without the name.* Nep.

NOTE 4.—*Qui* and *cum*, used concessively, generally take the Indicative in Plautus and Terence, and sometimes even in classical prose :

Audēs praedicāre id, domi tū esse nunc quī hīc ades, *do you dare to assert this, that you are now at home, although you are here present?* Plaut. *Cum* tabulās emunt, tamen nequeunt, *though they purchase paintings, they are yet unable.* Sall. *Cum* Sicilia vexata est, tamen, *though Sicily was disturbed, yet.* Cic.

NOTE 5.—*Ut—sic*, or *ut—ita*, ‘though—yet’ (lit., ‘as—so’), involving comparison rather than concession, does not require the Subjunctive :

Ut ā proeliis quictem habuerant, ita nōn cessāverant ab opere, *though (lit., as) they had had rest from battles, yet (lit., so) they had not ceased from work.* Liv.

NOTE 6.—*Quamvis* and *quantumvis*, meaning ‘as much as you please,’ ‘however much,’ may accompany *licet* with the Subjunctive :

Nōn possis tū, *quantumvis* licet excellās, *you would not be able, however much you may excel.* Cic.

clause which follows, developed from *Result* (501, I.), is its subject. Thus, in *licet irrideat* (lit., ‘that he may deride is allowed’), *irrideat* is according to the Latin conception the subject of *licet*. *Quamvis*, compounded of *quam*, ‘as,’ and *vis*, ‘you wish,’ means *as you wish*; thus, *quamvis excellās* means literally *excel as you wish* (i. e., as much as you please). The Subjunctive with *quamvis*, *ut*, *nē*, and *quī*, is the *Subjunctive of Desire*; that with *cum* was developed from the temporal clause; see 521.

VI. MOODS IN CAUSAL CLAUSES.

RULE XLVII.—Moods with quod, quia, quoniam, quandō.¹

516. Causal clauses with **quod, quia, quoniam, quandō**, generally take—

I. The INDICATIVE to assign a reason *positively, on one's own authority*:

Quoniam supplicatiō dēcrēta est, celebrātōte illōs diēs, *since a thanksgiving has been decreed, celebrate those days.* Cic. Gaudē quod spectant tē, *rejoice that (because) they behold you.* Hor.

II. The SUBJUNCTIVE to assign a reason *doubtfully, or on another's authority*:²

Sōcratēs accūsātus est, quod corrumpere juvenitē, *Socrates was accused, because (on the alleged ground that) he corrupted the youth.* Quint. Aristidēs nōne expulsus est patriā, quod iustus esset, *was not Aristides banished because (on the alleged ground that) he was just?* Cic.

1. By a special construction, the verb introducing a reason on another's authority is sometimes put in the Infinitive, depending upon a verb of *saying or thinking* in the Subjunctive:

Quod sē bellum gestūrōs dicerent (= quod bellum gestūrī essent, ut dicēbant), *because they were about, as they said, to wage war.* Caes.

NOTE.—In the same way the Subjunctive of a verb of *saying or thinking* may be used in a relative clause to introduce the sentiment of another person:

Ēmentendō quae sē audisse dicerent, *by reporting falsely what they had heard (what they said they had heard).* Sall.

2. NŌN QUŌ ETC.—Nōn quō, nōn quod, nōn quā, rarely nōn quia, also *quam quod*, etc., are used with the Subjunctive to denote an *alleged* reason in distinction from the *true* reason:

Nōn quō habērem quod scriberem, *not because (that) I had anything to write.* Cic. Nōn quod dolcant, *not because they are pained.* Cic. Quia ne-

¹ *Quod* and *quia* are in origin relative pronouns in the neuter. Thus: *gaudē quod spectant tē*, 'rejoice that (as to that) they behold you.' *Quoniam* = *quom-jam*, 'when now,' and *quandō* = *quam-dō* (*dō* = *diē*), 'on which day,' 'when.' *Dō* is probably from the same root as *dum*; see p. 145, foot-note 1.

² Observe that causal clauses with the Indicative *state a fact*, and at the same time present that fact as a *reason or cause*, as in the first example, but that causal clauses with the Subjunctive *simply assign a reason without asserting any fact*. Thus, in the examples under II., *quod corrumpere juvenitē* does not state that *Socrates corrupted the youth*, but simply indicates the *charge* made against him; nor does *quod iustus esset* state that *Aristides was just*, but simply indicates the *alleged ground* of his banishment. For the development of the Subjunctive in causal clauses, see p. 267, foot-note 3.

quiverat quam quod Ignōrāret, *because he had been unable, rather than because he did not know.* Liv.

NOTE.—Clauses with *quod* sometimes stand at the beginning of sentences to announce the subject of remark :

Quod mē Agamemnonem aemulārī putās, falleris, *in thinking (as to the fact that you think) that I emulate Agamemnon, you are mistaken.* Nep.

RULE XLVIII.—Causal Clauses with *cum* and *quī*.

517. Causal clauses with *cum* and *quī* generally take the Subjunctive, in writers of the best period :

Necesse est, cum sint dii, animantēs esse, *since there are gods, it is necessary that there should be living beings.* Cic. Cum vīta metūs plena sit, *since life is full of fear.* Cic. Quae cum ita sint, pēge, *since these things are so, proceed.* Cic. Ō vīs vērītātis, quae (cum ea) sē dēfendat, *O the force of truth, since it defends itself.* Cic. Ō fortunāte adulēscens, quī (cum tū) tuae virtūtis Homērum praecōnem invēneris, *O fortunate youth, since you (lit., who) have obtained Homer as the herald of your valor.* Cic.

1. In early Latin, especially in Plautus and Terence, the Indicative is the prevailing mood in causal clauses with *cum* and *quī*, though the Subjunctive is not uncommon with *quī*.¹

Quom² facere officium scīs tuum, *since you know how to do your duty.* Plaut. Quom hōc nōn possum, *since I have not this power.* Ter. Quī advēnistī, *since you have come.* Plaut. Tuās quī virtūtēs sciam, *since I know your virtues.* Plaut. Quī nēminem videam, *since I see no one.* Ter.

2. Clauses with either *cum* or *quī* admit the Indicative in all writers, when the statement is viewed as a *fact* :

Habeō senectūtī grātiā, quae mihi sermōnis aviditātem auxit, *I cherish gratitude to old age, which has increased my love of conversation.* Cic. Grātu-

¹ Clauses with *cum*, whether causal or temporal, illustrate the gradual extension of the use of the Subjunctive in subordinate clauses. Originally they took the Indicative, unless the thought irrespective of the causal or temporal character of the clause required the Subjunctive. Thus the Ciceronian sentence, *Necesse est, cum sint dii, animantēs esse*, 'since there are gods, it is necessary that there should be living beings,' would in early Latin have been, *Necesse est, cum sunt dii, animantēs esse*, and would have contained two distinct statements, viz., *there are gods*, and *it is necessary that there should be living beings*. But in time the causal clause lost so much of its original force as a separate statement, and became so entirely dependent upon the principal clause, as to be little more than an adverbial modifier of the latter, like the Ablative of Cause (413) in a simple sentence. The causal clause then took the Subjunctive, and the sentence as a whole made but one distinct statement, which may be approximately rendered, *in view of (because of) the existence of the gods, it is necessary that there should be living beings*. In the same way, temporal clauses with *cum* sometimes became little more than adverbial modifiers of the principal verb; see 521, II., 1, with foot-note, and 521, II., 2, with foot-note. For a special treatment of these clauses, see Hoffmann, 'Die Construction der lateinischen Zeitpartikeln,' and Lübbert, 'Die Syntax von Quom.'

² See 311, 1, with foot-note 4.

lor tibi, cum tantum valēs, *I congratulate you that* (in view of the fact that) *you have so great influence.* Cic.

3. When a conjunction accompanies the relative, the mood varies with the conjunction. Thus—

1) The Subjunctive is generally used with *cum*, *quippe*, *ut*, *utpote* :

Quae cum ita sint, *since these things are so.* Cic. Quippe qui blandiatur, *since he flatters* (as one who flatters). Cic. Ut qui colōni essent, *since they were colonists.* Cic.

NOTE.—But the Indicative is sometimes used to give prominence to the fact. In Sallust the Indicative is the regular construction after *quippe* :

Quippe qui rēgnum invāserat, *as he had laid hold of the kingdom.* Sall.

2) The Indicative is generally used with *quia*, *quoniam* :

Quae quia certa esse nōn possunt, *since these things can not be sure.* Cic. Qui quoniam intellegi nōluit, *since he did not wish to be understood.* Cic.

VII. MOODS IN TEMPORAL CLAUSES.¹

RULE XLIX.—Temporal Clauses with *postquam*, etc.

518. In temporal clauses with *postquam*, *posteaquam*,² *ubi*, *ut*, *simul atque*, etc., ‘after,’ ‘when,’ ‘as soon as,’ the Indicative is used :

Postquam vīdit, etc., castra posuit, *he pitched his camp, after he saw*, etc. Caes. Ubi certiōrēs facti sunt, *when they were informed.* Caes. Id ut audivit, *as he heard this.* Nep. Postquam vident, *after they saw.*³ Sall. Postquam nox aderat, *when night was at hand.* Sall.

NOTE 1.—The tense in these clauses is generally the *Perfect* or the *Historical Present*, but sometimes the *Descriptive Imperfect* ;⁴ see examples above ; also 471, 4.

NOTE 2.—The Pluperfect Indicative is sometimes used—

1) Especially to denote the *result* of a completed action :

Posteaquam cōsul fuerat, *after he had been consul.*⁵ Cic. Annō tertio postquam profugerat, *in the third year after he had fled.* Nep.

2) To denote *repeated action* :⁶

Ut quisque vānerat, solēbat, etc., *as each one came* (lit., *had come*), *he was wont*, etc. Cic.

NOTE 3.—*Postridiē quam* is used like *postquam* :

Postridiē quam tū es profectus, *on the day after you started.* Cic.

1. In Livy and the late historians, the Pluperfect or Imperfect Subjunctive is often used to denote repeated action :⁶

¹ On *Temporal Clauses*, see Hoffmann, ‘Die Construction der lateinischen Zeitpartikeln,’ and Lübbert, ‘Die Syntax von Quom.’

² Or *post quam* and *postea quam*.

³ See 467, III., with 1.

⁴ See 469, I.

⁵ And *was* accordingly at the time *a man of consular rank*.

⁶ In this case the Imperfect Indicative is generally used in the principal clause, as in the example here given.

Id ubi dixisset, hastam mittēbat, *whenever he had said that, he hurled (was wont to hurl) a spear.* Liv.

NOTE.—As a rare exception, the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive occur after *postquam* or *posteaquam*.¹

Posteaquam aedificasset classēs, *after he had built fleets.* Cic.

2. When the verb is in the second person singular to denote an indefinite subject, *you = any one, one*, the Subjunctive is generally used in temporal clauses:

Nōlunt ubi velis, ubi nōlis cupiunt, *they are unwilling when you wish it (when one wishes it), when you are unwilling they desire it.* Ter. Priusquam incipiās, cōsultō opus est, *before you begin, there is need of deliberation.* Sall.

RULE L.—Temporal Clauses with *dum*, etc.²

519. I. Temporal clauses with *dum*, *dōnec*, and *quoad*, in the sense of WHILE, AS LONG AS, take the *Indicative*:

Haec fēcī, dum licuit, *I did this while it was allowed.* Cic. Quoad vixit, *as long as he lived.* Nep. Dum lēgēs vigēbant, *as long as the laws were in force.* Cic. Dōnec eris fēlix, *as long as you shall be prosperous.* Ov. Quamdiū in prōvinciā fuērunt, *as long as they were in the province* Cic.

II. Temporal clauses with *dum*, *dōnec*, and *quoad*, in the sense of UNTIL, take—

1. The *Indicative*, when the action is viewed as an ACTUAL FACT:

Dēliberā hōc, dum ego redeō, *consider this until I return.* Ter. Dōnec rediit, *until he returned.* Liv. Quoad renūtiātum est, *until it was (actually) announced.* Nep.

2. The *Subjunctive*, when the action is viewed as something DESIRED, PROPOSED, OR CONCEIVED:

Differant, dum dēfervēscat ira, *let them defer it till their anger cools (i. e., that it may cool).* Cic. Expectās dum dicat, *you are waiting till he speaks (i. e., that he may speak).* Cic. Ea continēbis quoad tē videam, *you will keep them till I see you.* Cic.

NOTE 1.—In the poets and the historians, *dum* is sometimes used with the Imperfect Subjunctive, and *dōnec* with the Imperfect and Pluperfect, like *cum* in narration:³

Dum ea gererentur, bellum concitur, *while these things were in progress (were done), a war was commenced.* Liv. Nihil trepidābant dōnec ponte agerentur, *they did not fear at all while they were driven on the bridge.* Liv. Dōnec missi essent, *until they had been sent.* Liv.

NOTE 2.—*Dōnec*, in Tacitus, generally takes the Subjunctive:

¹ But the text in these cases is somewhat uncertain.

² See p. 291, foot-note 1.

³ See p. 295, foot-note 1.

Rhenus servat violentiam cursûs, donec Oceanô misceatur, *the Rhine preserves the rapidity of its current till it mingles with the ocean.* Tac.

RULE LI.—Temporal Clauses with *antequam* and *priusquam*.

520. In temporal clauses with *antequam* and *priusquam*¹—

I. Any tense except the Imperfect and the Pluperfect is put—

1. In the *Indicative*, when the action is viewed as an ACTUAL FACT :

Priusquam lûcet, adsunt, *they are present before it is light.* Cic. *Antequam* in Siciliam venî, *before I came into Sicily.* Cic. *Antequam* cõgnõverõ,² *before I shall have ascertained.* Cic. Nec prius respexî quam venimus, *nor did I look back until we arrived.* Verg.

2. In the *Subjunctive*,³ when the action is viewed as SOMETHING DESIRED, PROPOSED, OR CONCEIVED :

Antequam de rē publicā dicam, expōnam cõsilium, *I will set forth my plan before I (can) speak of the republic* (i. e., preparatory to speaking of the republic).⁴ Cic. Nōn prius ducēs dimitunt, quam¹ sit concessum, *they did not dismiss the leaders till it was granted.* Caes. *Priusquam* incipiās, cõsultō opus est, *before you begin there is need of deliberation* (i. e., as preparatory to beginning).⁵ Sall. Tempestās minatur, *antequam* surgat, *the tempest threatens, before it rises.* Sen. Collem, priusquam sentiatur, communit, *he fortified the hill before it was (could be) perceived.*⁶ Caes.

II. The Imperfect and the Pluperfect are put in the *Subjunctive* :⁷

¹ Often written *ante quam* and *prius quam*, sometimes with intervening words between *ante* or *prius* and *quam*. See also p. 291, foot-note 1.

² The Future is used only in early Latin, as in Plautus and Cato.

³ Remember that the Future is supplied in the Subjunctive by the Present; see 496.

⁴ Here the temporal clause involves *purpose* as well as *time*. *Antequam* dicam is nearly equivalent to *ut postea dicam*: 'I will set forth my views, *that I may afterwards speak of the republic.*'

⁵ Remember also that in temporal clauses the second person singular with an indefinite subject, *you = any one, one*, is generally in the Subjunctive; see 518, 2.

⁶ Potential Subjunctive; see 486, III.

⁷ The Subjunctive in the Imperfect and Pluperfect tenses is not always to be referred to the same principle. Sometimes, like the Subjunctive after *dum*, it is best explained as the *Subjunctive of Purpose*, as in the first example, and sometimes like the Subjunctive of the historical tenses after *cum*; see p. 295, foot-note 1.

Nōn prius ēgressus est quam rēx eum in fidem reciperet, he did not withdraw until the king took him under his protection. Nep. *Priusquam peteret cōsulātum, insānit, he was insane before he sought the consulship.* Liv. *Prius vīsus est Caesar, quam fāma perferrētur, Caesar appeared before any tidings were brought.* Caes. *Antequam urbem caperent, before they took the city.* Liv. *Priusquam dē meō adventū audire potuissent, in Macedoniam perrēxi, before they were able to hear of my approach, I went into Macedonia.* Cic. *Paucis ante diēbus, quam Syracūsae caperentur, a few days before Syracuse was taken.* Liv.

NOTE 1.—When the principal clause is negative and contains an historical tense, the temporal clause generally takes the Perfect Indicative, as in the last example under I., 1; but it sometimes takes the Subjunctive, as in the first example under II.

NOTE 2 — *Pridiē quam* takes the same moods as *priusquam* :

Pridiē quam scripsi, the day before I wrote. Cic. *Pridiē quam periret, somniāvit, he had a dream on the day before he died.* Suet.

NOTE 3.—For the Subjunctive of the second person with an indefinite subject, see 518, 2.

RULE LII.—Temporal Clauses with *cum*.

521. In temporal clauses with *cum*¹—

I. Any tense except the Imperfect and the Pluperfect is put in the *Indicative* :

Cum verba faciunt, mājōrēs suōs extollunt, when they speak, they extol their ancestors. Sall. *Cum quiēscunt, probant, while they are silent they approve.* Cic. *Librōs, cum est ōtium, legere solē, when there is leisure, I am wont to read books.* Cic. *Ad tē scribam, cum plūs ōtiī nactus erō, I shall write to you when I shall have obtained more leisure.* Cic. *Omnia sunt incerta cum ā jūre discessum est, all things are uncertain when one has departed from the right.*² Cic.

II. The Imperfect and the Pluperfect are put—

1. In the *Indicative*, when the temporal clause ASSERTS AN HISTORICAL FACT :

*Pāruit cum necesse erat, he obeyed when it was necessary.*³ Cic. *Nōndum profectus erat, cum haec gerēbantur, he had not yet started when these things took place.* Liv. *Tum cum rēs māgnās permultī amiserant, Rōmae fidēs concidit, then, when many had lost great fortunes, credit fell at Rome.* Cic. *Cum quaequam cohors impetum fēcerat, hostēs refugiēbant, whenever any cohort made (had made) an attack, the enemy retreated.* Caes.

¹ See p. 290, foot-note 1, with the works of Hoffmann and Lübbert there mentioned.

² *Discessum est* is an Impersonal Passive, *a departure has been made*; see 301, 1.

³ Here the temporal clause not only defines the *time* of *pāruit*, but also makes a distinct and separate statement, viz., *it was necessary*; see p. 295, foot-note 1; also, p. 290, foot-note 1.

2. In the *Subjunctive*, when the temporal clause simply DEFINES THE TIME of the principal action :¹

Cum epistolam complicārem, tabellārī vērunt, *while I was folding the letter (i. e., during the act), the postmen came.*¹ Cic. Cum ex Aegyptō reverteretur, decessit, *he died while he was returning (during his return) from Egypt.* Nep. Cum dīmicāret, occisus est, *when he engaged in battle, he was slain.* Nep. Zēnōnem, cum Athēnīs essem, audiēbam frequenter, *I often heard Zeno when I was at Athens.* Cic. Cum trīdūi vīam perfēcisset, nūntiātum est, etc., *when he had accomplished a journey of three days, it was announced, etc.* Caes. Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, matūrat ab urbe proficiscī, *when this was (had been) announced to Caesar, he hastened to set out from the city.* Caes.

1) Cum with the force of a relative after *tempus*, *actūs*, and the like, takes—

(1) Sometimes the *Indicative*, to state a fact :

Fuit tempus, cum hominēs vagābantur, *there was a time when men led a wandering life.* Cic.

NOTE.—Cum is sometimes thus used without *tempus*, etc. :

Fuit cum hōc dīci poterat, *there was a time when this could be said.* Liv.

(2) Generally the *Subjunctive*, to characterize the period :²

Id saeculum cum plēna Graecia poētārum esset, *that age when (such that) Greece was full of poets.* Cic. Erit tempus, cum dēsiderēs, *the time will come, when you will desire.* Cic.

NOTE 1.—Cum is sometimes thus used without *tempus*, etc. :

Fuit cum arbitrārer, *there was a time when I thought.* Cic.

NOTE 2.—Memini cum, 'I remember when,' generally takes the *Indicative*, but audio cum, video cum, and animadverto cum, generally the *Subjunctive* :

Memini cum mihi dēsipere vidēbare, *I remember when you seemed to me to be unwise.* Cic. Audivi cum diceret, *I heard him say (lit., when he said).* Cic.

2) Cum, meaning *from the time when*, *since*, takes the *Indicative* :

Centum annī sunt, cum dictātor fuit, *it is one hundred years since he was dictator.* Cic.

NOTE 1.—Cum . . . tum, in the sense of 'not only . . . but also,' 'both . . . and,' generally takes the *Indicative* in both clauses, but in the sense of 'though . . . yet,' the *Subjunctive* in the first clause and the *Indicative* in the second :

Cum antea distīnēbar, tum hōc tempore distīneor, *not only was I occupied before,*

¹ In the Imperfect and Pluperfect tenses the choice of mood often depends not so much upon the nature of the thought, as upon the intention and feeling of the writer at the moment. If he wishes to assert that the action of the temporal clause is an historical fact, he uses the *Indicative*; but if he introduces it for the sole purpose of defining the time of the principal action, he uses the *Subjunctive*. Thus, cum epistolam complicārem does not assert that I folded the letter, but, assuming that as admitted, it makes use of it in defining the time of vērunt. See also foot-note under 1 above; also p. 290, foot-note 1.

² Like the *Subjunctive* in relative clauses after indefinite antecedents; see 503, I.

but I am also occupied now. Cic. Quae cum sint gravia, tum illud acerbissimum est, though these things are severe, that is the most grievous. Cic.

NOTE 2.—For *cum* in Causal clauses, see 517.

NOTE 3.—For *cum* in Concessive clauses, see 515, III.

VIII. INDIRECT DISCOURSE—*Ōrātiō Obliqua*.

Moods and Tenses in Indirect Discourse.

522. When a writer or speaker expresses thoughts, whether his own or those of another, in any other form than in the original words of the author, he is said to use the Indirect Discourse—*Ōrātiō Obliqua*.¹

Platōnem ferunt in Italiam vēnisse, *they say that Plato came into Italy*. Cic. Respondeō tē dolōrem ferre moderatē, *I reply that you bear the affliction with moderation*. Cic. Ūtilem arbitror esse scientiam, *I think that knowledge is useful*. Cic.

1. In distinction from the INDIRECT DISCOURSE—*Ōrātiō Obliqua*, the original words of the author are said to be in the DIRECT DISCOURSE—*Ōrātiō Recta*.

2. Words quoted without change belong to the DIRECT DISCOURSE:

Rēx 'duumvirōs' inquit 'secundum lēgem faciō,' *the king said, 'I appoint duumvirs according to law.'* Liv.

RULE LIII.—Moods in Principal Clauses.

523. The principal clauses of the DIRECT DISCOURSE on becoming INDIRECT take the *Infinitive* or *Subjunctive* as follows:

I. When DECLARATIVE, they take the *Infinitive* with a *Subject Accusative*.

Dicēbat animōs esse dīvinōs, *he was wont to say that souls are divine*. Cic. Platōnem Tarentum vēnisse reperiō, *I find that Plato came to Tarentum*. Cic. Catō mīrārī sē aiēbat, *Cato was wont to say that he wondered*. Cic. Hippiās glōriātus est, annulum sē suā manū cōnfēcisse,² *Hippias boasted that he had made the ring with his own hand*. Cic.

NOTE.—The verb on which the Infinitive depends is often omitted, or only implied in some preceding verb or expression; especially after the Subjunctive of Purpose:

¹ Thus, in the first example, *Platōnem in Italiam vēnisse* is in the indirect discourse; in the direct, i. e., in the original words of those who made the statement, it would be: *Platō in Italiam vēnit*.

² In the direct discourse these examples would read—(1) *animī sunt dīvinī*, (2) *Platō Tarentum vēnit*, (3) *mīror*, and (4) *annulum meā manū cōnfēcī*. Observe that the pronominal subjects implied in *mīror* and *cōnfēcī* are expressed with the Infinitive, as *mīrārī sē*, *sē cōnfēcisse*. But the subject is sometimes omitted when it can be readily supplied; see second example under II., 2, below.

Pythia praecepit ut Miltiadem imperatorem sumerent; incepta prospera futura
Pythia commanded that they should take Miltiades as their commander, (telling
them) that their efforts would be successful. Nep.

II. When INTERROGATIVE, they take—

1. Generally the *Subjunctive*:

*Ad postulata Caesaris respondit, quid sibi vellet, cur veniret,*¹ *to the*
demands of Caesar he replied, what did he wish, why did he come? Caes.

NOTE.—Deliberative questions retain the Subjunctive from the direct discourse:

*In spem venerat se posse, etc.; cur fortunam periclitaretur,*¹ *he hoped (had come*
into hope) that he was able, etc.; why should he try fortune? Caes.

2. Sometimes the *Infinitive with a Subject Accusative*, as in rhetorical questions:²

Docēbant rem esse testimoniō, etc.; quid esse levius, etc., they showed
that the fact was a proof (for a proof), etc.; what was more inconsiderate,
etc.? Caes. *Respondit, num memoriam depōnere posse,*³ *he replied, could*
he lay aside the recollection? Caes.

III. When IMPERATIVE,⁴ they take the *Subjunctive*:

Scribit Labienō cum legione veniat, he writes to Labienus to come (that
he should come) with a legion. Caes. *Redditur responsum, castris se*
tenērent, the reply was returned that they should keep themselves in camp.
Liv. Militēs certiōres facit, se reficerent, he directed the soldiers to refresh
themselves. Caes. *Orābant ut sibi auxilium ferret, they prayed that he*
would bring them help. Caes. *Nūntius venit, ne dubitaret, a message came*
that he should not hesitate. Nep. *Cohortatus est, ne perturbarentur,*⁵ *he*
exhorted them not to be alarmed. Caes.

NOTE.—An affirmative command takes the Subjunctive without *ut*, except after verbs
of *wishing* and *asking*, but a negative command takes the Subjunctive with *ne*; see ex-
amples.

¹ In the direct discourse these examples would read—(1) *quid tibi vis? cur venis?*
and (2) *cur periclitere?*

² A question used for rhetorical effect in place of an assertion is called a *Rhetorical*
Question, as *num potest*, 'can he?' = *non potest*, 'he can not'; *quid est turpius*, 'what
is baser?' = *nihil est turpius*, 'nothing is baser.' Here belong many questions which in
the direct form have the verb in the first or in the third person. As such questions are
equivalent to declarative sentences, they take the same construction, the Infinitive with
its subject.

³ Direct discourse—(1) *quid est levius = nihil est levius*, and (2) *num memoriam*
depōnere possum = memoriam depōnere non possum.

⁴ Imperative sentences include those sentences which take the *Subjunctive of De-*
sire; see 484.

⁵ In the direct discourse these examples would read—(1) *cum legione veni*, (2) *cas-*
tris vos tenete, (3) *vos reficite*, (4) *vobis auxilium fer*, (5) *non dubitare*, and (6) *ne*
perturbati sitis.

RULE LIV.—Moods in Subordinate Clauses.

524. The subordinate clauses of the DIRECT DISCOURSE on becoming INDIRECT take the *Subjunctive*:

Respondit sē id quod in Nerviiis fēcisset factūrum,¹ *he replied that he would do what he had done in the case of the Nervii.* Caes. Hippias glōriatus est, annulum quem habēret sē suā manū cōnfēcisse,² *Hippias boasted that he had made with his own hand the ring which he wore.* Cic.

1. The *Infinitive with Subject Accusative* is sometimes used. Thus—

1) In clauses introduced by the relative pronoun, or by relative adverbs, *ubi*, *unde*, *quārē*, etc., when they have the force of principal clauses (453):

Ad eum dēfertur, esse civem Rōmānum quī quererētur, quem (= *et eum*) asservātum esse, *it was reported to him that there was a Roman citizen who made a complaint, and that he had been placed under guard.* Cic. Tē suspiror eisdem, quibus mē ipsum, commovērī, *I suspect that you are moved by the same things as I.* Cic.

2) In clauses introduced by *cum*, *quam*, *quamquam*, *quia*, and some other conjunctions, especially in Livy and Tacitus:

Num putātis, dixisse Antōnium minācius quam factūrum fuisse, *do you think Antony spoke more threateningly than he would have acted?* Cic. Dicit, sē moenibus inclūsos tenēre eōs, quia per agrōs vagārī, *he says that he keeps them shut up within the walls, because (otherwise) they would wander through the fields.* Liv. See also 535, I., 5 and 6.

2. The *Indicative* is used—

1) In parenthetical and explanatory clauses introduced into the *Indirect Discourse* without strictly forming a part of it:

Referunt silvam esse, quae appellātur Bacēnis,³ *they report that there is a forest which is called Bacenis.* Caes. Audiō Gellium philosophōs quī tunc erant³ convocāsse, *I hear that Gellius called together the philosophers of that day* (lit., *who then were*). Cic.

2) Sometimes in clauses not parenthetical, to give prominence to the *fact* stated, especially in relative and temporal clauses:

Certior factus est ex eā parte vicī, quam Gallis concesserat, omnēs discessisse, *he was informed that all had withdrawn from that part of the village which he had assigned to the Gauls.* Caes. Dicunt illum diem clārissimum fuisse cum domum reductus est ā patribus, *they say that the day when he was conducted home by the fathers was the most illustrious.* Cic.

525. TENSES IN THE INDIRECT DISCOURSE generally conform to the ordinary rules for the use of tenses in the Subjunctive and Infinitive;⁴ but notice the following special points:

¹ Direct, *faciam id quod in Nerviiis feci.*

² Direct, *annulum quem habeo meā manū confeci.*

³ These clauses, *quae appellātur Bacēnis* and *quī tunc erant*, are not strictly parts of the general report, but *explanations* added by the narrator.

⁴ See 490-496 and 537

1. The Present and Perfect may be used even after an historical tense, to impart a mere lively effect to the narrative:

Caesar respondit, si obsidēs sibi dentur, sēsē pācem esse factūrum, *Caesar replied, that if hostages should be given him, he would make peace.* Caes. Exitus fuit orationis, neque illōs vacāre agrōs, quī dari possint, *the close of the oration was, that there were (are) not any lands unoccupied which could (can) be given.* Caes.

2. The Future Perfect in a subordinate clause of the direct discourse 's changed in the indirect into the Perfect Subjunctive after a principal tense, and into the Pluperfect Subjunctive after an historical tense:

Agunt ut dimicent; ibi imperium fore, unde victōria fuerit, *they arrange that they shall fight; that the sovereignty shall be on the side which shall win the victory* (whence the victory may have been). Liv. Appārebat rēgnātūrum quī vicisset,¹ *it was evident that he would be king who should conquer.* Liv.

NOTE.—For Tenses in Conditional Sentences in Indirect Discourse, see 527.

Pronouns and Persons in Indirect Discourse.

526. In passing from the DIRECT DISCOURSE to the INDIRECT, pronouns of the first and second persons are generally changed to pronouns of the third person,² and the first and second persons of verbs are generally changed to the third person:

Glōriātus est, annulum sē suā manū cōnfēcisse,³ *he boasted that he had made the ring with his own hand.* Cic. Redditur respōsum, castris sē tenērent,⁴ *the reply was returned that they should keep themselves in camp.* Liv. Respondit, si obsidēs ab iis sibi dentur, sēsē cum iis pācem esse factūrum,⁵ *he replied that if hostages should be given to him by them, he would make peace with them.* Caes.

Conditional Sentences in Indirect Discourse.

527. Conditional sentences, in passing from the DIRECT DISCOURSE to the INDIRECT, undergo the following changes:

¹ In the direct discourse—(1) *ibi imperium erit, unde victōria fuerit*, and (2) *rēgnābit quī vicerit*.

² Thus—(1) *ego* is changed to *suū, sibi*, etc., or to *ipse*; *meus* and *noster* to *suus*; (2) *tu* to *is* or *ille*, sometimes to *suū*, etc.; *tuus* and *vester* to *suus* or to the Genitive of *is*; and (3) *hic* and *iste* to *ille*. But the pronoun of the first person may of course be used in the indirect discourse in reference to the reporter or author, and the pronoun of the second person in reference to the person addressed: *Adfirmāvī quidvis mē perpassūrum, I asserted that I would endure anything.* Cic. *Respondeō tē dolōrem ferre modēratē, I reply that you bear the affliction with moderation.* Cic.

³ Direct, *annulum ego meā manū cōnfēcī*. *Ego* becomes *sē*, and *meā*, *suā*.

⁴ Direct, *castris vōs tenēte*. *Vōs* becomes *sē*, and *tenēte*, *tenērent*.

⁵ Direct, *si obsidēs ā vōbīs mihi dābuntur, vōbiscum pācem faciam*. *Ā vōbīs* becomes *ab iis*; *mihi* becomes *sibi*; *vōbiscum*, *cum iis*; and the implied subject of *faciam* becomes *sē*, the subject of *esse factūrum*.

I. In the FIRST FORM, the *Indicative* is changed to the *Subjunctive* in the condition and to the *Infinitive* in the conclusion :

Respondit, si quid Caesar se velit, illum ad se venire oportere,¹ *he replied, if Caesar wished anything of him, he ought to come to him.* Caes.

NOTE.—In all forms of conditional sentences the conclusion, when *imperative*, and generally when *interrogative*, takes the *Subjunctive* according to 523 :

Respondērunt, si nōn aequum existimāret, etc., cūr postulāret,² etc., *they replied, if he did not think it fair, etc., why did he demand, etc.* Caes. Eum certiōrem fecērunt, si suās res manēre vellet, Alcibiadem persequerētur,³ *they informed him that if he wished his institutions to be permanent, he should take measures against Alcibiades.* Nep. Dic quidnam factūrus fueris, si cēnsor fuissēs,⁴ *say what you would have done, if you had been censor.* Liv.

II. In the SECOND FORM, the *Present* or *Perfect Subjunctive* in the condition remains unchanged after a principal tense, but may be changed⁵ to the *Imperfect* or *Pluperfect* after an historical tense, and in the conclusion it is changed to the *Future Infinitive* :

Respondit, si stipendium remittātur, libenter sēsē recūsātūrum populi Rōmāni amicitiam,⁶ *he replied that if the tribute should be remitted, he would gladly renounce the friendship of the Roman people.* Caes.

NOTE.—See note under I.

III. In the THIRD FORM, the *Imperfect* or *Pluperfect Subjunctive* remains unchanged in the condition, regardless of the tense of the principal verb, but in the conclusion it is changed to the *Periphrastic Infinitive* in *-rus fuisse*, rarely to that in *-rus esse* :

Respondit, si quid ipsi ā Caesare opus esset, sēsē ad eum ventūrum fuisse,⁷ *he replied that if he wanted anything of Caesar, he would have come to him.* Caes. Clāmitābat, si ille adesset, ventūrōs esse,⁷ *he cried out that they would come if he were present.* Caes.

NOTE 1.—In the conclusion, the periphrastic form *futūrum fuisse ut* with the *Subjunctive* is used in the Passive voice, and sometimes in the Active :

Nisi nūnti essent allātī, existimābant futūrum fuisse ut oppidum amitterētur,⁷ *they thought that the town would have been lost, if tidings had not been brought.* Caes.

NOTE 2.—In conditional sentences with the *Imperfect* or *Pluperfect Subjunctive* in the condition, and with an *historical tense* of the *Indicative* in the conclusion—

¹ Direct, si quid Caesar me vult, illum ad me venire oportet. For change of *pronouns* see 526, and for the *tense* of *velit* see 525, 1.

² Direct, si nōn aequum existimās, cūr postulās?

³ Direct, si tuās res manēre vis, Alcibiadem persequere. Notice change in the *pronoun* and in the person of the verb; see 526.

⁴ Direct, quidnam fecissēs (or factūrus fuistī), si cēnsor fuissēs.

⁵ But is often retained unchanged according to 525, 1.

⁶ Direct, si stipendium remittātur, libenter recūsābō populi Rōmāni amicitiam. or si stipendium remittētur, libenter recūsābō populi Rōmāni amicitiam. Observe that these two forms become identical in the indirect discourse.

⁷ Direct—(1) si quid mihi ā Caesare opus esset, ad eum venissem; (2) si illi adesset, venirent; and (3) nisi nūnti essent allātī, oppidum amissum esset.

1) The *Indicative* is generally changed to the *Perfect Infinitive*:

*Mementō istam dignitatem tē nōn potuisse cōsequi, nisi meis cōsiliis pāruiſſēs,*¹
remember that you would not have been able to attain that dignity, if you had not
followed my counsels. Cic.

2) The *Indicative* is changed to the *Perfect Subjunctive* if the context requires that mood:

*Quis dubitat quān sī Saguntinīs tulissēmus operam, āversūrī bellum fuerīmus,*¹ *who*
doubts that we should have averted the war, if we had carried aid to the Sagun-
*tines? Liv. Scimus quid, sī vixisset, factūrus fuerit,*¹ *we know what he would have*
done, if he had lived. Liv.

Indirect Clauses.

528. The indirect discourse in its widest application includes—

1. Subordinate clauses containing statements made on the authority of any other person than the writer; see **516**:

Omnēs librōs quōs frāter suus reliquisset mihi dōnāvit, *he gave to me all*
*the books which his brother had left.*² *Cic.*

2. Indirect questions; see **529, I.**

NOTE.—A clause which involves a question without directly asking it is called an *Indirect* or *Dependent Question*:

Quaesivit salvusne esset clipeus, *he asked whether his shield was safe.*³ *Cic.*

3. Many subordinate clauses dependent upon an Infinitive or upon a Subjunctive; see **529, II.**

RULE LV.—Moods in Indirect Clauses.

529. The Subjunctive is used—

I. In indirect questions:

Quaeritur, cūr doctissimī hominēs dissentiant, *it is a question, why the*
most learned men disagree. Cic. Quaesierās, nōne putārem, *you had asked*
whether I did not think. Cic. Quālis sit animus, animus nescit, *the soul*
knows not what the soul is. Cic. Quid diēs ferat incertum est, *what a day*
will bring forth is uncertain. Cic. Quaeritur quid futūrum sit, *what will*
be, is the question. Cic. Quaerit quānam ēventus, sī foret bellātum, futūrus
fuerit, he asks what would have been the result if war had been waged. Liv.
Dubitō num dēbeam, *I doubt whether I ought. Plin. Incerta feror sī Jūp-*
iter velit, I am rendered uncertain whether Jupiter wishes. Verg. Ut tē
oblectēs scīre cupiō, *I wish to know how you amuse yourself. Cic. Difficile*

¹ Direct—(1) *istam dignitatem cōsequi nōn potuistī, nisi meis cōsiliis pāruiſ-*
ſēs; (2) *sī Saguntinīs tulissēmus operam, bellum āversūrī fuimus*; (3) *quid, sī*
vixisset, factūrus fuit?

² That is, *which he said his brother had left.*

³ Here no question is directly asked. We have simply the statement, 'he asked whether his shield was safe,' but this statement involves the question, *salvusne est clipeus*, 'is my shield safe?'

dictū est utrum timuerint an dilēxerint, *it is difficult to say whether they feared or loved.* Cic.

II. Often in clauses dependent upon an Infinitive or upon another Subjunctive :

Nihil indīgnius est quam eum quī culpā careat supplicio nōn carēre, *nothing is more shameful than that he who is free from fault should not be exempt from punishment.* Cic. Utrum difficilīus esset negāre tibi an efficiere id quod rogārēs diū dubitāvi, *whether it would be more difficult to refuse your request or to do that which you ask, I have long doubted.* Cic. Recordātiōne nostrae amicitiae sic fruor ut beatē vixisse videar quia cum Scipiōne vixerim, *I so enjoy the recollection of our friendship that I seem to have lived happily because I have lived with Scipio.* Cic. Naevium rogat ut cūret quod dixisset, *he asked Naevius to attend to that which he had mentioned.* Cic. Vereor nē, dum minuere velim labōrem, augeam, *I fear that, while I wish to diminish the labor, I shall increase it.* Cic.

NOTE 1.—In clauses dependent upon an Infinitive or upon a Subjunctive, observe—

1) That the *Subjunctive* is used when the clauses are *essential to the general thought* of the sentence, as in the examples just given.

2) That the *Indicative* is used when the clauses are in a measure *parenthetical*, and when they give special prominence to the *fact stated* :

Militēs misit, ut eōs quī fūgerant persequerentur, *he sent soldiers to pursue those who had fled* (i. e., the fugitives). Caes. Tanta vīs probitātis est, ut eam, vel in iīs quōs nūquam vidimus, diligāmus, *such is the force of integrity that we love it even in those whom we have never seen.* Cic.

NOTE 2.—In clauses introduced by *dum*, the Indicative is very common, especially in the poets and historians :

Fuere quī, dum dubitat Scaevinus, hortārentur Pisōnem, *there were those who exhorted Piso, while Scaevinus hesitated.* Tac. See also 467, 4.

1. *Indirect* or *dependent questions*, like those not dependent (351, 1), are introduced by interrogative pronouns or other interrogative words, as *quis*, *quī*, *quālis*, etc. ; *quid*, *cūr*, *nē*, *nōnne*, *num* ; rarely by *sī*, 'whether,' and *ut*, 'how' ; see examples above.

NOTE 1.—*Sī* is sometimes best rendered to *see whether*, to *see if*, to *try if*, etc. .

Tē adēunt, sī quid velis, *they come to you to see whether you wish anything.* Cic.

NOTE 2.—In the poets *sī* is sometimes similarly used with the *Indicative* :

Inspece sī possum dōnata repōnere, *examine me to see whether I am able to restore your gifts.* Hor.

NOTE 3.—In indirect questions *num* does not necessarily imply negation.

NOTE 4.—An *indirect question* may readily be changed to a *direct* or *independent question*.¹

2. An *Accusative*, referring to the same person or thing as the subject of the question, is sometimes, especially in poetry, inserted after the principal verb :

¹ Thus the direct question involved in the first example is, *cūr doctissimī hominēs dissentiunt*, 'why do the most learned men disagree?' In the second, *nōnne putās*, 'do you not think?'

Ego illum nesciō quī fuerit, *I do not know (him) who he was.* Ter. Dic nōminem quī sit, *tell who the man is.* Plaut.

3. Indirect double questions are generally introduced by the same interrogative particles as those which are direct (353). Thus—

1) They generally take *utrum* or *-ne* in the first member and *an* in the second :

Quaeritur virtūs suamne propter dignitatem an propter fructūs aliquōs expetatur, *it is asked whether virtue is sought for its own worth, or for certain advantages.* Cic.

2) But they sometimes omit the particle in the first member, and take in the second *an* or *-ne* in the sense of *or*, and *necne* or *an nōn* in the sense of *or not* :

Quaeritur naturā an doctrinā possit effici virtūs, *it is asked whether virtue can be secured by nature, or by education.* Cic. Sapientia beatōs efficiat necne quaestio est, *whether or not wisdom makes men happy is a question.* Cic.

NOTE 1.—Other forms, as *-ne . . . -ne, an . . . an*, are rare or poetic:

Quī teneant, hominēsne ferae, quaerere, *to ascertain who inhabit them, whether men or beasts.* Verg.

NOTE 2.—*An*, in the sense of *whether not*, implying an affirmative, is used after verbs and expressions of doubt and uncertainty: *dubitō an, nesciō an, haud sciō an*, 'I doubt whether not,' 'I know not whether not' = 'I am inclined to think'; *dubium est an, incertum est an*, 'it is uncertain whether not' = 'it is probable':

Dubitō an Thrasybūlum primum omnium ponam, *I doubt whether I should not place Thrasybulus first of all* (i. e., I am inclined to think I should). Nep.

NOTE 3.—*An* sometimes seems to have the force of *aut* :

Cum Simōnides, an quis alius,¹ *pollicētur*, *when Simonides or some other one promised.* Cic.

4. The Subjunctive is put in the *periphrastic form* in the indirect question (1) when it represents a *periphrastic form* in the direct question, and (2) generally, not always, when it represents a *Future Indicative*; see the fifth and sixth examples under 529, I.

5. INDIRECT QUESTIONS must be carefully distinguished—

1) From clauses introduced by relative pronouns or relative adverbs. These always have an antecedent or correlative expressed or understood, and are never, as a whole, the subject or object of a verb, while indirect questions are generally so used :

Dicam quod sentiō (*relative clause*), *I will tell that which (id quod) I think.*² Cic. *Dicam quid intellegam* (*indirect question*), *I will tell what I know.* Cic. *Quaerāmus ubi malefīcium est*, *let us seek there (ibi) where the crime is.* Cic.

2) From direct questions and exclamations :

¹ Some critics treat *an quis alius* as a direct question inserted parenthetically: *or was it some other one?*

² In the first and third examples, *quod sentiō* and *ubi . . . est* are not questions, but relative clauses; *id* is understood as the antecedent of *quod*, and *ibi* as the antecedent or correlative of *ubi*; but in the second example, *quid intellegam* is an indirect question and the object of *dicam*: *I will tell (what?) what I know* (i. e., will answer that question).

Quid agendum est? nesciō, *what is to be done? I know not.*¹ Cic. Vidē! quam conversa rēs est, *see! how changed is the case.* Cic.

3) From clauses introduced by *nesciō quis* = *quidam*,² 'some one,' *nesciō quōmodo* = *quōdammodo*, 'in some way,' *mīrum quantum*, 'wonderfully much,' 'wonderfully,' etc. These take the *Indicative*:

Nesciō quid animus praesāgit,³ *the mind forebodes, I know not what.* Ter. Id mirum quantum prōfuit, *this profited, it is wonderful how much* (i. e., it wonderfully profited). Liv.

6. PERSONAL CONSTRUCTION.—Instead of an impersonal verb with an indirect question as subject, the personal construction is sometimes used, as follows:

Perspicuntur quam sint levēs,⁴ *it is seen how inconstant they are!* Cic.

7. The *INDICATIVE* IN *INDIRECT QUESTIONS* is sometimes used in early Latin and in the poets, especially in Plautus and Terence:

Si memorāre velim, quam fideli animō fui, possum, *if I should wish to mention how much fidelity I showed, I am able.* Ter.

530. The directions already given for converting the *DIRECT DISCOURSE*, *Ōratiō Recta*, into the *INDIRECT*, *Ōratiō Oblīqua*, are further illustrated in the following passage from Caesar:

DIRECT DISCOURSE.

Caesarem obsecrāre coepit: 'Nē quid gravius in frātre statuerēs; sciō illa esse vērā, nec quisquam ex eō plūs quam ego doloris capīt, propterea quod cum ipse grātiā plūrimū domi atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adulescentiam poterat, per mē crevit; quibus opibus ac nervis nōn solum ad minuendam grātiā, sed paene ad perniciem meam ūtitur; ego tamen et amōre fraternō et existimātiōe vulgī commoveor. Quod si quid ēi ā tē gravius acciderit, cum ipse hunc locum amicitiae apud tē teneam, nēmō existimābit, nōn meā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē tōtius Galliae animi ā mē āvertentur.'

INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

Caesarem obsecrāre coepit, nē quid gravius in frātre statueret; scire sē illa esse vērā, nec quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē doloris capere, propterea quod cum ipse grātiā plūrimū domi atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adulescentiam posset, per sē crevisset; quibus opibus ac nervis nōn solum ad minuendam grātiā, sed paene ad perniciem suā ūteretur; sēsē tamen et amōre fraternō et existimātiōe vulgī commoveri. Quod si quid ēi ā Caesare gravius accideret, cum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum teneret, nēmīnem existimātūrum, nōn suā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē futurum uti tōtius Galliae animi ā sē āverterentur. Caes., B. G., I., 20.

¹ *Quid agendum sit nesciō*, 'I know not what is to be done,' would be an indirect question.

² See 191, note.

³ *Praesāgit* does not depend upon *nesciō*, but is entirely independent. *Nesciō quid animus praesāgiat* would be an indirect question, and would mean, *I know not what the mind forebodes.*

⁴ *Lit., they are seen.* Observe that this personal construction corresponds to the Active, *perspicunt eōs quam sint levēs*, 'they perceive (them) how inconstant they are.' See also *ego illum nesciō quī fuerit*, 529, 2.

NOTE.—In this illustration observe the following points:

1) That the *Indicative* in the principal clauses of the direct discourse is changed to the corresponding tense of the *Infinitive* in the indirect,¹ and that the *Subjunctive*, *staueris*, denoting incomplete action, is changed to the *Imperfect Subjunctive* after the historical tense, *coepit*.

2) That in the subordinate clauses the verbs denoting *incomplete* action are changed to the *Imperfect Subjunctive*, while those denoting *completed* action are changed to the *Pluperfect Subjunctive*.²

3) That *sciō* becomes *scire sē* (i. e., that the subject of the Infinitive is generally expressed).

4) That the pronouns of the *first* person are changed to *reflexives*; and that those of the *second* person are changed to *is*.³

531. The process by which the INDIRECT DISCOURSE, *Ōratiō Oblīqua*, is changed to the DIRECT, *Ōratiō Rēcta*, is illustrated in the following passages from Caesar:

INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

Respondit, *trānsisse* Rhēnum *sēsē* nōn suā sponte, sed *rogātum* et *arcēsitum* ā Gallis. *Sē* prius in Galliam *vēnisse* quam *populum Rōmānum*. Quid *sibi vellet*? Cūr in suās possessionēs *venīret*? Caes., B. G., I., 44.

Ita respondit, eō *sibi* minus dubitationis *darī* quod eās rēs quās *lēgātī* Helvētīi *commemorāssent* memoriā *tenēret*. Quod si veteris contumēliae oblivisci *vellet*, num etiam recentium injuriarum memoriā *dēponere posse*? Cum *ea* ita sint, tamen, si obsidēs ab *is sibi* *dentur*, *sēsē* cum *is* pacem *esse faciūrū*. Caes., B. G., I., 14.

DIRECT DISCOURSE.

Respondit: '*Trānsiī* Rhēnum nōn *meā* sponte, sed *rogātus* et *arcēssitus* ā Gallis. *Ego* prius in Galliam *vēnī* quam *populus Rōmānus*. Quid *tibi vis*? Cūr in *meās* possessionēs *venīs*?'

Ita respondit: '*Eō mihī* minus dubitationis *datur* quod eās rēs quās *vōs*, *lēgātī* Helvētīi, *commemorāvistis*, memoriā *teneō*. Quod si veteris contumēliae oblivisci *volō*, num etiam recentium injuriarum memoriā *dēponere possum*? Cum *haec* ita sint, tamen, si obsidēs ā *vōbīs mihī* *dabuntur*, *vōbiscum* pacem *faciām*.'

NOTE.—In these illustrations observe the following points:

1) That in the principal clauses (1) the *Infinitives* with *sē* or *sēsē*, expressed or understood, are changed to the *first person of the Indicative*; ⁴ (2) other *Infinitives* are also changed to the *Indicative*, but the person is determined by the context; ⁵ and (3)

¹ Thus *sciō* becomes *scire*; *capit*, *capere*; *commoveor*, *commovēri*; *existimābit*, *existimātūrū* (*esse*); and *avertentur*, *futūrū uti averterentur*. This last form, *futūrū uti averterentur*, is the Periphrastic Future Infinitive Passive; see 537, 3.

² Thus *poterat* becomes *posset*; *ūtitur*, *ūteretur*; *teneam*, *tenēret*; but *crēvit* becomes *crēvisset*; *acciderit*, *accidisset*.

³ Thus (1) *ego* is changed to *sē*; *mē* to *sē*; *meam* to *suam*; *meū* to *suū*; and (2) *tē* to *eum*; *hunc* to *eum*.

⁴ Thus *trānsisse sēsē* is changed to *trānsiī*; *sē vēnisse* to *ego vēnī*; *sēsē esse faciūrū* to *faciām*; *posse*, with *sē* understood, . . . *possum*.

⁵ Thus *minus darī* becomes *minus datur*; but if the subject of the Infinitive is of the second person, the Indicative will also be of that person. *Respondeō tē dolōrem ferre moderātū* thus becomes *respondeō*, '*dolōrem moderātū fere*;' see p. 299, foot note 2.

Subjunctives are changed to the *Indicative* after interrogative words,¹ and to the *imperative* in other situations.²

2) That in the subordinate clauses the *Subjunctive*, unless required by the thought irrespective of the indirect discourse, is changed to the *Indicative*.³

3) That the reflexive pronouns *sui*, *sibi*, etc., and *suus* are changed (1) generally to pronouns of the first person, but (2) sometimes to those of the second person.⁴

4) That *is* and *ille* are (1) generally changed to *tū* or *hic*, but (2) sometimes retained.⁵

5) That a noun referring to the person or persons addressed may be put in the *Vocative* preceded by *tū* or *vōs*.⁶

SECTION VII.

INFINITIVE.—SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES.

I. INFINITIVE.

532. The Infinitive is a verbal noun with special characteristics. Like verbs, it has voice and tense, takes adverbial modifiers, and governs oblique cases.⁷

RULE LVI.—Infinitive.

533. Many verbs admit an Infinitive to complete or qualify their meaning:

Audeō dicere, I dare say (I venture to say). Cic. *Haec vitāre cupimus, we desire to avoid these things.* Cic. *Cōstituit nōn prōgredi, he decided*

¹ Thus *quid vellet* is changed to *quid vis? cūr veniret* to *cūr venīs? Vellet* and *veniret* are in the Imperfect simply because dependent upon an historical tense, and are therefore changed to the Present in the direct discourse. In deliberative questions (484, V.) the Subjunctive is retained in the direct discourse.

² Thus *cum legiōne veniat*, under 523, III., becomes *cum legiōne venī*. The Subjunctive may of course be retained in the direct discourse whenever the thought requires that mood.

³ Thus *commemorāssent*, pluperfect after an historical tense, is changed to *commemorāvistis; tenēret* to *teneō; vellet* to *volō; dentur* to *dabuntur*. *Sint* is retained unchanged because required in a causal clause with *cum*; see 517.

⁴ Thus (1) *trānsisse sēsē* is changed to *trānsiī*, with subject implied in the ending; *suā* to *meā*; *sē venisse* to *ego venī*, with emphatic subject; *suus* to *meus*; *sibi* to *mihi*; *vēsē esse factūrum* to *faciam*; (2) *sibi* to *tibi*, in *quid sibi vellet*. As the subject of an Infinitive (536), *sē* or *sēsē* often corresponds to the pronominal subject implied in the ending of a finite verb; see p. 187, foot-note 5.

⁵ Thus (1) *ab iīs* is changed to *ā vōbīs; cum iīs* to *vōbiscum; ea ita sint* to *haec ita sint*; (2) *eās rēs* is retained.

⁶ Thus *lēgātī Helvētī*, the subject of *commemorāssent*, is changed to *vōs, lēgātī Helvētī*.

⁷ Originally the Latin Infinitive appears to have been the Dative case of an abstract verbal noun, and to have been used to denote the *purpose* or *end* (384, 1, 3) for which anything is or is done. Being thus only loosely connected with the verb of the sentence. It readily lost its special force as a case and soon began to be employed with considerable freedom in a variety of constructions. In this respect the history of the Infinitive resem-

not to advance. Caes. Crēduli esse coepērunt, *they began to be credulous*. Cic. Vincere scīs, *you know how to conquer* (you know to conquer). Liv. Victōriā ūti nescīs, *you do not know how to use victory*. Liv. Latīnē loquī didicerat, *he had learned to speak Latin*. Sall. Dēbēs hōc rescribere, *you ought to write this in reply*. Hor. Nēmō mortem effugere potest, *no one is able to escape death*. Cic. Solent cōgitāre, *they are accustomed to think*. Cic.

I. The Infinitive is thus used—

1. With TRANSITIVE VERBS meaning *to dare, desire, determine; to begin, continue, end; to know, learn; to owe, etc.*; see examples above.

NOTE 1.—For the *Subjunctive* with some of these verbs, see 498, I., note.

NOTE 2.—See also 498, II., note 1.

2. With INTRANSITIVE VERBS meaning *to be able; to be wont, be accustomed, etc.*; see examples above.

II. In special constructions the Infinitive has nearly the force of a DATIVE OF PURPOSE OR END—¹

1. With INTRANSITIVE VERBS:

Nōn populāre penātēs vēnimus, *we have not come to lay waste your homes*. Verg. Conjūrāvere patriam incendere, *they conspired to destroy their country with fire*. Sall.

2. With TRANSITIVE VERBS in connection with the Accusative:

Pecus ēgit altōs visere montēs, *he drove his herd to visit the lofty mountains*. Hor. Quid habēs dicere, *what have you to say?* Cic. Dederat comam diffundere ventis, *she had given her hair to the winds to scatter*. Verg.²

3. With ADJECTIVES:

Est parātus audire, *he is prepared to hear* (for hearing). Cic. Avidi committere pūnam, *eager to engage* (for engaging) *in battle*. Ovid. Fōns rīvā dare nōmen idōneus, *a fountain fit to give a name to the river*. Hor.

NOTE 1.—This use of the Infinitive is mostly poetical.

NOTE 2.—With *adjectives* and with *participles* used as adjectives the Infinitive is rare in prose, but is freely used in poetry in a variety of constructions:

Cantāre peritus, *skilled in singing*. Verg. Pelidēs cedere nescius, *Pelides not knowing how to yield*. Hor. Certa mori, *determined to die*. Verg. Dignus describi, *worthy to be described*. Hor. Vitulus niveus vidēri,³ *a calf snow-white to view*. Hor.

bles that of *adverbs* from the oblique cases of nouns. As such adverbs are often used with greater freedom than the cases which they represent, so the Latin Infinitive often appears in connections where, as a Dative, it would not have been at all admissible. Upon the *Origin and History of the Indo-European Infinitive*, see Jolly, 'Geschichte des Infinitivs.'

¹ In these constructions the Infinitive retains its original force and use; see 532, foot-note.

² In these examples with transitive verbs observe that the *Accusative* and *Infinitive* correspond to the *Accusative* and *Dative* under 384, II., and that the *Accusative Dative*, and *Infinitive* correspond to the *Accusative* and *two Datives* under 390, II.

³ *Niveus vidēri*, like the Greek λευκός ἰδίσθαι.

Piger scribendī ferre labōrem, *reluctant to bear the labor of writing.* Hor. Suum officium facere immemor est, *he forgets (is forgetful) to do his duty.* Plaut.

NOTE 3.—The Infinitive also occurs, especially in poetry, with verbal nouns and with such expressions as *tempus est, cōpia est*, etc.:

Cupido Stygiōs innāre lacūs, *a desire to sail upon the Stygian lakes.* Verg. Quibus molliter vivere cōpia erat, *who had the means for living at ease* Sall. Tempus est dicere, *it is time to speak.* Cic.

NOTE 4.—The Infinitive is sometimes used with prepositions:

Multum interest inter dare et accipere, *there is a great difference between giving and receiving.* Sen.

RULE LVII.—Accusative and Infinitive.

534. Many transitive verbs admit both an Accusative and an Infinitive:

Tē sapere docet, *he teaches you to be wise.* Cic. Eōs suum adventum expectāre jussit, *he ordered them to await his approach.* Caes. Pontem jubet rescindī, *he orders the bridge to be broken down.* Caes. Tē tuā fruī virtūte cupimus, *we wish you to enjoy your virtue.* Cic. Sentīmus calēre gnem, *we perceive that fire is hot (we perceive fire to be hot).* Cic. Rēgem trādunt sē abdidisse, *they relate that the king concealed himself.*¹ Liv.

NOTE.—In the compound forms of the Infinitive, *esse* is often omitted, especially in the future:

Audīvī solitum Fabricium, *I have heard that Fabricius was wont.* Cic. Spērāmus vōbīs prōfutūrōs, *we hope to benefit you.* Cic.

1. The corresponding PASSIVE is sometimes *personal* and sometimes *impersonal*.²

PERSONAL.—Aristidēs jūstissimus fuisse trāditur, *Aristides is said (is reported by tradition) to have been most just.* Cic. Sōlem ē mundō tollere videntur, *they seem to remove the sun from the world.* Cic. Platōnem audīvisse dicitur, *he is said to have heard Plato.* Cic. Dīi beāti esse intelleguntur, *the gods are understood to be happy.* Cic.

IMPERSONAL.—Traditum est Homērum caecum fuisse, *it has been reported*

¹ Observe that in the first three examples the Accusatives *tē, eōs*, and *pontem*, are the *direct objects* of the finite verbs, while in the other examples the Accusatives *tē, īgnem*, and *rēgem*, may be explained either as the *direct objects* of the finite verbs, or as the subjects of the Infinitives. The former was doubtless the original construction, but in time the object of the principal verb came to be regarded in many cases as the subject of the Infinitive. Thus was developed the *Subject Accusative* of the Infinitive.

² These two constructions correspond to the two interpretations of the Active mentioned in foot-note 1 above. Thus, in the sentence, *Aristidē jūstissimum fuisse trādunt*, if *Aristidē* is regarded as the object of *trādunt*, according to the original conception, the corresponding Passive will be personal: *Aristidēs jūstissimus fuisse trāditur*; but if *Aristidē* is regarded as the subject of *fuisse*, and the clause *Aristidē jūstissimum fuisse* as the object of *trādunt*, then the same clause will become the subject of the Passive, and the construction will be impersonal: *Aristidē jūstissimum fuisse trāditur*, 'it is reported by tradition that Aristides was most just.'

by tradition that Homer was blind. Cic. Ūnam partem Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, *it has been stated that the Gauls occupy one part.* Caes. Nūntiatur esse nāvēs in portū, *it is announced that the vessels are in port.* Cic.

NOTE 1.—The *Personal Construction* is used—(1) regularly in *jubeor, vetor, and videor*; (2) generally in the *simple tenses*¹ of most verbs of SAYING, THINKING, and the like, as *dicor, trādor, feror, nūntior, crēdor, exīstīmor, putor, perhībeor*, etc.; (3) sometimes in other verbs; see examples above.

NOTE 2.—The *Impersonal Construction* is especially common in the *compound tenses*,¹ though also used in the *simple tenses*; see examples above.

535. The ACCUSATIVE AND AN INFINITIVE are used with a great variety of verbs. Thus—

I. With verbs of PERCEIVING and DECLARING :

Sentīmus calēre īgnem, *we perceive that fire is hot.* Cic. Mihī nārrāvit tē sollicitum esse, *he told me that you were troubled.* Cic. Scripsērunt Themistoclem in Asiā trānsisse, *they wrote that Themistocles had gone over to Asia.* Nep.

1. VERBS OF PERCEIVING include those which involve (1) the exercise of the senses : *audiō, videō, sentiō*, etc., and (2) the exercise of the mind—THINKING, BELIEVING, KNOWING : *cōgitō, putō, exīstīmō, crēdō, spērō—intellegō, sciō*, etc.

2. VERBS OF DECLARING are such as state or communicate facts or thoughts : *diō, nārrō, nūntiō, doceō, ostendō, prōmittō*, etc.

3. Expressions equivalent to verbs of *perceiving* and of *declaring*, as *fāma fert*, 'report says,' *testis sum*, 'I am a witness' = 'I testify,' *cōsciū mihī sum*, 'I am conscious,' 'I know,' also admit an Accusative with an Infinitive :

Nūllam mihī relātam esse grātiam, tū es testis, *you are a witness (can testify) that no grateful return has been made to me.* Cic.

4. PARTICIPLE FOR INFINITIVE.—Verbs of *perceiving* take the Accusative with the present participle, when the object is to be represented as actually seen, heard, etc., while engaged in a given action :

Catōnem vidī in bibliothecā sedentem, *I saw Cato sitting in the library.* Cic.

5. SUBJECTS COMPARED.—When two subjects with the same predicate are compared, and the Accusative with the Infinitive is used in the first clause, the Infinitive may be understood in the second :

Platōnem ferunt idem sēnsisse quod Pŷthagoram, *they say that Plato held the same opinion as Pythagoras.* Cic.

6. PREDICATES COMPARED.—When two predicates with the same subject are compared, and the Accusative with the Infinitive is used in the first clause, the Accusative may be understood in the second :

Num putātis, dīxisse Antōnium minācius quam factūrum fuisse, *do you think Antony spoke more threateningly than he would have acted?* Cic.

NOTE.—But the second clause may take the Subjunctive, with or without *ut* :

¹ The learner will remember that the simple tenses are formed simply by inflexional endings, as *dicitur, dicebātur*, but that the compound tenses are formed by the union of the perfect participle with the verb *sum*, as *dictum est, dictum erat*, etc.

Audeō dicere ipsōs potius cultōres agrōrum fore quam ut colī prohibeant, *I dare say that they will themselves become tillers of the fields rather than prevent them from being tilled.* Liv.

II. With verbs of WISHING, DESIRING, COMMANDING, and their opposites:¹

Tē tuā fruī virtūte cupimus, *we desire that you should enjoy your virtue.* Cic. Pontem jubet rescindī, *he orders the bridge to be broken down* (that the bridge should be broken down). Caes. Lex eum necārī vetuit, *the law forbade that he should be put to death.* Liv.

NOTE.—Several verbs involving a *wish* or *command* admit the Subjunctive when a new subject is introduced, generally with *ut* or *nē*; see 498, 1:

Optō ut id audiātis, *I desire that you may hear this.* Cic. Volō ut respondeās, *I wish you would reply.* Cic. Mālō tē hostis metuāt, *I prefer that the enemy should fear you.* Cic. Concēdō ut haec apta sint, *I admit that these things are suitable.* Cic.

III. With verbs of EMOTION and FEELING:²

Gaudeō tē mihi suādere, *I rejoice that you advise me.* Cic. Mirāmur tē laetārī, *we wonder that you rejoice.* Cic.

NOTE.—Verbs of *emotion* and *feeling* often take clauses with *quod* (540, IV.) to give prominence to the *fact* stated, or to emphasize the *ground* or *reason* for the feeling:

Gaudeō quod tē interpellāvi, *I rejoice that (or because) I have interrupted you.* Cic. Dolēbam quod socium amiseram, *I was grieving because I had lost a companion.* Cic.

IV. Sometimes, especially in POETRY and in LATE PROSE, with verbs which usually take the Subjunctive:³

Gentem hortor amāre focōs, *I exhort the race to love their homes.* Verg. Cūcti suāsērunt Ūtaliā petere, *all advised to seek Italy.* Verg. Soror monet succēdere Lausō Turnum, *the sister warns Turnus to take the place of Lausus.* Verg.

RULE LVIII.—Subject of Infinitive.

536. The Infinitive sometimes takes an Accusative as its subject:⁴

Sentimus calēre īgnem, *we perceive that fire is hot.* Cic. Platōnem Tarentum vēnisse reperīō, *I find that Plato came to Tarentum.* Cic.

¹ As *cupiō, optō, volō, nōlō, mālō*, etc.; *patior, sinō; imperō, jubeō; prohibeō, veto*, etc.

² As *gaudeō, doleō, miror, queror*, etc.; also *aegrē ferō, graviter ferō*, etc.

³ Many verbs in Latin thus admit two or more different constructions; see in the dictionary *adigo, censeō, concēdō, cōgō, cōstituō, contendō, cupiō, cūrō, dēcernō, dīcō, doceō, elabōrō, ēnītor, faciō, impediō, imperō, jubeō, labōrō, mālō, mandō, morior, moneō, nōlō, optō, orō, patior, permittō, persuādeō, postulō, praeceptō, praedicō, prohibeō, sinō, statuō, studeō, suādeō, veto, videō*. See also Draeger, II., pp 280-416.

⁴ Remember that the Infinitive, as a verbal noun, originally had no subject, but that subsequently in special constructions a subject Accusative was developed out of the object of the principal verb; see 534, foot-note 1. In classical Latin many Infinitives have no subjects, either expressed or understood.

1. HISTORICAL INFINITIVE.—In lively descriptions the *Present Infinitive* is sometimes used for the *Imperfect* or the *Perfect Indicative*. It is then called the *Historical Infinitive*, and, like a finite verb, has its subject in the *Nominative* :

Catilina in primā aciē versāri, omnia prōvidēre, multum ipse pūgnāre, saepe hostem ferire, *Catiline was busy in the front line; he attended to everything, fought much in person, and often smote down the enemy.*¹ Sall.

NOTE.—The *Historical Infinitive* sometimes denotes *customary or repeated action* :

Omnia in pējus ruere āc retrō referri, *all things change rapidly for the worse and are borne backward.* Verg.

2. A PREDICATE NOUN or a PREDICATE ADJECTIVE after an Infinitive agrees with the noun or pronoun of which it is predicated, according to the general rule (362). It is thus—

1) In the *Nominative*, when predicated of the principal subject :

Nōlō esse laudātor, *I am unwilling to be a eulogist.* Cic. Beātus esse sine virtūte nēmō potest, *no one can be happy without virtue.* Cic. Parēns dici potest, *he can be called a parent.* Cic.

NOTE.—Participles in the compound tenses agree like predicate adjectives :

Pollicitus esse dicitur, *he is said to have promised.* Cic.

2) In the *Accusative*, when predicated of a noun or pronoun in the *Accusative* :

Ego mē Phīdīam esse māllem, *I should prefer to be Phidias.* Cic. Trāditum est, Homērum caecum fuisse,² *it has been handed down by tradition that Homer was blind.* Cic.

3) In the *Dative*, when predicated of a noun or pronoun in the *Dative* :

Patriciō tribūnō plēbis fieri nōn licēbat, *it was not lawful for a patrician to be made tribune of the people.* Cic. Mihī neglegenti esse nōn licuit,³ *it was not permitted me to be negligent.* Cic.

NOTE.—A noun or adjective predicated of a noun or pronoun in the *Dative* is sometimes put in the *Accusative* :

Ēi cōsulem fieri licet, *it is lawful for him to be made consul.* Caes.

537. THE TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE—*Present*, *Perfect*, and *Future*—denote only *relative time*. They accordingly represent the time respectively as *present*, *past*, or *future*, relatively to that of the principal verb :

PRESENT.—Cupio mē esse elēmentem, *I desire to be mild.* Cic. Māluit sē diligī quam metui, *he preferred to be loved rather than feared.* Nep.

PERFECT.—Platōnem ferunt in Ītaliā vēnisse, *they say that Plato came into Italy.* Cic. Cōsciū mihī eram, nihil ā mē commissum esse, *I was conscious to myself that no offence had been committed by me.* Cic.

FUTURE.—Brūtum visum iri ā mē putō, *I think Brutus will be seen by me.*

¹ Historical Infinitives are generally used in groups, seldom singly.

² Here *Phīdīam* is predicated of *mē* (lit., *me to be Phidias*), and *caecum* of *Homērum*.

³ *Tribūnō* is predicated of *patriciō*, and *neglegenti* of *mihī*.

Cic. Ōrācūm datum erat victricēs Athēnās fore, *an oracle had been given, that Athens would be victorious.* Cic.

NOTE.—In general, the Present Infinitive represents the action as *taking place* at the time denoted by the principal verb, the Perfect as then *completed* or *past*, and the Future as then *about to take place*; but tense is so imperfectly developed in the Infinitive that even *relative time* is not marked with much exactness. Hence—

1) The *Present* is sometimes used of *future* actions, and sometimes with little or no reference to time:

Crās argentum dare dixit, *he said that he would give the silver to-morrow.* Ter.

2) The *Perfect* is sometimes used of *present* actions, though chiefly in the poets:

Tetigisse timent poētā, *they fear to touch (to have touched) the poet.* Hor.

1. After the past tenses of *dēbeō*, *oportet*, *possum*, and the like, the *PRESENT INFINITIVE* is used where our idiom would lead us to expect the *Perfect*; sometimes also after *meminī*, and the like; regularly in recalling what we have ourselves experienced:

Dēbuit officiōsior esse, *he ought to have been more attentive.* Cic. Id potuit facere, *he might have done this.* Cic. Mē Athēnis audire meminī, *I remember to have heard (hearing) in Athens.* Cic.

2. The *Perfect Passive Infinitive* sometimes denotes the *result* of the action. Thus, *doctus esse* may mean either *to have been instructed* or *to be a learned man* (lit., *an instructed man*). If the *result* thus denoted belongs to past time, *fuisse* must take the place of *esse*:

Populum alloquitur, sōpitum fuisse rēgem ictū, *she addresses the people, saying that the king was stunned by the blow.* Liv. See also 471, 6, note 1.

3. Instead of the regular *Future Infinitive*, the *PERIPHRASTIC FORM*, *futurum esse ut*, or *fore ut*, with the *Subjunctive*, *Present* or *Imperfect*, is frequently used:

Sperō fore ut contingat id nobis, *I hope this will fall to our lot* (I hope it will come to pass that this may happen to us). Cic. Nōn sperāverat Hannibal, fore ut ad se deficerent, *Hannibal had not hoped that they would revolt to him.* Liv.

NOTE 1.—This circumlocution is common in the *Passive*, and is moreover necessary in both voices in all verbs which want the *Supine* and the *participle in rus*.

NOTE 2.—Sometimes *fore ut* with the *Subjunctive*, *Perfect* or *Pluperfect*, is used with the force of a *Future Perfect*; and in *passive* and *deponent* verbs, *fore* with the *perfect participle* may be used with the same force:

Dicō mē satis adeptum fore, *I say that I shall have obtained enough.* Cic.

538. The Infinitive, with or without a subject, is often used as the subject of a verb:¹

WITH SUBJECT.—Caesari nūtiātum est equitēs accēdere, *it was announced to Caesar that the cavalry was approaching.* Caes. Facinus est vinciri civem Rōmānum, *that a Roman citizen should be bound is a crime.* Cic. Certum

¹ This use of the Infinitive as subject was readily developed out of its use as object; see 534, 1, foot-note. Thus the Infinitive, with or without a subject, finally came to be regarded as an *indeclinable noun*, and was accordingly used not only as *subject* and *object*, but also as *predicate* and *appositive* (539, I. and II.), and sometimes even in the *Ablative Absolute* (539, IV.), and in dependence upon prepositions (533, 3, note 4)

est liberōs amārī, *it is certain that children are loved.* Quint. Lēgem brevem esse oportet, *it is necessary that a law be brief.* Sen.

WITHOUT SUBJECT.—Dēcrētum est nōn dare signum, *it was decided not to give the signal.* Liv. Ars est difficilis rem publicam regere, *to rule a state is a difficult art.* Cic. Cārum esse jūcundum est, *it is pleasant to be held dear.* Cic. Haec scire juvat, *to know these things affords pleasure.* Sen. Peccāre licet nēminī, *to sin is lawful for no one.* Cic.

1. When the subject is an Infinitive, the predicate is either (1) a noun or adjective with *sum*, or (2) a verb used impersonally; see the examples above.

2. The Infinitive, with or without a subject, may be the subject of another Infinitive:

Intellegi necesse est esse deōs,¹ *it must be understood that there are gods.* Cic.

3. The Infinitive sometimes takes a demonstrative as an attributive in agreement with it:

Quibusdam hōc displicet philosophārī, *this philosophizing* (this to philosophize) *displeases some persons.* Cic. Vivere ipsum turpe est nobīs, *to live is itself ignoble for us.* Cic.

539. SPECIAL CONSTRUCTIONS.—The Infinitive with a subject² is sometimes used—

I. AS A PREDICATE; see 362:

Exitus fuit orationis sibi nullam cum his amicitiam esse,³ *the close of his oration was that he had no friendship with these.* Caes.

NOTE.—An Infinitive without a subject may be used as a Predicate Nominative:

Vivere est cogitare, *to live is to think.* Cic.

II. AS AN APPOSITIVE; see 363:

Ōrāculum datum erat victricēs Athēnās fore, *an oracle had been given, that Athens would be victorious.* Cic. Illud soleō mirārī, nōn mē accipere tuās litterās,⁴ *I am accustomed to wonder at this, that I do not receive your letter.* Cic.

III. IN EXCLAMATIONS; see 381:

Tē sic vexārī, *that you should be thus troubled!* Cic. Mēne inceptō dē-sistere victam, *that I, vanquished, should abandon my undertaking!*⁴ Verg.

IV. IN THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE; see 431, note 1:

Auditō Darium mōvisse pērgit, *having heard that Darius had withdrawn* (that Darius had withdrawn having been heard), *he advanced.* Curt.

¹ *Esse deōs* is the subject of *intellegi*, and *intellegi esse deōs* of *est*.

² Including the modifiers of each. Thus in the example the whole clause, *sibi nullam cum his amicitiam esse*, is used as a Predicate Nominative in agreement with the subject *exitus*; see 362.

³ In the examples, the clause *victricēs Athēnās fore* is in apposition with *ōrāculum*, and the clause *nōn mē accipere tuās litterās*, in apposition with *illud*.

⁴ This use of the Infinitive conforms, it will be observed, to the use of the Accusative and Nominative in exclamations (381, with note 3).

II. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES.

540. In Latin, clauses which are used as *substantives* take one of four forms. They may be—

I. INDIRECT QUESTIONS:

Quaeritur, *cūr dissentiant*, *it is asked why they disagree*. Cic. Quid agendum sit, *nesciō*, *I do not know what ought to be done*. Cic.

NOTE.—For the use of *Indirect Questions*, see 529, I.

II. INFINITIVE CLAUSES:

Antecellere contigit, *it was his good fortune to excel* (to excel happened). Cic. Magna negotia voluit agere, *he wished to achieve great undertakings*. Cic.

NOTE.—For the use of *Infinitive Clauses*, see 534; 535.

III. SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSES, generally introduced by *ut*, *nē*, etc.:

Contigit ut patriam vindicāret, *it was his good fortune to save his country*. Nep. Volō ut mihi respondeās, *I wish you would answer me*. Cic.

NOTE.—For the use of such *Subjunctive Clauses*, see 498; 499, 3; 501.

IV. CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY *quod*:

Beneficium est quod necesse est mori, *it is a blessing that it is necessary to die*. Sen. Gaudeō quod tē interpellāvi, *I rejoice that (because) I have interrupted you*. Cic.

NOTE.—*Quod-clauses*, used substantively, either give prominence to the *fact stated*, or present it as a *ground* or *reason*. They may be used as the *subjects* of impersonal verbs, as the *objects* of transitive verbs, especially of such as denote *emotion* or *feeling*, and as *appositives*:¹

Hūc accēdebat quod exercitum luxuriōsē habuerat, *to this was added the fact that he had kept the army in luxury*. Sall. Adde quod ingenuās didicisse artēs ēmolliit mōrēs, *add the fact that to learn liberal arts refines manners*. Ovid. Bene facis quod mē adjuvās, *you do well that you assist me*. Cic. Dolēbam quod socium amiseram, *I was grieving because I had lost a companion*. Cic. See also 535, III., note.

SECTION VIII.

GERUNDS, GERUNDIVES,² SUPINES, AND PARTICIPLES.

I. GERUNDS.

541. The GERUND is a verbal noun which shares so largely the character of a verb that it governs oblique cases, and takes adverbial modifiers:

¹ *Quod-clauses* occur—(1) as the subject of *accēdit*, *accidit*, *appāret*, *evenit*, *fit*, *nocet*, *obest*, *occurrit*, *prōdest*, etc.; also of *est* with a noun or adjective, as *causa est*, *ritum est*, etc., *gratum est*, *indignum est*, *mirum est*, etc.; and (2) as dependent upon *accūsō*, *addō*, *adiceō* (p. 20, foot-note 1), *admīror*, *animadvertō*, *angor*, *bene facio*, *dēlector*, *doleō*, *excūsō*, *faciō*, *gaudeō*, *glōrior*, *laetor*, *miror*, *mittō*, *omitto*, *praetereō*, *queror*, etc. They are sometimes used like the *Accusative of Specification*. See 516, 2, note.

² The *Gerund* and the *Gerundive* were originally identical. The former is the neu-

Jūs vocandī ¹ *senātum*, *the right of summoning the senate*. Liv. *Beātē vivendī* ¹ *cupiditās*, *the desire of living happily*. Cic.

NOTE.—In a few instances the Gerund has apparently a passive meaning:

Neque habent propriam percipiendī notam, *nor have they any proper mark of distinction* (i. e., to distinguish them). Cic.

542. The GERUND has four cases—the *Genitive*, *Dative*, *Accusative*, and *Ablative*—used in general like the same cases of nouns. Thus—

I. The GENITIVE OF THE GERUND is used with nouns and adjectives: ²

Ars vivendī, *the art of living*. Cic. *Studiōsus erat audiendī*, *he was desirous of hearing*. Nep. *Cupidus tē audiendī*, *desirous of hearing you*. Cic. *Artem vērā ac falsā dijudicandī*, *the art of distinguishing true things from false*. Cic.

NOTE 1.—The Gerund usually governs the same case as the verb, but sometimes, by virtue of its *substantive nature*, it governs the *Genitive*, especially the Genitive of personal pronouns—*meī*, *nostrī*, *tuī*, *vestrī*, *sui*:

Cōpia placandī tui (*of a woman*), *an opportunity of appeasing you*. Ov. *Sui cōservandī causā*, *for the purpose of preserving themselves*. Cic. *Vestrī adhortandī causā*, *for the purpose of exhorting you*. Liv. *Rēciendī* ³ *jūdicum potestās*, *the power of challenging (of) the judges*. Cic. *Lūcis tuendī cōpia*, *the privilege of beholding the light*. Plaut.

NOTE 2.—The Genitive of the Gerund is sometimes used to denote *purpose* or *tendency*:

Lēgēs pellendī clārōs virōs, *laws for* (lit., *of*) *driving away illustrious men*. Tac.

II. The DATIVE OF THE GERUND is used with a few verbs and adjectives which regularly govern the Dative:

Cum solvendō nōn essent, *since they were not able to pay*. Cic. *Aqua utilis est bibendō*, *water is useful for drinking*. Plin.

NOTE.—The Dative of the Gerund is rare; ⁴ with an object it occurs only in Plautus.

III. The ACCUSATIVE OF THE GERUND is used after a few prepositions: ⁵

Ad discendum prōpēnsī sumus, *we are inclined to learn* (to learning). Cic. *Inter ludendum*, *in or during play*. Quint.

ter of a participle used *substantively*, while the latter is that same participle used *adjectively*. Moreover, from this participle the Gerund developed an *active* meaning and the Gerundive a *passive*. On the *Origin and Use of Gerunds and Gerundives*, see Jolly, 'Geschichte des Infinitivs,' pp. 198–200. Draeger, II., pp. 789–828.

¹ *Vocandī* as a Genitive is governed by *jūs*, and yet it governs the Accusative *senātum*; *vivendī* is governed by *cupiditās*, and yet it takes the adverbial modifier *beātē*.

² The adjectives which take the *Genitive of the Gerund* are chiefly those denoting *DESIRE*, *KNOWLEDGE*, *SKILL*, *RECOLLECTION*, and their opposites: *avidus*, *cupidus*, *studiosus*; *cōsciūs*, *gnārus*, *ignārus*; *peritus*, *imperitus*, *insuētus*, etc.

³ Pronounced as if written *rejiendī*; see p. 20, foot-note 1.

⁴ According to Jolly, 'Geschichte des Infinitivs,' p. 200, the Gerund originally had only one case, the *Dative*, and was virtually an Infinitive.

⁵ Most frequently after *ad*; sometimes after *inter* and *ob*; very rarely after *ante*, *circā*, and *in*.

NOTE 1.—The Accusative of the Gerund with a direct object is rare:

Ad placandum deos pertinet, *it tends to appease the gods.* Cic.

NOTE 2.—The Gerund with *ad* often denotes *purpose*:

Ad imitandum mihi propositum est exemplar illud, *that model has been set before me for imitation.* Cic.

IV. The ABLATIVE OF THE GERUND is used (1) as *Ablative of Means*, and (2) with *prepositions*:¹

Mens discendo alitur, *the mind is nourished by learning.* Cic. Salutem hominibus dando, *by giving safety to men.* Cic. Virtutes cernuntur in agendo, *virtues are seen in action.* Cic. Deterrere a scribendo, *to deter from writing.* Cic.

NOTE 1.—After prepositions, the Ablative of the Gerund with a direct object is exceedingly rare:

In tribuendo suum cuique, *in giving every one his own.* Cic.

NOTE 2.—Without a preposition, the Ablative of the Gerund denotes in a few instances some other relation than that of means, as *time*, *separation*, etc.:

Incipiendo refugii, *I drew back in the very beginning.* Cic.

II. GERUNDIVES.

543. The GERUNDIVE, like other participles, agrees with nouns and pronouns:

Inita sunt consilia urbis delendae, *plans have been formed for destroying the city* (of the city to be destroyed). Cic. Numa sacerdotibus creandis animum adiecit, *Numa gave his attention to the appointment of priests.* Liv.

NOTE.—A noun (or pronoun) and a Gerundive in agreement with it form the *Gerundive Construction*.

544. The GERUNDIVE CONSTRUCTION may be used—

1. In place of a *Gerund with a direct object*. It then takes the case of the Gerund whose place it supplies:

Libido ejus videndi (= libido eum videndi), *the desire of seeing him* (lit., *of him to be seen*). Cic. Platoni audiendi (= Platonem audiendi) studiosus, *fond of hearing Plato.* Cic. Legendis oratoribus (= legendo oratores), *by reading the orators.* Cic.

NOTE.—The Gerundive Construction should not be used for the Gerund with a neuter pronoun or adjective as object, as it could not distinguish the gender:

Artem vera ac falsa dijudicandi, *the art of distinguishing true things from false.* Cic.

2. In the *Dative* and in the *Ablative with a preposition*:

Locum oppido condendo cepērunt, *they selected a place for founding a city.* Liv. Tempora demetendis fructibus accommodata, *seasons suitable for gathering fruits.* Cic. Brutus in liberanda patria est interfectus, *Brutus was slain in liberating his country.* Cic.

¹ The Ablative of the Gerund is used most frequently after *a* (ab), *de*, *ex* (e), *in*; rarely after *cum*, *pro*, and *super*.

NOTE 1.—The learner will remember that in the *Dative* (542, II., note) and in the *Ablative with a preposition* (542, IV., note 1) the Gerund with a direct object is exceedingly rare. The *Gerundive Construction* supplies its place.

NOTE 2.—The Gerundive Construction sometimes denotes *purpose* or *tendency*, especially in the Accusative after verbs of *giving, permitting, taking*, etc. :

Attribuit Italiam vastandam (for *ad vastandum*) Catilinae, *he assigned Italy to Catiline to ravage* (to be ravaged). Cic. Firmandae valētudini in Campāniam concessit, *he withdrew into Campania to confirm his health*. Tac. Haec trādendae Hannibali victōriae sunt, *these things are for the purpose of giving victory to Hannibal*. Liv. Proficietur cōgnoscendae antiquitātis, *he sets out for the purpose of studying antiquity*. Tac.

NOTE 3.—The Gerundive Construction in the Dative occurs after certain official names, as *decemviri, triumviri, comitia* :¹

Decemvirōs lēgibus scribendis creāvimus, *we have appointed a committee of ten to prepare laws*. Liv.

NOTE 4.—The Gerundive Construction in the Ablative occurs after comparatives :

Nūllum officiū referendā grātiā magis necessarium est, *no duty is more necessary than that of returning a favor*. Cic.

NOTE 5.—The Gerundive Construction is in general admissible only in transitive verbs, but it occurs in *utor, fruor, fungor, potior*, etc., originally transitive :

Ad mūnus fungendum, *for discharging the duty*. Cic. Spēs potiundōrum castrōrum, *the hope of getting possession of the camp*. Caes.

III. SUPINES.

545. The SUPINE, like the Gerund, is a verbal noun. It has a form in *um* and a form in *ū*.

NOTE 1.—The Supine in *um* is an Accusative; that in *ū* is generally an Ablative, though sometimes perhaps a Dative.²

NOTE 2.—The Supine in *um* governs the same case as the verb :

Lēgātōs mittunt rogātum auxilium, *they send ambassadors to ask aid*. Caes.

RULE LIX.—Supine in Um.

546. The Supine in *um* is used with verbs of motion to express PURPOSE :

Lēgātī vēnērunt rēs repetitum, *deputies came to demand restitution*. Liv. Ad Caesarem congrātulātum convēnērunt, *they came to Caesar to congratulate him*. Caes.

1. The Supine in *um* occurs in a few instances after verbs which do not directly express motion :

Filiam Agrippae nūptum dedit, *he gave his daughter in marriage to Agrippa*. Suet.

2. The Supine in *um* with the verb *eo* is equivalent to the forms of the first Periphrastic Conjugation, and may often be rendered literally :

Bonōs omnēs perditum eunt, *they are going to destroy all the good*. Sall.

¹ But in most instances the Dative may be explained as dependent either upon the verb or upon the predicate as a whole; see 384, 4.

² See Hübschmann, p. 223; Draeger, II., p. 833; Jolly, p. 201.

NOTE.—But in subordinate clauses the Supine in *um* with the verb *eō* is often used for the simple verb :

Ultum Irē (= ulciscī) injuriās festinat, *he hastens to avenge the injuries*. Sall.

3. The Supine in *um* with *irē*, the Infinitive Passive of *eō*, forms, it will be remembered (222, III., 1), the Future Passive Infinitive :

Brūtum visum iri ā mē putō, *I think Brutus will be seen by me*. Cic.

4. The Supine in *um* is not very common;¹ but *purpose* may be denoted by other constructions :

1) By *ut* or *quī* with the Subjunctive; see 497.

2) By *Gerunds* or *Gerundives*; see 542, I., note 2, and III., note 2; 544, 2, note 2.

3) By *Participles*; see 549, 3.

RULE LX.—Supine in *ū*.

547. The Supine in *ū* is generally used as an Ablative of Specification (424) :

Quid est tam jūcundum auditū, *what is so agreeable to hear* (in hearing)? Cic. Difficile dictū est, *it is difficult to tell*. Cic. Dē genere mortis difficile dictū est, *it is difficult to speak of the kind of death*. Cic. Cīvitas incredibile memorātū est quantum crēverit, *it is incredible to relate how much the state increased*. Sall. Pudet dictū, *it is a shame to tell*. Tac.

NOTE.—The Supine in *ū* never governs an oblique case, but it may take an Ablative with a preposition, as in the third example above.

1. The Supine in *ū* is used chiefly with *jūcundus*, *optimus*; *facilis*, *prōclivis*, *dīficilis*; *incrēdibilis*, *memorābilis*; *honestus*, *turpis*; *dīgnus*, *indīgnus*; *fās*, *nefās*, *opus*, and *scelus*; rarely with verbs.

2. The Supine in *ū* is very rare. The most common examples are *auditū*, *dictū*, *factū*, *nātū*, *vīsū*; less common, *cōgnitū*, *intellēctū*, *inventū*, *memorātū*, *relātū*, *scītū*, *tractātū*, *victū*.²

IV. PARTICIPLES.

548. The PARTICIPLE is a verbal adjective which governs the same cases as the verb :

Animus sē nōn vidēns alia cernit, *the mind, though it does not see itself* (lit., *not seeing itself*), *discerns other things*. Cic.

NOTE 1.—For *Participles* used substantively, see 441.

NOTE 2.—*Participles* used substantively sometimes retain the *adverbial* modifiers which belonged to them as participles, and sometimes take *adjective* modifiers :

Nōn tam praeemia sequi rēctē factorū quam ipsa rēctē facta, *not to seek the rewards of good deeds* (things rightly done) *so much as good deeds themselves*. Cic. Praeclārum atque divinum factum, *an excellent and divine deed*. Cic.

549. PARTICIPLES are often used—

1. To denote TIME, CAUSE, MANNER, MEANS :

¹ According to Draeger, II., p. 829, the Supine in *um* is found in only two hundred and thirty-six verbs, mostly of the First and Third Conjugations.

² According to Draeger, II., p. 833, the Supine in *ū* is found in one hundred and nine verbs.

Platō scribēns mortuus est, *Plato died while writing*. Cic. Itūrī in proelium canunt, *they sing when about to go into battle*. Tac. Sōl oriēns diem cōficit, *the sun by its rising causes the day*. Cic. Milītēs renūntiant, sē perfidiam veritōs revertisse, *the soldiers report that they returned because they feared perfidy (having feared)*. Caes.

2. To denote CONDITION or CONCESSION :

Mendacī hominī nē vērum quidem dicentī crēdere nōn solēmus, *we are not wont to believe a liar, even if he speaks the truth*. Cic. Relūctante nātūrā, irritus labor est, *if nature opposes, effort is vain*. Sen. Scripta tua jam diū exspectāns, nōn audeō tamen flāgitāre, *though I have been long expecting your work, yet I do not dare to ask for it*. Cic.

3. To denote PURPOSE :

Perseus rediit, belli cāsū tentātūrus, *Perseus returned to try (about to try) the fortune of war*. Liv. Attribuit nōs trucidandōs Cethēgō, *he assigned us to Cethegus to slaughter*. Cic.

4. To supply the place of RELATIVE CLAUSES :

Omnēs aliud agentēs, aliud simulantēs, improbi sunt, *all who do one thing and pretend another are dishonest*. Cic.

5. To supply the place of PRINCIPAL CLAUSES :

Clāssē dēvictā cēpit, *he conquered and took the fleet (took the fleet conquered)*. Nep. Rē cōsistentēs, vocābulis differēbant, *they agreed in fact, but differed in words*. Cic.

NOTE 1.—A participle with a negative is often best rendered by a participial noun and the preposition *without* :

Miserum est, nihil prōficiētem angī, *it is sad to be troubled without accomplishing anything*. Cic. Nōn erubescēns, *without blushing*. Cic.

NOTE 2.—The perfect participle is often best rendered by a participial or verbal noun with *of* :

Homērus fuit ante Rōmā conditā, *Homer lived (was) before the founding of Rome (before Rome founded)*. Cic.

550. The TENSES OF THE PARTICIPLE—*Present, Perfect, and Future*—denote only *relative* time. They accordingly represent the time respectively as *present, past, and future* relatively to that of the principal verb :

Oculus sē nōn vidēns alia cernit, *the eye, though it does not see itself (not seeing itself), discerns other things*. Cic. Platō scribēns mortuus est, *Plato died while writing*. Cic. Ūva mātūrāta dulcēscit, *the grape, when it has ripened (having ripened), becomes sweet*. Cic. Sapiēns bona semper placitūra laudat, *the wise man praises blessings which will always please (being about to please)*. Sen.

NOTE 1.—The perfect participle, both in deponent and in passive verbs, is sometimes used of present time, and sometimes in passive verbs it loses in a great degree its force as a tense, and is best rendered by a verbal noun :

Eisdem ducibus ūsus Numidās mittit, *employing the same persons as guides, he sent the Numidians*. Caes. Incēnsās perfert nāvēs, *he reports the burning of the ships* (the ships set on fire). Verg. See also 544.

NOTE 2.—In the compound tenses the perfect participle often becomes virtually a predicate adjective expressing the *result* of the action :

Causae sunt cōgnitae, *the causes are known*. Caes. See also 471, 6, note 1.

NOTE 3.—For the *Perfect Participle* with *habēō*, see 388, 1, note.

NOTE 4.—The want of a perfect active participle is sometimes supplied by a *temporal clause*, and sometimes by a *perfect passive participle* in the Ablative Absolute :

Caesar, postquam vēnit, Rhēnum trānsire cōstituit, *Caesar, having arrived, decided to cross the Rhine*. Caes. Equitātū praemissō subsequebātur, *having sent forward his cavalry, he followed*. Caes. See also 431; 519.

NOTE 5.—The want of a present passive participle is generally supplied by a *temporal clause* :

Cum ā Catōne laudābar, reprehendī mē ā cēteris patiebar, *being praised by Cato, I allowed myself to be censured by the others*. Cic.

CHAPTER VI.

SYNTAX OF PARTICLES.

RULE LXI.—Use of Adverbs.

551. Adverbs qualify VERBS, ADJECTIVES, and other ADVERBS :

Sapientēs fēliciter vivunt, *the wise live happily*. Cic. Facile doctissimus, *unquestionably the most learned*. Cic. Haud aliter, *not otherwise*. Verg.

NOTE 1.—For *predicate adverbs* with *sum*, see 360, note 2; for *adverbs* with nouns used adjectively, see 441, 3; for *adverbs* in place of adjectives, see 443, notes 3 and 4; for *adverbs* with participles used substantively, see 548, note 2.

NOTE 2.—*Sic* and *ita* mean 'so,' 'thus.' *Ita* has also a limiting sense, 'in so far,' as in *ita-si* (507, 3, note 2). *Adeō* means 'to such a degree or result'; *tam*, *tantopere*, 'so much'—*tam* used mostly with adjectives and adverbs, and *tantopere* with verbs.

552. The common negative particles are *nōn*, *nē*, *haud*.

1. *Nōn* is the usual negative; *nē* is used in prohibitions, wishes, and purposes (483, 3; 488; 497), and *haud*, in *haud sciō an*, and with adjectives and adverbs: *haud mirābile*, not wonderful; *haud aliter*, not otherwise. *Nī* for *nē* is rare. *Nē nōn* after *vidē* is often best rendered *whether*.

2. In *nōn modo nōn* and in *nōn solum nōn* the second *nōn* is generally omitted before *sed* or *vērūm*, followed by *nē*—*quidem* or *viā* (rarely *etiam*), when the verb of the second clause belongs also to the first:

Assentātiō nōn modo amicō, sed nē liberō quidem digna est, *flattery is not only not worthy of a friend, but not even of a free man*. Cic.

3. *Minus* often has nearly the force of *nōn*; *sī minus* = *sī nōn*. *Sin aliter* has nearly the same force as *sī minus*. *Minimē* often means 'not at all,' 'by no means.'

553. Two NEGATIVES are generally equivalent to an affirmative, as in English :

Nihil nōn arroget, *let him claim everything.* Hor. Neque hōc Zēnō nōn vīdit, *nor did Zeno overlook this.* Cic.

1. Nōn before a general negative gives it the force of an indefinite affirmative, but after such negative the force of a general affirmative :

Nōnnēmō, <i>some one;</i>	nōnnihil, <i>something;</i>	nōnnūquam, <i>sometimes;</i>
Nēmō nōn, <i>every one;</i>	nihil nōn, <i>everything;</i>	nūquam nōn, <i>always.</i>

2. After a general negative, *nē—quidem* gives emphasis to the negation, and *neque—neque, nēque—nēque*, and the like, repeat the negation distributively :

Nōn prātereurdum est nē id quidem, *we must not pass by even this.* Cic. Nēmō unquam neque poēta neque orātor fuit, *no one was ever either a poet or an orator.* Cic.

NOTE.—For the Use of Prepositions, see **432-435.**

554. COÖRDINATE CONJUNCTIONS unite similar constructions (**309, 1**). They comprise five classes.

I. COPULATIVE CONJUNCTIONS denote UNION :

Castor et Pollūx, *Castor and Pollux.* Cic. Senātus populusque, *the senate and people.* Cic. Nec erat difficile, *nor was it difficult.* Liv.

1. For list, see **310, 1.**

2. *Et* simply connects; *que* implies a more intimate relationship; *atque* and *ac* generally give prominence to what follows. *Neque* and *nec* have the force of *et nōn*. *Et* and *etiam* sometimes mean *even*.

NOTE.—*Atque* and *ac* generally mean *as, than*, after adjectives and adverbs of likeness and unlikeness: *tālis ac* 'such as'; *aeque ac*, 'equally as'; *aliter atque*, 'otherwise than.' See also **451, 5.**

3. *Que* is an enclitic, and *ac* in the best prose is used only before consonants.

4. *Etiam*, *quoque*, *adeō*, and the like, are sometimes associated with *et*, *atque*, *ac*, and *que*, and sometimes even supply their place. *Quoque* follows the word which it connects: *is quoque*, 'he also.' *Etiam*, 'also,' 'further,' 'even,' often adds a new circumstance.

5. Sometimes two copulatives are used: *et—et*, *que—que*,¹ *et—que*, *que—et*, *que—atque*,¹ *tum—tum*, *cum—tum*, 'both—and'; but *cum—tum* gives prominence to the second word or clause; *nōn solum* (*nōn modo*, or *nōn tantum*)—*sed etiam* (*vērūm etiam*), 'not only—but also'; *neque* (*nec*)—*neque* (*nec*), 'neither—nor'; *neque* (*nec*)—*et* (*que*), 'not—but (and)'; *et—neque* (*nec*), 'and not.'

6. Between two words connected copulatively the conjunction is generally expressed, though sometimes omitted, especially between the names of two colleagues. Between several words it is in the best prose generally repeated or omitted altogether, though *que* may be used with the last even when the conjunction is omitted between the others: *pax et tranquillitās et concordia*, or *pax, tranquillitās, concordia*, or *pax, tranquillitās, concordiaque*.

NOTE 1.—*Et* is often omitted between conditional clauses, except before *nōn*.

NOTE 2.—A series may begin with *primum* or *primō*, may be continued by *deīndē* followed by *tum*, *postēd*, *prāterēd*, or some similar word, and may close with *dēīnque*

¹ *Que—que* is rare, except in poetry; *que—atque*, rare even in poetry; see Verg., *Aen.*, I., 18; Geor., I., 182.

or *postrēmō*.¹ *Deinde* may be repeated several times between *primum* and *dēnique* or *postrēmō*.²

II. DISJUNCTIVE CONJUNCTIONS denote SEPARATION :

Aut vestra aut sua culpa, *either your fault or his own*. Liv. Duābus tribusve hōris, *in two or three hours*. Cic.

1. For list, see 310, 2.

2. *Aut* denotes a stronger antithesis than *vel*, and must be used if the one supposition excludes the other: *aut vērū aut falsū*, 'either true or false.' *Vel* implies a difference in the expression rather than in the thing. It is generally corrective, and is often followed by *potius*, *etiam*, or *dīcam*: *laudātur, vel etiam amātur*, 'he is praised, or even (rather) loved.' It sometimes means *even*, and sometimes *for example*. *Velut* often means *for example*. *Ve* for *vel* is appended as an enclitic.

NOTE.—In negative clauses *aut* and *ve* often continue the negation: *nōn honor aut virtūs*, 'neither (not) honor nor virtue.'

3. *Sive* (*sī—ve*) does not imply any real difference or opposition; it often connects different names of the same object: *Pallas sive Minerva*, 'Pallas or Minerva' (another name of the same goddess).

NOTE.—Disjunctive conjunctions are often combined as correlatives: *aut—aut, v. —vel*, etc., 'either—or.'

III. ADVERSATIVE CONJUNCTIONS denote OPPOSITION or CONTRAST :

Cupiō mē esse clēmentem, sed mē inertiae condemnō, *I wish to be mild, but I condemn myself for inaction*. Cic. Magnēs ferrum ad sē trahit, ratiōnem autem adferre nōn possumus, *the magnet attracts iron, but we can not assign a reason*. Cic.

1. For list, see 310, 3.

2. *Sed* and *vērū* mark a direct opposition; *autem* and *vērō* only a transition; *a* emphasizes the opposition; *atquē* often introduces an objection; *cēterum* means 'but still,' 'as to the rest'; *tamen*, 'yet.'

NOTE.—*Sed* and *vērū* are sometimes resumptive; see IV., 3, below :

Sed age, respondē, *but come, reply*. Plaut.

3. *Attamen*, *sedtamen*, *vēruntamen*, 'but yet,' are compounds of *tamen*.

4. *Autem* and *vērō* are *postpositive*, i. e., they are placed after one or more words in their clauses.

IV. ILLATIVE CONJUNCTIONS denote INFERENCE :

In umbrā igitur pūgnābimus, *we shall therefore fight in the shade*. Cic.

1. For list, see 310, 4.

2. Certain other words, sometimes classed with adverbs and sometimes with conjunctions, are also illatives, as *eō*, *idēō*, *idcirco*, *propterea*, *quamobrem*, *quāpropter*, *quārē*, *quōcircā*.

3. *Igitur* generally follows the word which it connects: *hīc igitur*, 'this one therefore.' After a digression, *igitur*, *sed*, *sed tamen*, *vērū*, *vērū tamen*, etc., are often used to resume an interrupted thought or construction. They may often be rendered 'I say': *Sed sī quis*, 'if any one, I say.'

¹ For examples, see Cic., *Fam.*, XV., 14; *Div.*, II., 56.

² Cicero, *Inv.*, II., 49, has a series of ten members in which *primum* introduces the first member, *postrēmō* the last, and *dēinde* each of the other eight.

V. CAUSAL CONJUNCTIONS denote CAUSE:

Difficile est cōsiliū, sum enim sōlus, *counsel is difficult, for I am alone.*

Cic. Etenim jū amant, *for they love the right.* Cic.

1. For list, see 310, 5.
2. *Etenim* and *namque* denote a closer connection than *enim* and *nam*.
3. *Enim* is postpositive; see 554, III., 4.

555. SUBORDINATE CONJUNCTIONS connect subordinate with principal constructions (309, 2). They comprise eight classes.

I. TEMPORAL CONJUNCTIONS denote TIME:

Pāruit cum necesse erat, *he obeyed when it was necessary.* Cic. Dum ego in Siciliā sum, *while I am in Sicily.* Cic. See also 311, 1; 518-521.

1. *Dum* added to a negative means *yet*; *nōdum*, 'not yet'; *vixdum*, 'scarcely yet.'

II. COMPARATIVE CONJUNCTIONS denote COMPARISON:

Ut optāsti, ita est, *it is as you desired.* Cic. Velut sī adesset, *as if he were present.* Caes. See also 311, 2; 513, II.

1. CORRELATIVES are often used: *Tam—quam*, 'as,' 'so—as,' 'as much—as'; *tam—quam quod māximē*, 'as much as possible'; *nōn minus—quam*, 'not less than'; *nōn magis—quam*, 'not more than.'

Tam—quam and *ut—ita* with a superlative are sometimes best rendered by *the* with the comparative: *ut māximē—ita māximē*, 'the more—the more.'

III. CONDITIONAL CONJUNCTIONS denote CONDITION:

Sī peccāvi, Ignōsce, *if I have erred, pardon me.* Cic. Nisi est cōsiliū domī, *unless there is wisdom at home.* Cic. See also 311, 3; 506-513.

1. *Nisi*, 'if not,' in negative sentences often means 'except'; and *nisi quod*, 'except that,' may be used even in affirmative sentences. *Nisi* may mean 'than.' *Nihil aliud nisi* = 'nothing further' (more, except); *nihil aliud quam* = 'nothing else' (other than).

IV. CONCESSIVE CONJUNCTIONS denote CONCESSION:

Quamquam intellegunt, *though they understand.* Cic. Etsī nihil habeat, *although he has nothing.* Cic. See also 311, 4; 514; 515.

V. FINAL CONJUNCTIONS denote PURPOSE:

Esse oportet, ut vivās, *it is necessary to eat, that you may live.* Cic. See also 311, 5; 497-499.

VI. CONSECUTIVE CONJUNCTIONS denote CONSEQUENCE or RESULT:

Atticus ita vixit, ut Athēniēnsibus esset carissimus, *Atticus so lived that he was very dear to the Athenians.* Nep. See also 311, 6; 500-504.

VII. CAUSAL CONJUNCTIONS denote CAUSE:

Quae cum ita sint, *since these things are so.* Cic. See also 311, 7; 516; 517.

VIII. INTERROGATIVE CONJUNCTIONS or Particles denote INQUIRY or QUESTION:

Quaesiorās, nōne putārem, *you had asked whether I did not think.* Cic. See also 311, 8; 351-353; 529.

556. INTERJECTIONS are sometimes used entirely alone, as *ēheu*, 'alas!' and sometimes with certain cases of nouns; see 381, with note 3.

557. Various parts of speech, and even oaths and imprecations, sometimes have the force of interjections:

Pāx (*peace*), *be still!* *miserum*, *miserābile*, *sad, lamentable!* *orō*, *pray!* *age*, *agite*, *come, well!* *meherculēs*, *by Hercules!* *per deū fidem*, *in the name of the gods!* *sōdēs* = *sī audēs* (*for audiēs*), *if you will hear!*

CHAPTER VII.

RULES OF SYNTAX.

558. For convenience of reference, the principal Rules of Syntax are here introduced in a body.

AGREEMENT OF NOUNS.

I. A noun predicated of another noun denoting the same person or thing agrees with it in CASE (362):

Brūtus cūstōs libertātis fuit, *Brutus was the guardian of liberty.*

II. An Appositive agrees in CASE with the noun or pronoun which it qualifies (363):

Cluilius rēx moritur, *Cluilius the king dies.*

NOMINATIVE.—VOCATIVE.

III. The Subject of a Finite verb is put in the Nominative (368):
Servius rēgnāvit, *Servius reigned.*

IV. The Name of the person or thing addressed is put in the Vocative (369):

Perge, Laeli, *proceed, Laelius.*

ACCUSATIVE.

V. The DIRECT OBJECT of an action is put in the Accusative (371):

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made (built) the world.*

VI. Verbs of MAKING, CHOOSING, CALLING, REGARDING, SHOWING, and the like, admit two Accusatives of the same person or thing (373):

Hamilcarem imperātōrem fecērunt, *they made Hamilcar commander.*

VII. Some verbs of ASKING, DEMANDING, TEACHING, and CONCEALING admit two Accusatives—one of the *person* and the other of the *thing* (374):

Mē sententiam rogāvit, he asked me my opinion.

VIII. A verb or an adjective may take an Accusative to define its application (378):

Capita vėlāmur, we have our heads veiled.

IX. DURATION OF TIME and EXTENT OF SPACE are expressed by the Accusative (379):

Septem et trīgintā rēgnāvit annōs, he reigned thirty-seven years. Quīque milia passuum ambulāre, to walk five miles.

X. The PLACE TO WHICH is designated by the Accusative (380):

I. Generally with a preposition—**ad** or **in**:

Legiōnēs ad urbem addūcit, he is leading the legions to or toward the city.

II. In names of towns without a preposition:

Nūntius Rōmam redit, the messenger returns to Rome.

XI. The Accusative, either with or without an interjection, may be used in Exclamations (381):

Heu mē miserum, ah me unhappy!

DATIVE.

XII. The INDIRECT OBJECT of an action is put in the Dative. It is used (384)—

I. With INTRANSITIVE and PASSIVE verbs:

Tibī serviō, I am devoted to you.

II. With TRANSITIVE verbs, in connection with the DIRECT OBJECT:

Agrōs plēbi dedit, he gave lands to the common people.

XIII. Two Datives—the OBJECT TO WHICH and the OBJECT OR END FOR WHICH—occur with a few verbs (390):

I. With INTRANSITIVE and PASSIVE verbs:

Malō est hominibus avāritia, avarice is an evil to men.

II. With TRANSITIVE verbs in connection with the ACCUSATIVE:

Quīque cohortēs castris praesidiō reliquit, he left five cohorts for the defence of the camp.

XIV. With adjectives, the OBJECT TO WHICH the quality is directed is put in the Dative (391):

Omnibus cārum est, it is dear to all.

XV. The Dative is used with a few special nouns and adverbs (392):

I. With a few nouns from verbs which take the Dative:

Jūstitia est obtemperātiō lēgibus, justice is obedience to laws.

II. With a few adverbs from adjectives which take the Dative:

Congruenter nātūrae vivere, to live in accordance with nature.

GENITIVE.

XVI. Any noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive (395):

Catōnis orātiōnēs, Cato's orations.

XVII. Many adjectives take a Genitive to complete their meaning (399):

Avidus laudis, desirous of praise.

XVIII. A noun predicated of another noun denoting a different person or thing is put in the Genitive (401):

Omnia hostium erant, all things belonged to the enemy.

XIX. The Genitive is used (406)—

I. With **miserere** and **miserēscō**:

Miserere labōrum, pity the labors.

II. With **recordor**, **memini**, **reminiscor**, and **obliviscor**:

Meminit praeteritōrum, he remembers the past.

III. With **rēfert** and **interest**:

Interest omnium, it is the interest of all.

XX. The ACCUSATIVE of the PERSON and the GENITIVE of the THING are used with a few transitive verbs (409):

I. With verbs of *reminding*, *admonishing*:

Tē amicitiae commonefacit, he reminds you of friendship.

II. With verbs of *accusing*, *convicting*, *acquitting*:

Virōs sceleris arguis, you accuse men of crime.

III. With *miseret*, *paenitet*, *pudet*, *taedet*, and *piget*:

Eōrum nōs miseret, we pity them.

ABLATIVE PROPER.

XXI. The PLACE FROM WHICH is denoted by the Ablative (412):

I. Generally *with a preposition*—**ā**, **ab**, **dē**, or **ex**:

Ab urbe proficiscitur, he sets out from the city.

II. In NAMES OF TOWNS *without a preposition*:

Platōnem Athēnīs arcēssivit, *he summoned Plato from Athens.*

XXII. Separation, Source, and Cause are denoted by the Ablative *with or without a preposition* (413):

Caedem ā vōbīs dēpellō, *I ward off slaughter from you.* Hōc audīvī dē parente meō, *I heard this from my father.* Ars ūtilitāte laudātur, *an art is praised because of its usefulness.*

XXIII. Comparatives without QUAM are followed by the Ablative (417):

Nihil est amābilius virtūte, *nothing is more lovely than virtue.*

INSTRUMENTAL ABLATIVE.

XXIV. The Ablative is used (419)—

I. To denote ACCOMPANIMENT. It then takes the preposition **cum**:

Vivit cum Balbō, *he lives with Balbus.*

II. To denote CHARACTERISTIC or QUALITY. It is then modified by an Adjective or by a Genitive:

Summā virtūte adulescēns, *a youth of the highest virtue.*

III. To denote MANNER. It then takes the preposition **cum**, or is modified by an Adjective or by a Genitive:

Cum virtūte vixit, *he lived virtuously.*

XXV. INSTRUMENT and MEANS are denoted by the Ablative (420):

Cornibus tauri sē tūtantur, *bulls defend themselves with their horns.*

XXVI. The Ablative is used (421)—

I. With **ūtor**, **fruor**, **fungor**, **potior**, **vescor**, and their compounds:

Plūrimīs rēbus fruimur et ūtimur, *we enjoy and use very many things.*

II. With VERBS and ADJECTIVES OF PLENTY:

Villa abundat lacte, cāseō, melle, *the villa abounds in milk, cheese, and honey.*

III. With **dignus**, **indignus**, and **contentus**:

Digni sunt amicitīā, *they are worthy of friendship.*

XXVII. PRICE is generally denoted by the Ablative (422):

Vēdidit aurō patriam, *he sold his country for gold.*

XXVIII. The MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE is denoted by the Ablative (423):

Ūnō diē longiōrem mēsem faciunt, *they make the month one day longer.*

XXIX. A noun, adjective, or verb may take an Ablative to define its application (424):

Nōmine, nōn potestāte, fuit rēx, *he was king in name, not in power.*

LOCATIVE ABLATIVE.

XXX. The PLACE IN WHICH is denoted (425)—

I. Generally by the *Locative Ablative with the preposition in* :

Hannibal in Italiā fuit, *Hannibal was in Italy.*

II. In NAMES OF TOWNS by the *Locative*, if such a form exists, otherwise by the *Locative Ablative* :

Rōmæ fuit, *he was at Rome.*

XXXI. The TIME of an action is denoted by the Ablative (429):

Octogēsimo annō est mortuus, *he died in his eightieth year.*

XXXII. A noun and a participle may be put in the Ablative to add to the predicate an attendant circumstance (431):

Serviō regnante viguerunt, *they flourished in the reign of Servius.*

CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS.

XXXIII. The Accusative and Ablative may be used with prepositions (432):

Ad amicum, *to a friend.* In Italiā, *in Italy.*

AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES, PRONOUNS, AND VERBS.

XXXIV. An adjective agrees with its noun in GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE (438):

Fortūna caeca est, *fortune is blind.*

XXXV. A pronoun agrees with its antecedent in GENDER, NUMBER, and PERSON (445):

Animal, quod sanguinem habet, *an animal which has blood.*

XXXVI. A finite verb agrees with its subject in NUMBER and PERSON (460):

Ego regēs ejeci, *I have banished kings.*

USE OF THE INDICATIVE.

XXXVII. The Indicative is used in treating of facts (474):

Deus mundum aedificavit, *God made (built) the world.*

MOODS AND TENSES IN PRINCIPAL CLAUSES.

XXXVIII. The Subjunctive is used to represent the action NOT AS REAL, but AS DESIRED (483):

Valeant cives, *may the citizens be well.*

XXXIX. The Subjunctive is used to represent the action NOT AS REAL, but AS POSSIBLE (485):

Hic quaerat quispiam, *here some one may inquire.*

XL. The Imperative is used in COMMANDS, EXHORTATIONS, and ENTREATIES (487):

Jūstitiam cole, *practice justice.*

MOODS AND TENSES IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.

XLI. Principal tenses depend upon principal tenses ; historical upon historical (491):

Ēnititur ut vincat, *he strives to conquer.*

XLII. The Subjunctive is used to denote PURPOSE (497)—

I. With the relative **quī**, and with relative adverbs, as **ubī**, **unde**, etc.:

Missī sunt quī (= ut īi) cōsulerent Apollinem, *they were sent to consult Apollo.*

II. With **ut**, **nē**, **quō**, **quōminus**:

Ēnititur ut vincat, *he strives that he may conquer.*

XLIII. The Subjunctive is used to denote RESULT (500)—

I. With the relative **quī**, and with relative adverbs, as **ubī**, **unde**, **cūr**, etc.:

Nōn is sum quī (= ut ego) hīs ūtar, *I am not such a one as to use these things.*

II. With **ut**, **ut nōn**, **quān**:

Ita vixit ut Athēniēnsibus esset cārissimus, *he so lived that he was very dear to the Athenians.*

XLIV. Conditional sentences with **sī**, **nisi**, **nī**, **sīn**, take (507)—

I. The INDICATIVE in both clauses to assume the supposed case:

Sī spiritum dūcit, vivit, *if he breathes, he is alive.*

II. The PRESENT OR PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE in both clauses to represent the supposed case as possible:

Dies dēficiat, sī velim causam dēfendere, *the day would fail me, if I should wish to defend the cause.*

III. The IMPERFECT OR PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE in both clauses to represent the supposed case as contrary to fact:

Plūribus verbis ad tē scriberem, sī rēs verba dēsiderāret, *I should write to you more fully (with more words), if the case required words.*

XLV. Conditional clauses take the Subjunctive (513)—

I. With **dum, modo, dummodo**, 'if only,' 'provided that'; **dum nē, modo nē, dummodo nē**, 'if only not,' 'provided that not':

Manent ingenia, modo permaneat industria, *mental powers remain, if only industry remains.*

II. With **āc sī, ut sī, quam sī, quasi, tanquam, tanquam sī, velut, velut sī**, 'as if,' 'than if,' involving an ellipsis of the real conclusion:

Perinde habēbō, āc sī scrīpsissēs, *I shall regard it just as if* (i. e., as I should if) *you had written.*

XLVI. Concessive clauses take (515)—

I. Generally the INDICATIVE in the best prose, when introduced by *quamquam*:

Quamquam intellegunt, *though they understand.*

II. The INDICATIVE or SUBJUNCTIVE when introduced by *etsī, etiamsī, tametsī*, or *sī*, like conditional clauses with *sī*:

Etsī nihil sciō quod gaudeam, *though I know no reason why I should rejoice.*

III. The SUBJUNCTIVE when introduced by *licet, quamvis, ut, nē, cum*, or the relative *quī*:

Licet irrideat, *though he may deride.*

XLVII. Causal clauses with **quod, quia, quoniam, quandō**, generally take (516)—

I. The INDICATIVE to assign a reason *positively on one's own authority*:

Quoniam supplicatiō dēcrēta est, *since a thanksgiving has been decreed.*

II. The SUBJUNCTIVE to assign a reason *doubtfully, or on another's authority*:

Sōcratēs accūsātus est, quod corrumpere juvenitūtem, *Socrates was accused, because he corrupted the youth.*

XLVIII. Causal clauses with *cum* and *quī* generally take the Subjunctive in writers of the best period (517):

Cum vita metūs plēna sit, *since life is full of fear.*

XLIX. In temporal clauses with *postquam, postēquam, ubī, ut, simul atque*, etc., 'after,' 'when,' 'as soon as,' the Indicative is used (518):

Postquam vidit, etc., castra posuit, *he pitched his camp, after he saw, etc.*

L. I. Temporal clauses with *dum, dōnec*, and *quoad*, in the sense of WHILE, AS LONG AS, take the INDICATIVE (519):

Haec feci, dum licuit, *I did this while it was allowed.*

II. Temporal clauses with *dum, dōnec*, and *quoad*, in the sense of UNTIL, take—

1. The INDICATIVE, when the action is viewed as an ACTUAL FACT:

Deliberā hōc, dum ego redeō, consider this until I return.

2. The SUBJUNCTIVE, when the action is viewed as something DESIRED,

PROPOSED, or CONCEIVED:

Differant, dum defervēscat ira, let them defer it till their anger cools.

LI. In temporal clauses with *antequam* and *priusquam* (520)—

I. Any tense except the Imperfect and Pluperfect is put—

1. In the INDICATIVE, when the action is viewed as an ACTUAL FACT:

Priusquam lūcet, adsunt, they are present before it is light.

2. In the SUBJUNCTIVE, when the action is viewed as SOMETHING DE-

SIRED, PROPOSED, or CONCEIVED:

Antequam dē rē publicā dicam, before I (can) speak of the republic.

II. The Imperfect and Pluperfect are put in the SUBJUNCTIVE:

Antequam urbem caperent, before they took the city.

LII. In temporal clauses with *cum* (521)—

I. Any tense except the Imperfect and the Pluperfect is put in the

INDICATIVE:

Cum quiescunt, probant, while they are silent, they approve.

II. The Imperfect and Pluperfect are put—

1. In the INDICATIVE, when the temporal clause ASSERTS AN HISTORICAL

FACT:

Paruit cum necesse erat, he obeyed when it was necessary.

2. In the SUBJUNCTIVE, when the temporal clause simply DEFINES THE

TIME of the principal action:

Cum epistolam complicārem, while I was folding the letter.

LIII. The principal clauses of the DIRECT DISCOURSE on becoming INDIRECT take the INFINITIVE or SUBJUNCTIVE as follows (523):

I. When DECLARATIVE, they take the *Infinitive with a Subject Accusative*:

Dicēbat animōs esse divinōs, he was wont to say that souls are divine.

II. When INTERROGATIVE, they take—

1. Generally the *Subjunctive*:

Ad postulāta Caesaris respondit, quid sibi vellet, cūr veniret, to the demands of Caesar he replied, what did he wish, why did he come?

2. Sometimes the *Infinitive with a Subject Accusative*, as in rhetorical questions:

Docēbant rem esse testimoniō, etc.; quid esse levius, they showed that the fact was a proof, etc.; what was more inconsiderate?

III. When IMPERATIVE, they take the *Subjunctive*:

Scribit Labiēnō cum legiōne veniat, *he writes to Labienus to come* (that he should come) *with a legion.*

LIV. The subordinate clauses of the DIRECT DISCOURSE, on becoming INDIRECT, take the *Subjunctive* (524):

Respondit sē id quod in Nerviiis fēcisset factūrum, *he replied that he would do what he had done in the case of the Nervii.*

LV. The Subjunctive is used (529)—

I. In indirect questions:

Quaeritur, cūr doctissimi hominēs dissentiant, *it is a question, why the most learned men disagree.*

II. Often in clauses dependent upon an Infinitive or upon another Subjunctive:

Nihil indignius est quam eum qui culpā careat supplicio nōn carēre, *nothing is more shameful than that he who is free from fault should not be exempt from punishment.*

INFINITIVE.

LVI. Many verbs admit an Infinitive to complete or qualify their meaning (533):

Haec vitāre cupimus, *we desire to avoid these things.*

LVII. Many transitive verbs admit both an Accusative and an Infinitive (534):

Te sapere docet, *he teaches you to be wise.*

LVIII. The Infinitive sometimes takes an Accusative as its subject (536):

Platōnem Tarentum vēnisse reperiō, *I find that Plato came to Tarentum.*

SUPINE.

LIX. The Supine in *um* is used with verbs of motion to express PURPOSE (546):

Lēgātī vērērunt rēs repetitūm, *deputies came to demand restitution.*

LX. The Supine in *ū* is generally used as an Ablative of Specification (547):

Quid est tam iūcundum auditū, *what is so agreeable to hear* (in hearing)?

ADVERBS.

LXI. Adverbs qualify VERBS, ADJECTIVES, and other ADVERBS (551):

Sapientēs feliciter vivunt, *the wise live happily.*

CHAPTER VIII.

ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS AND CLAUSES.

559. The Latin admits of great variety in the arrangement of the different parts of the sentence, thus affording peculiar facilities both for securing proper emphasis, and for imparting to its periods that harmonious flow which characterizes the Latin classics. But with all this freedom and variety, there are certain general laws of arrangement which it will be useful to notice.

I. ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS.

General Rules.

560. The Subject followed by its modifiers occupies the first place in the sentence, and the Predicate preceded by its modifiers the last place :

Sol oriens diem conficit, the sun rising makes the day. Cic. *Animus aeger semper errat, a diseased mind always errs.* Cic. *Miltiadēs Athēnās liberāvit, Miltiades liberated Athens.* Nep.

561. EMPHASIS and EUPHONY affect the arrangement of words.

I. Any word, except the subject, may be made *emphatic* by being placed at the BEGINNING of the sentence :

Silent lēgēs inter arma, laws ARE SILENT in war. Cic. *Numitōri Remus dēditur, Remus is delivered TO NUMITOR.* Liv.

II. Any word, except the predicate, may be made *emphatic* by being placed at the END of the sentence :

Nōbis nōn satisfacit ipse Demosthenēs, even DEMOSTHENES does not satisfy us. Cic. *Cōsulātum petivit nūnquam, he NEVER sought the consulship.* Cic.

III. Two words naturally connected, as a noun and its adjective, or a noun and its Genitive, are sometimes made *emphatic* by SEPARATION :

Ohjurgātiōnēs nōnnūquam incidunt necessariæ, sometimes necessary RE-PROOFS occur. Cic. *Jūstitiæ fungātur officiis, let him discharge the duties of justice.* Cic.

NOTE.—A word may be made *emphatic* by being placed between the parts of a compound tense :

Magna adhibita cūra est, great care has been taken. Cic.

562. CHIASMUS.¹—When two groups of words are contrasted, the order of the first is often reversed in the second :

¹ So called from the Greek letter X.

Fragile corpus animus sempiternus movet, *the imperishable soul moves the perishable body.* Cic.

563. KINDRED WORDS.—Different forms of the same word, or different words of the same derivation, are generally placed near each other:

Ad senem senex dē senectūte scripsi, *I, an old man, wrote to an old man in the subject of old age.* Cic. Inter sē aliis alii prōsunt, *they benefit each ther.* Cic.

564. A word which has a COMMON RELATION to two other words connected by conjunctions, is placed—

I. Generally before or after both:

Pācis et artēs et glōria, *both the arts and the glory of peace.* Liv. Belli pācisque artēs, *the arts of war and of peace.* Liv.

NOTE.—A Genitive or an adjective following two nouns may qualify both, but it more frequently qualifies only the latter:

Haec percunctātiō ac dēnūtiātiō belli, *this inquiry and this declaration of war.* Liv.

II. Sometimes directly after the first before the conjunction:

Honōris certāmen et glōriae, *a struggle for honor and glory.* Cic. Agri omnēs et maria, *all lands and seas.* Cic.

Special Rules.

565. The MODIFIERS OF A NOUN generally follow it. They may be either adjectives or nouns:

Populus Rōmānus dēcrēvit, *the Roman people decreed.* Cic. Hērodotus, pater historiae, *Herodotus, the father of history.* Cic. Liber dē officiis, *the book on duties.* Cic.

1. Modifiers, when *emphatic*, are placed before their nouns:

Tuscus ager Rōmānō adjacet *the TUSCAN territory borders on the Roman.* Liv.

2. When a noun is modified both by an Adjective and by a Genitive, the usual order is, *Adjective—Genitive—noun*:

Māgna civium pēnūria, *a great scarcity of citizens.* Cic.

3. An adjective is often separated from its noun by a monosyllabic preposition:

Māgnō cum periculō esse, *to be attended with great peril.* Cic.

4. In the poets an adjective is often separated from its noun by the modifier of another noun:

Inspērāta tuae veniet plūma superbiae, *the unexpected down shall come upon your pride.* Hor.

566. The MODIFIERS OF AN ADJECTIVE generally precede it, out, if not adverbs, they may follow it:

Facile doctissimus, *unquestionably the most learned.* Cic. Omnī aetāti commūnis, *common to every age.* Cic. Avidus laudis, *desirous of praise.* Cic.

567. The MODIFIERS OF A VERB generally precede it:

Glória virtutem sequitur, *glory follows virtue*. Cic. Mundus deo paret, *the world is subject to God*. Cic. Vehementer dixit, *he spoke vehemently*. Cic.

1. When the verb is placed at the beginning of the sentence, the modifiers, of course, follow; see the first example under 561, I.

2. An *emphatic* modifier may of course stand at the beginning or at the end of the sentence (561):

Facillimè cognoscuntur adulescentès, *most easily are the young men recognized*. Cic.

3. Of *two or more modifiers* belonging to the same verb, that which in thought is most intimately connected with the verb stands next to it, while the others are arranged as emphasis and euphony may require:

Mors propter brevitatè vitæ nūquam longè abest, *death is never far distant, in consequence of the shortness of life*. Cic.

568. The MODIFIERS OF AN ADVERB generally precede it, but a Dative often follows it:

Valdè vehementer dixit, *he spoke very vehemently*. Cic. Congruenter naturæ vivit, *he lives agreeably to nature*. Cic.

569. SPECIAL WORDS.—Some words have a favorite place in the sentence, which they seldom leave. Thus—

I. The *Demonstrative* generally precedes its noun:

Custòs hujus urbis, *the guardian of this city*. Cic.

1. *Ille* in the sense of well-known (450, 4) generally follows its noun, if not accompanied by an adjective:

Médæ illa, *that well-known Medea*. Cic.

2. Pronouns are often brought together, especially *quisque* with *suus* or *sui*:

Iustitia suum cuique tribuit, *justice gives to every man his due (his own)*. Cic. Qui sēsē student præstāre, etc., *who are eager to excel*, etc. Sall

II. *Prepositions* generally stand directly before their cases, but *tenus* and *versus* follow their cases:

In Asiam profugit, *he fled into Asia*. Cic. Collò tenus, *up to the neck*. Ov.

1. The preposition frequently follows the relative, sometimes other pronouns, and sometimes even nouns, especially in poetry:

Rēs quā dē agitur, *the subject of which we are treating*. Cic. Italiam contrā, *over against Italy*. Verg. Corpus in Aeacidae, *into the body of Aeacides*. Verg.

2. For *cum* appended to an Ablative, see 184, 6; 187, 2.

3. Genitives, adverbs, and a few other words sometimes stand between the preposition and its case. In adjurations *per* is usually separated from its case by the Accusative of the object adjured, or by some other word; and sometimes the verb *orō* is omitted:

Post Alexandri magni mortem, *after the death of Alexander the Great*. Cic. Ad bene vivendum, *for living well*. Cic. Per ego hās lacrimās tē orō, *I implore you by these tears*. Verg. Per ego vōs deōs (= per deōs ego vōs orō), *I pray you in the name of the gods*. Curt.

III. *Conjunctions* and *Relatives*, when they introduce clauses, generally stand at the beginning of such clauses; but *autem*, *enim*, *quidem*, *quoque*, *vērō*, and generally *igitur*, follow some other word:

Si peccāvi, Ignosce, *if I have erred, pardon me*. Cic. II qui superiōrēs

sunt, *those who are superior*. Cic. Ipse autem omnia vidēbat, *but he himself saw all things*. Cic.

1. A conjunction may follow a relative or an emphatic word, and a relative may follow an emphatic word :

Id ut audivit, *as he heard this*. Nep. Quae cum ita sint, *since these things are so*. Cic. Trōjae quī primus ab ōris vēnit, *who came first from the shores of Troy*. Verg.

NOTE.—Certain conjunctions, as *et*, *nec*, *sed*, and even *aut* and *vel*, are more frequently removed from the beginning of the clause in poetry than in prose :

Compressus et omnis impetus, *and all violence was checked*. Verg.

2. *Nē*—*quidem* takes the emphatic word or words between the two parts :

Nē in oppidīs quidem, *not even in the towns*. Cic.

3. *Quidem* often follows pronouns, superlatives, and ordinals :

Ex mē quidem nihil audiet, *from me indeed he will hear nothing*. Cic.

4. *Que*, *ve*, *ne*, introducing a clause or phrase, are generally appended to the first word ; but if that word is a preposition, they are often appended to the next word :

In forōque, *and in the forum*. Cic. Inter nōsque, *and among us*. Cic.

IV. *Nōn*, when it qualifies some single word, stands directly before that word ; but when it is particularly emphatic, or qualifies the entire clause, it sometimes stands at the beginning of the clause, and sometimes before the finite verb or before the auxiliary of a compound tense :

Hāc villā carere nōn possunt, *they are not able to do without this villa*. Cic. Nōn fuit Juppiter metuendus, *Jupiter was not to be feared*. Cic. Fās nōn putant, *they do not think it right*. Cic. Pecūnia solūta nōn est, *the money has not been paid*. Cic.

1. In general, in negative clauses the negative word, whether particle, verb, or noun, is made prominent :

Negat quemquam posse, *he denies that any one is able*. Cic. Nihil est melius, *nothing is better*. Cic.

V. *Inquam*, sometimes *aiō*, introducing a quotation, follows one or more of the words quoted. The subject, if expressed, generally follows its verb :

Nihil, inquit Brūtus, quod dicam, *nothing which I shall state, said Brutus*. Cic.

VI. The Vocative rarely stands at the beginning of a sentence. It usually follows an emphatic word :

Pēge, Laeli, *proceed, Laelius*. Cic.

II. ARRANGEMENT OF CLAUSES.

570. Clauses connected by coördinate conjunctions (554) follow each other in the natural order of the thought, as in English :

Sol ruit et montēs umbrantur, *the sun hastens to its setting, and the mountains are shaded*. Verg. Gygēs ā nullō vidēbatur, ipse autem omnia vidēbat, *Gyges was seen by no one, but he himself saw all things*. Cic.

571. A clause used as the SUBJECT of a complex sentence (348) generally stands at the beginning of the sentence, and a clause used as the PREDICATE at the end :

Quid diēs ferat incertum est, *what a day may bring forth is uncertain*. Cic. Exitus fuit orationis, sibi nullam cum his amicitiam esse, *the close of the oration was, that he had no friendship with these men*. Caes.

1. This arrangement is the same as that of the simple sentence; see 560.
2. Emphasis and euphony often have the same effect upon the arrangement of clauses as upon the arrangement of words; see 561.

572. Clauses used as the SUBORDINATE ELEMENTS of complex sentences admit three different arrangements:

I. They are generally inserted within the principal clause, like the subordinate elements of a simple sentence:

Hostēs, ubi primum nostrōs equitēs conspēxērunt, celeriter nostrōs perturbāvērunt, *the enemy, as soon as they saw our cavalry, quickly put our men to rout*. Caes. Sententia, quae tūtissima vidēbatur, vicit, *the opinion which seemed the safest prevailed*. Liv.

II. They are often placed before the principal clause:

Cum quiescunt, probant, *while they are quiet, they approve*. Cic. Quālis sit animus, animus nescit, *the soul knows not what the soul is*. Cic.

NOTE.—This arrangement is generally used when the subordinate clause either refers back to the preceding sentence, or is preparatory to the thought of the principal clause. Hence *temporal*, *conditional*, and *concessive* clauses often precede the principal clause. Hence also, in sentences composed of correlative clauses with *is—quī, tālis—quālis, tantus—quantus, tum—cum, ita—ut*, etc., the relative member, i. e., the clause with *quī, quālis, quantus, cum, ut*, etc., generally precedes.

III. They sometimes follow the principal clause:

Enītitur ut vincat, *he strives that he may conquer*. Cic. Sōl efficit ut omnia flōreant, *the sun causes all things to bloom*. Cic.

NOTE.—This arrangement is generally used when the subordinate clause is either intimately connected in thought with the following sentence, or explanatory of the principal clause. Hence, clauses of *Purpose* and *Result* generally follow the principal clause, as in the examples.

573. LATIN PERIODS.—A complex sentence in which two or more subordinate clauses are inserted within the principal clause is called a PERIOD in the strict sense of the term.

NOTE 1.—The examples given under 572, I., are short and simple examples of *Latin Periods*.

NOTE 2.—Many Latin periods consist of several carefully constructed clauses so united as to form one complete harmonious whole. For examples, see Cicero's Third Oration against Catiline, XII., 'Sed quoniam . . . prōvidēre'; also Livy, I., 6, 'Numitor, inter primum . . . ostendit.'

NOTE 3.—In a freer sense the term *Period* is sometimes applied to all complex sentences which end with principal clauses. In this sense the examples given under 572, II., are *Periods*. Many carefully elaborated Latin sentences are constructed in this way; see Cicero's Oration for the Poet Archias, I., 'Quod si haec . . . debemus'; also the First Oration against Catiline, XIII., 'Ut saepe hominēs . . . ingrāvāscet.'

PART FOURTH.

P R O S O D Y .

574. Prosody treats of Quantity and Versification.

CHAPTER I.

QUANTITY.

575. The time occupied in pronouncing a syllable in poetry is called its quantity.¹ Syllables are accordingly characterized as *long, short, or common.*²

I. GENERAL RULES OF QUANTITY.

576. A syllable is LONG IN QUANTITY—

I. If it contains a DIPHTHONG or a LONG VOWEL, or is the result of CONTRACTION :

haec, foedus; dūcō; cōgō (for coigō), occidō (for cœcaedō), nil (for nihil).

1. *Prae* in composition is usually short before a vowel: *praeacūtus*.

II. If its vowel is followed by X or Z, or any Two CONSONANTS except a mute and a liquid :³

mājor, dux, servus, sunt, regunt, rēgnum, āgmen.

1. But one or both of the consonants must belong to the same word as the vowel: *ab*⁴ *sēde*, *per*⁴ *saxa*.

NOTE 1.—*H* has no tendency in combination with any consonant to lengthen a preceding syllable. Hence in such words as *Achaeus, Athēnae*, the first syllable is short.

NOTE 2.—In the early poets a short final syllable ending in *s* remained short before a word beginning with a consonant; sometimes also short final syllables ending in other consonants: *imāginis formam, enīm vērō, erat dictō*.⁵

¹ In many cases the quantity of syllables may be best learned from the Dictionary, but in others the student may be greatly aided by certain general statements or rules.

² That is, sometimes long and sometimes short.

³ Here the syllable is *long by nature* if the vowel is long, but *long only by position* if the vowel is short. For the quantity of vowels before two consonants or a double consonant, see 651.

⁴ Here *ab* becomes long before *s* in *sēde*, and *per* before *s* in *saxa*.

⁵ Here the syllables *is, im, and at* remain short.

NOTE 3.—In the early poets many syllables long by position in the Augustan poets are sometimes short, as the first syllable of *ecce*, *ergo*, *ille*, *inter*, *omnis*, *unde*, *uxor*.

NOTE 4.—A final syllable ending in a vowel is occasionally, though rarely, lengthened by consonants at the beginning of the following word.

NOTE 5.—In Greek words a syllable with a vowel before a mute and a nasal is sometimes short : *cycnus*, *Tecmessa*.

2. A syllable before *j* is long, except in *bijugus*, *is*, *quadrijugus*, *is* : see 16, N. 2.

577. A syllable is SHORT IN QUANTITY if its vowel is followed in the same word by another VOWEL, by a DIPHTHONG, or by the aspirate H :

diēs, *doceō*, *viae*, *nihil*.

I. The following vowels, with the syllables which contain them, are long by EXCEPTION :

1. **A**—(1) in the Genitive ending *āi* of Dec. I. : *aulāi* : (2) in proper names in *āius* : *Gāius* (*Gājus*) ; (3) before *ia*, *ie*, *io*, *iu*, in the verb *āiō*.

2. **E**—(1) in the ending *ēi* of Dec. V. when preceded by a vowel : *diēi* ; and sometimes when preceded by a consonant : *fidēi*, *rēi* ; often in the Dative Singular of the pronoun *is* : *ēi* ; (2) in proper names in *ēius* : *Pompēius* ; (3) in *ēheu*, and in *Rhēa*.¹

3. **I**—(1) in the verb *fīō*, when not followed by *er* : *fīam*, *fīebam*, but *fieri* ;² (2) in *dīus*, *a*, *um* (for *divus*, *a*, *um*) ; (3) generally in the Genitive ending *īus* : *alius*, *illius* ; (4) sometimes in *Dīāna*.

4. **O**—sometimes in *ōhē*.

5. In Greek words vowels are often long before a vowel, because long in the original : *āēr*, *Aenēās*, *Brisēis*, *Menelāus*, *Trōēs*.

NOTE.—This often occurs in proper names in *ēa*, *īa*, *ēus*, *īus*, *āōn*, *īōn*, *āis*, *ōis*, *īius* : *Mēdēa*, *Alexandria*, *Pēnēus*, *Dūrius*, *Orīōn*.

578. A syllable is COMMON IN QUANTITY if its vowel, naturally short, is followed by a mute and a liquid :

ager, *agri* ; *pater*, *patris* ; *duplex*, *triplex*.

NOTE 1.—A syllable ending in a mute in the first part of a compound before a liquid at the beginning of the second part is long : *ab-rumpō*, *ob-rogō*.

NOTE 2.—In Plautus and Terence a syllable with a short vowel before a mute and a liquid is short.

II. QUANTITY OF FINAL SYLLABLES.

579. Monosyllables are long :

ā, *dā*, *tē*, *sē*, *dō*, *sī*, *quī*, *dō*, *prō*, *tū*, *dōs*, *pēs*, *sis*, *bōs*, *sūs*, *pār*, *sōl*.

¹ The name of the daughter of Numitor, and of a priestess in Vergil. In *Rhēa*, another name for *Cybelē*, the *e* is short.

² Sometimes *fieri* in Plautus and Terence.

I. The following are short by **EXCEPTION** :

1. Enclitics : *que, ve, ne, ce, te, pse, pte.*
2. Monosyllables in **b, d, l, m, t** : *ab, ad, fel, sum, et* ; except *sāl, sōl.*
3. *An, bis, cis, cor, es, fac, fer, in, is, nec, os* (ossis), *per, ter, qua* (indefinite), *quis, vir, vas* (vadis), and sometimes *hēc* and *hōc* in the Nominative and Accusative.

580. In words of more than one syllable—

I. The final vowels **i, o, and u** are long ; **a, e, and y**, short :¹

marī, audī, servō, omnīnō, fructū, cornū ; *via, maria, mare, misy.*

II. Final syllables in **c** are long ; in **d, l, m, n, r, t**, short :
ālēc, illūc ; *illud, cōnsul, amem, earmen, amor, caput.*

NOTE 1.—*Dōnec* and *liēn* are exceptions.

NOTE 2.—Final syllables in *n* and *r* are long in many Greek words which end long in the original : as *Tītān, Anchīsēn, Hymēn, Delphīn, āēr, aethēr, crātēr.*

III. The final syllables **as, es, and os** are long ; **is, us, ys**, short :

amās, mēnsās, monēs, nūbēs, servōs ; *avis, urbis, bonus, chlamys.*

NOTE 1.—The learner will remember that short final syllables like *is, us*, etc., may be lengthened by being placed before a word beginning with a consonant ; see 576, II.

NOTE 2.—Plautus retains the original quantity of many final syllables usually short in the Augustan age. Thus the endings *ā, ē, āl, ār, ōr, īs, ūs, āt, ēt, īt*, often stand in place of the later endings *a, e, al, ar, or, is, us, at, et, it* (21). Some of these early forms are retained by Terence, and some of them occasionally occur in the Augustan poets.

NOTE 3.—Plautus and Terence, in consequence of the colloquial character of comedy, often shorten *unaccented final syllables* after an accented short syllable : *ama, abi, dedi, domi, domo, viro, pedes.*

NOTE 4.—In Plautus and Terence the doubling of a letter does not usually affect the quantity of the syllable : *ll* in *ille*, *mm* in *immō*, *pp* in *opportūnē*.

581. Numerous exceptions to the general rule for the quantity of final syllables occur even in classical Latin :

I. **I final**, usually **LONG**, is sometimes **SHORT** or **COMMON**—

1. **SHORT** in *nisi, quasi, cui* (when a dissyllable), and in the Greek ending *si* of the Dative and Ablative Plural.

2. **COMMON** in *mihi, tibi, sibi, ibi, ubi*, and in the Dative and Vocative Singular of some Greek words.

II. **O final**, usually **LONG**, is **SHORT**—

1. In *duo, ego, octo, ego*, in the adverbs *cito, ilico, modo*, and its compounds, *dummodo, quōmodo*, etc., in *cedo*, and in the old form *endo*.

¹ *U* is short in *indu* and *nēnu*. Contracted syllables are long, according to 576, I.

2. Sometimes (1) in nouns of Dec. III. and (2) in verbs, though very rarely in the best poets.

III. **A** final, usually SHORT, is LONG—

1. In the Ablative: *mēnsā, bonā, illā.*
2. In the Vocative of Greek nouns in **ās**: *Aenēā, Pallā.*¹
3. In Verbs and Particles: *amā, cūrā; circā, juxtā, antea, frustra.* Except *ita, quia, ēja, hēja, and puta* used adverbially.

IV. **E** final, usually SHORT, is LONG—

1. In Dec. I. and V.,² and in Greek plurals of Dec. III.: *epitomē; rē, diē; tempē, melē.*
2. Generally in the Dative ending **ē** of Dec. III.: *aerē = aerī.*
3. In the Singular Imperative Active of Conj. II.: *monē, docē.* But *e* is sometimes short in *cavē, vidē, etc.*³
4. In *ferē, fermē, ōhē*, and in adverbs from adjectives of Dec. II.: *doctē, rēctē.* Except *bene, male, inferne, interne, superne.*

V. **As** final, usually LONG, is SHORT—

1. In *anas* and in a few Greek nouns in **as**: *Arcas, lampas.*
2. In Greek Accusatives of Dec. III.: *Arcadas, hērōas.*

VI. **Es** final, usually LONG, is SHORT—

1. In Nominatives Singular of Dec. III. with short increment (582) in the Genitive: *mīles* (itis), *obses* (idis), *interpres* (etis). Except *abiēs, ariēs, paries, Cerēs*, and compounds of *pēs*, as *bipēs, tripēs, etc.*
2. In *penes* and the compounds of *es*, as *ades, potes.*
3. In Greek words—(1) in the plural of those which increase in the Genitive: *Arcades, Trōades*; (2) in a few neuters in **es**: *Hippomenes*; (3) in a few Vocatives Singular: *Demosthenes.*

VII. **Os** final, usually LONG, is SHORT—

1. In *compos, impos, exos.*
2. In Greek words with the ending short in the Greek: *Delos, melos.*

VIII. **Is** final, usually SHORT, is LONG—

1. In plural cases: *mēnsis, servīs, vōbīs.* Hence *forīs, grātīs, ingrātīs.*
2. In Nominatives of Dec. III. increasing long in the Genitive: *Quiris* (itis), *Salamīs* (inis).
3. In the Singular Present Indic. Act. of Conj. IV.: *audīs.*

NOTE.—*Māvīs, quīvīs, utovīs*, follow the quantity of *vīs*.

4. In the Singular Present Subj. Act.: *possis, velis, nōlis, mālīs.*

¹ Sometimes in the Vocative of Greek nouns in **as** and **ēs**.

² Hence, in the compounds, *hodiē, pridī, postridī, quārē.*

³ In the comic poets many dissyllabic Imperatives with a short penult shorten the ultimate: *as habē, jube, nane, move, tace, tene, etc.*

5. Sometimes in the Singular of the Future Perfect and of the Perfect Subjunctive: *amāveris, docueris*.

IX. **Us** final, usually SHORT, is LONG—

1. In Nominatives of Dec. III. increasing long in the Genitive: *virtūs (ūtis), tellūs (ūris)*.

NOTE.—But *palus* (u short) occurs in Horace, *Ars Poëtica*, 65.

2. In Dec. IV., in the Genitive Singular, and in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural: *fructūs*.

3. In Greek words ending long in the original: *Panthūs, Sapphūs, tripūs*.

NOTE.—But we have *Oedipus* and *pōlypus*.

III. QUANTITY IN INCREMENTS.

582. A word is said to *increase* in declension, when it has in any case more syllables than in the Nominative Singular, and to have as many *increments of declension* as it has additional syllables: *sermō, sermōnis, sermōnibus*.¹

583. A verb is said to *increase* in conjugation, when it has in any part more syllables than in the second person singular of the Present Indicative Active, and to have as many *increments of conjugation* as it has additional syllables: *amās, amātis, amābātis*.²

584. If there is but one increment, it is uniformly the penult; if there are more than one, they are the penult with the requisite number of syllables before it. The increment nearest the beginning of the word is called the *first* increment, and those following this are called successively the *second, third, and fourth* increments.³

Increments of Declension.

585. In the Increments of Declension, **a** and **o** are long; **e, i, u,** and **y,** short:⁴

actās, actātis, actātibus; sermō, sermōnis; puer, puerī, puerōrum; fulgur, fulguris; chlamys, chlamydis; bonus, bonārū, bonōrum; ille, illārū, illōrum; miser, miserī; supplex, supplicis; satur, saturi.

I. **A**, usually LONG in the increments of declension, is SHORT in the first increment—⁵

¹ *Sermōnis*, having one syllable more than *sermō*, has one increment, while *sermōnibus* has two increments.

² *Amātis* has one increment, *amābātis* two.

³ In *ser-mōn-i-bus*, the first increment is *mōn*, the second *i*; and in *mon-u-e-rā-mus*, the first is *u*, the second *e*, the third *rā*. 1 2 3

⁴ *Y* occurs only in Greek words, and is long in the increments of nouns in *yn* and of a few others.

⁵ Observe that the exceptions belong to the first increment

1. Of masculines in *al* and *ar*: *Hannibal, Hannibalis; Caesar, Caesaris*.
2. Of nouns in *s* preceded by a consonant: *daps, dapis; Arabs, Arabis; hiems, hiemis*.
3. Of Greek nouns in *a* and *as*: *poëma, poëmatis; Pallas, Palladis*.
4. Of (1) *baccar, hëpar, jubar, lâr, nectar, pār*, and its compounds; (2) *anas, mäs, vas (vadis)*; (3) *säl, fax*, and a few rare Greek words in *ax*.

II. **O**, usually LONG in the increments of declension, is SHORT in the first increment—¹

1. Of Neuters in Declension III.: *aequor, aequoris; tempus, temporis*. Except *ös (öris), ador (adöris)*, and comparatives.
2. Of words in *s* preceded by a consonant: *inops, inopis*. Except *Cyclöps* and *hydröps*.
3. Of *arbor, bös, lepus; compos, impos, memor, immemor; Allobrox, Cap-padox, praecox*.
4. Of most Patrials: *Macedö, Macedonis*.
5. Of many Greek nouns—(1) those in *ör*: *rhëtör, Hectör*; (2) many in *ö* and *ön* increasing short in Greek: *aëdön, aëdonis*; (3) in Greek compounds in *püs* or *pus*: *tripüs (odis), Oedipus*.

III. **E**, usually SHORT in the increments of declension, is LONG in the first increment—

1. Of Declension V.: *dië, diërum, diëbus, rëbus*. But in the Genitive and Dative Singular sometimes short after a consonant: *fidëi, spëi*.
2. Of nouns in *ën*, mostly Greek: *liën, liënis; Sirën, Sirënis*. So *Aniö, Aniënis*.
3. Of *Celtiber, Iber, vër, hërës, locuplës, mercës, quïës, inquïës, requïës, plëbs, lëx, rëx, älec, älex, vervëx*.
4. Of a few Greek words in *ës* and *ër*: *lebës, lebëtis; crätër, crätëris*. Except *äër* and *aether*.

IV. **I**, usually SHORT in the increments of declension, is LONG in the first increment—

1. Of most words in *ix*: *rädix, rädicis; felix, felicis*.²
2. Of *dīs, glīs, līs, vīs, Quiris, Samnis*.
3. Of *delphīn*, and a few rare Greek words.

NOTE.—For quantity of *ī* in the ending *īus*, see 577, 8.

V. **U**, usually SHORT in the increments of declension, is LONG in the first increment—

1. Of nouns in *ūs* with the Genitive in *ūris, ūtis, ūdis*: *iūs, jūris; salūs, salūtis; palūs, palūdis*.³
2. Of *fūr, frūx, lūx, plūs, Pollūx*.

¹ See p. 842, foot-note 5.

² But short in *appendix, calix, Cilia, filix, fornix, nix, pix, salix, strix*, and a few others, chiefly proper names.

³ But short in *intercus, Ligus, pecus*.

Increments of Conjugation.

586. In the Increments of Conjugation (583), **a**, **e**, and **o** are long ; **i** and **u** short :

amāmus, amēmus, amātōte ; regimus, sumus.

NOTE 1.—In ascertaining the increments of the irregular verbs, *ferō, volō*, and their compounds, the full form of the second person, *feris, volis*, etc., must be used. Thus in *ferēbam* and *volēbam*, the increments are *rē* and *lē*.

NOTE 2.—In ascertaining the increments of reduplicated forms (255, I.), the reduplication is not counted. Thus *dedimus* has but one increment, *dī*.

I. **A**, usually LONG in the increments of conjugation, is SHORT in the first increment of *dō* : *dare, dabam, circumdabam*.

II. **E**, usually LONG in the increments of conjugation, is SHORT before *r*—

1. In the tenses in *rum, rim, rō* : *amāveram, amāverim, amāverō ; rēxerat, rēxerit*.

2. In the first increment of the Present and Imperfect of Conjugation III. : *regere, regeris, regerem, regerer*.

3. In the Future ending *beris, bere* : *amāberis* or *-ere, monēberis*.

4. Rarely in the Perfect ending *erunt* : *steterunt* for *stetererunt* ; see 236, note ; also *Systole*, 608, VI.

III. **I**, usually SHORT in the increments of conjugation, is LONG, except before a vowel—

1. In the first increment of Conjugation IV., except *imus* of the Perfect : *audire, audivī, auditum ; sentire, sentimus ; sensimus* (Perfect).

2. In Conjugation III., in the first increment of Perfects and Supines in *ivī* and *itum* (278), and of the parts derived from them (except *imus* of the Perfect : *trivimus*) : *cupivī, cupiverat, cupitus ; petivī, petitus ; capessivī, capessitūrus*. *Gāvisus* from *gaudē* follows the same analogy.

3. In the endings *imus* and *itis* of the Present Subjunctive : *simus, sitis ; velimus, velit* (240, 3).

4. In *nolite, nolitō, nolitōte*, and in the different persons of *iham, ibō*, from *eō* (295).

5. Sometimes in the endings *rimus* and *ritis* of the Future Perfect and Perfect Subjunctive : *amāverimus, amāveritis*.

IV. **U**, usually SHORT in the increments of conjugation, is LONG in the Supine and the parts formed from it : *volūtum, volūtūrus, amātūrus*.

IV. QUANTITY OF DERIVATIVE ENDINGS.

587. The most important derivative endings may be classified according to quantity as follows :

I. Derivative endings with a LONG PENULT :

1. *ābrum, ācrum, ātrum* :

flābrum, simulācrum, arātrum.

2. **ĕdĕ, ĭdĕ, ūdĕ; āgĕ, ĭgĕ, ūgĕ:**

dulcĕdĕ, cupĭdĕ, sĕlĭtūdĕ; vorāgĕ, orĭgĕ, aerŭgĕ.

3. **āis, ēis, ōis, ōtis, ĭnĕ, ōnĕ**—*in patronymics*:¹

Ptolemāis, Chrŷsĕis, Mĭnōis, Īcariōtis, Nĕrĭnĕ, Acrisiōnĕ.

4. **ĕla, ĭle; ālis, ēlis, ūlis:**

querĕla, ovĭle; mortālis, fidĕlis, curŭlis.

5. **ānus, ēnus, ōnus, ūnus; āna, ēna, ōna, ūna:**

urbānus, egĕnus, patrōnus, tribŭnus; membrāna, habĕna, annōna, lacŭna.

6. **āris, ārus; ōrus, ōsus; āvus, ĭvus:**

salŭtāris, avārus; canōrus, animōsus; octāvus, aestĭvus.

7. **ātus, ētus, ĭtus, ōtus, ūtus; ātim, ĭtim, ūtim; ētum, ēta:**²

ālātus, facĕtus, turritus, aegrōtus, cornŭtus; singulātĭm, virĭtim, tribŭtim; quercĕtum, monĕta.

8. **ĕnĭ, ĭnĭ, ōnĭ**—*in distributives*:

septĕnĭ, quĭnĭ, octōnĭ.

II. Derivative endings with a SHORT PENULT—

1. **adĕs, iadĕs, idĕs**—*in patronymics*:³

Aenĕadĕs, Lāertiadĕs, Tantalidĕs.

2. **iacus, icus, idus**:⁴

Corinthiacus, modicus, cupidus.

3. **olus, ola, olum; ulus, ula, ulum; culus, cula, culum**—*in diminutives*:

filiolus, filiola, atriolum; hortulus, virgula, oppidulum; flōsculus, particula, mŭnusculum.

4. **etās, itās**—*in nouns*; **iter, ĭtus**—*in adverbs*:

pietās, vĕritās; fortiter, dĭvĭnitus.

5. **ātilis, ĭlis, bilis**—*in verbals*; **ĭnus**—*in adjectives denoting material or time*:⁵

versātilis, docilis, amābilis; adamantinus, cedrinus, crāstinus, diŭtinus.

NOTE 1.—**ĭlis** in adjectives from nouns usually has the penult long: *cĭvĭlis, hostĭlis, puerĭlis, virĭlis*.

NOTE 2.—**ĭnus** denoting characteristic (330) usually has the penult long: *canĭnus, equĭnus, marinŭs*.

¹ Except *Danaĭs, Phōcāis, Thēbāis, Nĕrĕĭs*.

² Except (1) *anhĕlitus, fortuĭtus, grātuitus, hālitus, hospitus, spĭritus*; (2) *adfatim, statim*, and adverbs in *itus*, as *divĭnitus*; and (3) participles provided for by 586.

³ Except (1) those in *idĕs* from nouns in *eus* and *ēs*: as, *Pēlidēs* (Pēleus), *Neōclidēs* (Neoclēs); and (2) *Amphiarādēs, Amŷclidēs, Bēlidēs, Corōnĭdēs, Lycŭrgidēs*.

⁴ Except *amicus, anticus, aprius, mendicus, posticus, pudicus*.

⁵ Except *mātūtĭnus, repentĭnus, vesperĭnus*.

III. Derivative endings with a LONG ANTEPENULT :

1. *āceus, ūceus, āneus, ārius, ārium, ōrius* :

rosāceus, pannūceus, subitāneus, cibārius, columbārium, cēnsōrius.

2. *ābundus, ācundus; ābilis, ātilis, āticus* :

mīrābundus, īrācundus; amābilis, versātilis, aquāticus.

3. *āgintā, īgintī, ēsimus*—*in numerals* :

nōnāgintā, vīgintī, centēsimus.

4. *imōnia, imōnium; tōrius, sōrius; tōria, tōrium* :

querimōnia, alimōnium; amātōrius, cēnsōrius; victōria, audītōrium.

IV. Derivative endings with a SHORT ANTEPENULT :

1. *ibilis, itūdō, olentus, ulentus* :

crēdibilis, sōlitūdō, vīolentus, opulentus.

2. *uriō*—*in desideratives* :

ēsuriō, ēempturiō, parturiō.

V. QUANTITY OF STEM-SYLLABLES.

588. All simple verbs in *iō* of the Third Conjugation (217) have the stem-syllable¹ short :

capiō, cupiō, faciō, fodiō, fugiō.

589. Most verbs which form the Perfect in *uī* have the stem-syllable short :

domō, secō habeo, moneō, alō, colō.

NOTE.—*Pōnī, dēbeō, flōreō, pāreō*, and several inceptive verbs, are exceptions.

590. Dissyllabic Perfects and Supines have the first syllable long, unless short by position :

juvō, jāvi, jūtum; foveō, fōvi, fōtum.

1. Eight Perfects and ten Supines have the first syllable short :

bibī, dedī, fidī, liquī,² scidī, stetī, stitī, tulī; citum, datum, itum, litum, quitum, ratum, rutum, satum, situm, statum.³

591. Trisyllabic Reduplicated Perfects have the first two syllables short :

cadō, cecidī; canō, cecinī; discō, didici.

NOTE 1.—*Caedō* has *cecidi* in distinction from *cecidi* from *cadō*.

NOTE 2.—The second syllable may be made long by position : *cucurrī, momordi.*

592. In general, inflected forms retain the quantity of stem-syllables unchanged : ³

¹ That is, the syllable preceding the characteristic.

² *Liquī* from *liqueō*; *linquō* has *liquī*. *Statum* from *sistō*; *stō* has *stātum*.

³ But see *Dissyllabic Perfects and Supines*, 590.

avis, avem; nūbēs, nūbium; levis, levior, levissimus; moneō, monēbam monui.

NOTE 1.—Position may, however, affect the quantity: *ager, agrī; possum, potui; solvō, solūtum; volvō, volūtum*.¹

NOTE 2.—*Gignō* gives *genui, genitum*, and *pōnō, posui, positum*.

593. Derivatives generally retain the quantity of the stem-syllables of their primitives:

bonus, bonitās; timeō, timor; animus, animōsus; cīvis, cīvicus; cūra, curō.

1. Words formed from the same root sometimes show a variation in the quantity of stem-syllables:

dicō,	dicō,	personō,	persōna,
dux, ducis,	dūcō,	regō,	rēx, rēgis, rēgula,
fidēs,	fidō,	secus,	sctius,
homō,	hūmānus,	sedeō,	sēdēs, sēdulus,
lateō,	lāterna,	serō,	sēmen,
legō,	lēx, lēgis,	sopor,	sōpiō,
macer,	mācerō,	suspicor,	suspiciō,
moveō,	mōbilis,	tegō,	tēgula,
nota,	nōtum,	vadum,	vādō,
odium,	odī,	vocō,	vōx, vōcis.

NOTE 1.—This change of quantity in some instances is the result of contraction, as *movibilis, moibilis, mōbilis*, and in others it serves to distinguish words of the same orthography, as the verbs *legis, legēs, regis, regēs, sedēs*, from the nouns *lēgis, lēgēs, rēgis, rēgēs, sēdēs*, or the verbs *dūcis, dūcēs, fidēs*, from the nouns *ducis, ducēs, fidēs*.

NOTE 2.—A few derivatives shorten the long vowel of the primitive: *ācer, acerbus; ūceō, lucerna; mōlēs, molestus*.

594. Compounds generally retain the quantity of their elements: ante-ferō, dē-ferō, dē-dūcō, in-aequālis, prō-dūcō.

1. The change of a vowel or diphthong does not affect the quantity: dē-ligō (*legō*), oc-cidō (*cadō*), oc-cidō (*caedō*).

2. The Inseparable Prepositions *dī, sē, and vē* are long, *re* short; *ne* sometimes long and sometimes short:

dīdūcō, sēdūcō, vēcors, redūcō; nēdum, nefās:

NOTE 1.—*Dī* is short in *dirimō* and *disertus*.

NOTE 2.—*Nē* is long in *nēdum, nēmō, nēquam, nēquāquam, nēquiquam, nēquitia*, and *nēve*. In other words it is short.

NOTE 3.—*Re* is sometimes lengthened in a few words: *rēligiō, rēliquiae, rēperit ēpulit, rētulit*, etc.

3. In a few words the quantity of the second element is changed. Thus *Jūrō* gives *-jerō*; *nōtus, -nitus*; *nūbō, -nuba*: *dē-jerō, cōg-nitus, prō-nuba*.

4. *Prae* in composition is usually short before a vowel: *praeacūtus, prae-ūstus*.

5. *Prō* is short in the following words:

¹ Here the first syllable is short in *ager*, but common in *agri* (578); long in *posum, solvō, volvō* (576, II.), but short in *potui, solūtum, and volūtum*.

procella, procul, profānus, profārī, profectō, profestus, proficīscor, profiteor, profugiō, profugus, profundus, pronepōs, proneptis, protervus, and in most Greek words, as *prophēta*; generally also in *prēfundō, prōpāgō, prōpāgō, prōpīnō*, rarely in *prēcūrō, prōpellō*.

6. At the end of a verbal stem compounded with *faciō* or *fīō*, *e* is generally short :

calefaciō, calefīō, lābefaciō, patefaciō.

7. *I* is usually long in the first part of the compounds of *dies* :
merīdiēs, pridīe, postrīdiē, cotīdiē, trīduum.

8. *O* is long in *contrō-*, *intrō-*, *retrō-*, and *quandō-* in composition :
contrōversia, intrōdūcō, retrōvertō, quandōque; but *quandōquidem*.

9. The quantity of the final *i* in *ibī, ubī, utī* is often changed in composition :

ibīdem, ibīque; ubīque, ubīnam, ubīvis, ubīcunque, necubī, sicubī; utīnam, utīque, sicutī.

10. *Hodiē, quasi, quoque, and siquidem* have the first syllable short.

595. The Quantity of Stem-Syllables in cases not provided for by any rules now given will be best learned from the Dictionary. By far the larger number of such syllables will be found to be short. For convenience of reference, a list of the most important primitives with long stem-syllables is added :¹

acer	cēlō	dēleō	fortūna	lēnis
adūlor	cēra	dicō (ere)	frētus	lētum
āer	cicāda	dirus	fūmus	liber (era, erum)
āla	civis	dives	fūnis	libō
ālea	clāmō	divus	fūnus	lilium
altāre	clārus	dōnec	fūrōr (ārī)	īmen
amārus	clāvus	dōnum	glēba	limes
ancile	clēmēns	dūcō	glōria	linum
anhēlus	clivus	dūdum	grāmen	liveō
antiquus	cōdex	dūrus	grātus	lōrum
āra	cōinis	extrēmus	hāmus	lūdō
ārea	cōmō	fāgus	hērēs	lūgeō
āreō	cōnor	fāma	hērōs	lūmen
āter	cōnus	fanum	hōra	lūna
avēna	cōpia	fārī	icō	mālō
bilis	cōram	fēcundus	imāgō	māne
brūma	corōna	fēlix	inānis	mānēs
būbō	crātēr	fēmīna	ira	mānō
cacūnen	crātes	fētus	jānuā	māter
cāligō	crēber	fīdō	jūcundus	mātūrur
camīnus	crēdō	fīgō	jūrō	mēta
cānus	crinis	fīlius	lābor (ī)	mētior
cāper	crūdus	fīlum	lāmentum	mīles
carīna	cūra	fīnis	lāna	mīror
cārus	cūria	flāvus	lātus (a, um)	mītis
cēdō (ere)	dēbeō	flūmen	lēgō (āre)	mōlēs

¹ Including a few derivatives and compounds.

mūgeō	ōtium	pūber	sēdō	tōtus
mūniō	pāgus	pūniō	serēnus	trūdō
mūnus	pālor	pūrus	sērus	ūber
mūrus	pānis	quālis	sīdō	ūdus
mūsa	pāreō	rādix	sincērus	ūmeō
mūtō	penātēs	rādō	sōlor	ūnus
mūtus	peritus	rāmus	sōlus	ūrō
nāris	pīlum	rārus	sōpiō	ūtor
nāvis	pīnus	rēmus	spica	ūva
nīdus	plārus	rīdeō	spina	ūvidus
nītor (ī)	plēnus	rīpa	spirō	vādō
nōdus	plūma	rītus	spūma	vānus
nōnus	poēta	rīvus	squālēō	vātēs
nūbēs	pōmum	rōbur	stipō	vēlōx
nūbō	pōne	rōdō	strāgēs	vēlum
nūdus	pōnō	rūga	strēnuus	vēna
nūtō	pōtō	rūmor	strideō	venēnum
ōlīm	prātum	rūpēs	sūdō	vēnor
ōmen	prāvus	sānus	tābēs	vērus
opācus	prīmus	scālae	tālis	vīlis
opīmus	prīvus	scribō	tēlum	vīnum
ōra	prōmō	scūtum	tēmō	vīvō
ōrō	prōra	sēdēs	tibia	



CHAPTER II.

VERSIFICATION.

SECTION I.

GENERAL VIEW OF THE SUBJECT.

596. Latin Versification is based upon QUANTITY. Syllables are combined into certain metrical groups called Feet, and feet, singly or in pairs, are combined into Verses.¹

1. In quantity or time the unit of measure is the short syllable, indicated either by a curve  or by an eighth note in music, . A long syllable

¹ Modern versification is based upon ACCENT. An English verse is a regular combination of *accented* and *unaccented* syllables, but a Latin verse is a similar combination of *long* and *short* syllables. The rhythmic accent or ictus (599) in Latin depends entirely upon quantity. Compare the following lines:

Tell' me	not', in	mourn'-ful	num'-bers,
Life' is	but' an	emp'-ty	dream'.
Trā'-di-	tur' di-	ēs' di-	ē'.
At' fi-	dēs' et	in'-ge-	nī'.

Observe that in the English lines the accent or ictus falls upon the same syllables as in prose, while in the Latin it falls uniformly upon long syllables. On *Latin Versification*, see Ramsay's 'Latin Prosody'; Schmidt's 'Rhythmik und Metrik,' translated by Professor White; Christ's 'Metrik.'

has in general twice the value of a short syllable,¹ and is indicated either by the sign —, or by a quarter note in music, ♩. This unit of measure is also called a *time* or *mora*.

NOTE 1.—A long syllable is sometimes prolonged so as to have the value (1) of three short syllables, indicated by the sign ≡, or ≡. ; or (2) of four short syllables, indicated by ≡, or ≡.

NOTE 2.—A long syllable is sometimes shortened so as to have the value of a short syllable, indicated by the sign >, or ♩. A syllable thus used is said to have *irrational time*.

597. The feet of most frequent occurrence in the best Latin poets are—

I. FEET OF FOUR TIMES OF FOUR MORAE.

Dactyl,	one long and two short,	— — —	♩ ♩ ♩	carmina.
Spondee,	two long syllables,	— —	♩ ♩	lēgēs.

II. FEET OF THREE TIMES OR THREE MORAE.

Trochee, ²	one long and one short,	— —	♩ ♩	lēgis.
Iambus,	one short and one long,	— —	♩ ♩	parēs.
Tribrach,	three short syllables,	— — —	♩ ♩ ♩	dominus.

NOTE 1.—To these may be added the following :

Pyrrhic,	— —	pater.	Ditrochee,	— — — —	cīvitātis.
Anapaest,	— — —	bonitās.	Dispondee,	— — — —	praeceptōrēs.
Bacchius,	— — —	dolōrēs.	Greater Ionic,	— — — —	sententia.
Cretic,	— — —	militēs.	Lesser Ionic,	— — — —	adolēscēns.
Dilambus,	— — — —	amoenitās.	Choriambus,	— — — —	impatiens. ³

NOTE 2.—A *Dipody* is a group of two feet ; a *Tripody*, of three feet ; a *Tetrapody* of four, etc. A *Trihemimeris* is a group of three half feet, i. e., a foot and a half ; a *Penhemimeris*, of two and a half ; a *Hepthemimeris*, of three and a half, etc.

598. METRICAL EQUIVALENTS.—A long syllable may be resolved into two short syllables, as equivalent to it in quantity, or two short syllables may be contracted into a long syllable. The forms thus produced are metrical equivalents of the original feet.

NOTE.—Thus the Dactyl becomes a Spondee by contracting the two short syllables into one long syllable ; the Spondee becomes a Dactyl by resolving the second syllable, or an Anapaest by resolving the first. Accordingly, the Dactyl, the Spondee, and the Anapaest are metrical equivalents. In like manner the Iambus, the Trochee, and the Tribrach are metrical equivalents.

¹ See foot-note 1, p. 349.

² Sometimes called *Choree*.

³ The feet here mentioned as having four syllables are only compounds of disyllabic feet. Thus the *Dilambus* is a double Iambus ; the *Ditrochee*, a double Trochee ; the *Dispondee*, a double Spondee ; the *Greater Ionic*, a Spondee and a Pyrrhic ; the *Lesser Ionic*, a Pyrrhic and a Spondee ; the *Choriambus*, a Trochee (Choree) and an Iambus.

1. In certain kinds of verse admitting *irrational* time (596, 1, note 2), Spondees, Dactyls, and Anapaests are shortened to the time of a Trochee or of an Iambus, and thus become metrical equivalents of each of these feet.

1) A Spondee used for a Trochee is called an *IRRATIONAL TROCHEE*, and is marked — >.

2) A Spondee used for an Iambus is called an *IRRATIONAL IAMBUS*, and is marked > —.

3) A Dactyl used for a Trochee is called a *CYCLIC DACTYL*, and is marked — ∪.

4) An Anapaest used for an Iambus is called a *CYCLIC ANAPAEST*, and is marked ∪ ∪.

599. *ICTUS OR RHYTHMIC ACCENT*.—As in the pronunciation of a word one or more syllables receive a special stress of voice called *accent*, so in the pronunciation of a metrical foot one or more syllables receive a special stress of voice called *Rhythmic Accent* or *Ictus*.

1. Feet consisting of both long and short syllables have the ictus uniformly on the long syllables, unless used as equivalents for other feet

NOTE.—Thus the Dactyl and the Trochee have the ictus on the first syllable; the Anapaest and the Iambus on the last.

2. *EQUIVALENTS* take the ictus of the feet for which they are used.

NOTE 1.—Thus the Spondee, when used for the Dactyl, takes the ictus of the Dactyl—i. e., on the first syllable; but when used for the Anapaest, it takes the ictus of the Anapaest—i. e., on the last syllable.

NOTE 2.—Feet consisting entirely of long or entirely of short syllables are generally used as equivalents, and are accented accordingly.

NOTE 3.—When two short syllables of an equivalent take the place of an accented long syllable of the original foot, the ictus properly belongs to both of these syllables, but is marked upon the first. Thus a Tribrach used for an Iambus is marked ∪ ∪ ∪.

600. *ARSIS AND THESIS*.—The accented part of each foot is called the *Arsis* (*raising*), and the unaccented part, the *Thesis* (*lowering*).¹

601. *VERSES*.—A verse is a line of poetry (596). It has one characteristic or fundamental foot, which determines the ictus for the whole verse.

NOTE 1.—Thus every dactylic verse has the ictus on the first syllable of each foot because the Dactyl has the ictus on that syllable.

¹ Greek writers on versification originally used the terms *ἀρσις* and *θέσις* of *raising* and *putting down* the foot in marching or in beating time. Thus the Thesis was the accented part of the foot, and the Arsis the unaccented part. The Romans, however, applied the terms to *raising* and *lowering* the voice in reading. Thus Arsis came to mean the accented part of the foot, and Thesis the unaccented part. The terms have now been so long and so generally used in this sense that it is not deemed advisable to attempt to restore them to their original signification.

NOTE 2.—Two verses sometimes unite and form a compound verse; see 628, X.

NOTE 3.—Metre means *measure*, and is variously used, sometimes designating the *measure* or *quantity* of syllables, and sometimes the *foot* or *measure*¹ of a verse.

602. CAESURA OR CAESURAL PAUSE.—Most Latin verses are divided metrically into two nearly equal parts, each of which forms a rhythmic series. The pause, however slight, which naturally separates these parts is called—

1. A *Caesura*,² or a *Caesural Pause*, when it occurs within a foot; see 611.

2. A *Diaeresis*, when it occurs at the end of a foot; see 611, 2 and 3.

NOTE.—Some verses consist of three parts thus separated by caesura or diaeresis, while some consist of a single rhythmic series.³

603. The full metrical name of a verse consists of three parts. The first designates the characteristic foot, the second gives the number of feet or measures, and the third shows whether the verse is complete or incomplete. Thus—

1. A *Dactylic Hexameter Acatalectic* is a dactylic verse of six feet (*Hexameter*), all of which are complete (*Acatalectic*).

2. A *Trochaic Dimeter Catalectic* is a trochaic verse of two measures (*Dimeter*), the last of which is incomplete (*Catalectic*).

NOTE 1.—A verse with a Dactyl as its characteristic foot is called *Dactylic*; with a Trochee, *Trochaic*; with an Iambus, *Iambic*, etc.

NOTE 2.—A verse consisting of one measure is called *Monometer*; of two, *Dimeter*; of three, *Trimeter*; of four, *Tetrameter*; of five, *Pentameter*; of six, *Hexameter*.

NOTE 3.—A verse which closes with a *complete* measure is called *Acatalectic*; ⁴ with an *incomplete* measure, *Catalectic*; ⁴ with an excess of syllables, *Hypermetrical*.⁴

NOTE 4.—The term *Acatalectic* is often omitted, as a verse may be assumed to be complete unless the opposite is stated.

NOTE 5.—A *Catalectic* verse is said to be *catalectic in syllabam*, *in disyllabum*, or *in trisyllabum*, according as the incomplete foot has one, two, or three syllables.

NOTE 6.—Verses are sometimes briefly designated by the number of feet or measures which they contain. Thus *Hexameter* (six measures) sometimes designates the *Dactylic Hexameter Acatalectic*, and *Senarius* (six feet), the *Iambic Trimeter Acatalectic*.

604. Verses are often designated by names derived from celebrated poets.

NOTE 1.—Thus *Alcaic* is derived from *Alcaeus*; *Archilochian*, from *Archilochus*; *Sapphic*, from *Sapphō*; *Glyconic*, from *Glycōn*, etc.

¹ In dactylic verses a *measure* is a single foot, but in trochaic and iambic verses it is a dipody or a pair of feet.

² *Caesūra* (from *caedō*, to cut) means a cutting; it cuts or divides the foot and the verse into parts.

³ A verse consisting of a single series is called *Monocolon*; of two, *Dicolon*; of three, *Tricolon*.

⁴ From the Greek ἀκατάληκτος, καταληκτικός, and ὑπέρμετρος.

NOTE 2.—Verses sometimes receive a name from the kind of subjects to which they were applied : as *Heroic*, applied to heroic subjects ; *Paroemiac*, to proverbs, etc.

605. The FINAL SYLLABLE of a verse may generally be either long or short at the pleasure of the poet.

606. A STANZA is a combination of two or more verses of different metres into one metrical whole ; see 631.

NOTE.—A stanza of two lines or verses is called a *Distich* ; of three, a *Tristich* ; of four, a *Tetrastich*.

607. RHYTHMICAL READING.—In reading Latin verse care must be taken to preserve the words unbroken, to show the quantity of the syllables, and to mark the poetical ictus.

NOTE.—Scanning consists in separating a poem or verse into the feet of which it is composed.¹

608. FIGURES OF PROSODY.—The ancient poets sometimes allowed themselves, in the use of letters and syllables, certain liberties generally termed Figures of Prosody.

I. ELISION.—A final vowel, a final diphthong, or a final *m* with the preceding vowel, is generally elided² before a word beginning with a vowel or with *h* :

Mönstrum horrendum införme ingëns, for Mönstrum horrendum införme ingëns. Verg.

NOTE 1.—For *Exceptions*, see *Hiatus*, II., below.

NOTE 2.—Final *e* in the interrogative *ne* is sometimes dropped before a consonant : *Pyrhîn' connûbia serväs?* for *Pyrhine connûbia serväs?* *Verg.*

NOTE 3.—In the early poets final *s* is often dropped before consonants :

Ex omnibu' rëbus, for ex omnibus rëbus. Lucr.

NOTE 4.—The elision of a final *m* with the preceding vowel is sometimes called *Ecthlipsis*.³

NOTE 5.—The elision of a final vowel or diphthong, or of a final *m* with the preceding vowel, is sometimes called *Synaloepha*,³ or, if at the end of a line, *Synapheia*.³

II. HIATUS.—A final vowel or diphthong is sometimes retained before a word beginning with a vowel. Thus—

1. The interjections *ô*, *heu*, and *prô* are not elided ; see *Verg.*, *Aen.*, X., 18 ; *Geor.*, II., 486.

2. Long vowels and diphthongs are sometimes retained, especially in the arsis of a foot ; see *Verg.*, *Ec.*, III., 6 ; VII., 52.

¹ In school this is sometimes done in a purely mechanical way, sacrificing words to feet ; but even this mechanical process is often useful to the beginner, as it makes him familiar with the poetical ictus.

² That is, *partially suppressed*. In reading, it should be lightly and indistinctly sounded, and blended with the following syllable, as in English poetry :

“The eternal years of God are hers.”

³ From the Greek *ἐκθλιψις*, *συναλοιφή*, and *συνάφεια*.

NOTE 1.—This is most common in proper names.

NOTE 2.—Vergil employs this form of hiatus more freely than the other Latin poets, and yet the entire *Aeneid* furnishes only a short list of examples.

NOTE 3.—In the thesis a final long vowel or diphthong is sometimes shortened before a short vowel instead of being elided; see Verg., *Aen.*, III., 211; VI., 507.

NOTE 4.—Hiatus with a short final vowel is rare, but occurs even in Vergil; see *Aen.*, I., 405; *Ec.*, II., 58.

III. SYNAERESIS.—Two syllables are sometimes contracted into one:

aurēa, *dēinde*, *dēinceps*, *īidem*, *īisdem*, *ēūedem*, *prohibeat* (pronounced *proibeat*).

NOTE 1.—In the different parts of *dēsum*, *ee* is generally pronounced as one syllable: *dēesse*, *dēest*, *dēerat*, *dēerit*, etc.; so *ei* in the verb *anteo*: *antēre*, *antērem*, *antēs*, *antēt*.

NOTE 2.—*I* and *u* before vowels are sometimes used as consonants with the sound of *y* and *w*. Thus *abiete* and *ariete* become *abyete* and *aryete*; *genua* and *tenuēs* become *genoa* and *tenwēs*.

NOTE 3.—In Plautus and Terence, *Synaeresis* is used with great freedom.

NOTE 4.—The contraction of two syllables into one is sometimes called *Synizesis*.

IV. DIAERESIS.—In poetry, two syllables usually contracted into one are sometimes retained distinct:

aurāi *for* *aurae*, *Orphēus* *for* *Orphēūs*, *soluendus* *for* *solvendus*, *silua* *for* *silva*.

NOTE.—*Diaeresis* properly means the *resolution* of one syllable into two, but the Latin poets seldom, if ever, actually make two syllables out of one. The examples generally explained by *diaeresis* are only ancient forms, used for effect or convenience.

V. DIASTOLE.—A syllable usually short is sometimes long, especially in the arsis of a foot:

Priamidēs *for* *Priamidēs*.

NOTE 1.—This poetic license occurs chiefly in proper names and in final syllables.

NOTE 2.—Vergil uses this license quite freely. He lengthens *que* in sixteen instances.

VI. SYSTOLE.—A syllable usually long is sometimes short:

tulerunt *for* *tulērunt*, *steterunt* *for* *stetērunt* (236, note), *vidē'n* *for* *vidēsne*.

NOTE.—This poetic license occurs most frequently in final vowels and diphthongs.

VII. SYNCOPE.—An entire foot is sometimes occupied by a single long syllable; see 614.

SECTION II.

VARIETIES OF VERSE.

I. DACTYLIC HEXAMETER.

609. All Dactylic Verses consist of Dactyls and their metrical equivalents, Spondees. The ictus is on the first syllable of every foot.

610. The Dactylic Hexameter¹ consists of six feet. The first four are either Dactyls or Spondees, the fifth a Dactyl, and the sixth a Spondee (605).² The scale is,³

⏏ | ⏏ | ⏏ | ⏏ | ⏏ | ⏏⁴

Quadrupe- | dante pu- | trem soni- | tū quatit | ungula | campum. *Verg.*

Arma vi- | rumque ca- | nō Trō- | jae quī¹ primus ab | ōris. *Verg.*

Infan- | dum rē- | gīna ju- | bēs reno- | vāre do- | lōrem. *Verg.*

Illī⁵ in- | ter sē- | sē māg- | nā vī | braccia | tollunt. *Verg.*⁶

1. The scale of dactylic hexameters admits sixteen varieties, produced by varying the relative number and arrangement of Dactyls and Spondees. Thus a verse may contain—

- 1) Five Dactyls and one Spondee, as in the first example above.
- 2) Four Dactyls and two Spondees, admitting four different arrangements.
- 3) Three Dactyls and three Spondees, admitting six different arrangements.
- 4) Two Dactyls and four Spondees, admitting four different arrangements.
- 5) One Dactyl and five Spondees, as in the fourth example.

2. EFFECT OF DACTYLS.—Dactyls produce a rapid movement, and are adapted to lively subjects. Spondees produce a slow movement, and are adapted to grave subjects. But generally the best effect is produced in successive lines by variety in the number and arrangement of Dactyls and Spondees.

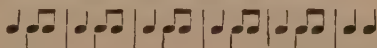
3. SPONDAIC LINE.—The Hexameter sometimes takes a Spondee in the




¹ This is at once the most important and the most ancient of all the Greek and Roman metres. In Greece it attained its perfection in the poems of Homer. It was introduced into Italy in a somewhat imperfect form by the poet Ennius about the middle of the second century before Christ; but it was improved by Lucretius, Catullus, and others, until it attained great excellence in the works of the Augustan poets. The most beautiful and finished Latin Hexameters are found in the works of Ovid and Vergil.

² The Dactylic Hexameter in Latin is here treated as *Acatalectic*, as the Latin poets seem to have regarded the last foot as a genuine Spondee, thus making the measure complete. See Christ, 'Metrik der Griechen und Römer,' pp. 110, 164.

³ In this scale the sign ' marks the ictus (599), and — ⏏ denotes that the original Dactyl, marked — ⏏, may become by contraction a Spondee, marked — —, i. e., that a Spondee may be used for a Dactyl (598).

⁴ Expressed in musical characters, this scale is as follows:



The notation  means that, instead of the original measure , the equivalent  may be used.

⁵ The final *z* of *illz* is elided; see 608, I.

⁶ With these lines of Vergil compare the following Hexameters from the *Evangeline* of Longfellow:

"This is the forest primeval; but where are the hearts that beneath it

Leaped like the roe, when he hears in the woodland the voice of the huntsman?"

fifth place. It is then called Spondaic, and generally has a Dactyl as its fourth foot :

Cāra de- | ūm sobo- | lēs māg- | num Jovis | incrē- | mentum. *Verg.*

NOTE.—In Vergil, spondaic lines are used much more sparingly than in the earlier poets,¹ and generally end in words of three or four syllables, as in *incrēmentum* above.²

611. CAESURA, OR CAESURAL PAUSE.—The favorite caesural pause of the Hexameter is *after the arsis*, or *in the thesis*, of the third foot :³

Armā- | tī ten- | dunt ; || it | clāmor et | āgmine | factō. *Verg.*

Īnfan- | dum, rē- | gīna, || ju- | bēs reno- | vāre do- | lōrem. *Verg.*

NOTE.—In the first line, the caesural pause, marked ||, is after *tendunt*, after the arsis of the third foot ; and in the second line after *regīna*, in the thesis (*na ju*) of the third foot. The former is called the *Masculine* Caesura, the latter the *Feminine* Caesura.⁴

1. The CAESURAL PAUSE is sometimes in the fourth foot, and then an additional pause is often introduced in the second :

Crēdide- | rim ; || vēr | illud e- | rat, || vēr | māgnus a- | gēbat. *Verg.*

2. BUCOLIC DIAERESIS.—A pause called the *Bucolic Diaeresis*,⁵ because originally used in the pastoral poetry of the Greeks, sometimes occurs at the end of the fourth foot :

Ingen- | tem cae- | lō soui- | tum dedit ; || inde se- | cūtus. *Verg.*

NOTE.—The *Bucolic Diaeresis* was avoided by the best Latin poets, even in treating pastoral subjects. Vergil, even in his *Bucolics*, uses it very sparingly.

3. A DIAERESIS at the end of the third foot without any proper *caesural pause* is regarded as a blemish in the verse :

Pulveru- | lentus e- | quīs furit ; || omnēs | arma re- | quīrunt. *Verg.*

¹ A single poem of Catullus, about half as long as a book of the Aeneid, contains more spondaic lines than all the works of Vergil.

² But Vergil has two spondaic lines ending *et māgnīs dīs* ; see Aen., III., 12, and VIII., 679.

³ That is, the first rhythmic series ends at this point. This pause is always at the end of a word, and may be so very slight as in most cases not to interfere with the sense, even if no mark of punctuation is required ; but the best verses are so constructed that the caesural pause coincides with a pause in the sense ; see Christ, 'Metrik,' p. 184. According to some writers, the Dactylic Hexameter had its origin in the union of two earlier dactylic verses, and the caesural pause now marks the point of union ; see Christ, p. 173.

⁴ The Masculine Caesura is also called the *Strong*, or the *Syllabic*, Caesura, the Feminine the *Weak*, or the *Trochaic*, Caesura. Caesuras are often named from the place which they occupy in the line. Thus a caesura after the arsis of the second foot is called *Trihemimeral* ; after the arsis of the third, *Penthemimeral* ; after the arsis of the fourth, *Hepthemimeral*.

⁵ Also called the *Bucolic Caesura*, as the term *caesura* is often made to include *diaeresis*.

4. The ending of a word within a foot always produces a *caesura*. A line may therefore have several *caesuras*, but generally only one of these is marked by any perceptible pause :

Arma vi- | rumque ca- | nō, || Trō- | jae quī | prīmus ab | ōrīs. *Verg.*

NOTE.—Here there is a *caesura* in every foot except the last, but only one of these, that after *canō*, in the third foot, has the *caesural* pause.¹

5. The *caesura*, with or without the pause, is an important feature in every hexameter. A line without it is prosaic in the extreme :

Rōmae | moenia | terruit | impiger | Hannibal | armīs. *Enn.*

NOTE 1.—The *Penthemimeral*² *caesura* has great power to impart melody to the verse, but the best effect is produced when it is aided by other *caesuras*, as above.

NOTE 2.—A happy effect is often produced—

1) By combining the *feminine* *caesura* in the third foot with the *hepthemimeral* and the *trihemimeral* :

Dūnec e- | ris fō- | līx, || mul- | tōs nume- | rābis a- | mīcōs. *Verg.*

2) By combining the *hepthemimeral* with the *trihemimeral* :

Inde to- | rō pater | Aenē- | ās sīc | ōrsus ab | altō. *Verg.*

NOTE 3.—The union of the *feminine* *caesura* with the *trihemimeral*, common in Greek, is somewhat rare in Latin, but it sometimes produces an harmonious verse :

Praeci- | tat, sua- | dentque ca- | dentia | sidera | somnōs. *Verg.*

NOTE 4.—In the last two feet of the verse there should in general be no *caesura* whatever, unless it falls in the thesis of the fifth foot ; but when that foot contains two entire words, a *caesura* is admissible after the *arsis*.

612. The *ictus* often falls upon unaccented syllables. Thus—

1. In the first, second, and fourth feet of the verse it falls sometimes upon *accented* and sometimes upon *unaccented* syllables ; see examples under 610.

2. In the third foot it generally falls upon an *unaccented* syllable ; see examples under 610.

3. In the fifth and sixth feet it generally falls upon *accented* syllables ; see examples under 610.

613. The LAST WORD OF THE HEXAMETER is generally either a dissyllable or a trisyllable ; see examples under 610 and 611.³

¹ The *caesura* with the pause is variously called the *chief caesura*, the *caesura of the verse*, the *caesura of the rhythm*, etc. In distinction from this any other *caesura* may be called a *caesura*, a *caesura of the foot*, or a *minor caesura*.

² See p. 356, foot-note 4.

³ The learner should be informed that the niceties of structure which belong to finished Latin hexameters must be sought only in the poems of Vergil and Ovid. The happiest disposition of *caesuras*, the best adjustment of the poetical *ictus* to the prose accent, and the most approved structure in the closing measures of the verse, can not be expected in the rude numbers of Ennius, in the scientific discussions of Lucretius, or even in the familiar Satires of Horace. Those interested in the peculiarities of Latin hexameters in different writers will find a discussion of the subject in Lucian Müller's work, 'Dē rō metricā poetārum Latīnōrum praeter Plautum et Terentium libri septem.'

NOTE 1.—Spondaic lines are exceptions; see 610, 3, note.

NOTE 2.—Two monosyllables at the end of a line are not particularly objectionable and sometimes even produce a happy effect:

Praecipī- | tant cū- | rae, || tur- | bātaque | fūnere | mēns est. *Verg.*

NOTE 3.—*Est*, even when not preceded by another monosyllable, may stand at the end of a line.

NOTE 4.—A single monosyllable, except *est*, is not often used at the end of the line, except for the purpose of emphasis or humor:

Parturi- | unt mon- | tēs, || nās- | cētur | ridicu- | lus mūs. *Hor.*

NOTE 5.—In Vergil, twenty-one lines, apparently hypermetrical (603, note 3), are supposed to elide a final vowel or a final *em* or *um* before the initial vowel of the next line; see Aen., I, 332; Geor., I, 295. See also 608, I, note 5.

II. OTHER DACTYLIC VERSES.

614. DACTYLIC PENTAMETER.¹—The Dactylic Pentameter consists of two parts separated by a diaeresis. Each part consists of two Dactyls and a long syllable. The Spondee may take the place of the Dactyl in the first part, but not in the second:

⌣ ∞ | ⌣ ∞ | ⌣ ⌘ || ⌣ ∪ ∪ | ⌣ ∪ ∪ | ⌣ ⌘, or

⌣ ∞ | ⌣ ∞ | □ || ⌣ ∪ ∪ | ⌣ ∪ ∪ | ⌣ ⌘²

Admoni- | tū coe- | pī || fortior | esse tu- | ō. *Ovid.*

615. ELEGIAC DISTICH.—The Elegiac Distich consists of the Hexameter followed by the Pentameter:

Sēmise | pulta vi- | rūm || cur- | vis feri- | untur a- | rātrīs

Ossa, ru- | inō- | sās || occulit | herba do- | mūs. *Ovid.*

NOTE 1.—In reading the Elegiac Distich, the Pentameter, including pauses, should of course occupy the same time as the Hexameter.

NOTE 2.—Elegiac composition should be characterized by grace and elegance. Both members of the distich should be constructed in accordance with the most rigid rules of metre. The sense should be complete at the end of the couplet. Ovid furnishes us the best specimens of this style of composition.

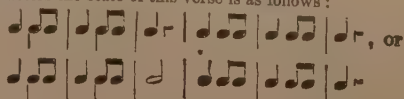
616. The DACTYLIC TETRAMETER is identical with the last four feet of the Hexameter:

Ībimus | ō soci- | ī, comi- | tēsque. *Hor.*

¹ The name *Pentameter* is founded on the ancient division of the line into five feet, consisting of two Dactyls, or Spondees, a Spondee and two Anapaests.

² Thus in reading, a pause may be introduced after the long syllable in the third foot, or that syllable may be prolonged to fill out the measure. A pause or rest equal to a short syllable is marked Λ; a pause equal to a long syllable, Λ'.

In musical characters the scale of this verse is as follows:



NOTE.—In compound verses, as in the *Greater Archilochian*, the tetrameter in composition with other metres has a Dactyl in the fourth place; see 628, X.

617. The DACTYLIC TRIMETER CATALECTIC is identical with the second half of the Dactylic Pentameter :

Arbori- | busque co- | mae. *Hor.*

NOTE.—The Dactylic Trimeter Catalectic is also known as the *Lesser Archilochian*.

III. TROCHAIC VERSE.

618. The TROCHAIC DIPODY, the measure in Trochaic verse,¹ consists of two Trochees, the second of which is sometimes irrational (598, 1, 1)—i. e., it has the *form* of a Spondee with the *time* of a Trochee :

♩ ♪ ♪ or ♩ ♩ ♩ ♩

NOTE 1.—By the ordinary law of equivalents (598), a Tribach ♩ ♩ ♩ may take the place of the Trochee ♩ ♪, and an apparent Anapaest ♪ ♪ > the place of the Irrational Trochee ♩ >.² In proper names a cyclic Dactyl ♩ ♪ ♪ (598, 1, 3) may occur in either foot.

NOTE 2.—In the Trochaic Dipody, the first foot has a heavier ictus than the second.

NOTE 3.—A syllable is sometimes prefixed to a Trochaic verse. A syllable thus used is called *Anacrusis* (upward beat), and is separated from the following measure by the mark ; .

619. The TROCHAIC DIMETER CATALECTIC consists of two Trochaic Dipodies with the last foot incomplete. In Horace it admits no equivalents, and has the following scale :

♩ — ♪ | ♩ — ♪

Aula divi- | tem manet. *Hor.*

NOTE.—A *Trochaic Tripody* occurs in the *Greater Archilochian*; see 628, X.

1. The Alcaic Enneasyllabic verse which forms the third line in the Alcaic stanza is a Trochaic Dimeter with Anacrusis :

♩ ; ♩ — ♪ | ♩ — ♪

Pu- ; er quis ex au- | lā capillis. *Hor.*

620. The TROCHAIC TETRAMETER CATALECTIC consists of four Trochaic Dipodies with the last foot incomplete. There is a *diacresis* (602, 2) at the end of the fourth foot, and the incomplete dipody admits no equivalents :

♩ — ♪ | ♩ — ♪ || ♩ — ♪ | ♩ — ♪ ^.³

Primus ad ei- | bum vocātur, || primō pulmen- | tum datur. *Plaut.*

¹ See 601, note 8, with foot-note.

² Thus in the second foot of a Trochaic Dipody the poet may use a Trochee, a Tribach, a Spondee, or an Anapaest; but the Spondee and the Anapaest are pronounced in the same time as the Trochee or the Tribach—i. e., they have *irrational time*.

³ Only the leading ictus of each dipody is here marked.

NOTE 1.—This is simply the union of two Trochaic Dimeters, the first *acatalectic* and the second *catalectic*, separated by *diaeresis*.¹

NOTE 2.—In Latin this verse is used chiefly in comedy, and accordingly admits great licence in the use of feet. The Irrational Trochee (598, 1, 1) and its equivalents may occur in any foot except in the last dipody.

NOTE 3.—The *Trochaic Tetrameter Acatalectic* also occurs in the earlier poets :

Ipse summis | saxis fixus || asperis ô- | viscerâtus. Enn.

IV. IAMBIC VERSE.

621. The IAMBIC DIPODY, the measure of Iambic verse, consists of two Iambi, the first of which is sometimes irrational (598, 1, 2)) —i. e., it has the *form* of a Spondee with the *time* of an Iambus :

♩ ♪ or ♪ ♪ ♪ ♪

NOTE 1.—The Tribrach for the Iambus, and the Dactyl² or Anapaest² for the Irrational Iambus, are rare, except in comedy.

NOTE 2.—In the Ionic Dipody, the first foot has a heavier ictus than the second.

622. The IAMBIC TRIMETER, also called *Senarius*, consists of three Iambic Dipodies. The Caesura is usually in the third foot, but may be in the fourth :

♩ ♪ — | ♩ ♪ — | ♩ ♪ ♪ ♪³

Quid obserā- | tīs || auribus | fundis precēs? Hor.

Neptūnus al- | tō || tundit hī- | bernus salō. Hor.

Hās inter epu- | lās || ut juvat | pāstās ovēs. Hor.⁴

1. In PROPER NAMES, a Cyclic Anapaest is admissible in any foot except the last, but must be in a single word.

2. In HORACE the only feet freely admitted are the Iambus and the Spondee; their equivalents, the Tribrach, the Dactyl, and the Anapaest, are used very sparingly. The Tribrach never occurs in the fifth foot and only once in the first. The Anapaest occurs only twice in all.

3. In COMEDY great liberty is taken, and the Spondee and its equivalents are freely admitted in any foot except the last.

¹ Compare the corresponding English measure, in which the two parts appear as separate lines:

"Lives' of great men | all' remind us
We' can make our | lives' sublime,
And', departing, | leave' behind us
Foot'prints on the | sands' of time."

² The Dactyl thus used has the time of an Iambus and is marked > ♪ ♪; the Anapaest is cyclic (598, 1, 4), marked ♪ ♪ ♪.

³ This same scale, divided thus, ♩ : ♪ ♪ — ♩ | ♪ ♪ — ♩ | ♪ ♪ — ♪, represents Trochaic Trimeter Catalectic with Anacrusis. Thus all Iambic verses may be treated as Trochaic verses with Anacrusis.

⁴ Compare the English Alexandrine, the last line of the Spenserian stanza :

When Phoe'bus lifts | his head' out of | the win'ter's wave.

4. The *CHOLIAMBUS* is a variety of *Iambic Trimeter* with a Trochee in the sixth foot:¹

Miser Catul- | le dēsinās | ineptīre. *Catul.*

623. The *IAMBIC TRIMETER CATALECTIC* occurs in Horace with the following scale :

⋈ ⋈ — | ⋈ ⋈ — | ⋈ ⋈

Vocātus at- | que nōn vocā- | tus audit. *Hor.*

NOTE.—The Dactyl and the Anapaest are not admissible ; the Tribrach occurs only in the second foot.

624. The *IAMBIC DIMETER* consists of two Iambic Dipodies :

⋈ ⋈ — | ⋈ ⋈ —

Queruntur in | silvīs avēs. *Hor.*

Imbrēs nivēs- | que comparat. *Hor.*

Ast ego vicis- | sim rīserō. *Hor.*

NOTE 1.—Horace admits the Dactyl only in the first foot, the Tribrach only in the second, the Anapaest not at all.

NOTE 2.—Iambic Dimeter is sometimes catalectic.

625. The *IAMBIC TETRAMETER* consists of four Iambic Dipodies. It belongs chiefly to comedy :

Quantum intellēx- | i modo senis || sententiam | dē nūptiis. *Ter.*

NOTE.—Iambic Tetrameter is sometimes catalectic :

Quot commodās | rēs attulī? || quot autem adē | mī cūrās. *Ter.*

V. IONIC VERSE.

626. The Ionic Verse in Horace consists entirely of Lesser Ionics. It may be either Trimeter or Dimeter :

⋈ ⋈ ⋈ — | ⋈ ⋈ ⋈ — | ⋈ ⋈ ⋈ —

⋈ ⋈ ⋈ — | ⋈ ⋈ ⋈ —

Neque pūgnō | neque sēgnī | pede victus ;

Catus idem | per apertum. *Hor.*

NOTE 1.—In this verse the last syllable is not common, but is often long *only by position* (p. 383, foot-note 3). Thus *us* in *vīctus* is long before *c* in *catus*.

NOTE 2.—The *Ionic Tetrameter Catalectic*, also called *Sotadēan Verse*, occurs chiefly in comedy. It consists in general of Greater Ionics, but in Martial it has a Ditrochee as the third foot :

⋈ — ⋈ — | ⋈ — ⋈ — | ⋈ — ⋈ — | ⋈ — ⋈ —

Hās cum gemi- | nā compede | dēdicat ca- | tēnās. *Mart.*

¹ *Choliambus*, or *Seazon*, means *lame* or *limping Iambus*, and is so called from its limping movement. It is explained as a Trocheal Trimeter Acatalectic with Anacrusis, and with syncope (608, VII.) in the fifth foot. The example here given may be represented thus : ⋈ ⋈ ⋈ — ⋈ — | ⋈ ⋈ ⋈ — ⋈ — | ⋈ — ⋈ —

VI. LOGAOEDIC VERSE.

627. Logaoedic¹ Verse is a special variety of Trochaic Verse. The Irrational Trochee $\text{—} >$, the Cyclic Dactyl $\text{—} \cup$, and the Syn-copated Trochee — (608, VII.) are freely admitted. It has an apparently light ictus.²

NOTE.—Logaoedic verses show great variety of form, but a few general types will indicate the character of the whole.

628. The following Logaoedic verses appear in Horace :

I. The ADONIC :

$\text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \cup$ or $\text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \cup$ or $\text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \cup$
Montis i- | mägö. Hor.

II. The FIRST PHERECRATIC³ or the ARISTOPHANIC :

$\text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \cup$ or $\text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \cup$ or $\text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \cup$
Cür neque | mili- | tãris. Hor.

NOTE.—Pherecratic is the technical term applied to the regular Logaoedic Tripody. It is called the First or Second Pherecratic according as its Dactyl occupies the first or the second place in the verse. In each form it may be *acatalectic* or *catalectic* :

- 1) $\text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \cup$ or catalectic: $\text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \cup$
2) $\text{—} > \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \cup$ or catalectic: $\text{—} > \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \cup$

In Logaoedic verse the term *basis* or *base*, marked x, is sometimes applied to the foot or feet which precede the Cyclic Dactyl. Thus, in the Second Pherecratic, the first foot $\text{—} >$ is the base.

III. The SECOND GLYCONIC³ CATALECTIC :

$\text{—} > \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \cup$ or $\text{—} > \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \cup$
Dö nec | grätus e- | ram ti- | bî. Hor.

NOTE 1.—Glyconic is the technical term applied to the regular Logaoedic Tetrapody. It is called the First, Second, or Third Glyconic according as its Dactyl occupies the first, second, or third place in the verse. In each form it may be either *acatalectic* or *catalectic*.

NOTE 2.—The Second Glyconic sometimes has a Syncope (608, VII.) in the third foot.

IV. The LESSER ASCLEPIADĒAN³ consists of two *Catalectic Pherecratics*, a Second and a First :

$\text{—} > \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \cup$ or $\text{—} > \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \cup$
Maecê- | nãs ata | vîs || êdite | rêgi- | bus. Hor.

¹ From λόγος, *prose*, and ἀοιδή, *song*, applied to verses which resemble prose.

² The free use of long syllables in the thesis causes the poetical ictus on the arsis to appear less prominent.

³ Pherecratic, Glyconic, and AsclepiadĒan verses may be explained as Choriambic :

Pherecratic, $\text{—} \cup \cup \text{—} \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \cup$

First Glyconic, $\text{—} \cup \cup \text{—} \mid \text{—} \cup \mid \text{—} \cup$

AsclepiadĒan, $\text{—} > \mid \text{—} \cup \cup \text{—} \mid \text{—} \cup \cup \text{—} \mid \text{—} \cup$

V. The GREATER ASCLEPIADĒAN consists of three catalectic verses, a *Second Pherecratic*, an *Adonic*, and a *First Pherecratic*:

└ > | └┘ | └ || └┘ | └ || └┘ | └┘ | ≡ ∧

Seu plū- | rēs hie- | mēs, || seu tribu- | it || Juppiter | ūti- | mam. *Hor.*

VI. The LESSER SAPPHIC consists of a *Trochaic Dipody* and a *First Pherecratic*:

└┘ | └ > | └┘ | └┘ | └┘

Namque | mē sil- | vā lupus | in ba- | dinā. *Hor.*

VII. The GREATER SAPPHIC consists of two *Catalectic Glyconics*, a *Third* and a *First with Syncope*:

└┘ | └ > | └┘ | └ || └┘ | └┘ | └ ! ≡ ∧

Inter | aequā- | lēs equi- | tat, || Gallica | nec lu- | pā- | tīs. *Hor.*

VIII. The LESSER ALCAIC consists of two *Cyclic Dactyls* and two *Trochees*:

└┘ | └┘ | └┘ | └┘

Purple- | ō vari- | us co- | lore. *Hor.*

IX. The GREATER ALCAIC consists of a *Trochaic Dipody* with *Anacrusis* and a *Catalectic First Pherecratic*:

≡ : └┘ | └ ≡ | └┘ | └┘ | ≡ ∧

Vi- : dēs ut | altā | stet nive | candi- | dum. *Hor.*

X. The GREATER ARCHILOCHIAN¹ consists of a *Dactylic Tetrameter* (616) followed by a *Trochaic Tripody*. The first three feet are either *Dactyls* or *Spondees*; the fourth, a *Dactyl*; and the last three, *Trochees*:

└┘ | └┘ | └┘ | └┘ || └┘ | └┘ | └┘

Vitae | summa bre- | vis spem | nōs vetat, || incho- | āre | longam. *Hor.*

NOTE.—This verse may be explained either as *Logaoedic* or as *Compound*. With the first explanation, the *Dactyls* are *cyclic* and the *Spondees* have *irrational time*; with the second explanation, the first member of the verse has the *Dactyl* as its characteristic foot and the second member the *Trochee*; see 601, note 2.

629. The following *Logaoedic* verses not used in *Horace* deserve mention:

I. The PHALAEICIAN is a *Logaoedic Pentapody*:²

≡ ≡ | └┘ | └┘ | └┘ | └┘

Nōn est | vivere, | sed va- | lēre | vita. *Mart.*

¹ For the *Lesser Archilochian*, see 617, note.

² This verse differs from the *Lesser Sapphic* in having the *Dactyl* in the second foot, while the latter has the *Dactyl* in the third.

II. The SECOND PRIAPEAN consists of two *Catalectic Second Glyconics* with Syncope :

≡ ˘ | ˘ ˘ | ˘ ˘ | ˘ || ˘ ˘ | ˘ ˘ | ˘ | ≡ Λ
 Quercus | árida | rûsti- | cá || cónfor- | mاتا se | cū- | rī. *Catul.*

SECTION III.

THE VERSIFICATION OF THE PRINCIPAL LATIN POETS

630. Vergil and Juvenal use the Dactylic Hexameter ; Ovid, the Hexameter in his *Metamorphoses* and the Elegiac Distich in his *Epistles* and other works ; Horace, the Hexameter in his *Epistles* and *Satires*, and a variety of metres in his *Odes* and *Epodes*.

LYRIC METRES OF HORACE.

631. For convenience of reference, an outline of the lyric metres of Horace is here inserted.

Stanzas of Four Verses or Lines.

I. ALCAIC STANZA.—First and second lines, Greater Alcaics (628, IX.) ; third, Trochaic Dimeter with Anacrusis (619, 1) ; fourth, Lesser Alcaic (628, VIII.) :

1. } ˘ : — ˘ | — ˘ | ˘ ˘ | — ˘ | ≡ Λ
 2. }
 3. ˘ : — ˘ — ˘ | — ˘ — ˘
 4. ˘ ˘ | ˘ ˘ | — ˘ | — ˘

In thirty-seven Odes : I., 9, 16, 17, 26, 27, 29, 31, 34, 35, 37 ; II., 1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 19, 20 ; III., 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 17, 21, 23, 26, 29 ; IV., 4, 9, 14, 15.

II. SAPPHIC STANZA.—The first three lines, Lesser Sapphics (628, VI.) ; the fourth, Adonic (628, I.) :

1. } — ˘ | — > | ˘ ˘ | — ˘ | — ˘
 2. }
 3. }
 4. ˘ ˘ | — ˘

In twenty-six Odes : I., 2, 10, 12, 20, 22, 25, 30, 32, 38 ; II., 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 16 ; III., 8, 11, 14, 18, 20, 22, 27 ; IV., 2, 6, 11 ; and Secular Hymn.

III. GREATER SAPPHIC STANZA.—First and third lines, First Glyconics Catalectic with Syncope in the third foot (608, VII.) ; second and fourth lines, Greater Sapphics :

1. } ˘ ˘ | — ˘ | ˘ | ≡ Λ
 3. }

2. } — u | — > | ~ u | L || ~ u | — u | L | x ^
4. }

In Ode I., 8.

IV. FIRST ASCLEPIADĒAN GLYCONIC STANZA.—The first three lines, Lesser Asclepiadēans (628, IV.); the fourth, Second Glyconic Catalectic (628, III.):

1. }
2. } — > | ~ u | L || ~ u | — u | x ^
3. }
4. — > | ~ u | — u | x ^

In nine Odes : I., 6, 15, 24, 33 ; II., 12 ; III., 10, 16 ; IV., 5, 12.

V. SECOND ASCLEPIADĒAN GLYCONIC STANZA.—The first two lines, Lesser Asclepiadēans (628, IV.); the third, Second Glyconic Catalectic with Syncope in the third foot (628, III., note 2) ; the fourth, Second Glyconic Catalectic (628, III.):

1. } — > | ~ u | L || ~ u | — u | x ^
2. }
3. — > | ~ u | L | x ^
4. — > | ~ u | — u | x ^

In seven Odes : I., 5, 14, 21, 23 ; III., 7, 13 ; IV., 13.

VI. GLYCONIC ASCLEPIADĒAN STANZA.—First and third lines, Second Glyconics Catalectic (628, III.); second and fourth, Lesser Asclepiadēans (628, IV.):

1. } — > | ~ u | — u | x ^
3. }
2. } — > | ~ u | L || ~ u | — u | x ^
4. }

In twelve Odes : I., 3, 13, 19, 36 ; III., 9, 15, 19, 24, 25, 28 ; IV., 1, 3.

VII. LESSER ASCLEPIADĒAN STANZA.—Four Lesser Asclepiadēans :

1. }
2. } — > | ~ u | L || ~ u | — u | x ^
3. }
4. }

In three Odes : I., 1 ; III., 30 ; IV., 8.

VIII. GREATER ASCLEPIADĒAN STANZA.—Four Greater Asclepiadēans (628, V.):

1. }
2. } — > | ~ u | L || ~ u | L | ~ u | — u | x ^
3. }
4. }

In three Odes : I., 11, 18 ; IV., 10.

IX. DOUBLE ALCMANIAN STANZA.—First and third lines, Dactylic Hexameters (610); second and fourth, Dactylic Tetrameters (316):

1. } — — — | — — — | — — — | — — — | — — — | — —
 3. } — — — | — — — | — — — | — — — | — — — | — —
 2. } — — — | — — — | — — — | — —
 4. }

In two Odes: I., 7, 28.

NOTE.—This stanza is formed by the union of two Alcmæan stanzas; see XIX. below

X. TROCHAIC STANZA.—First and third lines, Trochaic Dimeter Catalectic (619); second and fourth, Iambic Trimeter Catalectic (623):

1. } — — — | — — —
 3. } — — — | — — —
 2. } — — — | — — — | — — —
 4. }

In Ode II., 18.

XI. DACTYLIC ARCHILOCHIAN STANZA.—First and third lines, Dactylic Hexameters; second and fourth, Catalectic Dactylic Trimeters (617, note):

1. } — — — | — — — | — — — | — — — | — — — | — —
 3. } — — — | — — — | — — — | — — — | — — — | — —
 2. } — — — | — — — | — — —
 4. }

In Ode IV., 7.

XII. GREATER ARCHILOCHIAN STANZA.—First and third lines, Greater Archilochians (628, X.); second and fourth, Iambic Trimeter Catalectic (623):

1. } — — — | — — — | — — — | — — — || — — | — — | — —
 3. } — — — | — — — | — — — | — — — || — — | — — | — —
 2. } — — — | — — — | — — —
 4. }

In Ode I., 4.

NOTE.—The second and fourth lines are sometimes read with syncope, as follows:

— — — — — | — — — — — | — — — — —

XIII. IONIC STANZA.—First and second lines, Ionic Dimeters (626); third and fourth, Ionic Trimeters (626):

1. } — — — — | — — — —
 2. } — — — — | — — — —
 3. } — — — — | — — — — | — — — —
 4. }

In Ode III., 12.

NOTE.—This ode is variously arranged in different editions, sometimes in stanzas of three lines and sometimes of four.

Stanzas of Three Lines.

XIV. FIRST ARCHILOCHIAN STANZA.—First line, Hexameter; second, Iambic Dimeter; third, Dactylic Trimeter Catalectic:

1. — — — | — — — | — — — | — — — | — — — | — —
2. — — — | — — — | — — —
3. — — — | — — — | — — —

In Epode 13.

NOTE.—In some editions, the second and third lines are united.

XV. SECOND ARCHILOCHIAN STANZA.—First line, Iambic Trimeter; second, Dactylic Trimeter Catalectic; third, Iambic Dimeter:

1. — — — | — — — | — — —
2. — — — | — — — | — — —
3. — — — | — — — | — — —

In Epode 11.

NOTE.—In some editions, the second and third lines are united.

Stanzas of Two Lines.

XVI. IAMBIC STANZA.—First line, Iambic Trimeter; second, Iambic Dimeter:

1. — — — | — — — | — — —
2. — — — | — — —

In the first ten Epodes.

XVII. FIRST PYTHIAMBIC STANZA.—First line, Dactylic Hexameter; second, Iambic Dimeter (624):

1. — — — | — — — | — — — | — — — | — — — | — —
2. — — — | — — —

In Epodes 14 and 15.

XVIII. SECOND PYTHIAMBIC STANZA.—First line, Dactylic Hexameter; second, Iambic Trimeter:

1. — — — | — — — | — — — | — — — | — — — | — —
2. — — — | — — — | — — —

In Epode 16.

XIX. ALCMANIAN STANZA.—First line, Dactylic Hexameter; second, Dactylic Tetrameter:

1. — — — | — — — | — — — | — — — | — — — | — —
2. — — — | — — — | — — —

In Epode 12.

Not grouped into Stanzas.

XX. IAMBIC TRIMETER:

1. — — — | — — — | — — —

In Epode 17.

632. INDEX TO THE LYRIC METRES OF HORACE.

The Roman numerals refer to articles in the preceding outline, 631.

BOOK I.		ODES.	METRES.	ODES.	METRES.
ODES.	METRES.	4	II.	26	I.
1	VII.	5	I.	27	II.
2	II.	6	II.	28	VI.
3	VI.	7	I.	29	I.
4	XII.	8	II.	30	VII.
5	V.	9	I.		
6	IV.	10	II.	BOOK IV.	
7	IX.	11	I.	1	VI.
8	III.	12	IV.	2	II.
9	I.	13	I.	3	VI.
10	II.	14	I.	4	I.
11	VIII.	15	I.	5	IV.
12	II.	16	II.	6	II.
13	VI.	17	I.	7	XI.
14	V.	18	X.	8	VII.
15	IV.	19	I.	9	I.
16	I.	20	I.	10	VIII.
17	I.			11	II.
18	VIII.	BOOK III.		12	IV.
19	VI.	1	I.	13	V.
20	II.	2	I.	14	I.
21	V.	3	I.	15	I.
22	II.	4	I.		
23	V.	5	I.	EPODES.	
24	IV.	6	I.	EPODES.	METRES.
25	II.	7	V.	1	XVI.
26	I.	8	II.	2	XVI.
27	I.	9	VI.	3	XVI.
28	IX.	10	IV.	4	XVI.
29	I.	11	II.	5	XVI.
30	II.	12	XIII.	6	XVI.
31	I.	13	V.	7	XVI.
32	II.	14	II.	8	XVI.
33	IV.	15	VI.	9	XVI.
34	I.	16	IV.	10	XVI.
35	I.	17	I.	11	XV.
36	VI.	18	II.	12	XIX.
37	I.	19	VI.	13	XIV.
38	II.	20	II.	14	XVII.
		21	I.	15	XVII.
BOOK II.		22	II.	16	XVIII.
1	I.	23	I.	17	XX.
2	II.	24	VI.		
3	I.	25	VI.	SECULAR HYMN, II.	

633. The metres of the following poets must be briefly mentioned:

I. CATULLUS uses chiefly (1) the Elegiac Distich (615); (2) Phalaecian

verse (629, I.); (3) Choliambus or Scazon (622, 4); (4) Iambic Trimeter (622); (5) Priapean (629, II.).

II. MARTIAL uses largely the Choliambus or Scazon and the Phalaecian verse.

NOTE 1.—Martial also uses Iambic and Dactylic measures.

NOTE 2.—Seneca in his choral odes imitates the lyric metres of Horace. He uses Sapphics very freely, and often combines them into systems closing with the Adonic.

NOTE 3.—Seneca also uses Anapaestic¹ verse with Spondees and Dactyls as equivalents. This consists of one or more dipodies:

Venient annis | saecula séris.

III. Plautus and Terence use chiefly various Iambic and Trochaic metres, but they also use—

1. BACCHIC¹ METRES, generally Tetrameter or Dimeter:

Multās' rēs | simĩtū in | meō' cor- | de vor'sō. *Plaut.*

At ta'men ubĩ | fidēs' ? sī | rogēs', nīl | pendent' hic. *Ter.*

NOTE.—The Molossus, — — —, may take the place of the Bacchius, as in *multās rēs*, and the long syllables may be resolved, as in *at tamen ubĩ*.

2. CRETIC¹ METRES, generally Tetrameter or Dimeter:

Nam' doli | nōn' doli | sunt', nisi as- | tū' colās. *Plaut.*

Ut' malis | gau'deant | at'que ex in- | com'modis. *Ter.*

NOTE 1.—Plautus also uses Anapaestic metres, especially Dimeters:

Quod agō' subit, ad- | secuō' sequitur. *Plaut.*

This measure admits Dactyls and Spondees, rarely Proceleusmatics, ∪ ∪ ∪ ∪

NOTE 2.—For *Trochaic* and *Iambic Metres in Comedy*, see 620, note 2; 622, 3.

NOTE 3.—For *Special Peculiarities* in the prosody of Plautus and Terence, see 576, notes 2 and 3; 578, note 2; 580, notes 2, 3, and 4.²

NOTE 4.—On the free use of *Synaeresis* in Comedy, see 608, III., note 3.

¹ See 603, note 1; 597, note 1.

² For a full account of the metres of Plautus and Terence, see editions of those poets; as the edition of Plautus by Ritschl, of a part of Plautus by Harrington, the edition of Terence by Wagner, and the edition by Crowell; also Spengel, 'Plautus: Kritik, Prosodie, Metrik.'

APPENDIX.

I. FIGURES OF SPEECH.

634. A Figure is a deviation from the ordinary form, construction, or signification of words.

NOTE.—Deviations from the ordinary forms are called *Figures of Etymology*; from the ordinary constructions, *Figures of Syntax*; and from the ordinary significations, *Figures of Rhetoric*.

635. The principal FIGURES OF ETYMOLOGY are—

1. APHAERESIS, the taking of one or more letters from the beginning of a word: *'st* for *est*.
2. SYNOCOPE, the taking of one or more letters from the middle of a word: *dīxe* for *dixisse*.
3. APOCOPE, the taking of one or more letters from the end of a word: *tūn'* for *tūne*.
4. EPENTHESIS, the insertion of one or more letters in a word: *Alcumēna* for *Alomēna*, *ālitum* for *ālitum*.
5. METATHESIS, the transposition of letters: *pistris* for *pristis*.
6. See also FIGURES OF PROSODY, 608.

636. The principal FIGURES OF SYNTAX are—

I. ELLIPSIS, the omission of one or more words of a sentence:

Habitabat ad Jovis (sc. templum), *he dwelt near the temple of Jupiter*. Liv. Hic illius arma (fuērunt), *here were her arms*, *here her chariot*. Verg.

1. ASYNDETON is an ellipsis of a conjunction: ¹

Vēnī, vidī, vicī, *I came, I saw, I conquered*. Suet. See also 554, I., 6, with note 1.

2. For the ELLIPSIS of *faciō*, *dīcō*, *orō*, see 368, 3, note 1; 523, I., note; 569, II., 3

3. For APOSIOPESIS or RETICENTIA, see 637, XI., 8.

II. BRACHYLOGY, a concise and abridged form of expression:

Nostri Graecē nesciunt nec Graeci Latīnē,² *our people do not know Greek and the Greeks (do) not (know) Latin*. Cic. Natūra hominis bēluis antecēdit,³ *the nature of man surpasses (that of) the brutes*. Cic.

1. Zeugma employs a word in two or more connections, though strictly applicable only in one:

Pācem an bellum gerēs,³ *whether at peace or waging war*. Sall. Ducēs pīctāsque exūre carīnās, *slay the leaders and burn the painted ships*. Verg.

¹ Asyndeton is sometimes distinguished according to its use, as *Adversative*, *Enumerative*, etc.; see Nägelsbach, 'Stillistik,' § 200.

² Here *nesciunt* suggests *sciunt*, and *bēluis* in the second example is equivalent to *bēluarum nātūrae*.

³ *Gerēs*, applicable only to *bellum*, is here used also of *pācem*.

2. *Syllepsis* is the use of an adjective with two or more nouns, or of a verb with two or more subjects:

Pater et mäter mortuī sunt, father and mother are dead (439). Ter. *Ta et Tullia valētis, you and Tullia are well.* Cic.

III. **PLEONASM** is a full, redundant, or emphatic form of expression:¹

Erant itinera duo, quibus itineribus exire possent, there were two ways by which ways they might depart. Caes. *Eurusque Notusque ruunt, both Eurus and Notus rush forth.* Verg.

1. **POLYSYNDETON** is a pleonasm in the use of conjunctions, as in the last example.

2. **HENDIADYS** is the use of two nouns with a conjunction, instead of a noun with an adjective or genitive:

Armīs virisque for virīs armātīs, with armed men. Tac.

3. **ANAPHORA** is the repetition of a word at the beginning of successive clauses:

Mē cūncta Ītalia, mē ūniversa cīvītās cōnsulem dēclārāvit, me all Italy, me the whole state declared consul. Cic.

4. **EPIPHORA** is the repetition of a word at the end of successive clauses:

Laelius nāvus erat, doctus erat, Laelius was diligent, was learned. Cic.

5. **EPIZEUXIS** is the emphatic repetition of a word:

Fuit, fuit quondam in hāc rē pūblicā virtūs, there was, there was formerly virtue in this republic. Cic.

6. Monosyllabic prepositions are often repeated before successive nouns, regularly so with *et*—*et*:

Et in bellicīs et in cīvilibus officiīs, both in military and in civil offices. Cic.

NOTE.—Other prepositions are sometimes repeated.

7. A demonstrative pronoun or adverb—*id, hoc, illud, sic, ita*—is often used somewhat redundantly to represent a subsequent clause. So also *quid*, in *quid cēnsēs* with a clause:

Illud tē ōrō ut dīlīgēns sīs, I ask you (that thing) to be (that you be) diligent. Cic.

8. Pronouns are often redundant with *quidem*; see 450, 4, note 2.

9. Pleonasm often occurs with *licet*:

Ut liceat permittitur = licet, it is lawful (is permitted that it is, etc.). Cic.

10. Circumlocutions with *rēs, genus, modus, and ratio* are common.

IV. **ENALLAGE** is the substitution of one part of speech for another, or of one grammatical form for another:

Populus latē rēx (for regnāns), a people of extensive sway (ruling extensively). Verg. *Sērus (sērō) in caelum redeās, may you return late to heaven.* Hor. *Vīna cadis (vīnis cadēs) onerāre, to fill the flasks with wine.* Verg. *Cursus jūsti (jūstus) amnis, the regular course of the river.* Liv.

1. **ANTIMERIA** is the use of one part of speech for another, as in the first two examples.

2. **HYPALLAGE** is the use of one case for another, as in the last two examples.

3. **PROLEPSIS** or **ANTICIPATION** is the application of an epithet in anticipation of the action of the verb:

Scēlta latētia condunt, they conceal their hidden shields. Verg. See also 440, 2.

4. **SYNESIS** is a construction according to sense, without regard to grammatical forms. For examples, see 438, 6; 445, 5; 461.

¹ *Pleonasm*, a full or emphatic expression, differs widely from *Tautology*, which is a needless repetition of the same meaning in different words.

5. **ATTRACTION** unites in construction words not united in sense :

Animal quem (for *quod*) vocāmus hominem, *the animal which we call man.* Cic. See also 445, 4, 8, and 9.

6. **ANACOLŪTHON** is a want of harmony in the construction of the different parts of a sentence :

SI, ut dicunt, omnēs Grāiōs esse (*Grāiī sunt*), *if, as they say, all are Greeks.* Cic.

V. HYPERBATON is a transposition of words or clauses :

Praeter arma nihil erat super (*supererat*), *nothing remained, except their arms.* Nep. Valet atque vivit (*vivit atque valet*), *he is alive and well.* Ter. Subeunt lūcō, fluviumque relinquunt, *they enter the grove and leave the river.* Verg.

1. **ANASTROPHE** is the transposition of words only, as in the first example.

2. **HYSTERON PROTERON** is a transposition of clauses, as in the last example.

3. **TMSIS** is the separation of the parts of a compound word :

Nec prius respēxi quam vēnimus, *nor did I look back before (sooner than) we arrived.* Verg.

4. **CHIASMUS** is an inverted arrangement of words in contrasted groups ; see 562.

637. FIGURES OF RHETORIC comprise several varieties. The following are the most important :¹

I. A SIMILE is a direct comparison :

Manūs effūgit imāgō pār levibus ventīs volucrīque simillima somnō, *the image, like the swift winds, and very like a fleeting dream, escaped my hands.* Verg.

II. METAPHOR is an implied comparison, and assigns to one object the appropriate name, epithet, or action of another :

Rēi publicae vulnus (for *damnum*), *the wound of the republic.* Cic. Naufragium fortunae, *the wreck of fortune.* Cic. Aurēs vērītātī clausae sunt, *his ears are closed against the truth.* Cic.

1. **Allegory** is an extended metaphor, or a series of metaphors. For an example, see Horace, I., Ode 14 : Ō nāvis . . . occupā portum, etc.²

III. METONYMY is the use of one name for another naturally suggested by it :

Aequō Mārte (for *proeliō*) pūgnātum est, *they fought in an equal contest.* Liv. Furit Vulcānus (*ignis*), *the fire rages.* Verg. Prōximus ardet Ūcalegōn (*domus Ūcalegontis*), *Ucalegon burns next.* Verg.

NOTE.—By this figure the cause is often put for the effect, and the effect for the cause ; the property for the possessor, the place or age for the people, the sign for the thing signified, the material for the manufactured article, etc.: *Mārs* for *bellum*, *Vulcānus* for *ignis*, *Bacchus* for *vīnum*, *nōbilitās* for *nōbīlēs*, *Graecia* for *Graeci*, *laurea* for *vīctōria*, *argentum* for *vāsa argentea*, etc.

¹ On *Figurative Language*, see the eighth and ninth books of Quintilian, ‘*Dē Institutiōne Ōrātōriā*,’ and the fourth book of ‘*Auctor ad Herennium*’ in Cicero’s works.

² In this beautiful allegory the poet represents the vessel of state as having been well-nigh wrecked in the storms of the civil war, but as now approaching the haven of peace.

1. *Autonomasia* designates a person by some title or office, as *ēversor Karthāginis* for *Scipiō*, *Rōmānae eloquentiae prīnceps* for *Cicerō*.

IV. *SYNECDOCHE* is the use of a part for the whole, or of the whole for a part; of the special for the general, or of the general for the special :

Statiō male fīda carīnis (nāvibus), a station unsafe for ships. Verg.

V. *IRONY* is the use of a word for its opposite :

Lēgātōs bonus (for *malus*) *imperātor vester nōn admisit, your good commander did not admit the ambassadors.* Liv. See also 507, 3, note 1.

NOTE.—*Metaphor, metonymy, synecdoche, and irony* are often called *Tropes*.

VI. *CLIMAX (ladder)* is a steady ascent or advance in interest :

Africānō industria virtūtem, virtūs glōriam, glōria aemulās comparāvit, industry procured virtue for Africanus, virtue glory, glory rivals. Cic.

VII. *HYPERBOLE* is an exaggeration :

Ventīs et fulminis ōcior ālis, swifter than the winds and the wings of the lightning. Verg.

VIII. *LITOTES* denies something instead of affirming the opposite :

Nōn opus est = perniciōsum est, it is not necessary. Cic.

IX. *PERSONIFICATION* or *PROSOPOPEIA* represents inanimate objects as living beings :

Cūjus latus ille mūrō petēbat ? whose side did that weapon seek ? Cic.¹

X. *APOSTROPHE* is an address to inanimate objects or to absent persons .

Vōs, Albānī tumuli, vōs implorō, I implore you, ye Alban hills. Cic.

XI. The following figures deserve brief mention :

1. *ALLITERATION*, a repetition of the same letter at the beginning of successive words :

Vi victa vis est, force was conquered by force. Cic. *Fortissimī virī virtūs, the virtue of a most brave man.* Cic.

2. *APOPHASIS* or *PARALEIPSIS*, a pretended omission :²

Nōn dicō tē pecūniās accēpisse ; rapīnās tuās omnēs omitto, I do not state that you accepted money ; I omit all your acts of rapine. Cic.

3. *APOSIOPEISIS* or *RETICENTIA*, an ellipsis which for rhetorical effect leaves the sentence unfinished :

Quōs ego—sed mōtōs praestat compōnere flūctūs, whom I—but it is better to calm the troubled waves. Verg.

4. *EUPHEMISM*, the use of mild or agreeable language on unpleasant subjects :

Si quid mihi hūmānitus accidisset, if anything common to the lot of man should befall me—i. e., if I should die. Cic.

¹ See also First Oration against Catiline, VII. : *Quae tecum . . . tacita loquitur, etc.*

² Sometimes called *occupatio*.

5. ONOMATOPOEIA, the use of a word in imitation of a special sound:

Bovēs mūgiunt, *the cattle low*. Liv. Murmurat unda, *the wave murmurs*. Verg.

6. OXYMŌRON, an apparent contradiction:

Absentēs adsunt et egentēs abundant, *the absent are present and the needy have an abundance*. Cic.

7. PARONOMASIA or AGNOMINATION, a play upon words:

Hunc avium dulcēdō ducit ad avium,¹ *the attraction of birds leads him to the pathless wood*. Cic.

II. LATIN LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE.

638. The Latin derives its name from the *Latīnī* or *Latins*, the ancient inhabitants of Latium in Italy. It belongs to the *Indo-European* or *Aryan* family, which embraces seven groups of tongues known as the *Indian* or *Sanskrit*, the *Persian* or *Zend*, the *Greek*, the *Italian*, the *Celtic*, the *Slavonic*, and the *Teutonic* or *Germanic*. The Latin is the leading member of the Italian group, which also embraces the *Umbrian* and the *Oscan*. All these languages have one common system of inflection, and in various respects strikingly resemble each other. They are the descendants of one common speech spoken by a single race of men untold centuries before the dawn of history.

NOTE 1.—In illustration of the relationship between the Sanskrit, Greek, Latin, and English, compare the following paradigms of declension: ²

SINGULAR.				
	SANSKRIT.	GREEK.	LATIN.	ENGLISH.
Stem.	pad,	ποδ,	ped,	foot.
Nom.,	{ pad,	ποὺς,	pēs,	fool.
Voc.				
Gen.	padas,	ποδός,	pedis,	of a foot.
Dat.	pade,	ποδί,	pedī,	to a foot.
Acc.	pādam,	πόδα, ³	pedem,	foot.
Abl.	padas,		pede, ⁴	from a foot.
Ins.	padā,			with a foot.
Loc.	padī,			in a foot.
PLURAL.				
Nom.,	{ padas,	πόδες,	pedēs,	feet.
Voc.				
Gen.	padām,	ποδῶν,	pedum,	of feet.
Dat.	padbhyas,	ποσί,	pedibus,	to feet.
Acc.	padas,	πόδας,	pedēs,	feet.
Abl.	padbhyas,		pedibus,	from feet.
Ins.	padbhis,			with feet.
Loc.	patsu,			in feet.

¹ The pun, lost in English, is in the use of *avium*, a remote or pathless place, with *avium*, of birds.

² See also p. 71, foot-note 2; p. 83, foot-note 3.

³ The *Ablative*, the *Instrumental*, and the *Locative* are lost in Greek, but their places are supplied by the *Genitive* and the *Dative*.

⁴ The final consonant, probably *z*, of the original Ablative ending is changed to *s* in *padas* and dropped in *pede*. The *Instrumental* and the *Locative* are lost in Latin, but their places are supplied by the *Ablative*.

NOTE 2.—In these paradigms observe that the initial *p* in *pad*, *πoδ*, *ped*, becomes *f* in *fooi*, and that the final *d* becomes *t*. This change is in accordance with Grimm's *Law of the Rotation of Mutes* in the Germanic languages. This law is as follows:

The Primitive Mutes, which generally remain unchanged in Sanskrit, Greek, and Latin, are changed in passing into the Germanic languages, to which the English belongs. Thus the SONANTS, *d*, *g*, in passing into English, become SURDS, *t*, *k*; the SURDS, *c*, *k*, *p*, *t*, become ASPIRATES, *h*, *wh*, *f* (for *ph*), *th*; the ASPIRATES, *bh*,¹ *dh*,¹ *gh*,¹ become SONANTS, *b*, *d*, *g*.²

NOTE 3.—The relationship between the Sanskrit, Greek, Latin, and English may be abundantly illustrated by comparing the forms of familiar words in these different languages.³

639. The earliest specimens of Latin whose date can be determined are found in ancient inscriptions, and belong to the latter part of the fourth century before Christ or to the beginning of the third. Fragments, however, of laws, hymns, and sacred formulas, doubtless of an earlier though uncertain date, have been preserved in Cato, Livy, Cicero, and other Latin writers.⁴

¹ *Bh* generally is represented in Latin by *b* or *f*; *dh* by *d* or *t*, and *gh* by *g*, *h*, or *f*; see Schleicher, pp. 244–251.

² For an account of Grimm's Law, with its applications see Max Müller, 'Science of Language,' Second Series, Lecture V.; Papillon, pp. 85–91.

³ Compare the following:

SANSKRIT.	GREEK.	LATIN.	ENGLISH.
dvaṁ,	δύο,	duo,	two.
trayaś,	τρεῖς,	trēs,	three.
ṣaṭ,	ἕξ,	sex,	six.
sapta,	ἐπτά,	septem,	seven.
daśa,	δέκα,	decem,	ten.
dviś,	δίς,	bis,	twice.
triś,	τρίς,	ter,	thrice.
mātā,	μήτηρ,	māter,	mother.
pitā,	πατήρ,	pater,	father.
naus,	ναῦς,	nāvis,	navy.
vāk,	ὦψ,	vōx,	voice.

⁴ Such are the ancient forms of prayer found in Cato and other writers, the fragments of Salian hymns, of the formulas of the Fœtal priests, and of ancient laws, especially of the laws of the Twelve Tables. The following inscription on the tomb of the Scipios shows some of the peculiarities of early Latin:

HONO OINO . PLOIREVME . CONSENTIONT . R
DVONORO . OPTVMO . FVISE . VIRO
LVCIOM . SCIPIONE . FILIOS . BARBATI
CONSOL . CENSOR . AIDILIS . HIC FVET . A
HEO . CEPIT . CORSICA . ALERIAQVE . VRBE
DEDET . TEMPESTATEBUS . AIDE . MERETO

In ordinary Latin :

Hunc ūnum plūrimī cōsentiunt Rōmā
bonōrum optīmum fuisse virum virōrum,
Lūcium Scipionem . Fīlius Barbātī
cōnsul, cēnsor, aedīlis hīc fuit apud vōs.
Hīc cēpit Corsicam Aleriamque urbem pāgnandā;
dedit tempestātibus aedem meritō vōtam.

See Wordsworth, 'Early Latin,' Part II.; F. D. Allen, 'Early Latin'; Roby, I., p. 418.

640. The history of Roman literature begins with Livius Andronicus, a writer of plays, and the earliest Roman author known to us. It embraces about eight centuries, from 250 B. C. to 550 A. D., and has been divided by Dr. Freund into three principal periods. These periods, with their principal authors, are as follows :

I. The ANTE-CLASSICAL PERIOD, from 250 to 81 B. C. :

Ennius,	Plautus,	Terence,	Lucretius.
---------	----------	----------	------------

II. The CLASSICAL PERIOD, embracing—

1. The *Golden Age*, from 81 B. C. to 14 A. D. :

Cicero,	Nepos,	Horace,	Tibullus,
Caesar,	Livy,	Ovid,	Propertius.
Sallust,	Vergil,	Catullus,	

2. The *Silver Age*, from 14 to 180 A. D. :

Phaedrus,	The Plinies,	Quintilian,	Persius,
Velleius,	Tacitus,	Suetonius,	Lucan,
The Senecas,	Curtius,	Juvenal,	Martial

III. The POST-CLASSICAL PERIOD, embracing—

1. The *Brazen Age*, from 180 to 476 A. D. :

Justin,	Eutropius,	Lactantius,	Claudian,
Victor,	Macrobius,	Ausonius,	Terentian.

2. The *Iron Age*, from 476 to 550 A. D. :

Boëthius,	Cassiodorus,	Justinian,	Priscian.
-----------	--------------	------------	-----------

III. THE ROMAN CALENDAR.

641. The Julian Calendar of the Romans is the basis of our own, and is identical with it in the number of months in the year and in the number of days in the months.

642. PECULIARITIES.—The Roman calendar has the following peculiarities :

I. The days were not numbered from the beginning of the month, as with us, but from three different points in the month :

1. The *Calends*, the *first* of each month.

2. The *Nones*, the *fifth*—but the *seventh* in March, May, July, and October.

3. The *Ides*, the *thirteenth*—but the *fifteenth* in March, May, July, and October.

II. From these three points the days were numbered, not forward, but backward.

NOTE.—Hence, after the *Ides* of each month, the days were numbered from the *Calends* of the following month.

III. In numbering backward from each of these points, the day before

each was denoted by *pridie Kalendās, Nōnās*, etc.; the second before each by *diē tertiō* (not *secundō*) *ante Kalendās*, etc.; the third, by *diē quārtō*, etc.; and so on through the month.

1. This peculiarity in the use of the numerals, designating the *second* day before the Calends, etc., as the *third*, and the *third* as the *fourth*, etc., arises from the fact that the Calends, etc., were themselves counted as the first. Thus *pridie Kalendās*, the day before the Calends; *diē tertiō ante Kalendās*, the second day before the Calends.

2. In dates the name of the month is added in the form of an adjective in agreement with *Kalendās, Nōnās*, etc., as, *diē quārtō ante Nōnās Jānuāriās*, often shortened to *quārtō ante Nōnās Jān.*, or *IV. ante Nōnās Jān.*, or without *ante*, as, *IV. Nōnās Jān.*, the second of January.

3. *Ante diem* is common, instead of *diē*—*ante*, as, *ante diem quārtum Nōnās Jān.* for *diē quārtō ante Nōnās Jān.*

4. The expressions *ante diem Kal.*, etc., *pridie Kal.*, etc., are often used as indeclinable nouns with a preposition, as, *ex ante diem V. Idūs Oct.*, from the 11th of Oct. *Liv.* *Ad pridie Nōnās Māiās*, till the 6th of May. *Cic.*

643. CALENDAR FOR THE YEAR.

Days of the Month.	March, May, July, October.	January, August, December.	April, June, September, November.	February.
1	KALENDĪS. ¹	KALENDĪS.	KALENDĪS.	KALENDĪS.
2	VI. Nōnās. ¹	IV. Nōnās.	IV. Nōnās.	IV. Nōnās.
3	V. "	III. "	III. "	III. "
4	IV. "	Pridie Nōnās.	Pridie Nōnās.	Pridie Nōnās.
5	III. "	Nōnīs.	Nōnīs.	Nōnīs.
6	Pridie Nōnās.	VIII. Idūs.	VIII. Idūs.	VIII. Idūs.
7	Nōnīs.	VII. "	VII. "	VII. "
8	VIII. Idūs.	VI. "	VI. "	VI. "
9	VII. "	V. "	V. "	V. "
10	VI. "	IV. "	IV. "	IV. "
11	V. "	III. "	III. "	III. "
12	IV. "	Pridie Idūs.	Pridie Idūs.	Pridie Idūs.
13	III. "	Idibus.	Idibus.	Idibus.
14	Pridie Idūs.	XIX. Kalend. ²	XVIII. Kalend. ²	XVI. Kalend. ²
15	Idibus.	XVIII. "	XVII. "	XV. "
16	XVII. Kalend. ²	XVII. "	XVI. "	XIV. "
17	XVI. "	XVI. "	XV. "	XIII. "
18	XV. "	XV. "	XIV. "	XII. "
19	XIV. "	XIV. "	XIII. "	XI. "
20	XIII. "	XIII. "	XII. "	X. "
21	XII. "	XII. "	XI. "	IX. "
22	XI. "	XI. "	X. "	VIII. "
23	X. "	X. "	IX. "	VII. "
24	IX. "	IX. "	VIII. "	VI. "
25	VIII. "	VIII. "	VII. "	V. (VI.) ³ "
26	VII. "	VII. "	VI. "	IV. (V.) "
27	VI. "	VI. "	V. "	III. (IV.) "
28	V. "	V. "	IV. "	Prid. Kal. (III. Kal.)
29	IV. "	IV. "	III. "	(Prid. Kal.)
30	III. "	III. "	Pridie Kalend.	
31	Pridie Kalend.	Pridie Kalend.		

¹ To the Calends, Nones, etc., the name of the month must of course be added. Before Nōnās, Idūs, etc., *ante* is sometimes used and sometimes omitted (642, III., 2).

² The Calends of the following month are of course meant; the 16th of March, for instance, is *XVII. Kalendās Aprilēs*.

³ The inclosed forms apply to *leap-year*.

644. ENGLISH AND LATIN DATES.—The table (643) will furnish the learner with the English expression for any Latin date, or the Latin expression for any English date; but it may be convenient also to have the following rule:

I. If the day is numbered from the Nones or Ides, subtract the number diminished by one from the number of the day on which the Nones or Ides fall:

VIII. ante Idūs Jān. = $13 - (8 - 1) = 13 - 7 = 6$ th of January.

II. If the day is numbered from the Calends of the following month, subtract the number diminished by two from the number of days in the current month:

XVIII. ante Kal. Feb. = $31 - (18 - 2) = 31 - 16 = 15$ th of January.

NOTE.—In leap-year the 24th and the 25th February are both called the sixth before the Calends of March, VI. Kal. Mart. The days before the 24th are numbered as if the month contained only 28 days, but the days after the 25th are numbered regularly for a month of 29 days: V., IV., III. Kal. Mart., and pridie Kal. Mart.

645. The Roman day, from sunrise to sunset, and the night, from sunset to sunrise, were each divided at all seasons of the year into twelve hours.

1. The night was also divided into four watches of three Roman hours each.

2. The hour, being uniformly $\frac{1}{12}$ of the day or of the night, of course varied in length with the length of the day or night at different seasons of the year.

IV. ROMAN MONEY, WEIGHTS, AND MEASURES.

646. The principal Roman coins were the *ās*, of copper; the *sestertius*, *quīnārius*, *dēnārius*, of silver; and the *aureus*, of gold. Their value in the classical period may be approximately given as follows:

Ās.....	1 to 2 cents.
Sestertius.....	5 "
Quīnārius.....	10 "
Dēnārius.....	20 "
Aureus = 25 dēnārii.....	\$5.00

1. The *ās*, the unit of the Roman currency, contained originally a pound of copper, but it was diminished from time to time till at last it contained only $\frac{1}{24}$ of a pound.

NOTE.—An *ās*, whatever its weight, was divided into twelve *ūnciae*.

2. The *sestertius* contained originally $2\frac{1}{2}$ *asses*, the *quīnārius* 5, and the *dēnārius* 10; but as the *ās* depreciated in value, the number of *asses* in these coins was increased.

3. The *ās* is also used as a general unit of measure. Thus—

1) In *Weight*, the *ās* is a pound, and the *ūncia* an ounce.

2) In *Measure*, the *ās* is a foot or a *jūgerum* (648, IV. and V.), and the *ūncia* is $\frac{1}{12}$ of a foot or of a *jūgerum*.

3) In *Interest*, the *ās* is the unit of interest—i. e., 1 per cent. a month

or 12 per cent. a year; the *uncia* is $\frac{1}{12}$ per cent. a month, or 1 per cent. a year; and the *semis* is $\frac{6}{12}$ per cent. a month, or 6 per cent. a year, etc.

4) In *Inheritance*, the *as* is the whole estate, and the *uncia* $\frac{1}{12}$ of it: *hères ex asse*, heir of the whole estate; *hères ex dodrante*, heir of $\frac{1}{12}$.

647. COMPUTATION OF MONEY.—In all sums of money the common unit of computation was the *sēstertius*, also called *nummus*; but four special points deserve notice:

I. In all sums of money, the units, tens, and hundreds are denoted by *sēstertiū* with the proper cardinals:

Quīque sēstertiī, 5 *sesterces*; vīginti sēstertiī, 20 *sesterces*; ducentī sēstertiī, 200 *sesterces*.

II. One thousand sesterces are denoted by *mille sēstertiū*, or *mille sēstertium*.

III. In sums less than 1,000,000 sesterces, the thousands are denoted either (1) by *mīlia sēstertium* (gen. plur.), or (2) by *sēstertia*:

Duo mīlia sēstertium, or duo sēstertia, 2,000 *sesterces*; quīque mīlia sēstertium, or quīque sēstertia, 5,000 *sesterces*.

NOTE.—With *sēstertia* the distributives are generally used, as, *bīna sēstertia*.

IV. In sums containing one or more millions of sesterces, *sēstertium* with the value of 100,000 sesterces is used with the proper numeral adverb, *decies*, *viciēs*, etc. Thus—

Decies sēstertium, 1,000,000 ($10 \times 100,000$) sesterces; viciēs sēstertium, 2,000,000 ($20 \times 100,000$) sesterces.

1. **SESTERTIUM.**—In the examples under IV., *sēstertium* is treated as a neuter noun in the singular, though originally it was probably the genitive plural of *sēstertius*, and the full expression for 1,000,000 sesterces was *Decies centēna mīlia sēstertium*. *Centēna mīlia* was afterward generally omitted, and finally *sēstertium* lost its force as a genitive plural, and became a neuter noun in the singular, capable of declension.

2. Sometimes *sēstertium* is omitted, leaving only the numeral adverb: as, *decies*, 1,000,000 sesterces.

3. The sign HS is often used for *sēstertiū*, and sometimes for *sēstertia*, or *sēstertium*: Decem HS = 10 *sesterces* (HS = *sēstertiū*). Dēna HS = 10,000 *sesterces* (HS = *sēstertia*). Decies HS = 1,000,000 *sesterces* (HS = *sēstertium*).

648. WEIGHTS AND MEASURES.—The following weights and measures deserve mention:

I. The *Libra*, also called *Ās* or *Pondō*, equal to about $11\frac{1}{2}$ ounces avoirdupois, is the basis of Roman weights.

1. The *Libra*, like the *ās* in money, is divided into 12 parts.

II. The *Modius*, equal to about a peck, is the basis of dry measure.

III. The *Amphora*, containing a Roman cubic foot, equivalent to about seven gallons, is a convenient basis of liquid measure.

IV. The Roman *Pēs* or *Foot*, equivalent to about 11.6 inches, is the basis of long measure.

NOTE.—*Cubitus* is equivalent to $1\frac{1}{2}$ Roman feet, *passus* to 5, and *stadium* to 625.

V. The *Jūgerum*, containing 28,800 Roman square feet, equivalent to about six tenths of an acre, is the basis of square measure.

V. ROMAN NAMES.

649. A Roman citizen usually had three names. The first, or *prænomen*, designated the *individual*; the second, or *nōmen*, the *gēns* or *tribe*; and the third, or *cōgnōmen*, the *family*. Thus, *Pūblius Cornēlius Scīpiō* was *Pūblius* of the *Scīpiō* family of the *Cornelian* *gēns*, and *Gāius Jūlius Caesar* was *Gāius* of the *Caesar* family of the *Julian* *gēns*.

1. The *prænomen* was often abbreviated :

A. = Aulus.	M. = Mārcus.	S. (Sex.) = Sextus.
Ap. = Appius.	M'. = Mānius.	Ser. = Servius.
C. = Gāius.	Mam. = Māmercus.	Sp. = Spurius.
Cn. = Gnaeus.	N. = Numerius.	T. = Titus.
D. = Decimus.	P. = Pūblius.	Ti. (Tib.) = Tiberius.
L. = Lūcius.	Q. (Qu.) = Quīntus.	

2. Sometimes an *agnōmen* or *surname* was added. Thus *Scīpiō* received the surname *Āfricānus* from his victories in Africa : *Pūblius Cornēlius Scīpiō Āfricānus*.

3. An adopted son took (1) the full name of his adoptive father, and (2) an *agnōmen* in *anus* formed from the name of his own *gēns*. Thus *Octāvius* when adopted by Caesar became *Gāius Jūlius Caesar Octāviānus*. Afterward the title of *Augustus* was conferred upon him, making his full name *Gāius Jūlius Caesar Octāviānus Augustus*.

4. Women were generally known by the name of their *gēns*. Thus the daughter of *Jūlius Caesar* was simply *Jūlia*; of *Tullius Cicerō*, *Tullia*; of *Cornēlius Scīpiō*, *Cornēlia*. Three daughters in any family of the *Cornelian* *gēns* would be known as *Cornēlia*, *Cornēlia Secunda* or *Minor*, and *Cornēlia Tertia*.

650. Various abbreviations occur in classical authors :

A. D. = ante diem.	F. C. = faciendum cū-	Praef. = praefectus.
Aed. = aedilis.	rāvit.	Proc. = prōcōsul.
A. U. C. = annō urbis	Id. = Idūs.	Q. B. F. F. Q. S. = quod
conditae.	Imp. = imperātor.	bonum, fēlix, faus-
Cos. = cōsul.	K. (Kal.) = Kalendae.	tumque sit.
Coss. = cōsulēs.	Leg. = lēgātus.	Quir. = Quiritēs.
D. = divus.	Non. = Nōnae.	Resp. = rēs pūblica.
D. D. = dōnō dedit.	O. M. = optimus mǎx-	S. = senātus.
Des. = dēsīgnātus.	imus.	S. C. = senātūs cōsul-
D. M. = diīs mānibus.	P. C. = patrēs cōscrip-	tum.
D. S. = dē suō.	tī.	S. D. P. = salūtem dīcit
D. S. P. P. = dē suā	Pont. Max. = pontifex	pūrīmam.
pecūniā posuit.	māximus.	S. P. Q. R. = senātus
Eq. Rom. = eques Rō-	P. R. = populus Rō-	populusque Rōmānus.
mānus.	mānus.	Tr. Pl. = tribūnus plē-
F. = filius.	Pr. = praetor.	bis.

VI. VOWELS BEFORE TWO CONSONANTS OR A DOUBLE CONSONANT.

651. On the natural quantity¹ of vowels before two consonants, or a double consonant, observe—

I. That vowels are long before **ns**, **nf**, **gn**, **gm**, and generally before **j** :

cōnsciūs, cōnsēnsus, cōnsul, inscribō, insequor, instāns, insula, amāns, monēns, regēns, audiēns ; cōferō, cōficiō, infēlix, infēnsus, inferō; benīgnus, māgnus, rēgnum, sīgnum, āgmen, sēgmentum, hūjus.

II. That all vowels which represent diphthongs, or are the result of contraction, are long :²

exīstimō, amāsse, audīssem, intrōrsus,³ intrōrsus, prōrsus, quōrsus, rūsum, sūrsum, mälle, mällem, nölle, nöllem, nullus, ūllus,³ Mārs,³ Mārtis.

III. That the long vowels of Primitives are retained in Derivatives—

1. In āscō, ēscō, and īscō in Inceptives :

gelāscō, labāscō, acēscō, ārēscō, flōrēscō, latēscō, patēscō, silēscō, virēscō, ēdormiscō, obdormiscō, sciscō, cōnsciscō.

2. In large classes of words of which the following are examples :

crās-tinus, dūc-tilis, fās-tus, ne-fās-tus, flōs-culus, jūs-tus, in-jūs-tus, jūs-tissimus, jūs-titia, mātr-imōnium, ōs-culum, ōs-culor, ōs-tium, palūster, rās-trum, rōs-trum, rūs-ticus, salie-tum.

IV. That vowels are long in the ending of the Nominative Singular of nouns and adjectives with long increments in the Genitive :

frūx, lēx, lūx, pāx, plēbs, rēx, thōrāx, vōx.

V. That **e** is long before **x** in the Perfect Active in **ēxī** :

rēxī, rēxit ; tēxī, tēxērunt ; vēxī, vēximus ; dilēxit, dilēxērunt.

¹ It is often difficult, and sometimes absolutely impossible, to determine the natural quantity of vowels before two consonants, but the subject has of late received special attention from German orthoepists. An attempt has been made in this article to collect the most important results of these labors. The chief sources of information upon this subject are (1) ancient inscriptions, (2) Greek transcriptions of Latin words, (3) the testimony of ancient grammarians, (4) the modern languages, (5) the comic poets, and (6) etymology. See Brugmann, 'Grundriss der Vergleichenden Grammatik'; Osthoff, 'Zur Geschichte des Perfects im Indo-germanischen'; Seelmann, 'Die Aussprache des Latein'; Stolz, 'Lateinische Grammatik'; Vanicek, 'Etymologisches Wörterbuch der lateinischen Sprache'; Bouterwek und Tegge, 'Die altsprachliche Orthoepie'; Bünger, 'Die lateinische Quantität in positionslangen Silben'; Wiggert, 'Zur lateinischen Orthoepie'; Marx, 'Die Aussprache der lateinischen Vocale in positionslangen Silben'; Schmitz, 'Beiträge'; Ritschl, 'Rheinisches Museum,' vol. xxxi., pp. 481-492; Schöll, 'Acta Societatis Philologiae Lipsiēnsis,' vol. vi., pp. 71-215; Müller, 'Orthographiae et Prosodiae Latinae Summārium'; Foerster, 'Rheinisches Museum,' xxxiii., pp. 291-299.

² Though, like other long vowels, they were probably sometimes shortened before certain consonants: duōrum, duūm, duum; nostrōrum, nostrūm, nostrum; see VII. below, also 580, II.

³ *Intrōrsus* from *intrōversus*; *ūllus* from *ūnulus*; *Mārs* from *Mavors*.

VI. That long vowels occur in the following words and in their derivatives:

actiō	flictus	nūntius	rōstrum
actitō	fixi	nūpsi	sēscenti
actor	forma	nūptiae	sēstertius
actum	formōsus	nūptum	Sestius
actus	fractus	nūtriō	strūctor
ānxius	fructus	nūtrix	strūctūra
arātrum	illūstris	ōrdior	strūctus
ardeō	junctiō	ōrdō	strūxi
ātrium	junctus	ōrnāmentum	sūmpsi
axilla	jūnxi	ōrnō	sūmptus
bestia	lēcitiō	ōstia	taxillus
būstum	lēctor	ōstium	tēctor
calūmnia	lēctus	pāstor	tēctus
capēssō	līctor	pāstus	tristis
clāssis	lūctor	pāxillus	ūlterior
cōmpsi	lūctus	Pōlliō	ūltimus
cōmptus	lūxi	prīnceps	ūltrā
crispus	lūstrō	priscus	ūnctiō
cūctus	lūstrum	prōmpsi	ūnctitiō
cūstōdiō	Mārcus	prōmptus	ūnctor
cūstōs	māxilla	propinquus	ūnctūra
defōrmis	māximus	pūctus	ūnctus
dixi	mille	pūrgō	ūnxi
dūxi	mīstus	quārtus	ūstus
ēbrius	mīxtus	quīnque	ūsūrpō
ēptiō	nārō	quīntus	Vēstinus
ēemptus	nāscor	rāstrum	vēxillum
facēssō	Nōrba	rēctiō	victus
fēstus	nōrma	rēctor	villa
Fēstus	nōscō	rēctus	Vipsānius
fēstivus	nūndinae	Rōscius	vixi

VII. That vowels are probably short before **nt** and **nd**:

amant, amantis, monentis, prūdentis, prūdentia, amandus, regendus.

VIII. That the short vowels of Primitives are retained in Derivatives:

inter-nus, juven-tus, liber-tās, mūnus-culum, super-bus, vir-tūs.

IX. That vowels are generally short in the ending of the Nominative Singular of nouns and adjectives with short increments in the Genitive:

adeps, calix, dux, grex, hiems, jūdex, nex, nux.

NOTE.—Vowels before final *ns* are of course excepted.

X. That the first vowel in the following endings is short:

1. **ernus, ernius, erninus**; **urnus, urnius, urninus**:

māternus, Līternius, Līterninus, taciturnus, Sāturnius, Sāturninus.

2. **ustus, estus, ester, estis, esticus, estinus, estris**:

robustus, venustus, vetustus, honestus, modestus, campester, silvester, agrestis, caelestis, domesticus, clandestinus, terrestris.

XI. That all vowels are to be treated as short unless there are good reasons for believing them to be long.

INDEX OF VERBS.

THIS Index contains an alphabetical list, not only of all the simple verbs in common use which involve any important irregularities, but also of such compounds as seem to require special mention. In regard to compounds of prepositions (344) observe—

1. That the elements—preposition and verb—often appear in the compound in a changed form; see 344, 4-6.

2. That the stem-vowel is often changed in the Perfect and Supine; see 221.

A

Ab-dō,¹ ere, didi, ditum, 271.

Ab-iciō; see *iaciō*, 271, 2.

Ab-igō; see *agō*, 271, 2.

Aboleō, ēre, ēvī, itum, p. 124, foot-note 2.

Abolēscō, ere, olēvi, olitum, 277.

Ab-ripiō; see *rapio*, 274.

Abs-condō; see *abdō*, 271.

Ab-sum, 290, 1.

Ac-cendō, ere, ī, cēsum, 272, 3.

Ac-cidō; see *cadō*, 272; 301.

Ac-cinō; see *canō*, 271.

Ac-cipio; see *capiō*, 271, 2.

Ac-colō; see *colō*, 274.

Ac-cumbō, ere, cubui, cubitum, 273.

Ac-cēscō, ere, acui, —, 281.

Ac-quirō; see *quaerō*, 278.

Acuō, ere, ui, ūtum, 279.

Ad-dō; see *abdō*, 271; 255, I., 4.

Ad-fāri, p. 142, foot-note 5.

Ad-ferō, 292, 2.

Ad-imō; see *emō*, 271, 2.

Ad-ipīscor, ī, adeptus sum, 283, foot-note 1.

Ad-olēscō; see *abolēscō*, 277.

Ad-orior; see *orior*, 288, 2.

Ad-spicio; see *aspicio*, 217, 2.

Ad-stō, 259, N. 2.

Ad-sum, 290, 1.

Ag-gredior; see *gradior*, 283.

Ā-gnōscō; see *nōscō*, 278.

Agō, ere, ēgi, āctum, 271, 2.

Āiō, *def.*, 297, II.

Albeō, ēre, —, 262, N. 2.

Algeō, ēre, alsi, —, 265.

Al-liciō, ere, lexi, lectum, 217, 2; p. 130, foot-note 8.

Alō, ere, alui, alitum, altum, 278.

Amb-igō; see *agō*, 271, 2.

Amb-iō, 295, N. 2.

Amiciō, ire, ui (xī), tum, 285.

Amō, 205.

Amplector, ī, amplexus sum, 283.

Angō, ere, ānxi, —, 272, N. 1.

An-nuō, ere, ī, —, 272, N. 1.

Ante-capiō, p. 128, foot-note 14.

Apage, *def.*, 297, III.

Aperiō, ire, ui, tum, 285.

Apīscor, ī, aptus sum, 283.

Ap-pareō; see *pareō*, 262; 301.

Ap-pectō; see *petō*, 278.

Ap-plicō; see *plicō*, 258.

Ap-pōnō; see *pōnō*, 273.

Ārcēssō, ere, īvī, itum, 278.

Ārdeō, ēre, ārsi, ārsus, 265.

Ārēscō, ere, āruī, —, 281.

Arguō, ere, ui, ūtum, 279.

Ar-ripiō; see *rapio*, 274.

A-scendō; see *scandō*, 272, 3.

A-spergō; see *spargō*, 270.

A-spicio, ere, spēxi, spectrum, 217, 2.

As-sentior, īrī, sēnsus sum, 288, 2.

As-sideō; see *sedeō*, 267, 2.

At-texō; see *texō*, 274.

At-tineō; see *teneō*, 263.

At-tingō; see *tangō*, 271.

At-tollō; see *tollō*, 271.

Audeō, ēre, ausus sum, 268, 3.

Audiō, 211.

Au-ferō, 292, 2.

Augeō, ēre, auxi, auctum, 264.

Avē, *acf.*; see *havē*, 297, III.

¹ Final *ō* in verbs is sometimes shortened, though rarely in the best writers.

B

- Balbūtīō, ire, —, 284, N. 2.
 Batuō, ere, i, —, 272, N. 1.
 Bibō, ere, i, —, 272, N. 1.
 Blandior, iri, itus sum, 288.

C

- Cadō, ere, cecidi, cāsum, 272.
 Caecūtīō, ire, —, 284, N. 2.
 Caedō, ere, cecidi, caesum, 272.
 Calēscō, ere, calui, —, 281.
 Calveō, ēre, —, 262, N. 2.
 Candeō, ēre, ui, 262, N. 1.
 Candō, p. 129, foot-note 14.
 Cāneō, ēre, —, 262, N. 2.
 Canō, ere, cecini, cantum, 271.
 Capōssō, ere, ivi, itum, 278.
 Capiō, ere, cēpi, captum, 217; 218; 271, 2.
 Carpō, ere, si, tum, 269.
 Caveō, ēre, cavi, cautum, 266.
 Cēdō, ere, cecsi, cessum, 270.
 Cedo, *def.*, 297, III.
 Cellō, *obs.*; see *excellō*, 273, N.
 Cēnō, 257, N. 2.
 Cēnseō, ēre, ui, cēnsum, 268.
 Cernō, ere, crēvi, crētum, 277.
 Cieō, ēre, clvi, citum, 265, N.
 Cingō, ere, cinxī, cinctum, 269.
 Cio, 265, N.
 Circum-agō, p. 128, foot-note 13.
 Circum-dō, 255, I., 4; 259, N. 1.
 Circum-sistō; see *sistō*, 271.
 Circum-stō, 255, I., 4.
 Clangō, ere, —, 272, N. 2.
 Claudio, ere, clausi, clausum, 270.
 Claudō, ere, — (*to be lame*), 272, N. 2.
 Co-arguō; see *arguō*, 279.
 Co-emō, p. 128, foot-note 15.
 Coepi, *def.*, 297.
 Cō-gnōscō; see *nōscō*, 278.
 Cogō, ere, cōgī, cōactum; see *agō*, 271, 2.
 Col-lidō; see *laedō*, 270.
 Col-ligō; see *legō*, 271, 2.
 Col-luceō; see *luceō*, 265.
 Colō, ere, ui, cultum, 274.
 Com-edō, 291, N. 3.
 Com-miniscor, i, commentus sum, 283.
 Com-moveō; see *moveō*, 266.
 Com-parcō (*percō*); see *parcō*, 272.
 Com-periō, ire, peri, pertum, 287, N.
 Compēsco, ere, pēscui, —, 273, N.
 Com-pingō; see *pangō*, 271.
 Com-plector, i, plexus sum.
 Com-pleō, ēre, ēvi, ētum, 261.
 Com-primō; see *premō*, 270.
 Com-pungō, ere, pūxi, pūctum; see *pungō*, 271.

- Con-cidō; see *cadō*, 272.
 Con-cidō; see *caedō*, 272.
 Con-cinō; see *canō*, 271.
 Con-clūdō; see *claudō*, 270.
 Con-cupiscō, ere, cupivi, cupitum, 281, N.
 Con-cutiō; see *quatiō*, 270.
 Con-dō; see *abdō*, 271.
 Cōn-ferciō; see *faciō*, 286.
 Cōn-ferō, 292, 2.
 Cōn-ficiō; see *faciō*, 271, 2.
 Cōn-fit, *def.*, 297, III.
 Cōn-fiteor; see *fateor*, 268, 2.
 Cōn-fringō; see *frangō*, 271, 2.
 Con-gruō, ere, i, —, 272, N. 1.
 Cōn-liveō, ēre, nīvi, nixi, —, 265, 267, 3.
 Cōnor, 260.
 Cōn-serō; see *serō*, 277, N.
 Cōn-sistō; see *sistō*, 271.
 Cōn-spiciō, ere, spēxi, spectrum, 217, 2.
 Cōn-sistūō; see *statuō*, 279.
 Cōn-stō, 301; see *stō*, 259.
 Cōnsulō, ere, ui, tum, 274.
 Con-temnō; see *temnō*, 272, N. 2.
 Con-texō; see *texō*, 274.
 Con-tingō; see *tangō*, 271; 301.
 Convalēscō, ere, valui, valitum, 281, N.
 Coquō, ere, coxi, coctum.
 Cor-ripiō; see *rapio*, 274.
 Cor-ruō; see *ruō*, 279.
 Crēbrēscō, ere, crēbrui, —, 282, N.
 Crēdō, ere, crēdidi, crēditum, 271.
 Crepō, āre, ui, itum, 258.
 Crēscō, ere, crēvi, crētum, 277.
 Cubō, āre, ui, itum, 258.
 Cūdō, ere, cūdi, cūsum, 272, 3.
 Cumbō; see *accumbō*, 273.
 Cupiō, ere, ivi, itum, 217, 1; 278.
 Currō, ere, cucurri, cursum, 272.

D

- Dēbeō, 262.
 Dē-cerpō, ere, si, tum, p. 127, foot-note 2.
 Decet, *impers.*, 299.
 Dē-dō; see *abdō*, 271.
 Dē-fendō, ere, i, fēsum, 272, 3.
 Dē-fetiscor; see *fatiscor*, 283.
 Dē-fit, *def.*, 297, III.
 Dēgō, ere, dēgi; see *agō*, 271, 2.
 Dēlectō, *impers.*, 301.
 Dēleō, ēre, ēvi, ētum, 261.
 Dē-ligō; see *legō*, 271, 2.
 Dē-micō; see *micō*, 258.
 Dēmō, ere, dēmpsi, dēptum.
 Dē-pangō; see *pangō*, 271.
 Dē-primō; see *premō*, 270.
 Depso, ere, ui, itum, tum, 273.
 Dē-scendō; see *scandō*, 272, 3.

Dē-siliō; see *salīō*, 285.
 Dē-sipiō; see *sapiō*, 278.
 Dē-sum, 290, I.
 Dē-tendō; see *tendō*, 271.
 Dē-tineō; see *teneō*, 263.
 Dē-vertor; see *vertō*, 272, 3.
 Dicō, ere, dixi, dictum, 238.
 Dif-ferō, 292, 2.
 Di-gnōscō; see *nōscō*, 278.
 Di-ligō; see *legō*, 271, 2.
 Di-micō; see *micō*, 258.
 Di-rigō, ere, rēxi, rectum, p. 127,
 foot-note 2.
 Discō, ere, didici, —, 271.
 Dis-crepō; see *crepō*, 258.
 Dis-cumbō; see *accumbō*, 273.
 Dis-pertior; see *partior*, 288.
 Dis-pliceō; see *placeō*, 262.
 Dis-sideō; see *sedeō*, 267, 2.
 Di-stinguō; see *exstinguō*, 269.
 Di-stō, 259, N. 2.
 Dītēscō, ere, —, 282.
 Dividō, ere, visi, visum, 270.
 Dō, dare, dedi, datum, 259.
 Doceō, ēre, ui, ductum, 263.
 Dolet, *impers.*, 301.
 Domō, āre, ui, itum, 258.
 Dōnō, 259.
 Ducō, ere, dūxi, ductum, 269; 238.
 Dulcēscō, ere, —, 282.
 Duplicō, p. 123, foot-note 6.
 Dūrēscō, ere, dūruī, —, 282, N.

E

Edō, ere, ēdi, ēsum, 272, 2; 291.
 Ef-fāri, p. 142, foot-note 5.
 Egeō, ere, ui, —, 262, N. 1.
 Ē-licio, ere, ui, itum, 273.
 Ē-ligō; see *legō*, 271, 2.
 Ē-micō; see *micō*, 258.
 Ēmineō, ēre, ui, —, 262, N. 1.
 Emō, ere, ēmi, emptum, 271, 2.
 Ē-necō, āre, ui, tum, 258.
 Eō, ire, iui, itum, 295.
 Ēsuriō, ire, —, itum, 284, N. 2.
 Ē-vādō, ere, vāsi, vāsum, 270.
 Ex-ārdēscō, ere, ārsi, ārsum, 281, N.
 Excellō, ere, ui (rare), —, 273, N.
 Ex-clūdō; see *claudō*, 270.
 Ex-currō; see *currō*, 272.
 Ex-olēscō; see *abolēscō*, 277.
 Ex-pergīscor, I, experrēctus sum, 283.
 Ex-perior, iri, pertus sum, 288, 2.
 Ex-pleō; see *compleō*, 261.
 Ex-pliō; see *placō*, 258.
 Ex-plōdō; see *plaudō*, 270.
 Ex-stinguō, ere, stinxī, stinctum, 269.
 Ex-stō, 259, N. 2.
 Ex-tendō; see *tendō*, 271.
 Ex-tollō; see *tollō*, 271.

F

Facēssō, ere, iui, I, itum, 278.
 Faciō, ere, feci, factum, 217, 1; 238;
 271, 2.
 Fallō, ere, fefelli, falsum, 272.
 Farcio, ire, farsī, fartum, farctum, 286
Fari, def., 297, II.
 Fateor, ēri, fassus sum, 268, 2.
 Fatiscō, ere, —, 272, N. 2.
 Fatiscor, I, —, 283.
 Faveō, ēre, fāvi, fautum, 266.
 Fendō, *obs.*; see *defendō*, 272, 3.
 Feriō, ire, —, 284, N. 2.
 Ferō, ferre, tulī, latum, 292.
 Ferōciō, ire, —, 284, N. 2.
 Ferveō, ēre, fervi, ferbul, —, 267, 3.
 Fidō, ere, fisis sum, 283.
 Figō, ere, fixi, fixum, 270.
 Findō, ere, fidī, fissum, 272, 3.
 Fingō, ere, finxi, fictum.
 Finiō, 284.
 Fiō, fieri, factus sum, 294.
 Flāveō, ēre, —, 262, N. 2.
 Flectō, ere, flēxi, flexum, 270.
 Fleō, ēre, ēvi, etum, 261.
 Floreō, ēre, ui, —, 262, N. 1.
 Flōrēscō, ere, flōruī, —, 281.
 Fluō, ere, flūxi, fluxum, 279, N.
 Fodiō, ere, fodī, fossum, 217, 1; 272, 2
Forem, def., 204, 2; 297, III, 2.
 Foveō, ēre, fōvi, fōtum, 266.
 Frangō, ere, frēgi, fractum, 271, 2.
 Fremō, ere, ui, itum, 273.
 Frendō, ere, —, fressum, frēsum, 270
 Fricō, āre, ui, atum, tum, 258.
 Frigeō, ēre, frīxi (rare), —, 265.
 Frondeō, ere, ui, —, 262, N. 1.
 Fruor, I, fructus, fruitus sum, 283.
 Fugiō, ere, fugi, fugitum, 217, 1
 271, 2.
 Fulciō, ire, fulsi, fultum, 286.
 Fulgeō, ēre, fulsi, —, 265.
 Fulgō, 265, foot-note 5.
 Fulminat, *impers.*, 300.
 Fundō, ere, fudi, fūsum, 272, 2.
 Fungor, I, functus sum, 283.
 Furō, ere, ui, —, 273, N.

G

Ganniō, ire, —, 284, N. 2.
 Gaudeō, ēre, gāvīsus sum, 268, 3.
 Gemō, ere, u, itum, 273.
 Gerō, ere, gessi, gestum, 269.
 Gignō, ere, genui, genitum, 273.
 Gliscō, ere, —, 272, N. 2.
 Gradior, I, gressus sum, 217, 3; 283
 Grandēscō, ere, —, 282.
 Grandinat, *impers.*, 300.
 Gravēscō, ere, —.

H

- Habeō, 262.
 Haereō, ēre, haesi, haesum, 265.
 Hauriō, ire, hausī, haustum, haustū-
 rus, hausūrus, 286.
 Havē, *def.*, 297, III.
 Hebeō, ēre, —, 262, N. 2.
 Hīscō, ere, —, 272, N. 2.
 Honorō, 257.
 Horreō, ēre, ui, —, 262, N. 1.
 Hortor, 232; 260.
 Humeō, ēre, —, 262, N. 2.

I

- Icō, ere, icī, ictum, 272, 3.
 Ī-gnōscō; see *nōscō*, 278.
 Il-liciō, ere, lēxi, lectum, 217, 2.
 Il-lidō; see *laedō*, 270.
 Imbuō, ere, ui, ūtum, 279.
 Immineō, ēre, —, 262, N. 2.
 Im-parcō; see *parcō*, 272.
 Im-pertior; see *partior*, 288.
 Im-pingō; see *pingō*, 271.
 Im-pleō, p. 124, foot-note 1.
 In-cendō; see *accendo*, 272, 3.
 Incēssō, ere, ivi, i, —, 278.
 In-cidō; see *cudō*, 272.
 In-cidō; see *caedō*, 272.
 In-crepō; see *crepō*, 258.
 Il-crēscō; see *crēscō*, 277.
 In-cumbō; see *accumbō*, 273.
 In-cutiō; see *quatiō*, 270.
 Ind-igeō, ēre, ui, —; see *egeō*, 262, N. 1.
 Ind-ipiscor; see *apiscor*, 283.
 In-dō; see *abdō*, 271.
 Indulgeō, ēre, dulsi, dultum, 264.
 Ineptiō, ire, —, 284, N. 2.
 In-ferō, 292, 2.
 Īnfīt, *def.*, 297, III.
 Ingruō, ere, i, —, 272, N. 1.
 In-nōtāscō, ere, notui, 282, N.
 In-olēscō; see *abolēscō*, 277.
 Inquam, *def.*, 297, II.
 In-sideō; see *sedeō*, 267, 2.
 In-spiciō, ere, spēxi, spectum.
 Īn-stō; see *stō*, 259.
 Intel-legō; see *legō*, 271, 2.
 Interest, *impers.*, 301.
 Inter-nōscō; see *nōscō*, 278.
 In-veterāscō, ere, rāvi, rātum, 281, N.
 Īrāscor, i, —, 283.
 Ir-ruō; see *ruō*, 279.

J

- Jaciō, ere, jēci, jactum, 217, 1; 271, 2.
 Jubeō, ēre, jussi, jussum, 265.
 Jūrō, 257, N. 2.
 Juvenēscō, ere, —.
 Juvō, āre, jūvi, jūtum, 259, 2; 301.

L

- Lābor, i, lāpsus sum, 283.
 Laccēssō, ere, ivi, itum, 278.
 Laciō, *obs.*; see *allīciō*, p. 130, foot-
 note 8; 217, 2.
 Lactēō, ēre, —, 262, N. 1.
 Laedō, ere, laesi, laesum, 270.
 Lambō, ere, i, —, 272, N. 1.
 Languēō, ere, i, —, 267, 3.
 Largior, iri, itus sum, 288.
 Lateō, ēre, ui, —, 262, N. 1.
 Lavō, āre, lāvi, lautum, lotum, lavā-
 tum, 259, 2.
 Legō, ere, lēgi, lēctum, 271, 2.
 Lēniō, 284.
 Libero, 257.
 Libet, *impers.*, 299.
 Liceor, ēri, itus sum, 268.
 Licet, *impers.*, 299.
 Linō, ere, livi, lēvi, litum, 278.
 Linquō, ere, liqui, —, 271, 2.
 Liqueō, ēre, liqui (licui), 267.
 Liqueat, *impers.*, 299.
 Liquor, i, —, 283.
 Loquor, i, locutus sum, 283.
 Lūceō, ēre, lūxi, —, 265.
 Lūcēscit, *impers.*, 300.
 Lūdo, ere, lūsi, lūsum, 270.
 Lūgeō, ēre, lūxi, —, 265.
 Luō, ere, luī, —.

M

- Macrēscō, ere, macrui, —, 282, N.
 Madeō, ere, ui, —, 262, N. 1.
 Madēscō, ere, madui, —.
 Maereō, ēre, —, 262, N. 2.
 Mālō, mālī, mālui, —, 293.
 Mandō, ere, i, mansum, 272, 3.
 Maneō, ēre, mansi, mānsum, 265.
 Matrēscō, ere, maturui, —, 282, N.
 Medeor, ēri, —, 268, 2.
 Memini, *def.*, 297, I.
 Mentior, iri, itus sum, 286.
 Mereor, ēri, itus sum, 268.
 Mergō, ere, mersi, mersum, 270.
 Mētor, iri, mēnsus sum, 288, 2.
 Metō, ere, messui, messum, 275.
 Metuō, ere, ui, —, 272, N. 1.
 Mico, āre, ui, —, 258.
 Minīscor, *obs.*; see *commīnīscor*, 283.
 Minuō, ere, ui, ūtum, 279.
 Miror, 260.
 Misceō, ēre, miscui, mīstum, mīxtum,
 263.
 Misereor, ēri, itus or tus sum, 268, 2.
 Miseret, *impers.*, 299.
 Mitescō, ere, —, 282.
 Mittō, ere, misi, missum, 270.
 Mōlior, iri, itus sum, 284.

Mollēscō, ere, —, 282.
Molo, ere, uī, itum, 273.
Moneō, ēre, uī, itum, 207; 262.
Mordeō, ēre, momordi. morsum, 267.
Morior, i (iri), mortuus sum, 217, 3; 283.
Moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtum, 266.
Mulceō, ēre, mulsi, mulsum, 265.
Mulgeō, ēre, mulsi, mulsum, 265.
Multiplicō, p. 123, foot-note 6.
Muniō, 284.

N

Nancīscor, i, nactus (nactus) sum, 283.
Nāscor, i, nātus sum, 283.
Necō, p. 123, foot-note 4.
Nectō, ere, nēxī, nexuī, nexum, 270; 275.
Neg-legō, ere, lēxī, lēctum; see *legō*, 271, 2.
Neō, ēre, nēvī, nētum, 261.
Ne-queō, ire, ivī, itum, 296.
Nigrēscō, ere, nigrul, —.
Ningō, ere, nīlxī, —, 272, N. 1.
Niteō, ēre, uī, —, 262, N. 1.
Nitor, i, nisus, nixus sum, 283.
Noceō, 262.
Nolō, nolle, nōluī, —, 293.
Nominō, 257.
Nōscō, ere, nōvī, nōtum, 278.
Nūbō, ere, nūpsi, nūptum, 269.
Nūpturiō, ire, ivī, —, 284, N. 2.

O

Ob-dō; see *abdō*, 271.
Ob-dormiscō, ere, dormivī, dormitum, 281, N.
Oblivīscor, i, oblitus sum, 283.
Ob-mūtēscō, ere, mūtui, —, 282, N.
Ob-sideō; see *sedeō*, 267, 2.
Ob-solēscō; see *abolēscō*, 277.
Ob-stō; see *stō*, 259.
Ob-surdēscō, ere, surduī, —.
Ob-tineō; see *teneō*, 263.
Oc-cidō; see *cadō*, 272.
Oc-cidō; see *caedō*, 272.
Oc-cinō; see *canō*, 271.
Oc-cipiō; see *capīō*, 271, 2.
Occulō, ere, uī, tum, 274.
Odi, *def.*, 297, 1.
Of-tendō; see *defendō*, 272, 3.
Of-ferō, 292, 2.
Oleō, ēre, uī, —, 262, N. 1.
Olēscō, *obsolete*; see *abolēscō*, 277.
Operiō, ire, uī, tum, 285.
Oportet, *impers.*, 299.
Op-perior, iri, pertus, peritus sum, 288, 2.
Ōrdior, iri, ōrsus sum, 288, 2.

Orior, iri, ortus sum, 288, 2.
Os-tendō; see *tendō*, 271.
Ovat, *def.*, 297, III.

P

Paīscor, i, pactus sum, 283.
Paenitet, *impers.*, 299.
Palleō, ēre, uī, —, 262, N. 1.
Pandō, ere, i, pānsu, passu, 272, 3.
Pangō, ere, pepigi, pactum, 271.
Pangō, ere, panxi, pēgi, pactum, 271.
Parcō, ere, peperci (parsī), parsum, 272.
Pareō, ēre, uī, itum, 262.
Pariō, ere, peperī, partum, 217, 1; 271.
Partior, iri, itus sum, 288.
Parturiō, ire, ivī, —, 284, N. 2.
Pāscō, ere, pāvi, pāstum, 276.
Pateō, ēre, uī, —, 262, N. 1.
Patior, i, passus sum, 217, 3; 283.
Paveō, ēre, pāvi, —, 266.
Pectō, ere, pēxi, pexum, 270.
Pel-licio, ere, lēxi, lectum, 217, 2.
Pellō, ere, pepuli, pulsum, 272.
Pendeō, ēre, pependi, pēsum, 267.
Pendō, ere, pependi, pēsum, 272.
Per-agō, p. 123, foot-note 13.
Per-cellō; see *excellō*, 273, N.
Per-censeō; see *censeō*, 263.
Per-dō, ere, didi, ditum; see *abāō*, 271.
Pērgō (*for* per-rigō), ere, perrēxi, perrēctum; see *regō*, 269.
Per-petior; see *patior*, 283.
Per-stō; see *stō*, 259.
Per-taedet, p. 143, foot-note 8.
Per-tineō; see *teneō*, 263.
Pessum-dō, 259, N. 1.
Petō, ere, ivī, itum, 278.
Piget, *impers.*, 299.
Pīngō, ere, pīnxi, pīctum.
Pīnsō (pisō), ere, i, uī, pīnsitum, pīstum, pīsum, 272, 3; 273.
Placeō, 262; 301.
Plaudō, ere, si, sum, 270.
Plectō, ere, plexi, plexum, 270.
Plector; see *amplector*, 283.
Pleō, *obsolete*; see *compleō*, 261.
Plicō, āre, āvi, uī, atum, itum, 258.
Pluō, ere, i *or* plūvi, —, 272, N. 1; 300.
Polleō, ēre, —, 262, N. 2.
Polliceor, ēri, itus sum, 268.
Pōnō, ere, posui, positum, 273.
Poscō, ere, poposci, —, 272.
Pos-sideō; see *sedeō*, 267, 2.
Possum, posse, potui, —, 290, II.
Potior, iri, itus sum, 288.

Pōtō, āre, āvī, ātum, um, 257, N. 1.
 Prae-cinō; see *canō*, 271.
 Prae-curro; see *curro*, 272.
 Prae-sideō; see *sedeō*, 267, 2.
 Prae-stō; see *stō*, 259; 301.
 Prae-sum, 290, I.
 Prae-vertor; see *vertō*, 272, 3.
 Prandeō, ēre, ī, prāsum, 267, 3.
 Prehendō, ere, ī, hēsum, 272, 3.
 Premō, ere, pressi, pressum, 270.
 Prēndō, p. 130, foot-note 1.
 Prōd-igō; see *agō*, 271.
 Prō-dō; see *abdō*, 271.
 Profiscor, ī, profectus sum, 283.
 Pro-fiteor; see *fateor*, 268, 2.
 Prōmō, ere, prōmpsi, prōptum.
 Prō-sum, prōdesse, prōfuī, —, 290, III.

Prō-tendō; see *tendō*, 271.
 Psallō, ere, ī, —, 272, N. 1.
 Pudet, *impers.*, 299.
 Puerāscō, ere, —, 282.
 Pūgnō, 257.
 Pungō, ere, pupugī, pūnetum, 271.
 Pūniō, 284.

Q

Quaerō, ere, quaesivī, quaesitum, 278.
 Quaesō, *def.*, 297, III.
 Quatiō, ere, quassī, quassum, 217, 1; 270.
 Queō, īre, ivī, itum, 296.
 Queror, ī, questus sum, 283.
 Quiēscō, ere, quiēvī, quiētum, 277.

R

Rādō, ere, rāsī, rāsum, 270.
 Rapiō, ere, rapuī, raptum, 217, 1; 274.
 Rauciō, īre, rausī, rausum, 287.
 Re-cēseō; see *cēseō*, 263.
 Re-cidō; see *cadō*, 272.
 Re-cidō; see *caedō*, 272.
 Re-crūdēscō, ere, crūdī, 282, N.
 Red-arguō; see *arguō*, 279.
 Red-dō; see *abdō*, 271.
 Re-fellō; see *fallō*, 272.
 Re-ferō; see *ferō*, 292.
 Rēfert, *impers.*, 301.
 Regō, ere, rēxi, rēctum, 209; 269.
 Re-linguō; see *linguō*, 271, 2.
 Re-miniscor, ī, —, 283.
 Renideō, ēre, —, 262, N. 2.
 Reor, rērī, ratus sum, 268, 2.
 Re-pangō; see *pangō*, 271.
 Re-parcō; see *parcō*, 272.
 Re-periō, īre, perī, pertum, 287, N.
 Re-plicō, p. 123, foot-note 6.
 Re-sideō; see *sedeō*, 267, 2.
 Re-sipeō; see *sapiō*, 278.

Re-sonō; see *sonō*, 258.
 Re-spergō; see *spargō*, 270.
 Re-spondeō, 255, I., 4.
 Re-tendō; see *tendō*, 271.
 Re-tineō; see *teneō*, 263.
 Re-vertor; see *vertō*, 272, 3.
 Re-viviscō, ere, vixī, victum, 281, N.
 Rideō, ēre, risī, risum, 265.
 Ringor, ī, rictus sum, 283.
 Rōdō, ere, rōsī, rōsum, 270.
 Rōrat, *impers.*, 300.
 Rubeō, ēre, uī, —, 262, N. 1.
 Rudō, ere, ivī, itum, 278.
 Rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptum, 271, 2.
 Ruō, ere, ruī, rutum, ruitūrus, 279.

S

Saepiō, īre, psi, ptum, 286.
 Sagiō, īre, —, 284, N. 2.
 Saliō, īre, uī (ii), tum, 285.
 Salvē, *def.*, 297, III.
 Sanciō, īre, sauxī, sancitum, sanctum, 286.
 Sapiō, ere, ivī, uī, —, 217, 1; 278.
 Sarciō, īre, sarsi, sartum, 286.
 Sat-agō; see *agō*, 271, 2.
 Satis-dō, 259, N. 1.
 Satis-faciō, p. 129, foot-note 1.
 Scabō, ere, scābī, —, 271, 2.
 Scandō, ere, dī, scāsum, 272, 3.
 Scindō, ere, scidī, scissum, 272, 3.
 Sciō, 284.
 Sciscō, ere, scivī, scitum, 281, N.
 Secō, āre, uī, tum, 258.
 Sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessum, 267.
 Se-ligō; see *legō*, 271, 2.
 Sentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēsum, 287.
 Sepeliō, īre, ivī, sepultum, 284.
 Sequor, ī, secūtus sum, 283.
 Serō, ere, sēvī, satum, 277, N.
 Serō, ere, seruī, sertum, 274.
 Sīdō, ere, ī, —, 272, N. 1.
 Sileō, ēre, uī, —, 262, N. 1.
 Sinō, ere, sivi, situm, 278.
 Sistō, ere, stitī, statum, 271.
 Sitiō, īre, ivī, —, 284.
 Soleō, ēre, solitus sum, 268, 3.
 Solvō, ere, solvī, solūtum, 272, 3.
 Sonō, āre, uī, itum, 258.
 Sorbeō, ēre, uī, —, 262, N. 1.
 Sortior, īrī, itus sum, 288.
 Spargō, ere, sparsi, sparsum, 270.
 Speciō, *obs.*, 217, 2.
 Spērnō, ere, sprēvī, sprētum, 277.
 Spērō, 257.
 Splendeō, ēre, uī, —, 262, N. 1.
 Spondeō, ēre, spopondī, spōnsum, 267.
 Squaleō, ēre, —, 262, N. 2.

Statuō, ere, uī, ūtum, 279.
 Sternō, ere, strāvī, strātum, 276.
 Sternuō, ere, ī, —, 272, N. 1.
 Stertō, ere, uī, —, 273, N.
 Stinguō, ere, —, p. 127, foot-note 3.
 Stō, āre, stetī, stātum, 259.
 Strepō, ere, uī, itum, 273.
 Strideō, ēre, strīdī, —, 267, 3.
 Strīdō, ere, ī, —, 272, N. 1.
 Struō, ere, strūxī, strūctum, 279, N.
 Studeō, ēre, uī, —, 262, N. 1.
 Stupeō, ēre, uī, —, 266.
 Suādeō, ēre, sī, sum, 265.
 Sub-dō, ere, didī, ditum; see *abdō*, 271.
 Sub-igō; see *agō*, 271, 2.
 Sub-siliō; see *salīō*, 285.
 Suc-cēdō; see *cēdō*, 270.
 Suc-cendō; see *accendō*, 272, 3.
 Suc-cēnseō; see *cēnseō*, 263.
 Suc-cidō; see *cadō*, 272.
 Suc-cidō; see *caedō*, 272.
 Suc-crēscō; see *crēscō*, 277.
 Suēscō, ere, suēvī, suētum, 277.
 Suf-ferō, 292, 2.
 Suf-ficiō; see *faciō*, 271, 2.
 Suf-fodiō; see *fodiō*, 272, 2.
 Sug-gerō; see *gerō*, 269.
 Sum, esse, fui, —, 203, 1; 204.
 Sūmō, ere, pī, ptum, 269.
 Superbiō, īre, —, 284, N. 2.
 Super-jaciō, p. 129, foot-note 2.
 Supplicō, 258, foot-note.
 Sup-pōnō; see *pōnō*, 273.
 Surgō (*for* sur-rigō), ere, surrēxī, surrēctum; see *regō*, 269.

T

Taceō, 262.
 Taedet, *impers.*, 299.
 Tangō, ere, tetigī, tactum, 271.
 Temnō, ere, —, 272, N. 2.
 Tendō, ere, tetendī, tentum, tēsum, 271.
 Teneō, ēre, uī, tum, 263.
 Tepēscō, ere, tepuī, —, 281.
 Tergeō, ēre, tersī, tersum, 265; p. 128, foot-note 3.
 Tergō, ere, tersī, tersum, 270.
 Terō, ere, trīvī, trītum, 278.
 Texō, ere, uī, tum, 274.
 Timeō, ēre, uī, —, 262, N. 1.
 Tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātum, 271.

Tondeō, ēre, totondī, tōnsum, 267.
 Tonō, āre, uī (itum), 258; 300.
 Torpeō, ēre, uī, —, 262, N. 1.
 Torqueō, ēre, torsi, tortum, 264.
 Torreō, ēre, torruī, tostum, 263.
 Trā-dō; see *abdō*, 271.
 Trahō, ere, traxī, tractum, 269.
 Tremō, ere, uī, —, 273, N.
 Tribuō, ere, uī, ūtum, 279.
 Trūdō, ere, trūsī, trūsum, 270.
 Tueor, ēri, tuitus, tūtus sum, 268.
 Tundō, ere, tutudī, tūsum, tūsum, 272.
 Turgeō, ere, tursī (*rare*), —, 265.
 Tussiō, īre, 284, N. 2.

U

Ulcīscor, ī, ultus sum, 283.
 Urgeō, ēre, ursī, —, 265.
 Ūrō, ere, ussī, ūstum, 269.
 Ūtor, ī, ūsus sum, 283.

V

Vādō, ere, —, 272, N. 2.
 Vāgiō, īre, īvī, —, 284.
 Vehō, ere, vēxī, vectum, 269.
 Vellō, ere, velli (vulsī), vulsum, 272, 3.
 Vendō, ere, didī, ditum, 271.
 Vēn-eō, 295, 3.
 Veniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, 287, N.
 Vēnum-dō, 259, N. 1.
 Vereor, ēri, veritus sum, 268.
 Vergō, ere, —, 272, N. 2.
 Verrō, ere, verri, versum, 272, 3.
 Vertō, ere, tī, sum, 272, 3.
 Vector; see *vertō*, 272, 3.
 Vescor, ī, —, 283.
 Veterāscō, ere, rāvī, —, 276.
 Vetō, āre, uī, itum, 258.
 Videō, ēre, vidī, visum, 267, 2.
 Vilēscō, ere, viluī, —, 282, N.
 Vincīō, īre, vinxī, vinctum, 286.
 Vincō, ere, vicī, victum, 271, 2.
 Vireō, ēre, uī, —, 262, N. 1.
 Virēscō, ere, viruī, —, 281.
 Visō, ere, ī, um, 272, 3.
 Vivō, ere, vixī, victum, 269.
 Vocō, 257.
 Volō, velle, voluī, —, 293.
 Volvō, ere, volvī, volūtum, 272, 3.
 Vomō, ere, uī, itum, 273.
 Voveō, ēre, vōvī, vōtum, 266.

INDEX OF SUBJECTS.

NOTE.—The numbers refer to *articles*, not to *pages*. *Acc.* or *accus.* = accusative; *adjs.* = adjectives; *comp.* = composition; *compsds.* = compounds; *conj.* = conjugation; *conjunc.* = conjunction; *constr.* = construction; *ff.* = and the following; *gen.* or *genit.* = genitive; *gend.* = gender; *ger.* = gerund; *loc.* or *locat.* = locative; *preps.* = prepositions; *w.* = with.

It has not been thought advisable to overload this index with such separate words as may be readily referred to classes, or to general rules, or even with such exceptions as may be readily found under their respective heads. Accordingly, the numerous exceptions in Dec. III. are not inserted, as they may be best found under the respective endings, 69-115.

A

A, *ā*, sound, 5; 10 ff. *Ā* final shortened, 21, 2. *-A* in nom., accus., and voc. pl., 46, 2, 1). *A*-nouns, Decl. I., 48; *a*-verbs, 205. Nouns in *-a*, Decl. III., 69; quant. of increm., 585, I., 3; gender, III. *-A*, adverbs in, 304, I., 3. *-A*, prepositions in, p. 145, foot-note 11; p. 149, foot-note 2; adverbs in, 304, II., 2. *-A*, *-ā*, suffix, 320. *-A*, derivatives in, 326, 2. *A*, changed in compds., 344, 4, N. 1. *A* or *ā*, final, 580, I.; 580, III., N. 2; 581, III.; in increm. of decl., 585; 585, I.; conj., 586; 586, I. *A*, *ab*, *abs*, in compds., 344, 5; in compds., w. dat., 386, 2; w. abl., 434, N. 1. *Ab*, as adverb, 379, 2, N. *A*, *ab*, *abs*, with abl., 434; 434, I.; of agent, 388, 2; 415, I. *A*, *ab*, *abs*, 434, N. 2. *A*, *ab*, *abs*, designating abode, 446, N. 4. *A*, *ab*, w. ger., p. 316, foot-note 1.

Abbreviations, 649, 1; 650.

Abhinc, denoting interval, p. 230, foot-note 2; 430, N. 3.

Abis, *ēs* in, 581, VI., 1.

-abilis, *ā* in, 587, III., 2.

ABLATIVE, sing., original ending of, p. 20, foot-note 5. Abl. sing. in Decl. III., 62, II. ff.; 63, 2; 64, N. 3; in adjs., 154, notes 1 and 2; 157, N. Abl. plur., Decl. I., 49, 4; Decl. III., 68, 5; Decl. IV., 117.

ABLATIVE, translation of, 48, w. foot-note 4. Relations denoted, 367. Syntax, 411 ff. Abl. w. locat., 363, 4, 2; w. adjs., 391, II., 3; 400, 3;

w. *rēfert*, 408, I., 2; w. verbs of accusing, etc., 410, II., 3; w. verbs of condemning, 410, III. Abl. of place, 412; 425, ff.; separation, source, cause, 413 ff. Abl. w. comparat., 417. Instrumental abl., 418 ff. Abl. of accompaniment, 419; means, 420. Abl. in special constructions, 421. Abl. of price, 422; difference, 423; specification, 424. Locative abl., 425 ff. Abl. of time, 429. Abl. abs., 431. Abl. w. preps., 432; 434; 435; w. compds., 434, N. 1; w. adverbs, 437. Infm. in abl. abs., 439, IV.

Ablative sing. in *ā*, 581, III., 1.

-abrum, *ā* in, 587, I., 1.

Abs, in compds., 344, 5. *Abs* w. abl., 434; 434, N. 2.

Absente, constr., 438, 6, N.

Absolute Abl., 431.

Absolvō, constr., p. 219, foot-note 1.

Absque, w. alb., 434.

Abstineō, constr., p. 211, foot-note 5.

Abstract nouns, 39, 2, 2; plur., 130, 2 and 3. Abstract nouns from adjs., 325.

Absum, w. dat., p. 200, foot-note 2.

Abest, constr., p. 276, foot-note 2.

Abunde, w. gen., p. 209, foot-note 3.

-abundus, *ā* in, 587, III., 2.

-abus for *-is*, Decl. I., 49, 4.

Ac, 310, 1; 554, I.; meaning *as*, 451, 5; *than*, 459, 2; 554, I., 2, N. *Ac si*, 311, 2; w. subj. in conditions, 513, II.

Acatalectic, 603, N. 3.

Accent, rhythmic, 599.

Accentuation, 17 ff.

Accidit, constr., p. 276, foot-note 2.

Accingo, constr., 377.

Accommodatus w. dat., p. 205, foot-note 1.

Accompaniment, abl. of, 418 ff.

ACCUSATIVE, formation of, Decl. II., 51, 2, 6; Decl. III., 58, 1, 5; 62, II. ff.; 63, 1; 64, N. 2; 67, N. 2; 68, 2 and 6; in adjs., 154, N. 1; 158, 1.

ACCUSATIVE, syntax of, 370 ff. Direct object, 371 ff.; cognate, 371, I. and II.; acc. of effect, 371, I., 2, 2; w. verbal adjs. and nouns, 371, I., N.; w. compds., 372. Two accs., 373 ff. Predicate acc., 373, 1. Poetic acc., 377. Adverbial acc., 378 ff. Acc. of specification, 378; of time and space, 379; of limit, 380; poetical dat. for, 380, 4. Acc. in exclam., 381. Acc. for gen., 407. Acc. w. *refert* and *interest*, 408, I., 3; w. preps., 432; 433; 435; w. adverbs, 437; as object, w. infin., 534. Acc. as subj. of infin., 536. Acc. of ger., 542, III.

Accusative, Greek, in *-as*, 581, V., 2. Acc. plur. in *-ūs*, 581, IX., 2.

Accusing, constr. w. verbs of, 409, II.; 410, II.

Acer, decl., 153.

-aceus, adjs. in, 329; *ā* in, 587, III., 1. *Acies*, decl., 122, 2.

Acquitting, constr. w. verbs of, 409, II.

Acrum, *ā* in, 587, I., 1.

Action, repeated, in temp. clauses, 518, N. 2, 2; 518, 1.

Active voice, 195. Active and passive constr., 464.

-acundus, *ā* in, 587, III., 2.

Acus, decl., 117, 1; gend., 118.

Ad in compds., 344, 5; in compds. w. two accs., 376; w. dat., 386.

Ad w. acc., 433; 433, 1.; after adjs., 391, II., 1; w. *refert* and *interest*, 408, I., 3. *Ad* designating abode, 446, N. 4. *Ad* w. ger., p. 315, foot-note 5; denoting purpose, 542, III., N. 2.

Adēs, 551, N. 2; 554, I., 4.

-adēs, *a* in, 587, II., 1.

Adfatim w. gen., p. 209, foot-note 3; quant. of pen., p. 345, foot-note 2.

Adficiō w. abl., 420, 2.

Adfinis w. gen., p. 205, foot-note 3; p. 210, foot-note 3.

Adipiscor w. gen., 410, V., 3.

Adiaceō w. acc. or dat., p. 202, foot-note 1.

ADJECTIVE, 146; decl. of, 147 ff.; ir-

regular, 151; 159. Compar., 160 ff. Numerals, 172 ff.; decl. of, 175 ff. Demon., 186, 4. Rel., 187, 4. Inter., 188, 4. Derivation, 328 ff. Composition, 342. W. dat., 391; 400, 1; w. gen., 397, 3; 399; of gerund, p. 315, foot-note 2. Adj. for gen., 395, N. 2. Adj. w. abl., 400, 3; 414, III.; 416; 420; 421. Agreement, 438 ff. Use, 440. W. force of substantives, 441; of clauses, 442; of adverbs, 443. Compar., use, 444. Adj. separated from noun, 565, 3 and 4. Position of modifiers of adj., 566; of adj. w. gen., 565, 2.

Admiscēo w. dat., 385, 3; p. 201, foot-note 1.

Admodum, 304, I., 2.

Adnoneō, constr., 374, 2; p. 274, foot-note 1.

Admonishing, constr. w. verbs of, 409, I.; 410, I.

Adolescens, compar., 168, 4.

Adonic verse, 628, I.

Adopted son, how named, 649, 3.

Ador, quant. of increm., 585, II., 1.

Adūlor w. acc. or dat., p. 202, foot-note 1.

Adulter, decl., 51, 4, 3).

Adverbial acc., 378. Adverbial comparison, 170.

ADVERBS, 303 ff. Numeral adverbs, 181. Compar., 306. Adverbs w. nouns, 359, N. 4; 443, N. 4; w. dat., 392; w. gen., 397, 4. Adverbs as preps., 437. Adverbs for adjs., 443, N. 3. Use of adverbs, 551 ff. Position of modifiers of adverb, 568. Adverb between prep and case, 569, II., 3. *-ē* in adverbs, 581, IV., 4. Adverb redundant, 636, III., 7.

Adversative conjuncs., 310, 3; 554, III. Advers. asyndeton, p. 370, foot-note 1.

Adversum, *adversus*, w. acc., 433.

Ae, sound, 6; 12; changed to *i*, 344, 4, N. 2.

Aedēs, sing. and plur., 132.

Aeger, decl., 150.

Aegrē ferō, constr., p. 310, foot-note 2.

Aenēās, decl., 50.

Aequalis w. dat., p. 205, foot-note 1.

Aequi facere, 401, N. 4.

Aer, quant. of increm., 585, III., 4.

Aetās, decl., 58.

Aether, quant. of increm., 585, III., 4.

-aeus, adjs. in., 331.

Age, expression of, p. 222, foot-note 4.

Ages of Lat. literature, 640.

- Age*, interj., p. 152, foot-note 4.
Agent, abl. of, with *ā* or *ab*, 388, 2; 415, I. Dat. of, 388.
Ager, decl., 51.
-āgintā, quant. of antepen., 587, III., 3.
Āgnōmen, 649, 2 and 3.
Agnomination, 637, XI., 7.
Agō ut, 498, II., N. 2; *id agō* w. subj., p. 274, foot-note 2.
-āgō, nouns in, 324, N.; 327, 4, N.; *ā* in, 587, I., 2.
Agreeable, dat. w. adjs. signifying, 391, I.
AGREEMENT, of Nouns, 362 ff. Pred. noun, 362; in gen., 362, 1. Appositive, 363; in gen., 363, 1. Of adjct., 438 ff.; w. clause, 438, 3; synesis, 438, 6; w. one noun for another, 438, 7; w. two or more nouns, 439; w. part. gen., 397, 3, N. 1. Of pronouns, 445; w. two or more antecedents, 445, 3; attraction, 445, 4; synesis, 445, 5; w. clause, 445, 7. Of verbs, 460 ff.; synesis, 461; w. appos. or pred. noun, 462; w. compd. subject, 463.
Ah, *ahā*, 312.
-ai for *-ae*, 49, 2; *ā* in, 577, I., 1, (1).
Āio for *agiō*, p. 19, foot-note 8; position, 569, V.
-ais in prop. names, *ā* in, 577, 5, N.; 587, I., 3.
-al final shortened, 21, 2, 2). Nouns in *-al*, 63; 65, 2; quant. of increm., 585, I., 1. *-Al* in Plautus for *-al*, 580, III., N. 2.
Alacer, decl., 153, N. 1; superlat. wanting, 168, 3.
Albus, without compar., 169, 4.
Alcaic verse, 604, N. 1; 628, VIII. and IX.; 619, 1. *Alcaic stanza*, 631, I.
Alcmanian stanza, 631, XIX.; 631, IX.
Alēc, *alēx*, quant. of increm., 585, III., 3.
-alia, names of festivals in, 136, 3.
Alicubi, *alicunde*, 305.
Alienus w. dat., p. 205, foot-note 1; w. gen., p. 205, foot-note 3.
Aliquā, *aliquam*, *aliquando*, 305.
Aliquantus, 191.
Aliquā, use, 455, 1.
Aliquis, 190, 2; 191; use of, 455.
Aliquō, 305, II.
Aliquē, 191.
Aliquotiens, *aliquōversum*, 305.
-alis, adjs. in, 330; compar., 168, 2; 169, 3. *Ā* in *-alis*, 587, I., 4.
Aliud—nihil aliud nisi, nihil aliud quam, 555, III., 1.
Alius, decl., 151; w. abl., 417, 1, N. 4. Use of *alius*, 459. *Alius—alium* w. pl. verb, 461, 3.
Allegory, 637, II., 1.
Alliteration, 637, XI., 1.
Allobrox, quant. of increm., 585, II., 3.
Alphabet, 2 ff. Letters of, indecl., 128, 1.
Alter, decl., 151. *Alter* for *secundus*, p. 66, foot-note 4. Use of *alter*, 459.
Alter—alterum, w. pl. verb, 461, 3.
Alteruter, decl., 151, N. 2.
Alvus, gen., 53, 1.
-am in adverbs, 304, I., 3, 2).
Amāns, decl., 157.
Ambi, *amb*, insepar. prep., 308; in compds., 344, 6.
Ambō, decl., 175, N. 2.
Amīcus w. dat., p. 205, foot-note 1.
Ī in *amicus*, p. 345, foot-note 4.
Amnis, decl., 62, IV.
Amphiarādes, *ī* in, p. 345, foot-note 3.
Amphora, 648, III.
Amplius without *quam*, 417, 1, N. 2.
Amyclides, *ī* in, p. 345, foot-note 3.
An, 310, 2, N.; 311, 8; 353. *An* = 'whether not,' 529, II., 3, N. 2; = *aut*, 529, II., 3, N. 3. *Ā* in *an*, 579, 3.
-an, suffix, 320, I.
-āna, *ā* in, 587, I., 5.
Anacoluthon, 636, IV., 6.
Anacrusis, 618, N. 3.
Analysis of verbal endings, 241 ff.
Anapaest, 597, N. 1; cyclic, 598, 1, 4).
Anaphora, 636, III., 3.
Anas, as in, 581, V., 1; quant. of increm., 585, I., 4, (2).
Anastrophe, 636, V., 1.
Ancient forms of pronouns, 184, 5; of verbs, 240.
Ancile, decl., 186, 3.
Androgeōs, decl., 54.
-aneus, *ā* in, 587, III., 1.
Anquis, decl., 62, IV.
Anhelitus, *ī* in, p. 345, foot-note 2.
Animal, decl., 63.
Animi, constr., 399, III., 1; 410, V., 2.
Aniō, quant. of increm., 585, III., 2.
Annōn, 310, 2, N.; 353, 2, N. 3.
Answers, 352.
-ant, suffix, 320, I.
Ante in compds., 344, 5; in compds. w. dat., 386. *Ante* w. acc., 433; 433, I.; denoting interval, 430.
Ante w. ger., p. 315, foot-note 5.
Antea, 304, IV., N. 2.
Antecedent, 445, N.; omitted, 445, 6.

Clause as anteced., 445, 7. Anteced. attracted. 445, 9.

Antecedō w. acc. or dat., p. 202, foot-note 1.

Ante-classical period, 640, I.

Anteō in synaeresis, 608, III., N. 1; w. acc. or dat., p. 202, foot-note 1.

Antehāc, 304, IV., N. 2.

Antequam, 311, 1; in temp. clauses, 520.

Anticipation, prolepsis, 440, 2; 636, IV., 3.

Anticus, *ī* in, p. 345, foot-note 4.

Antimeria, 636, IV., 1.

-ānus, adjs. in, 330; 331; *ā* in, 587, I., 5.

Anxiety, constr. w. verbs of, 498, III.

-āōn in prop. names, *ā* in, 577, 5, N.

Apge, interj., 312, 4.

Aphaeresis, 635, 1.

Apis, genit. plur., p. 36, foot-note 3.

Apocope, 635, 3.

Apophasis, 637, XI., 2.

Aposiopesis, 636, I., 3; 637, XI., 3.

Apostrophe, 637, X.

Apparent agent, 388.

Appendix with short increm., p. 343, foot-note 2.

Appendix, 634 ff.

Apposition, partitive, 364. Clauses in apposition, 501, III.

Appositional genitive, 396, VI.

Appositive, 359, N. 2; agreement of, 363; in gend., 363, 1; force of, 363, 3. *Inf.* as appos., 539, II.

Apricus, *ī* in, p. 345, foot-note 4.

Aptus w. dat., p. 205, foot-note 1.

Aptus qui w. subj., 503, II., 2.

Apud w. acc., 433; 433, I.; designating abode, 446, N. 4.

ār final shortened, 21, 2, 2). Nouns in *ar*, 63; 65, 2; quant. of increm., 585, I., 1. Gend. of nouns in *ar*, *ār*, 111; 112. *-ār* in Plautus for *-ar*, 580, III., N. 2.

Arar, *Araris*, decl., 62, III., 1.

Arbor, quant. of increm., 585, II., 3.

Arceō w. dat., p. 200, foot-note 2.

Archilochian verse, 604, N. 1; 628, X.; 616, N.; 617, N.; 619, N.; stanza, 631, XI. and XII.; 631, XIV. and XV.

Arcus, decl., 117, 1.

Arēnae, locat., 426, 2, N.

Aries, *ēs* in, 581, VI., 1.

-āris, adjs. in, 330; compar., 169, 3. *Ā* in *-āris*, 587, I., 6.

Aristophanic verse, 628, II.

-ārium, nouns in, 323; *ā* in, 587, III., 1.

-ārius, nouns in, 324; adjs. in, 330; *ā* in, 587, III., 1.

ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS AND CLAUSES, 559 ff.; words, 560 ff.; gen. rules, 560 ff.; effect of emphasis and euphony, 561; chiasmus, 562; kindred words, 563; words w. com. relation, 564; special rules, 565 ff.; modifiers of nouns, 565; adjs., 566; verbs, 567; adverbs, 568; special words, 569; demon., 569, I.; preps., 569, II.; conjuncts. and relat., 569, III.; *nōn*, 569, IV.; *inquam*, *aiō*, 569, V.; voc., 569, VI.; clauses, 570 ff.; as subj. or pred., 571; subord. elements, 572; periods, 573.

Arsis, 600.

Article, 48, 6.

Artus, decl., 117, 1, 2); p. 50. foot-note 1.

-ārus, *ā* in, 587, I., 6.

Arx, decl., 64.

Aryan languages, 638.

-ās in genit., Decl. I., 49, 1. Nouns in *-ās*, Decl. I., 50; Decl. III., 64, 2, 3); decl., 79. Gender of nouns in *-as*, *-ās*, 105, 106. *-ās* in adverbs, 304, I., 3, 2). *-As*, suffix, 320, I. *-As*, adjs. in, 331. Quant. of *-ās*, *-as*, 580, III.; 581, V.; *ā* in voc. of nouns in, 581, III., 2. Quant. of increm. of nouns in *-as*, 585, I., 3.

ās, 646; 648, I.

Asclepiadean verse, 628, IV. and V.; 631, IV.-VIII.

Asking, construction w. verbs of, 374.

Asper, decl., 150, N.

Aspergō, constr., p. 198, foot-note 1.

Aspirate, 3, II., 3.

-āssim in perf. subj., 240, 4.

Assimilation of vowels, 25; of consonants, 33; 34.

Assimilis w. gen., p. 205, foot-note 3.

Assis, constr., p. 213, foot-note 3.

-āssō in fut. perf., 240, 4.

Asyndeton, 636, I., 1.

At, 310, 3; 554, III., 2.

-at, neut. stem in, 58, 2. *-At* in Plautus for *-at*, 580, III., N. 2.

Atat, interj., 312, 1.

-aticus, *ā* in, 587, III., 2.

-ātilis, quant. of pen., 587, II., 5; antepen., 587, III., 2.

-ātim, *ā* in, 587, I., 7.

Atque, 310, 1; 554, I.; meaning *as* 451, 5; *than*, 459, 2; 554, I., 2, N.

Que—atque, 554, I., 5.

Atqui, 310, 3; 554, III., 2.

ātrum, *ā* in, 587, I., 1.

Attamen, 554, III., 3.
 Attraction, 636, IV., 5; of pron., 445, 4 and 8; of anteced., 445, 9.
 Attributive adj., 438, 2.
-ātus, nouns in, 324; *ā* in, 587, I., 7.
Au, interj., 312, 3.
Au, sound, 6; 12; changed in compds., 344, 4, N. 3.
Audāx, decl., 156.
Audiens w. two dats., 390, N. 3.
Audiō w. pred. noun, 362, 2, N. 1; w. infin., 535, I., 1.
Aureus, 646.
Ausim for *auserim*, 240, 4.
Aut, 310, 2; 554, II., 2. *Aut—aut*, 554, II., N. Position of *aut* in poetry, 569, III., N.
Autem, 310, 3; 554, III., 2 and 4; position, 569, III.
 Authors, Latin, 640.
 Autonomasia, 637, III., 1.
Auxilium, *auxilia*, 132.
 Aversion, gen. w. adjs. of, 399, I., 1.
Avidus w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3; p. 315, foot-note 2; other constrs., 400.
Avis, decl., 62, IV.
-āvus, *ā* in, 587, I., 6.
-ax, gen. of nouns in, 91; verbals in, 333; w. ger., 399, II. Quant. of increm. of words in *-ax*, 585, I., 4, (3).
Axō for *ēgerō*, 240, 4.

E

E, sound, 7, N.; changed to *p*, 33, 1; to *m*, 33, 3, N.; 34, 3. Quant. of monosyl. in, 579, 2.
Baccar, quant. of increm., 585, I., 4, (1).
Bacchius, 597, N. 1.
 Becoming, two dats. w. verbs of, 390, N. 1, 1).
 Beginning, constr. w. verbs of, 533, I., 1. Beginning of sentence emphatic, 561, I.
 Being, two dats. w. verbs of, 390, N. 1, 1). Being able, wont, accustomed, constr. w. verbs of, 533, I., 2.
Belides, *i* in, p. 345, foot-note 3.
 Believing, verbs of, w. dat., 385, II. Infin. w. verbs of, 535, I., 1, (2).
Bellum, decl., 51, 8. *Bellī*, locat., 51, 8; 426, 2.
 Belonging to, gen. w. adjs. signifying, 391, 4.
Bene, compar., 306, 2; compds. w. dat., 384, 4, N. 1. *E* final in *bene*, 581, IV., 4.

Benefiting verbs of, w. dat., 385, I.
-ber, p. 155, foot-note 1; names of months in, 65, 1, 1).
Bibi, *i* in, 590, 1.
Bilis, decl., 62, IV.
-bilis, p. 155, foot-note 1; verbals in, 333; w. dat., 391, I.; compar., 168, 1. Quant. of pen. of *-bilis*, 587, II., 5.
Bis, *i* in, 579, 3.
Bonī facere, *cōsulere*, 401, N. 4.
Bonus, decl., 148, compar., 165.
Bōs, decl., 66; quant. of increm., 581, II., 3.
 Brachylogy, 636, II.
 Brazen age, 640, III., 1.
-brum, nouns in, 327.
-bs, decl. of nouns in, 86.
Bubae, interj., 312, 1.
 Bucolic diaeresis, 611, 2; bucol. caesura, p. 356, foot-note 5.
-bulum, suffix, p. 155, foot-note 1; nouns in, 327.
-bundus, verbals in, 333.
Būris, decl., 62, II.
 Buying, gen. w. verbs of, 405.

C

C in place of *G*, 2, 1 and 3. Sound of *c*, 7; 13. *C* changed to *q*, 33, 2; dropped, 36, 3. Nouns in *c*, 74. Gend., 111. Quant. of final syllables in *c*, 580; II., w. N. 1.
-cā, suffix, 320, II.
Cacūs, superl. wanting, 168, 3.
Caelum, plur., 143, 1.
 Caesura, caesural pause, 602.
Calcar, decl., 63.
 Calendar, Roman, 641 ff.
 Calends, 642, I., 1.
Calix w. short increm., p. 343, foot-note 2.
 Calling, verbs of, w. two accs., 373.
Campester, decl., 153, N. 1.
Canis, decl., p. 36, foot-note 3.
Cupitis w. verbs, 410, III., N. 2.
Cappadox, quant. of increm., 585, II., 3.
Capsō for *cēperō*, 240, 4.
Caput, decl., 58.
Carbasus, gend., 53, 1; plur., 142.
Carcer, *carcerēs*, 132.
 Cardinals, 172; 174; decl., 175 ff.
Carmen, decl., 60.
Carō, decl., 64, N. 1.
Cārus w. dat., p. 205, foot-note 1; w. abl., p. 226, foot-note 1.
 CASES, ETYMOLOGY OF, 45 ff. Cases alike, 46, 2. Case suffixes, 46, 1; in Decl. III., 57; 67. Case end-

- ings, 47, N. 3; in Decl. I., 48; Decl. II., 51, 2, 3); Decl. III., 67; for *i*-stems, 62, I., 2; Decl. IV., 116; Decl. V., 120; pronouns, 184, 1. Irregular case endings, Decl. I., 49; Decl. II., 52; Decl. III., 67, N.; Decl. IV., 117; Decl. V., 121.
- CASES, SYNTAX OF, 362 ff. General view, 365. Nominat., 368. Vocat., 369. Accusat., 370 ff. Dat., 382 ff. Gen., 393 ff. Abl., 411 ff. Cases w. preps., 432 ff.
- Castrum*, *castra*, 132.
- Catalectic, 603, notes 3 and 5.
- Causā*, p. 221, foot-note 2.
- Causal adverbs, 305, N. 2, 4); conjunctions, 310, 5; 311, 7; 554, V.; 555, VII. Causal clauses, 516; 517; w. *quod*, etc., 516; w. *cum* and *quī*, 517.
- Cause, gen. of, 399, III., 2; abl., 413; 416. Cause expressed by particip., 549, 1.
- Caveō*, constr., 385, 1. *Cavē* w. subj. for imperat., 489, 2); w. *nō* omitted, 499, 2. *E* in *cavē*, 581, IV., 3.
- ce**, appended, 186, 1 and 2.
- Cecidi*, quant. of pen., 591, 1.
- Cedo*, *o* in, 581, II., 1.
- Celeber*, *celer*, decl., 153, N. 1.
- Celō*, constr., 374, 2.
- Celtiber*, decl., 51, 4, 3); quant. of increm., 585, III., 3.
- cen**, compds. in, 341, 1.
- Cēseō*, constr., p. 274, foot-note 1.
- ceps**, genit. plur. of adjs. in, 158, 2, 3); compds. in, 342, 1.
- cer**, suffix, p. 155, foot-note 1.
- Cer's*, *ēs* in, 581, VI., 1.
- Certō* w. dat., p. 201, foot-note 1.
- Certus*, w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3.
- Ceter*, *cēterus*, defective, 159, II.; meaning, 440, N. 2.
- Ceterum*, 310, 3; 554, III., 2.
- Ch, sound, 7, N.; 13, I., 2.
- Changes in consonants, 30 ff.
- Characteristic, stem-characteristic, nouns, 46, 3; verbs, 201. Gen. of characteristic, 396, V.; abl., 419, II.; 419, 2.
- Chiasmus, 562; 636, V., 4.
- Chief caesura, p. 357, foot-note 1.
- Choliambus, 622, 4.
- Choosing, verbs of, w. two accs., 373; w. two dats., 390, N. 1, 2).
- Choree, p. 350, foot-note 2.
- Choriambus, 597, N. 1.
- cida**, compds. in, 341, 1.
- Cilix*, w. short increm., p. 343, foot-note 2.
- Cingō*, constr., 377.
- cino**, suffix, p. 156, foot-note 8.
- cinus**, adjs. in, 330, 1.
- ciō**, nouns in, 321, N.
- Circi*, p. 149, foot-note 2; w. acc., 433; 433, I.; of ger., p. 315, foot-note 5.
- Circiter* w. acc., 433; 433, I.
- Circum*, p. 149, foot-note 2; in compds., 344, 5; compds. w. acc. 372; w. two accs., 376; w. dat., 386, 2. *Circum* w. acc., 433; 433, I.
- Circumdō*, *circumfundō*, constr., p. 198, foot-note 1.
- Circumlocutions w. *rēs*, *genus*, *modus*, *ratio*, 636, III., 10.
- Cis* w. acc., 433; 433, I.; *i* in, 579, 3.
- Citerior*, compar., 166.
- Cities, plur. in names of, 131, N.
- Cito*, *o* in, 581, II., 1.
- Citrā*, p. 149, foot-note 2; w. acc., 433; 433, I.
- Citum*, *i*, in, 590, 1.
- C. vis*, decl., 62, IV.
- Clam* w. acc. or abl., 437, 3.
- Clans, Roman, how designated, 331, N. 2.
- Classical period, 640, II.
- Classification of letters, 3; verbs, 257 ff.
- Clāssis*, decl., 62, IV.
- Claudus*, not compared, 169, 4.
- CLAUSES, 348, N. 1; as nouns, *gend.*, 42, N. Prin. and sub. clauses, 348, N. 2. Clause as object, 371, IV.; as abl., abs., 431, N. 1; as anteced., 445, 7. Object clauses of *purp.*, 498. Subst. clauses of *purp.*, 499, 3; of result, 501. Restrictive clauses w. *quod*, 503, I., N. 1. Conditional clauses, 513; concess., 514 ff.; temp., 518 ff.; principal, in indir. disc., 523; subord., 524. Indirect clauses, 528 ff. Substantive clauses, 532 ff.; 540. Relat. clauses supplied by particip., 549, 4. Prin. clauses supplied by particip., 549, 5. Arrang. of clauses, 570 ff.
- Clavis*, decl., 62, III.
- Clivus*, decl., 64.
- Climax, 637, VI.
- Close vowels, 3, I., 3.
- Clothing, constr. w. verbs of, 377.
- co**, suffix, 320, II.
- Cognate acc., 371, I. and II.
- Cōgnōmen, 649.
- Cōgō*, constr., 380, N.; p. 274, foot-note 2.
- Coins, Roman, 646.

- cola**, compds. in, 341, 1.
 Collecting, constr. w. verbs of, 380, N.
 Collective nouns, 39, 2, 1; w. plur. verb, 461, 1.
Collis, decl., 62, IV.
Collocō, constr., 380, N.
Colus, gend., 53, 1; 118; decl., 119, 2.
Com in compds., 344, 5; w. dat., 386.
 Coming together, constr. w. verbs of, 380, N.
Comitium, *comitia*, 132.
 Command, dat. w. verbs signifying to, 385, I.; infin. after, 535, II. Subj. of command, 483 ff.
Commiserescit, *commiseretur*, constr., 410, IV., N. 1.
 Common nouns, 39, 2. Common quantity, 16, III.; 575.
Communis w. gen., p. 205, foot-note 3.
Commūtō, constr., 422, N. 2.
 COMPARATIVE conjuncs., 311, 2; 555, II. Comparat. degree, 160; decl., 154; wanting, 167; formed by *magis*, 170. Comparat. w. gen., 397, 3; w. abl., 417; w. *quam*, 417, 1. Use, 444. Comparat. w. *quam* and subj., 503, II., 3. *Ō* in increm. of comparat., 585, II., 1.
 Comparative view of conjugations, 213 ff.
 COMPARISON of adjs., 160 ff.; modes of, 161; terminational, 162; irreg., 163; defect., 166; adverbial, 170; of adverbs, 306. Use of compar., 444. Dat. w. verbs of comparison, 385, 4, 3).
Compes, decl., p. 36, foot-note 4.
Compleō, constr., 410, V., 1; p. 225, foot-note 3.
 Complex sentences, 348; elements, 357, 2; subject, 359; predicate, 361.
Complures, decl., 154, N. 1.
Compos w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3; -os in, 581, VII., 1; quant. of increm., 585, II., 3.
 Composition of words, 340 ff.
 COMPOUND WORDS, 313, N. 2; pronunciation, 8, 3; p. 8, foot-note 1; 18, 2. Compd. nouns, decl., 125 ff. Compd. interrog., 188, 3; nouns, 341; 343; adjs., 342; 343; verbs, 221; 344. Compd. sentences, 349.
 Compds. of preps. w. acc., 372; w. two accs., 376; w. dat., 386. Quant. in compds., 594. Compd. verse, 601, N. 2.
 Computation of money, 647.
 Concealing, verbs of, w. two accs., 374.
 Concession expressed by particip., 549, 2.
 CONCESSIVE conjunctions, 311, 4; 555, IV.; concess. subj. of desire, 484, III. Concess. clauses, 514 ff.; position of, 572, II., N.
 Condemning, constr. w. verbs of, 410, III.
Condicō w. gen., 409, N. 3.
 Condition expressed by imperat., 487, 3; by particip., 549, 2.
 CONDITIONAL conjuncs., 311, 3; 555, III. Cond. sentences, 506 ff.; first form, 508; sec. form, 509; third form, 510; combined forms, 511; 512. Condit. clauses w. *dum*, etc., 513. Condit. sentences in indir. disc., 527. Position of condit. clauses, 572, II., N.
Confidō w. abl., 425, 1, 1), N.
Conitor, constr., p. 202, foot-note 1.
 CONJUGATION, 201 ff.; of *sum*, 204. First conj., 205 ff.; 223 ff.; 257 ff.; second, 207 ff.; 225 ff.; 261 ff.; 2, in imperat., 581, IV., 3; third, 209 ff.; 227 ff.; 269 ff.; fourth, 211 ff.; 229 ff.; 284 ff.; *is* in pres. indic., 581, VIII., 3; verbs in *id* of Conj. III., 217. Periphrastic, 233 ff. Peculiarities, 235 ff. Comparative view, 213. Irreg. verbs, 289 ff.; defect., 297 ff.; impers., 298 ff. Increm. of conj., 583; 584; quant., 586.
 Conjunctions, 309; coörd., 554; subord., 555. Conj. omitted, 554, I., 6. Place of conj. in sentence, 569, III.
Cōnor, constr., 498, II., N. 1.
Cōnscius w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3; p. 315, foot-note 2; other constrs., 400. *Cōnscius mihi sum* w. infin., 535, I., 3.
 Consecutive conjcs., 311, 6; 555, VI.
Cōnsequor, constr., p. 274, foot-note 2.
Cōnsimilis w. gen., p. 205, foot-note 3.
 Consonant nouns, 55 ff. Consonant stems, 57 ff. Consonant verbs, 209.
 Consonants, 3, II.; double, 3, N. 2; sounds of, 7; 13; 15, 2; phonetic changes in, 30 ff.; interchanged w. vowels, 28; 29; assimilated, 33; 34; dissimilated, 35; omitted, 36.
Cōnsors w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3.
Cōstituō, constr., 498, I., N.; p. 274, foot-note 1.
Cōstō w. abl., p. 226, foot-note 1.
Cōnsul, decl., 60.
Cōnsulō, constr., 374, 2; 385, 1.
Cōnsultus w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3.
Cōtendō w. dat., p. 201, foot-note 1; w. infin., 498, II., N. 1; w. subj., p. 274, foot-note 2.
 Contention, dat. w. verbs of, 385, 4, 3)

Contentus w. abl., 420, 1, 4; 421, III.
 Continental pronunciation of Latin, 15.
Contingit, constr., p. 276, foot-note 2.
 Continuing, constr. w. verbs of, 533, I., 1.
Contrā, p. 149, foot-note 2; w. acc., 433; 433, I.
 Contraction of vowels, 23; in conjugation, 235. Quant. of syllables in contract., 576, I.
Contrārius w. gen., p. 205, foot-note 3.
Contrō in compds., 594, 8.
Conveniō, constr., 380, N.
 Convicting, constr. w. verbs of, 409, II.; 410, II.
Convocō, constr., 380, N.
 Coördinate conj., 309, 1; 554.
Cōpia, *cōpia*, 132. *Cōpia est* w. infin., 533, 3, N. 3.
 Copulative conj., 310, 1; 554, I.
Cōpulō w. dat., p. 201, foot-note 1.
Cor, defective, 133, 5; *o* in, 579, 3.
Cōram, p. 149, foot-note 2; w. abl., 434.
Cornū, decl., 116.
Corōnādes, *i* in, p. 345, foot-note 3.
Corpus, decl., 61.
 Correlative pronouns, 191; adverbs, 305. Correlat. compar. conjunct., 555, II., 1. Position of correlat. clauses, 572, II., N.
Cōs, defective, 133, 5.
-cōsus, adjs. in, 328.
Cotīdīa, locat., 120, N.
 Countries, names of, gen., 42, II., 2; constr., 380, 3.
Credor, constr., 534, 1, N. 1, (2).
Crimine, constr., 410, II., 1.
-crum, suffix, p. 155, foot-note 1; nouns in, 327.
Cubitus, 648, IV., N.
Cūcūimodī, 187, 4.
Cūjās, *cūjus*, 185, N. 3.
Cūjusmodī, *cūjuscumquemodī*, 187, 4, N.
-cula, nouns in, 321; *u* in, 587, II., 3.
-culo, suffix, p. 156, foot-note 8.
-culum, suffix, p. 155, foot-note 1; nouns in, 321; 327; *cu* in, 587, II., 3.
-culus, nouns in, 321; adjs. in, 332; *u* in pen., 587, II., 3.
Cum, prep., p. 149, foot-note 2; appended, 184, 6; 187, 2; *com* in compds., 344, 5. *Cum* w. abl., 434; 434, I.; of accompaniment, 419; of manner, 419, III.; after *idem*, 451, 5; w. pl. verb, 461, 4.
Cum w. ger., p. 216, foot-note 1.
Quum, *quum*, p. 75, foot-note 1; 305,

IV.; 311, 1 and 4; p. 151, foot-notes 1 and 4; 311, 7; w. perf. indic., 471, 5; w. plup. indic., 472, 2; introducing a condition, 507, 3; a concession, 515, III.; 515, N. 4; a causal clause, 517; a temp. clause, 521. *Cum* w. infinit., 524, 1, 2).
Cum—tum, 554, I., 5.
-cumque, p. 75, foot-note 3; 305, N. 1.
Cumulō, constr., p. 225, foot-note 3.
Cuncti w. part. gen., 397, 3, N. 4.
-cundus, verbals in, 333.
Cupidus w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3; p. 315, foot-note 2.
Cupiēs w. dat. of possessor, 387, N. 3.
Cupiō, constr., p. 310, foot-note 1.
Cura est w. subj., p. 274, foot-note 3.
Curō, constr., p. 274, foot-note 2.
-cus, adjs. in, 330; 333, 5.
 Cyclic dactyl, 598, 1, 3; anapaest, 598, 1, 4).
Cyclōps, quant. of increm., 585, II., 2.

D

D for *t*, 32, N. 1. *D* changed to *l*, 32; assimilated to *n* or *s*, 34, 1; to *l*, 34, 2; dropped before *s*, 36, 2. *D* final dropped, 36, 5, 2). Quant. of final syllables in *d*, 579, 2; 580, II.
d, **-dā**, nouns in, 322.
 Dactyl, 597, I.; cyclic, 598, 1, 3).
 Effect of dactyls, 610, 2.
 Dactylic verse, 603, N. 1; 614 ff.; hexameter, 609 ff.
Dāmma, gen., 48, 5.
Danais, quant. of pen., p. 345, foot-note 1.
 Danger, constr. w. expressions of, 498, III.
Daps, *dapis*, defective, 133, 3.
Dare litterās, 385, 1, N. *Dare operam* w. subj., p. 274, foot-note 2.
E in *dedī*, *a* in *datum*, 590, 1.
 Daring, constr. w. verbs of, 533, I., 1.
 Dates, Eng. and Lat., 644.
 DATIVE, Decl. I., 49, 4; Decl. III., 58, 2; 66, 2; 67, N. 1; 68, 5; Decl. IV., 117, 1; Decl. V., 121, 1.
 DATIVE, syntax of, 382 ff. Dat. for acc., 380, 4. Dat. in exclamations, 381, N. 3, 3; w. verbs, 384 ff.; w. compds., 386; of possessor, 387; of agent, 388. Ethical dat., 389. Two dats., 390. Dat. w. adjs., 391; 399, I., 3, N. 1; 400, 1; w. nouns and adverbs, 392; w. *refert* and *interest*, 408, I., 3. Dat. of penalty, 410, III.,

- N. 1. Dat. of ger., 542, II.; gerundive, 544, 2.
- Dative sing. in *ī*, 581, I., 2. *Ē* in dat., Decl. III., 581, IV., 2.
- 'Daughter,' apparent ellipsis of, 398, I., N. 2. Names of daughters, 649, 4.
- Day, Rom. division of, 645.
- Dē* in compds. w. dat., 386; w. abl., 434, N. 1. *Dē* w. abl., 434; 434, I.; for genit., 397, N. 3. *Dē* w. ger., p. 316, foot-note 1.
- Dea*, decl., 49, 4.
- Debeō* w. pres. infin., 537, 1.
- Decay, phonetic, p. 12, foot-note 1.
- Decernō*, constr., 498, I., N.; p. 274, foot-note 1.
- Decipiō*, constr., p. 217, foot-note 5.
- Declarative sentence, 350; in indir. disc., 523, I.
- Declaring, constr. w. verbs of, 535, I.
- DECLENSION, 46; first, 48; sec., 51; third, 55; fourth, 116; sec. and fourth, 119; fifth, 120; compds., 125. -*O* in Decl. III., 581, II., 2. -*Ē* in Decl. I. and V., 581, IV., 1. Increm. of decl., 582; 584; quant., 585.
- Dēdoceō*, constr., 374, 2.
- Defective nouns, 122; 127, II.; 129 ff.; ads., 159, II. Def. compar., 166 ff. Def. verbs, 297.
- Degree, adverbs of, 305, N. 2, 3).
- Degrees of comparison, 160.
- Deinde*, in series, 554, I., N. 2.
- Delectō*, constr., 385, II., N. 1.
- Deliberative subj., 484, V. Delib. questions, 523, II., 1, N.
- Delos*, decl., 54.
- Delphn̄*, quant. of increm., 585, IV., 3.
- Demanding, constr. w. verbs of, 374.
- DEMONSTRATIVE pronouns, 186; use of, 450 ff.; 449, 1. Demon. roots, 314, II. Demon. adverbs, 450, N. 4. Demon. w. infin., 538, 3. Position of demon., 569, 1. Demon. redundant, 636, III., 7.
- Denarius, 646.
- Dēnique*, in series, 554, I., N. 2.
- Denominatives, 335.
- Dental stems, Decl. III., 58.
- Dentals, 3, II.; 3, N. 1, 1., 2.
- Dependent clauses, 348, N. 2. Depend. questions, 528, 2, N.
- Deponent verbs, 195, 2; 231; 465, 2.
- Depriving, constr. w. verbs of, 414, I.
- Derivation, 321 ff.; of nouns, 321 ff.; ads., 328 ff.; verbs, 335 ff.
- Derivatives, quant. in, 593.
- dēs*, nouns in, 322.
- Descent, names of, 322.
- Descriptive genit., 396, V.; abl., 419, II., N. Descrip. imperf. in temp. clauses, 518, N. 1.
- Desideratives, 234, 2; 338.
- Desinō*, constr., p. 217, foot-note 5.
- Desire, subj. of, 433 ff.; for imperat., 487, 4.
- Desiring, gen. w. ads. of, 399, I., 1; p. 315, foot-note 2; w. verbs of, 410, V., 2. Subj. after verbs of, 498, I.; infinit., 533, I., 1; 535, II.
- Desistō*, constr., p. 217, foot-note 5.
- Desperō* w. acc., 371, III., N. 1; w. dat. or acc., p. 202, foot-note 1.
- Destitute of, constr. w. ads. signifying, 414, III.
- Desum*, synaeresis in, 608, III., N. 1.
- Desuper* w. acc., 437, 1.
- Deterior*, comparison, 166.
- Deterius*, comparison, 306, 3.
- Determinative compds., 343, I.
- Determining, constr. w. verbs of, 533, I., 1.
- Deterreō*, constr., p. 279, foot-note 2.
- Deus*, decl., 51, 6.
- dex*, compds. in, 341, 1.
- Dexter*, decl., 150, N. 1); *dextrā*, constr., 425, 2.
- Di*, *dis*, insep. prep., 308; in compds., 344, 6; *ī* in *dī*, 594, 2.
- Diaeresis, 602, 2; 608, IV.
- Diāna*, *ī* in, 577, I., 3, (4).
- Diastole, 608, V.
- Dic* for *dice*, 238.
- Diciō*, defective, 134.
- Dicolon, p. 352, foot-note 3.
- Dīcor*, constr., 534, 1, N. 1, (2).
- Dictō audiēns*, 390, N. 3.
- dicus*, compds. in, 342, 1; compar., 164.
- Didō*, decl., 68.
- Dies*, decl., 120; 122, 1; gend., 123; *ī* in compds., 594, 7.
- Difference, abl. of, 417, 2; 423.
- Differing, dat. w. verbs of, 385, 2; 385, 4, 2).
- Differō* w. dat., p. 200, foot-note 2.
- Difficilis*, compar., 163, 2; w. dat., p. 205, foot-note 1; w. supine, 547, 1.
- Dignor*, constr., 421, N. 2.
- Dignus*, constr., 421, III.; 421, N. 3.
- Dignus quā* w. subj., 503, II., 2.
- Dignus* w. supine, 547, 1.
- Dilambus, 597, N. 1.
- Dimeter, 603, N. 2.
- Diminutive nouns, 321; ads., 332; verbs, 339.
- Diphthongs, 4; sounds of, 6; 12; 15, 1; weakening of, 23, N.; quant. of syllab. w. diphth., 576, I.; final

diphth. elided, 608, I.; shortened in hiatus, 608, II., N. 3.
 Dipody, 597, N. 2.
 DIRECT object, 370 ff. Direct disc., 522, 1; changed to indir., 530; indir. to direct, 531.
 Directing, constr. w. verbs of, 499, 2.
 Direction, how expressed, 384, 3, 1); 385, 4, 1); 386, 3.
Dirimō, *dī* in, 594, 2, N. 1.
Dis, quant. of increm., 585, IV., 2.
Dis, *dī*, insep. prep., 308; in compds., 344, 6.
Disertus, *dī* in, 594, 2, N. 1.
 Disjunctive conjunctions, 310, 2; 554, II. Disjunct. questions, 353.
Dispar, constr., p. 205, foot-notes 1 and 3.
 Displeasing, verbs of, w. dat., 385, I.
 Dispondeo, 597, N. 1.
 Dissenting, verbs of, w. dat., 385, 2.
Dissentio, *dissideō*, w. dat., p. 200, foot-note 2.
 Dissimilation of vowels, 26; consonants, 35.
Dissimilis, compar., 163, 2; constr., p. 205, foot-notes 1, 2, and 3.
 Dissyllabic perfects and supines, quant. of pen., 590.
 Distance, abl. of, 379, 2; 423, N. 2.
 Distich, 606, N.; elegiac, 615.
Distō w. dat., p. 200, foot-note 2.
 Distributives, 172, 3; 174; decl., 179.
 Ditrochee, 597, N. 1.
Diū, 304, I., 1; compar., 306, 4.
Divus, *ī* in, 577, I., 3, (2).
Diuturnus, superl. wanting, 168, 3.
Diversus, compar., 167, 2; w. dat., p. 205, foot-note 1.
Dives, compar., 165, N. 2.
 -*dō*, nouns in, 327, 4, N.; decl., 60, 4.
Dō w. two dat., 390, N. 1, 2). See also *Dare*. Quant. of increm. of *dō*, 586, I.
Doceō, constr., 374, 2.
Doleō w. acc., 371, III., N. 1; w. abl., p. 221, foot-note 2; w. infin., p. 310, foot-note 2.
Domus, gend., 118; decl., 119, 1; constr., 380, 2, 1); 412, II., 1; 425, 2.
Dōnec, 311, 1; in temp. clauses, 519.
Dōndō, constr., p. 198, foot-note 1; w. two dat., 390, N. 1, 2).
 Double consonants, 3, N. 2. Double constr. w. verbs, 384, 2. Double questions, 353.
 Dropping of vowels, 27; consonants, 36.
 Dry measure, Rom., 648, II.
 Dt changed to *st*, *ss*, or *s*, 35, 3.

Dual number, p. 68, foot-note 1.
Dubitō, constr., 505, I.
Dūc for *dūce*, 238.
Dūcō w. two dat., 390, N. 1, 2.
Duim for *dem*, 240, 3.
Dum, p. 145, foot-note 1; 311, 1 and 3; 555, I., 1; w. pres. indic., 467, 4; w. subj. in conditions, 513, I. *Dum* in temp. clauses, 519; in indir. clauses, 529, II., N. 2.
Dummodo, 311, 3; w. subj. in conditions, 513, I.
Duo, decl., 175; *o* in, 581, II., 1.
 Duration of time, 379.
 -*duc*, adjs. in, 333.
 Dv changed to *b*, *v*, or *d*, 32, N. 2.

E

E, ē, sound, 5; 10 ff. *Ē* final shortened, 21, 2, 3). Nouns in *ē*, Decl. I., 50; in *e*, Decl. III., 63; 65, 2; 70.
E, gend. of nouns in, Decl. III., 111. -*E* in abl., 62. -*Ē* in plur. of Greek neuters, 68, 6. *E*-nouns, 120. *E*-verbs, 207. *E*-stems, 120, 1. -*E*, -*ē*, in adverbs, 304, I., 3; 304, II., 2; 304, III., 1. -*E*, -*ē* suffix, 320, II. *E* changed to *i*, 344, 4, N. 1. *E* or *ē* in *ēs*, 120, 2; 577, I., 2, (1); 585, III., 1. *E* or *ē*, final, 580, I.; 580, III., N. 2; 581, IV.; in increm. of decl., 585; 585, III.; conj., 586; 586, II. *E* elided before consonant, 608, I., N. 2.
Ē or *ex*, see *ex*.
Eā, 304, II., 3; 305, V.
 -*ēa* in prop. names, *ē* in, 577, I., 5, N.
Eābus for *ēs* = *īs*, p. 73, foot-note 2.
Eādem, 304, II., 3; 305, V.
 Easy, dat. w. adjs. signifying, 391, I.
Ēcastōr, interj., p. 152, foot-note 4.
Ecce, 312, 1; with demonstratives, 186, 3; with dat. in exclamations, 381, N. 3, 3).
Ecquis, 188, 3. *Ecquid*, p. 180, foot-note 1.
 Ecthipsis, 608, I., N. 4.
Edim for *edam*, 240, 3.
 -*edō*, nouns in, 325; *ē* in, 587, I., 2.
Edoceō, constr., 374, 2.
 Ee in synaeresis, 608, III., N. 1.
 Effect, acc. of, 371, I., 2, 2).
Efficō, constr., p. 274, foot-note 2; 501, II., 1.
Effigies, decl., 122, 2.
 Effort, subj. w. verbs of, 498, II.
Egenus, compared, 164, 1; w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3; p. 219, foot-note 4.

- Egeō*, constr., 410, V., 1.
Ego, decl., 184. *I* in *mihi*, 581, I., 2.
O in *ego*, 581, II., 1.
Ehem, interj., 312, 1.
Eheu, interj., 312, 3; w. acc., 381, N. 2; *e* in, 577, I., 2, (3).
Ehō, *ehodum*, 312, 5; *o* in, 581, II., 1.
Ei, interj., 312, 3; w. dat., 381, N. 3, 3).
Ei, pronunciation as diphthong, 6, 1; 12, 1; *e* or *e* in *ēi*, 120, 2; 577, I., 2, (1); 585, III., 1. *Ei* in synaeresis, 608, III., N. 1.
-ēis, *e* in, 587, I., 3.
-ēius, *e* in, 577, I., 2, (2).
Eja, 312, 2 and 6; *a* in, 581, III., 3.
Ejusmodi, 186, 4, N.
-ēla, *e* in, 587, I., 4.
 Elegiac Distich, 615.
 Elements of sentences, 356 ff.
-ēlis, *e* in, 587, I., 4.
Elision, 608, I.
-ella, nouns in, 321, 4.
Ellam for *en illam*, 186, 3.
 Ellipsis, 636, I.
-ellum, nouns in, 321, 4.
Ellum for *en illum*, 186, 3.
-ellus in nouns, 321, 4; adjs., 332, N. 1.
Eluviēs, defective, 122, 3.
-em in acc., 62.
 Emotion, constr. w. verbs of, 371, III.; 410, V., 2; 535, III.
 Emphasis in arrang. of words, 561.
 Emphatic forms of pronouns, 184, 3; 185, N. 2. Emphatic adverbial phrases, 305, N. 4.
En, 312, 1; w. demonstratives, 186, 3; in exclamations, 381, N. 3, 3).
-en, suffix, 320, II.; nouns in, 327. Quant. of increm. of nouns in *-en*, 585, III., 2.
-ēna, *e* in, 587, I., 5.
 Enallage, 636, IV.
 Enclitics, accent, 18, 2, 1); quant., 579, I., 1.
 End, dat. of, 384, 1, 3). End of sentence emphatic, 561, II.
 Endeavoring, constr. w. verbs of, 498, II., N. 1.
 Ending, constr. w. verbs of, 533, I., 1.
 Endings of genitive, 47; of cases, Decl. I., 48; 49; Decl. II., 51, 2, 3); 52; Decl. III., 62, I., 2; 67; Decl. IV., 116; 117; Decl. V., 120; 121; in compar., 162; conj., 218-216.
Endo, *o* in, 581, II., 1.
 English pronunciation of Latin, 9 ff.
-ēni, *e* in, 587, I., 8.
Enim, 310, 5; 554, V., 3; position, 569, III.
Enitor, constr., p. 274, foot-note 2.
 Enneasyllabic verse, 619, 1.
-ēnsis, adjs. in, 330; 331.
-ent, suffix, 320, II.
-entia, **-entio**, suffixes, p. 155, foot-note 9.
-entior, **-entissimus**, in compar., 164.
-ento, suffix, p. 155, foot-note 9.
 Enumerative asyndeton, p. 370, foot-note 1.
-ēnus, *e* in, 587, I., 5.
Eō, *ire*, w. sup. in *-um*, 546, 2; *iri* w. do., 546, 3. *I* in *ibam*, *ibō*, etc., 586, III., 4. *I* in *itum*, 590, 1.
Eō, adverb, 304, II., 3, N.; 305, II.; 554, IV., 1; w. gen., p. 209, foot-note 3.
Eōdem, 305, II.
 Epenthesis, 635, 4.
Ephesus, decl., 51, 8.
 Epicene nouns, 43, 3.
 Epiphora, 636, III., 4.
Epitōmē, decl., 50.
 Epizeuxis, 636, III., 5.
-eps, decl. of nouns in, 88.
Epulum, *epulae*, 143, 3.
Equester, decl., 153, N. 1.
 Equivalents, metrical, 598.
-er, nouns in, gend., 53; 99; 105; decl., 51, 4; 60, 3; adjs. in, decl., 62, IV., N. 1; 150, N.; 153, N. 2; compar., 163, 1. Quant. of increm. of nouns in *-er*, 585, III., 4.
-ēre for *erunt*, 236.
Ergā, p. 149, foot-note 2; w. acc., 433; 433, I.; after adjs., 391, II., 1; for gen., 396, III., N. 1.
Ergō, 310, 4; p. 151, foot-note 1; w. gen., 398, 5.
-erunt for *erunt*, 236, N.; 586, II., 4.
Es attached to preceding word, 27, N.; *e* in, 579, 3; in compds., 581, VI., 2.
-es, **-ēs**, suffixes, 320, II. Nouns in *-ēs*, 327; decl., 65, 1; 80; 120; quant. of increm., 585, III., 4; gend., 99; 104; 105; 109; 120. Decl. of nouns in *-es*, 81; gend., 99; 104. *Es* or *-es* final, 580, III.; 581, VI. *A* in voc. of Greek nouns in *-ēs*, p. 341, foot-note 1.
-ēsimus, *e* in, 587, III., 3.
Esse omitted, 534, N.
 Essential elements of sentences, 357, 1.
-ēssō, **-ēssim**, in fut. perf. and perf. subj., 240, 4.
-essō, verbs in, 336, N. 2.
Est drops initial, 27, N. *Est ut*, 498.

II., N. 2. *Est*, impers., constr., p. 276, foot-note 2. *Est* at end of line, 618, N. 3.
-ester, -estris, adjs. in, 380, 1.
Et, 310, 1; 554, I.; meaning as, 451, 5; *than*, 459, 2. *Et—et, et—que, que—et, neque* (nec)—*et, et—neque* (nec), 554, I., 5. *Et* in poetry, position, 569, III., N. Preps. repeated w. *et—et*, 636, III., 6.
-ēt in Plautus for *-et*, 580, III., N. 2.
-ēta, ē in, 587, I., 7.
-etās, e in, 587, II., 4.
Etenim, 310, 5; 554, V., 2.
 Ethical dat., 389.
Etiā, 310, 1; 554, I., 2, 4, and 5.
Etiāsi, etsi, 311, 4; in concessions, 515, II. *Etsi* = 'yet,' etc., 515, N. 2.
-ētum, nouns in, 323; ē in, 587, I., 7.
-ētus, ē in, 587, I., 7.
 Etymology, 37–344. Figures of etymology, 634, N.; 635.
 Eu, sound, 6, 1; 12.
Euge, interj., 312, 2 and 6.
Euhoe, interj., 312, 2.
 Euphemism, 637, XI., 4.
 Euphony in arrang. of words, 561.
-eus, adjs. in, 329; *-eus*, 331. *-Eus* in prop. nouns, ē in, 577, 5, N.
Evenit, constr., p. 276, foot-note 2.
Ēvoe, interj., 312, 2.
Ex, ē, in compds., 344, 5; w. dat., 386, 2; w. abl., 434, N. 1. *Ex* w. abl. for part. gen., 397, N. 3. *Ex*, ē, w. abl., 434; 434, I. *E, ex*, 434, N. 2. *Ex*, ē, w. ger., p. 316, foot-note 1.
-ex, -ēx, decl. of nouns in, 92; 93. Compds. in *-ex*, 341, 1.
Exadversum, exadversus, w. acc., 433.
Exanimus, exanimis, 159, III.
 Exchanging, constr. w. verbs of, 422, N. 2.
 Exclamatory sentences, 355; acc. in, 381; voc., nom., dat. in, 381, N. 3; infin. in, 539, III.
Existimō, constr., 534, 1, N. 1, (2).
Exonerō, constr., p. 219, foot-note 1.
Exos, -os in, 581, VII., 1.
Expediō, constr., p. 219, foot-note 1.
Expers w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3.
 Explicative asyndeton, p. 370, foot-note 1.
Exposcō w. two accs., 374, 2.
Exsequiās, acc. of limit, 380, 2, 3).
Exsolvo, constr., p. 219, foot-note 1.
Exors w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3.
Exemplō, 304, II., 1, N.
 Extent of space, acc. of, 379.
 External object, 371, I., 1.

Exterus, compar., 163, 3.
Extra, p. 149, foot-note 2; w. acc., 433; 433, I.
Extremus, meaning, 440, N. 2.
Exuō, constr., 377; p. 198, foot-note 1; p. 219, foot-note 1.

F

Fac for *face*, 238. *Fac nē* w. subj. in prohibitions, 489, 2). *A* in *fac*, 579, 3.
Facies, decl., 122, 2.
Facilis, compar., 163, 2; w. dat., p. 205, foot-note 1; w. supine, 547, I.
Facio, accent of compds., 18, 2, 2).
Facio omitted, 368, 3, N. 1. *Facio* w. dat., 385, 3; w. pred. gen., 403; w. abl., 415, III., N. 1. *Facio ut*, 498, II., N. 2. *Facio* w. subj., p. 274, foot-note 2; 499, 2; 501, II., 1.
E before *f* in compds., 594, 6.
-factō, verbs in, 344, 3.
Facultās, facultātes, 132.
Falsus, compar., 167, 2.
Fāma fert w. infin., 535; I., 3.
Fāmes, abl. *fāme*, 137, 2.
Familia, genitive, 49, 1. *Familiā*, constr., 415, II., N.
Fār, decl., 63, 2, N.; 133, N.
Fās, defect., 134; w. supine, 547, 1.
Fastidiosus w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3.
Faux, decl., p. 38, foot-note 4.
 Favorite vowel, 24.
Fax, quant. of increm., 585, I., 4, (3).
Faxō, faxim, for fecerō, fecerim, 240, 4.
 Fearing, constr. w. verbs of, 498, III.
Febris, decl., 62, III.
 Feeling, constr. w. verbs of, 371, III.; 410, V., 2; 535, III.
 Feet in versification, 597.
Fel, defective, 133, 4, N.
Felia, decl., 156.
 Feminine, 42, II. Fem. caesura, 611, N.
Fer for *fere*, 238; e in, 579, 3.
-fer, compds. in, 342, 1; decl., 51, 4, 2); adjs. in, 150, 3), N.
Ferē, ferme, ē in, 581, IV., 4.
Ferō and compds., increm. of, 586, 1.
Feror, constr., 534, 1, N. 1, (2).
Fertilis w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3.
Ferus, not compared, 169, 4.
 Festivals, plur. in names of, explained, 181, N.; plur. in *-ālia*, decl., 136, 8.
-fex, compds. in, 341, 1.
-ficō, verbs in, 344, 3.
-ficus, adjs. in, 342, 1; compar., 164.
Fidelis w. dat., p. 205, foot-note 1.
Fidi, ē in, 590, 1.

Fidō w. abl., 425, 1, 1), N.
 Fifth decl., 120 ff.; *æ* final in, 581, IV., 1.
 FIGURES of prosody, 608. Fig. of speech, 634 ff.; of etymology, 634, N.; 635; of syntax, 634, N.; 636; of rhetoric, 634, N.; 637.
Filia, decl., 49, 4.
Felix w. short increm., p. 243, foot-note 2.
 Filling, constr. w. verbs of, p. 225, foot-note 3.
 FINAL conjunctions, 311, 5; 555, V.
 Final vowels and syllables, quant. of, 580; 581. Fin. syl. of verse, 605.
 Fin. syl. elided, 608, I. Fin. long vowel or diphthong shortened in hiatus, 608, II., N. 3.
Finis, decl., 62, IV.; singular and plur., 182.
 Finite verb, 199, N.
Finitimus, constr., p. 205, foot-notes 1 and 3.
Fio w. two dats., 390, N. 1, 1); w. abl., 415, III., N. 1. *Fit*, constr., p. 276, foot-note 2. *I* or *i* in *fio*, 577, I., 3, (1). *E* before *f* in compds., 594, 6.
 First decl., 48 ff.; *æ* final in, 581, IV., 1.
 First conjugat., 205 ff.; 223 ff.; 257 ff.
Flagitō w. two aces., 374, 2.
Flocci, constr., p. 213, foot-note 3.
Flos, decl., 61.
 Following, constr. w. verbs of, 501, I., 1.
 Foot, caesura of, p. 357, foot-note 1.
 Roman foot, 648, IV.
 'For,' how translated, 384, 3.
Forās, 304, I., 1.
Fore ut, 587, 3.
 Foreign words indecl., 128, 2.
 Forgetting, constr. w. verbs of, 407.
Foris, *i* in, 581, VIII., 1.
 Formation of stems of verbs, 249 ff.; of words, 313 ff.; of nouns, 321 ff.
Fornix w. short increm., p. 343, foot-note 2.
Fors, defective, 184.
Forsitan, 304, IV., N. 2; w. subj., p. 267, foot-note 1.
Fortūitus, *i* in, p. 345, foot-note 2.
Fortūna, *fortūnae*, 132.
 Fourth decl., 116 ff. Fourth conjugat., 211 ff.; 229 ff.; 284 ff.
 Fractions, 174, 1.
Fraudō, constr., p. 219, foot-note 1.
Fraus, decl., p. 38, foot-note 4.
 Free from, constr. w. adjs. signifying, 414, III.
Frenum, pl. *frēnī*, *frēna*, 143, 2.
 Frequentatives, 336.

Frētus w. abl., 425, 1, 1), N.
 Fricatives, 3, II., 4.
 Friendly, constr. w. adjs. signifying, 391, I. and II.
Fructus, decl., 116.
Frūgi, indeclin., 159, I.; compar., 165, N. 2.
Fruor, constr., 421, I.; 421, N. 4; gerundive of, 544, 2, N. 5.
Frux, defective, 133, 3; quant. of increm., 535, V., 2.
Fuam for *sim*, 204, 2.
 Fulness, adjs. of, w. gen., 399, I., 3.
Fungor, constr., 421, I.; 421, N. 4; gerundive of, 544, 2, N. 5.
Fur, quant. of increm., 585, V., 2.
 Furnishing, constr. w. verbs of, p. 225, foot-note 3.
 FUTURE, 197; 222. Fut. indic., 470; for imperat., 487, 4. Fut. in condit., 511, 1, N. 1; in temp. clauses, p. 293, foot-note 2. Fut. in subj., 479; 481; 496. Fut. imperat., 487, 2. Fut. infin., 537; periphrast., 537, 3. Fut. particip., 550.
 FUTURE PERFECT, 197, II.; 222, II.; 473; in subj., 496; in indir. disc., 525, 2; in infinit., 537, 3, N. 2. *-is* in fut. perf., 581, VIII., 5.
Futūrum esse ut, 537, 3. *Futūrum sit, esset, ut*, p. 272, foot-note 2.

G

G formed from *C*, 2, 2; sound, 7; 13; changed to *c*, 33, 1; assimilated to *m*, 34, 3; dropped, 36, 3.
Gaudēō, constr., p. 221, foot-note 2; p. 310, foot-note 2.
Gāvisus, *i* in, 586, III., 2.
Gemō w. acc., 371, III., N.
 Gems, gen. of names of, 53, 1.
 Gender, 41 ff.; Decl. I., 48; Decl. II., 53; Decl. III., 99-115; Decl. IV., 118. Decl. V., 123; general table, 124.
Gener, decl., 51, 4, 3).
 General relatives, p. 75, foot-note 3.
 Gen. rel. adverbs, 305, N. 1. Gen. subject, 460, 1, N. 2. Gen. truths, 467, II.; in conditions, 508, 5; 511, 1. Gen. negat., 553, 1 and 2.
Genere, constr., 415, II., N.
 GENITIVE, endings of, 47; Decl. I., *ās* for *ae*, *ūm* for *ārum*, 49; Decl. II., *i* for *ī*, 51, 5; *ūm* for *ōrum*, 52, 3; *ōn* for *ōrum*, 54, N. 1; Decl. III., *um* or *ium*, p. 36, foot-notes 3 and 4; p. 38, foot-note 2; p. 40, foot-note 3; *yos*, *ys*, 68, 2; *ōn*, 68, 4;

- Decl. IV., *vis, uos*, for *ūs*, 117;
Decl. V., *ī, ē, es*, for *ē, 121*. Gen.
in adjs., 158, 2. -*ūs* in gen., 581,
IX., 2.
- GENITIVE, syntax, 393 ff.; how rendered, 393, N. Gen. w. possessives, 363, 4, 1); w. nouns, 395; varieties, 396; in special constructions, 398; 406 ff.; w. adjs., 391, II., 4; 399; w. verbs, 401 ff. Pred. gen., 401 ff.; of price, 404; 405. Acc. and gen., 409. Gen. w. adverbs, 397, 4. Gen. of ger., 542, I. Position of gen. w. adj., 565, 2; between prep. and case, 569, II., 3.
- Genitus* w. abl., 415, II.
- Genēs*, Roman, how designated, 381, N. 2.
- Gentile nouns, 381, N. 1.
- Genus*, circumlocutions w., 636, III. 10.
- ger**, compds. in, 342, 1; decl., 51, 4, 2); adjs., 150, N.
- GERUND, 200, II.; endings, 248. Gerund in sequence of tenses, 495, IV. Syntax of gerund, 541; 542. Ger. w. pass. meaning, 541, N. Cases of ger., 542. Ger. w. gen., *mei*, etc., 542, I., N. 1; denoting purpose, 542, I., N. 2; 542, III., N. 2.
- GERUNDIVE, 200, IV.; syntax, 543. Gerund. constr., 543, N.; 544; denoting purpose, 544, 2, N. 2; w. official names, 544, 2, N. 3; after comparat., 544, 2, N. 4.
- Gignō* w. *genui, genitum*, 592, 2.
- Giving, verbs of, w. two dats., 390, N. 1, 2).
- Glaciēs*, decl., 122, 3.
- Glā*, decl., p. 38, foot-note 4; quant. of increm., 585, IV., 2.
- Glyconic verse, 604, N. 1; 628, III. and VII.; 631, IV.-VI.
- Gn lengthens preceding vowel, 16, N. 2. *Gnārus* w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3; p. 315, foot-note 2.
- Gnomic perfect, 471, 5.
- gō**, decl. of nouns in, 60, 4.
- Going, verbs of, w. two dats., 390, N. 1, 1).
- Golden age, 640, II., 1.
- Gracilis*, compar., 163, 2.
- Grātia, grātiae*, 132.
- Grātis*, *ī* in, 581, VIII., 1.
- Grātūtus*, *ī* in, p. 345, foot-note 2.
- Grātus* w. dat., p. 205, foot-note 1.
- Graviter ferō*, constr., p. 310, foot-note 2.
- Greater Ionic, 597, N. 1; Archilochian, 628, X.; 616, N.; 619, N.; Asclepiadēan, 628, V.; Sapphic, 628, VII.; Alcaic, 628, IX.
- GREEK NOUNS, Decl. I., 50; Decl. II., 54; Decl. III., 68. Long vowels in Greek nouns, 577, 5. *ī, ē*, in dat. and voc., 581, I., 2. -*ā* in voc., 581, III., 2. -*ē* in plur., 581, IV., 1. -*as* in acc., 581, V., 2. -*es* in Greek words, 581, VI., 3; -*os*, 581, VII., 2; -*ūs*, 581, IX., 3. *ā* if increm. of nouns in *a* and *as*, 585, I., 3. *ō* in increm., 585, II., 5; *ē* in words in -*en*, 585, III., 2; in -*ēs* and -*er*, 585, III., 4. Quant. of increm. of words in -*ar*, 585, I., 4, (3). *ī* in increm., 585, IV., 3.
- Grimm's law, 638, N. 2.
- Grūs*, decl., 66, 2.
- Grūps*, decl., p. 38, foot-note 3.
- Guilt, adjs. of, w. genit., 399, I., 3.
- Gutturals, 3, II.; before *s*, 30. Guttural stems, 59.

H

- H changed to *c*, 33, 1, N. 1; following other consonants, does not lengthen preceding syllable, 576, 1, N. 1. Syllable before *h* short, 577.
- Habeō*, meaning, p. 202, foot-note 3; w. two accs., 373, 1, N. 1; w. perf. part., 388, 1, N.; w. two dats., 390, N. 1, 2).
- Hāc*, 304, II., 3; 305, V.
- Hadria*, *gend.*, 48, 5.
- Haec* for *hae*, p. 72, foot-note 7.
- Hālitus*, *ī* in, p. 345, foot-note 2.
- Happening, constr. w. verbs of, 501, I., 1.
- Haud*, use, 552.
- Heja*, interj., 312, 6; *a* in, 581, III., 3.
- Hem*, interj., 312, 1; w. dat., 381, N. 3, 8.
- Hendiadys, 636, III., 2.
- Hepar*, quant. of increm., 585, I., 4, 1.
- Hepthemimeral caesura, p. 356, foot-note 4.
- Hepthemimeris, 597, N. 2.
- Hērēs*, quant. of increm., 585, III., 3.
- Heroic verse, 604, N. 2.
- Hērōs*, decl., 68.
- Heteroolites, 127; 135 ff.; adjs., 159, III.
- Heterogeneous nouns, 127; 141 ff.
- Heu*, interj., 312, 3; w. acc., 381, N. 2. *Heu* in hiatus, 608, II., 1.
- Heus*, interj., 312, 5.
- Hexameter, 603, notes 2 and 6; 609 ff.
- Hiatus, 608, II.
- Hiber*, decl., 51, 4, 3); quant. of increm., 585, III., 3.

Hic, 186; 191; use, 450; *ī* in, 579, 3. *Ō* in *hōc*, 579, 3. *Hōc* redundant, 636, III., 7.

Hic, 304, III., 2; 305, I.; w. gen., p. 209, foot-note 3.

Hilarus, *hilaris*, 159, III.

Hinc, 305, III.

Hindering, constr. w. verbs of, 505, II.

Historical tenses, 198; hist. present, 467, III.; in temp. clauses, 518, N. 1; hist. perfect, 198, 1; 197, N. 1; 471, II. Hist. tenses in sequence, 491 ff. Hist. infin., 536, 1.

Hōc, 304, II., 3, N.

Hodie, 120, N.; 304, II., 1; *e* in, p. 341, foot-note 2; *o* in, 594, 10.

Honestus w. supine, 547, 1.

Horace, logaöedic verses in, 628; versification, 630 ff.; lyric metres, 631; index, 632.

Horreō w. acc., 371, III., N.

Horsum, 305, II.

Hortative subj., 484, II.

Hortor, constr., p. 274, foot-note 1.

Hortus, *horti*, 132.

Hospitus, *i* in, p. 345, foot-note 2.

Hostile, constr. w. adjs. signifying, 391, II., 1.

Hostis, decl., 62.

Hours, Roman, 645; 645, 2.

H S, signification, 647, 3.

Hūc, 304, II., 3, N.; 305, II.; w. gen., p. 209, foot-note 3.

Hūjūsmodī, 186, 4, N.

Humilis, compar., 163, 2.

Humus, gen., 53, 1; *humī*, locat., 426, 2.

‘Husband,’ apparent ellipsis of, 398, 1, N. 2.

Hydrōps, quant. of increm., 585, II., 2.

Hypallage, 636, IV., 2.

Hyperbaton, 636, V.

Hyperbole, 637, VI.

Hypermetrical, 603, N. 3.

Hypothetical, see *Conditional*.

Ulysteron proteron, 636, V., 2.

I

I for *J*, p. 2, foot-note 1. *I*, *i*, sound, 5; 10 ff. *I* final shortened, 21, 2, 3). *I* interchanged with *j*, 28; dropped, 36, 4. *I* for *ī* and *ie*, 51, 5. *I*-nouns, 55; *i*-verbs, 211. Stems in *i*, 62 ff.; origin of, p. 35, foot-note 3. Nouns in *i*, 71; gen., 111. *-I* in abl., 62; for *ēi*, 121, 1; in adverbs, 304, II., 2; 304, III., 1. *ī*, *i*, or *ī* final, 580, I.; 581, I.; in

increments of decl., 585; 585, IV.; conj., 586; 586, III. *I* as consonant, 603, III., N. 2.

-iā, suffix, 320, II. Nouns in *-iā*, 325; *-iā* and *ies*, 138.

-iā in prop. names, *i* in, 577, 5, N.

-iacus, adjs. in, 331; *a* in, 587, II., 2.

-iadēs, *a* in, 587, II., 1.

Iambic verse, 603, N. 1; 621 ff.; stanza, 631, XVI.

Iambus, 597, II.; irrational, 598, 1, 2).

-iānus, adjs. in, 331.

-ibam for *-iēbam*, 240, 1.

Iber, decl., 51, 4, 3); quant. of increm., 585, III., 3.

Ibi, 304, III., 2; 305, I. and IV.; *ī* in, 581, I., 2; quant. of ult. in compds., 594, 9.

-ibilis, quant. of antepen., 587, IV., 1.

-ibō, *-ibor*, for *-iam*, *-iar*, 240, 2.

Ibus, for *eis=ies*, p. 73, foot-note 2.

-icius, adjs. in, 329.

Ictus, 599; place in hexam., 612.

-icus, adjs. in, 330; 331; compar., 169, 3. *I* in *icus*, 587, II., 2.

-icus, adjs. in, 335, 5.

Id agō w. subj., p. 274, foot-note 2.

Id redundant, 636, III., 7.

Idcirco, 554, IV., 2.

Idem, decl., 186, VI.; w. dat., 391, N. 1. Use of *idem*, 451.

Ideō, 554, IV., 2.

-idēs or *-idēs*, in patronymics, 587, II., 1.

Ides, 642, I., 3.

-i d ō, *i* in, 587, I., 2.

Idōneus w. dat., p. 205, foot-note 1.

Idōneus quī w. subj., 503, II., 2.

Idūs, gen., 118.

-idus, *i* in, 587, II., 2.

-iē, suffix, 320, II.

-iēnsis adjs. in, 331.

-ier for *i* in infinit., 240, 6.

-iēs, nouns in, 325, N. 1; 327; *-iēs* and *-iā*, 138.

-iginti, quant. of antepen., 587, III., 3.

Igitur, 310, 4; 554, IV., 3; position, 589, III.

Ignārus w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3; p. 315, foot-note 2.

Ignis, decl., 62.

Ignōtus w. dat., p. 205, foot-note 1.

-igō, nouns in, 324, N.; 327, 4, N.; *i* in, 587, I., 2.

-ile, nouns in, 323; *i* in, 587, I., 4.

Ilico, 304, II., 1, N.; *o* in, 581, II., 1.

Ilion, decl., 54.

-ilis, compar. of adjs. in, 163, 2; 168, 1. *I* in *-ilis*, 587, II., 5.

ilis, adjs. in, 330; compar., 169, 3.

I in *ilis*, 587, II., N. 1.

illa, nouns in, 321, 4.

Illac, 305, V.

Illative conj., 310, 4; 554, IV.

Ille, 186; 191; use, 450; position, 569, I., 1. *Illud* redundant, 636, III., 7.

Illuc, decl., 186, 2.

Illic, 304, III., 2; 305, 1.

Illic, 305, III.

-illō, verbs in, 339.

Illo, *illōc*, *illuc*, 304, II., 3, N.; *illuc*, 305, II.

Illudō, constr., p. 202, foot-note 1.

-illus, **-illum**, nouns in, 321, 4; adjs., 332, N. 1.

-im in acc., 62; for *-am* or *-em* in pres. subj., 240, 3. Adverbs in *-im*, p. 144, foot-note 3.

Imbecillis, compar., 163, 2.

Imber, decl., 62, N. 2; 65, 1, 2).

Imbuō, constr., p. 225, foot-note 3.

Immemor w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3; quant. of increm., 585, II., 3.

-imōnia, nouns in, 325; *ō* in, 587, III., 4.

-imōnium, nouns in, 324; *ō* in, 587, III., 4.

Impedimentum, *impedimenta*, 132.

Impellō, constr., p. 274, foot-note 2.

IMPERATIVE, 196, III. Syntax, 487 ff.

Imperat. in prohibitions, 488 ff.; in

indir. disc., 523, III. Imperat. sentences,

354. Imperat. subj., 484,

IV. *Ē* in imperat., Conj. II., 581,

IV., 3.

IMPERFECT TENSE, 197, I.; 222, I.

Imperf. indic., 468 ff.; subj., 480;

in subj. of desire, 483, 2; in potent.

subj., 485, N. 1; in seq. of tenses,

493; 495, III.; for future time, 496,

I.; in condit., 507, III.; 510; 513,

N. 1; in concess., 515, II., 3; in

temp. clauses, 518, N. 1; 518, 1;

519, 2, N. 1; 520, II.; 521, II.

Imperitus w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3;

p. 315, foot-note 2.

Imperō, constr., p. 274, foot-note 1;

p. 310, foot-note 1.

Impersonal verbs, 298 ff.; impers.

pass., 195, II., 1; 534, 1. Clauses

of result as subjects of impers. verbs,

501, I., 1.

Impertiō, constr., p. 198, foot-note 1.

Impetro, constr., p. 274, foot-note 2.

Impleō, constr., 410, V., 1; p. 225,

foot-note 3.

Imploring, constr. w. verbs of, 374, 2,

N. 3

Impos, *os* in, 581, VII., 1; quant. of

increm., 585, II., 3.

Impotens w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3.

Imprudens w. gen., p. 210, foot-note

3; w. force of adverb, 443, N. 1.

Impulse, subj. w. verbs of, 498, II.

Imputing, two datives w. verbs of,

390, N. 1, 2).

Imus, meaning, 440, N. 2.

-in, suffix, 320, II.

In, 308; in compds., 344, 5 and 6; w.

dat., 386. *In* w. acc. or abl., 435;

435, N. 1; 435, I.; w. acc. after

adjs., 391, II., 1; for genit., 396,

III., N. 1. *In* w. abl. for genit.,

397, 3, N. 3. *In* w. ger., p. 315,

foot-note 5; p. 316, foot-note 1. *I*

in *in*, 579, 3.

-ina, nouns in, 324.

Incassum, 304, I., 2.

Incedō, constr., p. 202, foot-note 1.

Inceptives, 280; 337.

Incertus w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3.

Inchoatives, 337.

Inclination, constr. w. adjs. of, 391,

II., 1, (2).

Inclutus, compar., 167, 2.

Incredibilis w. supine, 547, 1.

Increments, quant. in, 582 ff.; decl.,

585; conj., 586.

Inde, 304, III., N.; 305, III.; 310, 4.

Indeclinable nouns, 127, I.; 128;

gend., 42, N. Indecl. adjs., 159, I.

Indefinite pronouns, 189; 455 ff. In-

def. relat. adverbs, 305, N. 1. In-

def. subject, 460, 1, N. 2; 518, 2.

Independent clauses, 348, N. 2.

Index of verbs, p. 383; lyric metres

of Horace, 632.

Indicative, 196, I.; use, 474 ff. In-

dic. for subj. in condit., 511.

Indigeō, constr., 410, V., 1.

Indignus, constr., 421, III., 421, N.

3. *Indignus quī* w. subj., 503, II.,

2. *Indignus* w. supine, 547, 1.

Indigus, constr., p. 219, foot-note 4.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE, 522; moods in

prin. clauses, 523; in sub. clauses,

524; tenses, 525; persons and pro-

nominals, 526; condit. sentences, 527.

Direct changed to indir., 530; indir.

to direct, 531. Indirect clauses, 528

ff.; questions, 529; subj. in, 529,

I.; indic., 529, 7.

INDIRECT OBJECT, 382 ff.; w. direct

object, 384, II.

Indo-European languages, 638.

Indu, *u* in, p. 340, foot-note 1.

Inducō, constr., 377.

Indulging, dat. w. verbs of, 385, II.

- Induō*, constr., 377; p. 198, foot-note 1.
-inē, nouns in, 322, N.; *i* in, 587, I., 3.
Inferne, *e* final in, 581, IV., 4.
Inferus, compar., 163, 3.
Infidels w. dat., p. 205, foot-note 1.
Infirmus, meaning, 440, N. 2.
INFINITIVE, 200, I.; origin, p. 156, foot-note 1; gend., 42, N.; endings, 248. **Infinitive** in sequence of tenses, 495, 4. **Infinitive** in relat. clauses, 524, 1, 1); after conjs., 524, 1, 2). Construction of **infinitive**, 532 ff. **Infinitive** w. verbs, 533. **Infinitive** of purpose, 533, II. **Infinitive** w. adjs., 533, II., 3; w. verb. nouns, etc., 533, 3, N. 3; w. preps., 533, 3, N. 4; w. verbs w. acc., 534; 535. Subject of **infinitive**, 536. **Infinitive** **infinitive**, 536, 1. **Pred.** after **infinitive**, 536, 2. Tenses of **infinitive**, 537. **Infinitive** as subject, 538. **Infinitive** in special constr., 539; as pred., 539, I.; as appos., 539, II.; in exclamations, 539, III.; in abl. abs., 539, IV.
Infitiās, constr., 380, 2, 3).
Influence, dat. of, 384, 1, 1).
Infrā, p. 149, foot-note 2; w. acc., 433; 433, I.
Ingrātus, *is* in, 581, VIII., 1.
Ingrātus w. dat., p. 205, foot-note 1.
Inheritance, divisions of, 646, 3, 4).
-inī, quant. of pen., 587, I., 8.
Inimicus, *injūcundus*, w. dat., p. 205, foot-note 1.
Injuring, dat. w. verbs of, 385, I.
Innōtor w. abl., 425, 1, 1), N.
Inops w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3.
Inquam, position, 569, V.
Inquies, quant. of increm., 585, III., 3.
Insciens w. force of adverb, 443, N. 1.
Inscius w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3.
Inseparable preps., 308; in compds., 344, 6; quant., 594, 2.
Inspēgō, constr., p. 198, foot-note 1.
Instar, defective, 134; gen. w., 398, 4.
INSTRUMENTAL CASE, 367, 3; 411, II.
Instr. abl., 418 ff. **Abl.** of instrument, 420.
Instruō, constr., p. 225, foot-note 3.
Insuber, decl., 65, 1, 2).
Insuber w. gen., p. 205, foot-note 3; p. 210, foot-note 3; p. 315, foot-note 2.
Insuper w. acc. or abl., 437, 3.
Integer w. gen., 399, III., 1.
Intensives, 336.
Inter in compds., 344, 5; w. dat., 386.
Inter w. acc., 433; 433, I.; for gen., 397, 3, N. 3; w. reciprocal force, 448, N. **Inter** w. ger., p. 315, foot-note 5.
Interchange of vowels and consonants, 28; 29.
Interclūdō, constr., p. 198, foot-note 1.
Intercus w. short increm., p. 343, foot-note 3.
Interdiū, *interdius*, *interdum*, 304, I., 2.
Intereā, 304, IV., N. 2.
Interest, dat. of, 384, 1, 2). **Rom.** computation of interest, 646, 3, 3).
Interest, constr., 406, III.; 408.
Interior, compar., 166.
Interjections, 312; 556; 557; w. voc., 369, 1; w. acc., 381, N. 2; w. dat., 381, N. 3, 3); 389, N. 2.
INTERNAL OBJECT, 371, I., 2.
Interne, *e* final in, 581, IV., 4.
INTERROGATIVE pronouns, 188; 454.
Inter. conjs., 311, 8; 555, VIII.
Inter. sentences, 351. **Inter.** words, 351, 1. **Double questions**, 353.
Inter. sentences w. potent. subj., 486, II.; in indir. disc., 523, II. **Indirect questions**, 528, 2; 529, I.
Interrogō w. two accs., 374, 2.
Interval, abl. of, 430.
Intimus, meaning, 440, N. 2.
Intrā w. acc., 433; 433, I.
Intransitive verbs, 193, II.; 195, II., 1; 372, III., N. 3; **impers. passive**, 465, 1.
Intrō- in compds., 594, 8.
Intrus w. abl., 437, 2.
-inūs, adjs. in, 320, 331; compar., 169, 3. **-Inus** or **-inūs** in adjs., 587, II., 5, w. N. 2.
Invādō, constr., p. 202, foot-note 1.
Invicem, 304, I., 2.
Invitus, compar., 167, 2; special use of dat., 387, N. 3. *Invitus* w. force of adverb, 443, N. 1.
Īō, **interj.**, 312, 2.
-iō, verbs of **Conj.** III. in, 217 ff.; quant. of stem-syllable, 588. **-Īō**, **-iō**, suffixes, 320, II.; nouns in, 324; 326.
-iōn in prop. names, *i* in, 577, 5, N.
Ionic feet, 597, N. 1; verse, 626; stanza, 631, XIII.
-ior in comparatives, 162. **-Īor**, suffix, 320, II.
-iōs, suffix, 320, II.
Ipsē, decl., 186, V.; use, 452; w. abl. abs., 431, 4, N. 3. **Gen.** of *ipse* w. possessive, 398, 3.
Ipsus for *ipse*, p. 73, foot-note 5.
-ir, decl. of nouns in, 51, 4.
Iron age, 640, III., 2.
Ironical condition, 507, 3, N. 1.
Irony, 637, V.

IRRATIONAL time, 596, 1, N. 2. Irrat. trochee, 598, 1, 1). Irrat. iambus, 598, 1, 2).

IRREGULAR nouns, 127 ff.; adjs., 159. Irreg. comparison, 163 ff. Irreg. verbs, 289 ff.

Is, decl., 186; correlat., 191; use, 450, 4, N. 2; 451. *Is—quī*, 451, 4. *Ē* in *ēi*, 577, I., 2, (1). *I* in *is*, 579, 3.

-is, decl. of adjs. in, 62, IV., N. 1; of nouns in, 65, 1; 82. Gend. of nouns in, 105; 107. *-Is* in adverbs, 304, I., 3, 1). *-Is* in acc. pl., 62; 64; 67; in adverbs, 304, II., 1. *-Is* or *-is* final, 580, III., w. N. 2; 581, VIII.

Islands, gend. of names of, 42, II., 2; constr., 380, 2, 2); 412, II., 1; 426, 1.

-issimā, **-issimo**, suffixes, p. 156, foot-note 9.

-issimus, *a, um*, in superlat., 162; p. 157, foot-note 9.

-issō, verbs in, 336, N. 2.

Istāc, 305, V.

Iste, decl., 186, II.; correlat., 191; use, 450.

Istic, decl., 186, 2.

Istic, 304, III., 2; 305, I.

Istinc, 305, III.

Istō, *istōc*, 304, II., 3.

Istūc, 304, II., 3; 305, II.

-it in Plautus for *-it*, 580, III., N. 2.

Ita, 305, V.; *ita—si*, 507, 3, N. 2. Meaning of *ita*, 551, N. 2. *Ū—ita*, w. superlat., 555, II., 1. *A* in *ita*, 581, III., 3. *Ita* redundant, 636, III., 7.

Itaque, 310, 4.

-itās, nouns in, 324; 325; *i* in, 587, II., 4.

-iter, *i* in, 587, II., 4.

-itia, nouns in, 325.

-itiēs, nouns in, 325, N. 1.

-itim, *i* in, 587, I., 7.

-itimus, adjs. in, 380, 1.

-itium, nouns in, 324.

-itō, frequentatives in, 386, II.

-itūdō, nouns in, 325; *i* in, 587, IV., 1.

-itus in adverbs, *i* in, p. 345, foot-note 2; 587, II., 4. *I* in *-itus*, 587, I., 7.

-iu, suffix, 320, II.

-ium, decl. of nouns in, 51, 5. *-Ium* in gen. pl., 62; 63; 64; 66; 67. Nouns in *-ium*, 324; 327.

-ius, suffix, 320, II. Decl. of nouns in *-ius*, 51, 5. Adjs. in *-ius*, 380; 381; 383, 5. *I* or *i* in *ius* in gen., 577, I., 3, (3). *I* in *ius* in prop. names, 577, 5, N.

-ivus, adjs. in, 383, 5; *i* in, 587, I., 6. **-ix**, decl. of nouns in, 95. *-Ix*, decl. of nouns in, 94; quant. of increm., 585, IV., 1.

J

J, j, modifications of *I, i*, 2, 4; sound, 7; effect on quantity of preceding syllable, 16, I., 2; 576, II.; 576, 2; interchanged with *i*, 28; dropped, 36, 4.

-ja, suffix, 320, I.

Jaciō, spelling and pronunciation of compds., 36, 4.

Jam, compds. of, w. present, 467, 2; w. imperf., 469, 2.

-jans, suffix, 320, I.

Jecur, decl., 77, 4.

Jocus, plur. *jocī*, *joca*, 141.

-jōr, suffix, 320, II.

Joy, force of adjs. expressing, 443, N. 1.

Jubar, quant. of increm., 585, I., 4, (1).

Jubeō, constr., p. 310, foot-note 1; in pass., 534, 1, N. 1.

Jucundus w. dat., p. 205, foot-note 1; w. supine, 547, 1.

Jūdex, decl., 59.

Judiciō, constr., 410, II., 1.

Jūgerum, decl., 136, 1. *Jūgerum* as unit of measure, 648, V.

Jugum, quant. of syllable before *j* in compds., 576, 2.

Julian calendar, 641.

Jungō w. dat., p. 201, foot-note 1; w. abl., 419, 1, 1).

Juppiter, decl., 66, 3.

Jūrātus w. active meaning, 257, N. 2.

Jūs, decl., 61.

Jusjurandum, decl., 126.

Jussō for *jusserō*, 240, 4.

Juvenal, versification, 630.

Juvenis, decl., p. 36, foot-note 3; compar., 168, 4.

Juvō w. acc., 385, II., N. 1.

Justā w. acc., 433.

K

K seldom used, 2, 6.

-ka, suffix, 320, I.

Karthāgō, decl., 66, 4.

Kindred words near each other, 563.

Knowing, constr. w. verbs of, 533, I., 1; 535, I., 1, (2).

Knowledge, adjs. of, w. gen., 399, I., 2; p. 315, foot-note 2; w. force of adverbs, 443, N. 1.

L

L, stems in, decl., 60; nouns in, decl., 75; gend., 111; 112. Quant. of final syllables in L, 579, 2; 580, II.
-la, lā, suffixes, 320. Nouns in **-la,** 321.
 Labials, 3, II.; 3, N. 1, I., 3. Labial stems, 57.
Lacer, decl., 150, N., 1).
Lacrimō w. accus., 371, III., N. 1.
Lacus, decl., 117, 1, 2).
Laedō w. accus., 385, II., N. 1.
Laetus w. force of adverb, 443, N. 1.
Laevā, constr., 425, 2.
Lampas, decl., 68.
 Language, Latin, 638.
Lapis, decl., 58.
Lār, quant. of increm., 585, I., 4, (1).
Lassus not compared, 169, 4.
 LATIN period, 573. Lat. lang. and literature, 638. Early Latin, 639. Lat. authors, 640.
 Learning, constr. w. verbs of, 533, I., 1.
 Leaving, verbs of, w. two dats., 390, N. 1, 2).
 Lengthening of vowels, 20.
-lēns, -lentus, adjs. in, 328.
Leō, decl., 60.
Lepus, quant. of increm., 585, II., 3.
 Lesser Ionic, 597, N.; Archilochian, 617, N.; Asclepiadēan, 628, IV.; Sapphic, 628, VI.; Alcaic, 628, VIII.
 Letters, classification, 3; sounds, 5 ff. Names of letters indecl., 128, 1. Tenses in letters, 472, 1.
-leus, nouns in, 321, N.
Levō, constr., p. 217, foot-note 5; p. 219, foot-note 1.
Lēx, quant. of increm., 585, III., 3.
-li, suffix, 320, II.
Libens w. force of adverb, 443, N. 1.
Liber, Bacchus, *liberī*, decl., 51, 4.
Liber, era, erum, 149.
Liberō, constr., p. 217, foot-note 5; p. 219, foot-note 1.
Libra, 648, I.; divisions, 648, I., 1.
Librō, constr., 425, 2, N. 1.
Liceō w. abl., p. 226, foot-note 1.
Licet, 311, 4; w. subj., 515, III. Pleonasm w. *licet*, 636, III., 9.
Liger, decl., 66, III., 1.
Ligus w. short increm., p. 343, foot-note 3.
 Likeness, dat. w. adjs. of, 391, I.; 391, II., 4.
 Limit, accus. of, 380.
Linter, decl., 65, 1, 2).

Liquī, i in, 590, 1.
 Liquid measure, Rom., 648, III.
 Liquids, 3, II., 4; developing vowels, 29, N. Liquid stems, 60.
Lis, decl., p. 38, foot-note 4; quant. of increm., 585, IV., 2.
-lis, adjs. in, 338.
 Literature, Lat., 638.
 Litotes, 637, VIII.
Littera, litterae, 132. *Litterās dare*, 385, 1, N.
Litum, i in, 590, 1.
-lo, suffix, 320, II.
 LOCATIVE, 45, 2; 48, 4; 51, 8; 66, 4; 120, N. Locatives as adverbs, 304, III. Abl. w. locat., 363, 4, 2). Syntax of locat., 367, 2; 411, III.; 425, II.; 426, 2. Locat. abl., 425, ff.
Locō, constr., 380, N.
Locuples, quant. of increm., 585, III., 3.
Locus, plur., 141. *Locō*, constr., 415, II., N. *Locō, locis*, constr., 425, 2.
 Logaedic verse, 627 ff.
 Long measure, Rom., 648, IV.
 Long syllables, 575. Long stem-syllables in primitives, 595. Final long vowel shortened in hiatus, 608, II., N. 3.
Longinquus, superlat. wanting, 168, 3.
Longius without *quam*, 417, 1, N. 2.
-ls, decl. of nouns in, 90.
Luctor w. dat., p. 201, foot-note 1.
Ludicer, defect., 159, II.
Ludus, ludi, 132.
Lues, defective, 134.
-lus, -lum, nouns in, 321; adjs., 332.
Lux, without gen. plur., 133, 5; quant. of increm., 585, V., 2.
Lycūrgides, i in, p. 345, foot-note 3.
Lynx, decl., p. 38, foot-note 3.
 Lyric metres of Horace, 631; index, 632.

M

M changed to n, 33, 4; assimilated to s, 34, 1, N.; developing *ν*, 34, 1, N. Stems in *m*, 60. Prepositions in *m*, p. 149, foot-note 2. Quant. of final syllables in *m*, 579, 2; 580, II. *M* final elided, 608, I.
-ma, -mā, suffixes, 320.
Maerō, constr., 371, III., N. 1.
Magis in comparison, 170; 444, 2, notes 1 and 2. *Nōn magis—quam*, 555, II., 1.
Māgnus compared, 165. *Māgnī*, constr., p. 213, foot-note 2.
Māior in expressions of age, p. 222, foot-note 4.

Making, verbs of, w. two accs., 378.
Male compared, 306, 2. Dat. w. compds. of *male*, 384, 4, N. 1. *E* in *male*, 581, IV., 4.
Mälö, constr., p. 274, foot-note 1; 499, 2; p. 310, foot-note 1. *Is* in *mävis*, 581, VIII., 3, N.
Malus, compar., 165.
-man, suffix, 320, I.
Manifestus w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3.
Manner, adverbs of, 305, N. 2, 3). Abl. of manner, 419, III. Manner expressed by particip., 549, 1.
Manus, gen., 118.
Mare, decl., 63; 63, 2. *Mari*, constr., 425, 2.
Margarita, plur., 142.
Martial, metres, 633, II.
Mäs, decl., p. 38, foot-note 4; quant. of increm., 585, I., 4, (2).
Masculine caesura, 611, N.
Mastery, adjs. of, w. gen., 399, I., 3; verbs of, w. gen., 410, V., 3.
Material expressed by abl., 415. Material nouns, 39, 2, 3; plur., 130, 2.
Mäturus, compar., 163, 1, N.
Mätutinus, *i* in, p. 345, foot-note 5.
Mäximē in adverbial comparison, 170.
Mäximä, constr., p. 213, foot-note 2.
Means, abl. of, 418; 420. Means expressed by particip., 549, 1.
Measure of difference, abl. of, 417, 2. Roman measures, 646; 648.
Mecastör, interj., p. 152, foot-note 4.
Med for *mē*, 184, 5.
Medeor w. dat., 385, II., N. 3.
Medial vowels, 3, I., 2.
Medius designating part, 440, N. 2.
Medius fidius, *mehercule*, *mehercules*, interj., p. 152, foot-note 4.
Mel, defect., 133, 4, N.
Melius w. indicat., 475, 5.
Melos, decl., 68, 6.
Members of complex sentences, 348, N. 1.
Memē for *mē*, 184, 4.
Memini w. gen., 406, II.; w. acc., 407; w. pres. infin., 537, 1.
Memor, decl., 158. *Memor* w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3. Quant. of increm. of *memor*, 585, II., 3.
Memorabilis w. sup., 547, 1.
-men, suffix, 320, II.; nouns in, 327.
Mendicus, *i* in, p. 345, foot-note 4.
Mensa, decl., 48.
Mensis, decl., p. 36, foot-note 3.
-mento, suffix, p. 157, foot-note 1.
-mentum, nouns in, 327.
Mepte for *mē*, 184, 5.
Mercēs, quant. of increm., 585, III., 3.

Meridies, gen., 123; defect., 130, 1, 4).
Messis, decl., 62, III., 1.
-met, forms in, 184, 3; 185, N. 2.
Metaphor, 637, II.
Metathesis, 635, 5.
Metonymy, 637, III.
Metre, 601, N. 3.
Metrical equivalents, 598. Metr. name of verse, 603.
Metuō, constr., 385, 1; p. 274, foot-note 3.
Meus, decl., 185, N. 1.
Mi for *mihi*, 184.
Middle voice, 465.
Miles, decl., 58.
Militia, decl., 48, 4; constr., 426, 2.
Mille, decl., 159, I.; use, 174, 4; 178.
Milia masc. by synesis, 461, 2.
Million sesterces, how denoted, 647, IV.
-min, suffix, 320, II.
-mini as pers. end., p. 118, foot-note 3.
Minimä, constr., p. 213, foot-note 2.
-minō in imperat., 240, 5.
Minor caesura, p. 357, foot-note 1.
Minor, *minus*, without *quam*, 417, N. 2. *Minōris*, constr., 405; p. 213, foot-note 2.
Minus, *minimē*, as negatives, 552, 3. *Nōn minus—quam*, 555, II., 1.
Mirificus, compar., 164, N.
Mirror w. acc., 371, III., N. 1; w. gen., p. 217, foot-note 5; p. 310, foot-note 2.
Mirum w. *quantum*, 305, N. 4.
Mirus not compared, 169, 4.
Mis for *mei*, 184, 5.
Miscō w. dat., 385, 3; p. 201, foot-note 1; w. acc. and dat., p. 201, foot-note 2; w. abl., 419, 1, 1), (2).
Miser, decl., 150, N.
Misereor, *miserescō*, w. gen., 406. *Miserescit*, *miseretur*, constr., 410, IV., N. 1.
Miseret, constr., 409, III.
Mittō w. two dats., 390, N. 1, 2).
-mo, suffix, 320, II.
Moderor, constr., 385, 1.
Modifiers, 357 ff. Position of modifiers, of nouns, 565; adjs., 566; verbs, 567; adverbs, 568.
Modius, 648, II.
Modo, 311, 3. *Modo*, *modo nē*, w. subj. of desire, 483, 6. *Modo* w. subj. in condit., 513, I. *Nōn modo—sed etiam* (*vērūm etiam*), 554, I., 5. *O* final in *modo* and compds., 581, II., 1.
Modus, circumlocutions w., 636, III., 10.

- Molestus* w. dat., p. 205, foot-note 1.
Molossus, 633, III., 1, N.
-mōn, suffix, 320, II.
Monēō, constr., 374, 2; p. 193, foot-note 3; 410, I., 2; p. 274, foot-note 1.
Money, Roman, 646 ff.
-mōniā, **-mōnio**, suffixes, p. 157, foot-note 1; *mōnia*, nouns in, 327.
-mōnium, nouns in, 327.
Monoclon, p. 352, foot-note 3.
Monometer, 603, N. 2.
Monosyllabic preps. repeated, 636, III., 6.
Monosyllables, quant., 579. *Monosyllables* at end of line, 613, N. 2.
Months, Roman, 641; 642, III., 2; names of, originally adjs., p. 36, foot-note 2; gender, 42, I., 2; names of, in *-ber*, decl., 65, 1, 1).
Moods, 196. *Mood signs*, 244 ff. *Indic.*, 466 ff. *Subj.*, 477 ff.; 490 ff. *Imperat.*, 487 ff. *Moods* in subord. clauses, 490 ff.; in condit. sentences, 506 ff.; in concess. clauses, 514 ff.; in causal clauses, 516 ff.; in temp. clauses, 518 ff.; in indir. disc., 523 ff.; in indir. clauses, 529. *Infin.*, 532 ff.
Morae or times, 597.
Mōs, *mōres*, 132.
Motion to, how expressed, 384, 3, 1); 385, 4, 1); 386, 3.
Moveō w. abl., 414, II.; w. subj., p. 274, foot-note 2.
-ms, decl. of nouns in, 88.
Mulciber, decl., 151, 4, 3).
Multī, indef. num., 175, N. 3.
Multimodis, 304, II., 1, N.
Multiplication, how expressed, 174, 2, 2).
Multiplicatives, 173, 1.
Multitūdō w. plur. verb, 461, 1.
Multus, compar., 165; plur., 175, N. 3.
Mūs, decl., 64; p. 38, foot-note 4.
Mutes, 3, II., 5.
Mutō, constr., 422, N. 2.
- N
- N assimilated to *l*, 34, 2; to *m*, 34, 3; dropped, 36, 3, N. 3; 36, 5, 3).
 Stems in *n*, 60. Decl. of nouns in *n*, 76; gend., 113. Quant. of final syllables in *n*, 580, II., w. notes 1 and 2.
-na, **-nā**, suffixes, 320.
Nam, 310, 5; w. emphasis, 351, 4, N. 1.
Name, dat. of, 387, N. 1; gen. of, 387, N. 2. *Name* of verse, 603.
NAMES, Roman, 331, N. 3; 439, 4, N.; 649. *Names* of towns, constr., 330, II.; 412, II.; 425, II.; 428.
Namque, 310, 5; 554, V., 2.
Nasals, 3, II., 2; developing vowels, 29, N.
Nātālis, *nātāles*, 132.
Nātus w. abl., 415, II.
Nauci, constr., n. 213, foot-note 3.
Nāvis, decl., 62, III.
Nd shortens preceding vowel, p. 37, foot-note 2.
-Ne, interrog. particle, 310, 2, N.; 311, 8; in questions, 351, 1 and 2; in double questions, 353, 1; in indir. questions, 529, 1 and 3. Position of *-ne*, 569, III., 4. *E* elided before consonant, 608, I., N. 2.
Nē, 311, 4 and 5; 552; w. subj. of desire, 483, 3; 489, 3; w. imperat., 488; w. subj. of purpose, 497, II.; 498, III., notes 1 and 2; omitted, 499, 2. *Nē* in concessions, 515, III.
Nē nōn, 552, 1. *Nē—quidem*, 553, 2; 569, III., 2. *Nē* or *ne* as prefix, 594, 2.
-nē, nouns in, 322, N.
Nearness, dat. w. adjs. of, 391, I.; gen., 391, 4.
Nec, 310, 1; 554, I., 2. *Nec—nec* (necque), *nec—et* (que), *et—nec*, 554, I., 5. Position of *nec* in poetry, 569, III., N. *E* in *nec*, 579, 3.
Necessārius w. dat., p. 205, foot-note 1.
Necessary, dat. w. adjs. signifying, 391, I.
Necesse est, constr., 502, 1.
Necne, 310, 2, N.; 311, 8; 353, 2, N. 3; 529, 3, 2).
Nectar, quant. of increm., 585, I., 4, (1).
Nectō w. dat., p. 201, foot-note 1.
Nedum w. subj., 483, 3, N.; *ē* in, 594, 2, N. 2.
Needing, constr. w. verbs of, 414, I.
Nefas, defect., 134; w. sup., 547, 1.
Negatives, 552; w. subj. of desire, 483, 3. Two neg., 553. Gen. neg., 553, 1 and 2. Position of neg., 569, IV., 1.
Nēmō, use, 457, 1; followed by *quān*, p. 278, foot-note 3. *Ē* in *nēmō*, 534, 2, N. 2.
Nēnu, *u* in, p. 340, foot-note 1.
Nepōs, decl., 58.
Nēquam indecl., 159, I.; compar., 165, N. 2; *ē* in, 594, 2, N. 2.
Nēquāquam, *ē* in, 594, 2, N. 2.
Negue, 310, 1; 554, I., 2. *Negue—neque*, 553, 2; 554, I., 5. *Negue—et—neque*, 554, I., 5.

- Nē—quidem*, 553, 2; 569, III., 2.
Nēquiquam, nequīta, ē in, 594, 2, N. 2.
Nērēis, ē in, p. 345, foot-note 1.
Nesciō quis, quī, 191, N.; 455, 2. *Nesciō* w. interrog. adv., 305, N. 3. *Nesciō quis, quomodo*, w. indic., 529, 5, 3). *Nesciō an*, 529, 3, N. 2.
Nescius w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3.
Neu, see *Nēve*.
-neus, adjs. in, 329.
Neuter, decl., 151, 1.
NEUTER nom., acc., and voc. pl., 46, 2, 1). Neuter by signification, 42, N.; by ending, Decl. II., 53; Decl. III., 111; Decl. IV., 118. Neuter pron. or adj., as cognate acc., 371, II.; 375; w. part. gen., 397, 3; in pred., 488, 4. *O* in increm. of neut., 585, II., 1.
Nēve, neu, 311, 5; w. subj. of desire, 483, 3; w. imperat., 488; w. subj. of purpose, 497, 1, N. *Nēve—nēve*, 552, 2. *Ē* in *nēve*, 594, 2, N. 2.
Nex, defect., 133, 5.
Nf lengthens preceding vowel, 16, N. 2.
Nī, 311, 3; in condit., 507 ff. *Nī* = 'but,' 'except,' 507, 3, N. 3. *Nī* for *nē*, 552, 1.
-ni, suffix, 320.
Night, Rom. division of, 645; 645, 1.
Nihil, defect., 134; for *nōn*, 457, 3.
Nihil aliud nisi, nihil aliud quam, 555, III., 1.
Nihili, constr., 404, N. 2.
Nimis w. genit., p. 209, foot-note 3.
Nimium quantum, 305, N. 4.
Nisi, 311, 3; in condit., 507 ff. *Nisi* = 'but,' 'except,' 507, 3, N. 3; = 'except,' 'than,' 555, III., 1. *Nisi* *et*, 507, 3, N. 4. *Nisi quod, nihil aliud nisi*, 555, III., 1. *I* final in *nisi*, 581, I., 1.
Nitor, constr., 425, 1, 1), N.; 498, II., N. 1.
Nix, decl., p. 38, foot-note 4; 66; w. short increm., p. 343, foot-note 2.
-no, suffix, 320, II.
Nōlō, constr., 499, 2; p. 310, foot-note 1. *Nōlī, nōlīte*, in prohibitions, 489, 1). *I* in *nōlīte*, etc., 586, III., 4.
Nōmen w. dat., 387, N. 1; w. gen., 387, N. 2. *Nōmine* w. gen. of crime, 410, II., 1. *Nōmen* in name of a Rom. citizen, 649.
NOMINATIVE neut. pl. in adjs., 158, 1. Syntax of nom., 368; two nom., 373, 2. Nom. for voc., 369, 2. Nom. in exclamations, 381, N. 3, 2). *-Es* in nom. sing., 581, VI., 1; *-is*, 581, VIII., 2; *-ūs*, 581, IX., 1; in plur., 581, IX., 2.
Nōn, p. 145, foot-note 2; 552. *Nōn modo nōn, nōn solum nōn*, 552, 2. *Nōn solum* (*nōn modo or nōn tantum*)—*sed etiam* (*verum etiam*), 554, I., 5. *Nōn minus—quam, nōn magis—quam*, 555, II., 1. *Nōn quō, quod, quī, quia*, w. subj., 516, 2. *Nōn* w. gen. negat., 553, 1. Position of *nōn*, 569, IV.
Nōndum, 555, I., 1.
Nones, 642, I., 2.
Nōnne, 311, 8; 351, 1 and 2.
Nōs for *ego, noster* for *meus*, 446, N. 2.
Nostrās, decl., 185, N. 3.
Nostrī, nostrū, 446, N. 3.
Nōtus w. dat., p. 205, foot-note 1.
NOUNS, etymol., 39 ff.; gen., 40 ff.; pers. and num., 44; cases, 45; decl., 46 ff.; defect., 122; 129 ff.; indecl., 128; heteroclitics, 135 ff.; heterogeneous, 141 ff. Syntax, 362 ff.; agreement, 362 ff.; general view of cases, 365 ff.; nom., 368, voc., 369; acc., 370 ff.; dat., 382 ff.; gen., 393 ff.; abl., 367; 411 ff.; w. preps., 432 ff. Nouns as adjs., 441, 3. Position of modifiers of nouns, 565.
Novus, compar., 167, 2.
Nox, decl., p. 38, foot-note 4.
Noxius w. dat., p. 205, foot-note 1; w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3.
-ns, decl. of nouns in, 65, 3; 90. *Ns* lengthens preceding vowel, 16, N. 2.
Nt dropped, p. 19, foot-note 9; shortens preceding vowel, p. 37, foot-note 2.
-nu, suffix, 320.
Nūbēcula, p. 159, foot-note 1.
Nūbes, decl., 62.
Nūbō w. dat., 385, N. 3.
Nūdō, constr., p. 219, foot-note 1.
Nūllus, decl., 151, 1; for Eng. adverb, 443, N. 1; use, 457, 2; for *nōn*, 457, 3. *Nūllus* followed by *quī*, p. 278, foot-note 3.
Num, 310, 2, N.; 311, 8; 351, 1; in indir. quest., 529, II., 1, N. 3.
-num, nouns in, 327.
Number, 44; in verbs, 199. Gen. in descriptions of number, 419, 2, 1).
NUMERALS, 171 ff.; adjs., 172 ff.; decl., 175 ff.; symbols, 180; adverbs, 181; in compounding numbers, 174, 3. Numerals w. gen., 397, 2. Numerals in dates, 642, III., 1.
Nummus, 647.
Nunc, 304, I., 4; 305, IV.

Nuntior, constr., 534, N. 1, (2).
Nuper, 304, IV., N. 2; compar., 306, 4.
-nus, adjs. in, 329.
Nusquam w. gen., 397, 4.

O

O, ō, sound, 5; 10; 11. Ō final shortened, 21, 2, 3). O-nouns, 51. Decl. of nouns in ō, ō, 60, 4; 72; quant. of increm., 585, II., 5, (2); gend., 99; 100. Num. adverbs in -ō, 181, N. 2. Origin of ō final in verbs, p. 118, foot-note 5. Adverbs in -ō, 304, II., 1 and 2. Superlat. adverbs in -ō, 306, 6. Ō or o, final, 580, I.; 581, II.; in increm. of decl., 585; 585, II.; conj., 586. Ō, interj., 312, 1, 2, and 5; w. acc., 381, N. 2. Ō si w. subj. of desire, 483, 1. Ō in hiatus, 608, II., 1.
-o, -ō, suffixes, 320, II. Nouns in -ō, 326, 2.
Ob in compds., 344, 5; in compds. w. dat., 386. *Ob* w. acc., 433; 433, I.; w. ger., p. 315, foot-note 5.
Obeying, dat. w. verbs of, 385, I.
Obiter, 304, I., 2.
OBJECT, direct, 371; external, 371, I., 1; internal, 371, I., 2. Object omitted, 371, III., N. 4. Infinitive clause as object, 371, IV.; 540, N. Indir. object, 382 ff. Object clauses of purpose, 498; of result, 501, II.
Objective compds., 343, II. Object. gen., 396, III.
Oblique cases, 45, 1; use of, 370 ff.
Obliviscor w. gen., 406, II.; w. acc., 407.
Oboediens w. two dats., 390, N. 3.
Obviam, 304, I., 2.
Occisit for *occiderit*, 240, 4.
Occupatio, p. 373, foot-note 2.
Ōcior, compar., 166.
Octo, o final in, 581, IV., 2.
Oe, sound, 6; 12.
Oedipus, u in, 581, IX., 3, N.
Offendō, constr., 385, II., N. 1.
Ōhā, interj., 312, 3; ō in, 577, I., 4; e in, 581, IV., 4.
Oi, sound, 6, 1; 12, 1.
-ōis, ō in, 587, I., 3; 577, 5, N.
-ōius in prop. names, ō in, 577, 5, N.
-ola, o in, 587, II., 3.
-olentus, ō in, 587, IV., 1.
Oleō w. acc., 371, III., N. 1.
Ollus, *olle*, for *ille*, p. 73, foot-note 1, (2).
-olum, -olus, o in, 587, II., 3.

Omission of consonants, 36; of *orō* in adjurations, 569, II., 3.
Omnis, gen. of, w. possessives, 398, 3.
-on, -ōn, suffixes, 320, II.; -ōn in Greek gen. plur., 68, 4. Quant. of increm. of nouns in -ōn, 585, II., 5, (2).
-ōna, ō in, 587, I., 5.
-ōnē in patronymics, 322, N.; ō in, 587, I., 3.
Onerō, constr., p. 225, foot-note 3.
-ōnī, ō in, 587, I., 8.
Onomatopoeia, 637, XI., 5.
-ōnus, ō in, 587, I., 5.
Open vowel, 3, I., 1.
Opera, *operae*, 132. *Operam dō* w. subj., p. 274, foot-note 2.
Optimus, superlat. wanting, 168, 3.
Oporet, constr., 502, 1; 537, 1.
Opposing, constr. w. verbs of, 505, II.
Ops, decl., p. 38, foot-note 3; 133, 1.
Optative in fut. and in pres. subj., p. 117, foot-note 4. *Optat. subj.*, 484, 1.
Optimātes, decl., 64, 2, 4).
Optimus w. supine, 547, 1.
Ōptō, constr., p. 274, foot-note 1.
Ōpus, 'work,' decl., 61. *Ōpus*, 'need,' defect., 134; constr., 414, IV.; w. sup., 547, 1. *Ōpus est* w. subj., 502, 1.
-ōr, -ōr, suffixes, 320, II. Nouns in -or, 327. Ō shortened in -or, 21, 2, 2). Gen. of nouns in -or, 99, 101.
-Ōr in Plautus for -or, 580, III., N. 2. Quant. of increm. of nouns in -or, 585, II., 5, (1).
ŌRATIO OBLIQUA, see *Indirect Discourse*. *Ōratiō recta*, 522, 1.
Orbis, decl., 62, IV.
Orbō, constr., p. 219, foot-note 1.
Order of vowels in strength, 22.
Ordinal numbers, 172; 174; decl., 179.
-ōrius, ō in, 587, III., 1.
Ōrnō, constr., p. 225, foot-note 3.
Ōrō w. two accs., 374, 2; w. subj., p. 274, foot-note 1. *Ōrō* omitted in adjurations, 569, II., 3.
Orpheus, decl., 68.
Orthography, 1, I.; 2 ff.
Ōrtus w. abl., 415, II.
-ōrus, compar. of adjs. in, 169, 3. Ō in -ōrus, 587, I., 6.
Ōs, quant. of increm., 585, II., 1.
Ōs, ossis, decl., p. 38, foot-note 4; o in, 579, 3.
-os, suffix, 320, II. Sound of -os, 11, 1. Greek neuters in -os, 68, 6. Decl. of nouns in -os, -os, 83; 133, 4, N.; gend., 99; 102. Ōs or os final, 580, III.; 581, VII.

Ossua, p. 50, foot-note 1.

Ostrea, plur., 142.

-osus, adjs. in, 328; *ō* in, 587, I., 6.

-ōtis, *ō* in, 587, I., 3.

-ōtus, *ō* in, 587, I., 7.

Ovid, versification, 630.

Owing, constr. w. verbs of, 533, I., 1.

-ox, **-ōx**, decl. of nouns in, 96.

Oxymoron, 637, XI., 5.

P

P changed to *b*, 33, 2; to *m*, 33, 3, N.; developed by *m*, 34, 1, N.

Paene w. perf. ind., 471, 2; w. hist. tenses of indic., 511, 1, N. 4.

Paenitet, constr., 409, III.; 410, IV.

Palam w. abl., 437, 2.

Palatals, 3, II., N. 1, 1.

Palus for *palūs*, 581, IX., 1, N.

Palūster, decl., 153, N. 1, 1).

Panthūs, voc., 54, N. 4.

Papae, interj., 312, 2.

Pār, constr., p. 205, foot-notes 1 and 3; quant. of increm., 585, I., 4, (1).

Paraleipsis, 637, XI., 2.

Parasitic *u*, 5, 4.

Pardoning, dat. w. verbs of, 385, II.

Parūs, gen. plur., p. 38, foot-note 2.

Parantage expressed by abl., 415.

Parenthetical clauses in indir. disc., 524, 2, 1); in indir. clauses, 529, II., N. 1, 2).

Parēs, *ēs* in, 581, VI., 1.

Parīs, decl., 68.

Paroemiac verse, 604, N. 2.

Paronomasia, 637, XI., 7.

Pars, acc., 64, N. 2. *Pars*, *partes*, 132.

Pars in fractions, 174, 1. *Parte*, *partibus*, constr., 425, 2. *Pars* w. plur. verb, 461, 1.

Particeps w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3.

Participation, gen. w. adjs. of, 399, I., 3; w. verbs of, 410, V., 3.

PARTICIPLES, 200, IV.; endings, 248.

Particip. in seq. of tenses, 495, IV.

Agreement of particip., 438, 1; 460, 1.

Particip. for infin., 535, I., 4.

Use of particip., 548 ff.; denoting time, cause, manner, means, 549, 1; condit., concess., 549, 2; purpose, 549, 3; for relat. clause, 549, 4; for prin. clause, 549, 5; w. negat., 549, N. 1. Particip. rendered by noun, 549, N. 2.

PARTICLES, 302 ff.; adverbs, 303 ff.; preps., 307; 308; conj., 309 ff.; interjections, 312. Syntax of particles, 551 ff.; adverbs, 551 ff. In-

terrog. particles, p. 152, foot-note 3; 351, 1; 555, 8. *-ā* in particles, 581, III., 3.

Partim, 304, I., 1; w. gen., p. 209, foot-note 3. *Partim*—*partim* for *pars*—*pars*, 461, 5.

Partitive apposition, 364. Part. gen., 396, IV.; 397.

Parts of speech, 38.

Partus, decl., 117, 1, 2).

Partum w. gen., p. 209, foot-note 3.

Parvus, compar., 165. *Parvī*, constr., p. 213, foot-note 2.

Passer, decl., 60.

PASSIVE VOICE, 195, II.; impers., 195, II., 1. Passive constr., 464; 534, 1. Passive like middle, 465.

Passus, 648, IV., N.

Pāstor, *pater*, decl., 60.

Paterfamiliās, decl., 126.

Patior, constr., p. 310, N. 1.

Patrials, 331, N. 1; quant. of increm., 585, II., 5.

Patronymics, 322.

Pauci, defect., 159, II.

Pause, caesural, 602.

Pāx, defect., 133, 5.

Pecū, decl., p. 50, foot-note 1.

PECULIARITIES, in conjugat., 235 ff.; in seq. of tenses, 495; in expressions of purpose, 499; of result, 502. Peculiarities in Rom. calendar, 642.

Pecus w. short increm., p. 343, foot-note 3.

Pedester, decl., 153, N. 1, 1).

Pelagus, decl., 51, 7; gen., 53, 2.

Penalty, how expressed, 410, III.

Penātes, decl., 64, 2, 4).

Penes w. acc., 433; *es* in, 581, VI., 2.

Peninsulas, constr. of names of, 380, II., 2, 2).

Pentameter, 603, N. 2; dactylic, 614.

Penthemimeral caesura, p. 356, foot-note 4.

Penthemimeris, 597, N. 2.

Penus, gen., 118, (2).

Per in compds., 170, 1; 344, 5; w. acc., 372. *Per* w. acc., 433; 433, I.; denoting agency, 415, I., 1, N. 1; manner, 419, III., N. 3. *Per se*, 452, 1, N. Position of *per* in adjurations, 569, II., 3. *E* in *per*, 579, 3.

Perceiving, constr. w. verbs of, 585, 1. *Percontor* w. two accs., 374, 2.

PERFECT TENSE, 197; 198. Perf. system, 222, II. Perfect stems, 252 ff. Perf. wanting, 262, N. 2; 272, N. 2; 282; 284, N. 2. Perf. w. pres. meaning, 297, I., 2. Syntax of perf. indic., 471; subj., 481; in subj. of

- desire, 483, 2; in potent. subj., 485, N. 1; in prohibitions, 489, 3). Perf. in seq. of tenses, 492; 493; 495; 496, II. Perf. in condition, 507, II.; 509; 511, 1; 511, 2, N.; 513, N. 1.; in concess., 515, II., 2; in temp. clauses, 518, N. 1; 520, N. 1; in indir. disc., 525, 1; 527, II.; 527, III., N. 2. Perf. infin., 537. Perf. particip., 550; rendered by verbal noun, 549, 3, N. 2. *-ſ* in perf. subj., 581, VIII., 5. Quant. of pen. of dissyllabic perfects, 590. Quant. of first two syllables of trisyllabic reduplicated perfects, 591.
- Perh̄beor*, constr., 534, 1, N. 1, (2).
- Peric̄tes*, decl., 68.
- Periculum est* w. subj., p. 274, foot-note 3.
- Period, Lat., 573. Periods of Lat. literature, 640.
- Periphrastic conjugat., 233; 234; use, 466, N.; p. 261, foot-note 4; 476, 1; in condit. sentences, 511, 2. Periphrast. fut. infin., 537, 3.
- Peritus* w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3; of ger., p. 315, foot-note 3.
- Pernisc̄o* w. dat., p. 201, foot-note 1.
- Perniciōsus* w. dat., p. 205, foot-note 1.
- Person of nouns, 44; verbs, 199; in indir. disc., 526.
- PERSONAL PRON., 183, 1; 184; use, 446; reflexive use, 448; 449. Pers. endings of verbs, 247. Pers. constr. in indir. questions, 529, 6; in pass. voice, 534, 1.
- Personification, 637, IX.
- Persuading, dat. w. verbs of, 385, II.
- Pertaedet, pertaesum est*, constr., 410, IV., notes 1 and 3.
- Pes, es* in compds., 581, VI., 1. *Pes* as unit of measure, 648, IV.
- Peto*, constr., 374, 2, N. 4.
- Phalaecian verse, 629, I.
- Pherecratic verse, 623, II. and IV.-VI.
- Phocais, a* in, p. 345, foot-note 1.
- PHONETIC CHANGES, 19 ff. Phonet. decay, p. 12, foot-note 1.
- Phryx*, decl., 68.
- Phŷ*, 312, 4.
- Piget*, constr., 409, III.; 410, IV.
- Pili*, constr., p. 213, foot-note 3.
- Pix* wants gen. plur., 133, 5; w. short increm., p. 343, foot-note 2.
- PLACE, adverbs of, 305, I., II., and III.; 305, N. 2, 1). Endings of designations of place, 323. Constr. w. verbs meaning *to place*, 380, N. Place *whither*, 380; *where*, dat., 385, 4, 4); abl., 425; locat., 425, II.; 426; *whence*, 412. Adjs. of place for Eng. adverbs, 448, N. 2.
- Plautus, quantity of syllables in, 578, N. 2; 580, III., notes 2-4; metres, 633, III.
- Pleasing, dat. w. verbs of, 385, I.
- Plebecula*, formation, p. 159, foot-note 1.
- Plebs*, quant. of increm., 585, III., 3.
- Plenty, constr. w. verbs of, 410, V.; 421, II.; 421, N. 1; w. adjs. of, 421, II.
- Plenus* w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3.
- Pleonasm, 636, III.
- PLUPERFECT, 197; 222, II. Plup. indic., 472; 476, 2; in seq. of tenses, 493; in temp. clauses, 518, N. 2; 521, II., 1. Plup. subj., 482; in subj. of desire, 483, 2; in seq. of tenses, 493; 495, I.; 496, II., (2); in condit., 507, III.; 509, N. 3; 510; 513, N. 1; in concess., 515, II., 3; in temp. clauses, 518, 1; 519, 2, N. 1; 520, II.; 521, II., 2; in indir. disc., 527, 2; 527, II. and III.; 527, N. 2.
- PLURAL, 44; wanting, 130. Plur. for sing., 130, 3; 446, N. 2. Plur. w. change of meaning, 132. *-E* in Greek plur., 581, III., 1. *-ſ* in plur., 581, VIII., 1.
- Plurim̄*, indef. num., 175, N. 3; gen. of price, p. 213, foot-note 2.
- Plus*, 165, N. 1; without *quam*, 417, 1, N. 2. *Pluris*, constr., p. 213, foot-note 2; 405. Quant. of increm. of *plus*, 585, V., 2.
- Poetical dat., 380, 4; 385, 4; 388, 4.
- Pollux*, quant. of increm., 585, V., 2.
- Polypus, u* in, 581, IX., 3, N.
- Polysyndeton, 636, III., 1.
- Pond̄*, 642, I.
- Pone* w. acc., 433.
- Pōnō*, constr., 380, N. *O* in *posui*, *positum*, 592, 2.
- Por*, insep. prep., 308. *Por* for *port*, 344, 6.
- Porticus*, gen., 118, (1).
- Portus*, decl., 117, 1, 2).
- Poscō* w. two accs., 374, 2.
- Position, syllables when long by, p. 338, foot-note 3.
- Positive, 160; wanting, 166. Pos. for compar., 444, 2, N. 3.
- POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS, 185; w. gen., 363, 4, 1); 398, 3; for gen., 396, II., N.; 401, N. 3; w. *refer* and *interest*, 408, I., 2. Use of poss. pron., 447; reflex., 448; 449. Possessive compds., 343, III. Possessive gen., 396, I.

- Possessor, dat. of, 387.
Possum, in conclus., 511, 1, N. 2; w. pres. infin., 537, 1.
Post in compds., 344, 5; w. dat., 386.
Post, denoting interval of time, 430.
Post w. acc., 433; 433, I.
 Post-classical period, 640, III.
Postei, 304, IV., N. 2; in series, 554, I., N. 4.
Postequam, 311, 1; in temp. clauses, 518.
Posterus, compar., 163, 3.
Posticus, 2 in, p. 345, foot-note 4.
Postis, decl., 62, IV.
Postmodum, 304, I., 2.
 Postpositive, 554, III., 4; 554, V., 3.
Postquam in temp. clauses, 518; w. perf. indic., p. 260, foot-note 2.
Postremo in series, 554, I., N. 2.
Postremus, force of, 440, N. 2; 442, N.
Postridie w. gen., 398, 5; w. acc., 437, 1. *Postridie quam* in temp. clauses, 518, N. 3. *E* in *postridie*, p. 341, foot-note 2.
Postulo, constr., 374, 2; p. 274, foot-note 1.
Potens w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3.
 Potential subj., 485; 486; in declar. sentences, 486, I.; in interrog. sentences, 486, II.; in subord. clauses, 486, III.
Potior w. gen., 410, V., 3; w. abl., 421, I.; w. acc., 421, N. in gerund. constr., 544, N. 5.
Potus w. act. meaning, 257, N. 2.
Præ in compds., 170, 1; w. dat., 386.
Præ w. abl., 434; 434, I. Quant. of *præ* in compds., 576, I., 1; 594, 4.
Præcipio, constr., p. 274, foot-note 1.
Præcox, quant. of increm., 535, II., 3.
Præcurrō, constr., p. 202, foot-note 1.
Præditus, constr., 420, N. 1, 4).
Prænomen, 649; abbreviated, 649, 1.
Præsentē w. plur., 438, 6, N.
Præstō, *præstolor*, constr., p. 202, foot-note 1.
Præter in compds. w. acc., 372. *Præter* w. acc., 433; 433, I.
Prætereā in series, 554, I., N. 2.
Præut, 311, 2.
 PREDICATE, 356, 2; simple, 360; complex, 361; modified, 361, 1. Pred. nouns, 360, N. 1; 362; for dat., 390, N. 2. Pred. adjs., 360, N. 1; 438, 2. Pred. acc., 373, 1. Pred. gen., 401 ff.; varieties, 402; verbs with, 403 ff.; pred. gen. of price, 404; 405. Pred. abl., 421, N. 4. Pred. after infin., 536, 2. Infin. as pred., 539, I. Predicates com-
 pared, 535, I., 6. Position of pred., 560.
 Predicative roots, 314, I.
 PREPOSITIONS, 307; insepar., 308; in compds., 344, 5 and 6. Compds. w. acc., 372; w. two accs., 376; w. dat., 386. Preps. in expressions of time, 379, 1; 429, 1 and 2; 430; of place, 380; 412; 425; of motion or direction, 384, 3, 1; denoting *for*, 384, 3, 3); of agency, 388, 2. Preps. after adjs., 391, II., 1 and 3. Prep. with obj. for obj. gen., 396, III., N. 1; for part. gen., 397, 3, N. 3; for gen. w. adjs., 400, 2 and 3; for gen. after verbs, 407, N. 2; 410, I., 2; 410, II., 3; after *refert* and *interest*, 408, I., 3; 408, IV.; expressing penalty, 410, III.; separation, source, cause, 413; 414, N. 1; 415; 416, I.; after compar., 417, notes 3 and 5; denoting accompaniment, 419, I.; manner, 419, III. Cases w. preps., 432 ff.; acc., 433; abl., 434; acc. or abl., 435. Special uses of preps., 433, I.; 434, I.; 435, I. Preps. originally adverbs, 436. Adverbs as preps., 437. Preps. w. infin., 533, 3, N. 4; w. ger., 542, III.; 542, IV., (2); w. gerund. constr., 544, 2. Prep. between adj. and noun, 565, 3. Position of preps., 569, II. Quant. of insepar. preps., 594, 2. Monosyllabic preps. repeated, 636, III., 6; other preps., 636, III., 6, N.
Presbyter, decl., 51, 4, 3).
 PRESENT, 197; 198, I., 1; 222, I. Pres. stem, 250; 251. Pres. indic., 466; 467; of gen. truths, customs, 467, II. Hist. pres., 467, III.; in temp. clauses, 518, N. 1. Pres. subj., 479; in condit., 507, II.; 509; 513, N. 1; in concess., 515, II., 2; in indir. disc., 525, 1; 527, II. Pres. imperat., 487, 1. Pres. infin., 537. Pres. particip., 550. Pres. perf., 197, N. 1; 198, I., 2; 471, I. Pres. system, 222, I. -*ſe* in pres. subj., 581, VIII., 4.
 Priapeian verse, 629, II.
 Price, gen. of, 404; 405; abl., 422.
Pridie, locat., 120, N.; w. gen., 398, 5; w. acc., 437, 1. *Pridie quam* in temp. clauses, 520, N. 2. *E* in *pridie*, p. 241, foot-note 2.
 Primary stems, 315; 317. Prim. suffixes, p. 153, foot-note 6; 320.
Primum, *primō*, in series, 554, I., N. 2.
Princeps, decl., 57.

- PRINCIPAL** parts of verbs, 202; 220; 257-288. Prin. clauses, 348, N. 2; in indir. disc., 523; supplied by particip., 549, 5. Prin. tenses, 198, I.; in seq., 491 ff. Prin. elements of sentence, 357, 1.
- Prior*, *primus*, 166; rendered by relat. clause, 442, N.; by adverb, 443, N. 1, (2).
- Prisquam*, 311, 1; in temp. clauses, 520.
- Privō*, constr., p. 219, foot-note 1.
- Prō*, 312, 3; in hiatus, 608, II., 1.
- Prō*, *prōd*, in compds., 344, 5; *prō* in, 594, 5. Compds. w. dat., 386. *Prō* w. abl., 434; 434, I.; expressing *in defence of*, *in behalf of*, 384, 3, 2).
- Prō* w. ger., p. 316, foot-note 1.
- Proceleusmatics, 633, III., 2, N. 1.
- Proclitics, 18, 1, N. 1.
- Prōclivis* without superlat., 168, 3; w. supine, 547, 1.
- Procul* w. abl., 437, 2.
- Prōd* in compds., 344, 5.
- Prohibeo*, constr., p. 310, foot-note 1.
- Prohibessō* for *prohibuerō*, 240, 4.
- Prohibitions, subj. in, 484, IV., w. N. 1; imperat., 487, 2, 2).
- Proinde*, 310, 4.
- Prolepsis, 440, 2; 636, IV., 3.
- Pronominal roots, 314, II.
- PRONOUNS**, 182 ff.; pers., 183, 1; 184; substant., p. 70, foot-note 3; case-endings, 184, 1; possess., 185; demon., 186; relat., 187; interrog., 188; indef., 189; 190; correlat., 191. Prons. as adjs., 438, 1. Agreement of pron., 445. Use of pers. pron., 446; possess., 447 ff.; reflex., 448; 449; demon., 450 ff.; relat., 453; interrog., 454; indef., 455 ff. Pron. in indir. disc., 526. Prons. brought together, 569, I., 2. Pron. redundant, 636, III., 7.
- Pronunciation of Latin, Roman, 5 ff.; Eng., 9 ff.; Continental, 15.
- Prope* w. acc., 433; 433, I.; w. perf. indic., 471, 2; w. hist. tenses of indic., 511, 1, N. 4.
- Proper nouns, 39, 1; plur. of, 130, 2.
- Propinquus* without superlat., 168, 3; constr., p. 205, foot-notes 1 and 3.
- Propior*, *proximus*, 166; w. acc., 391, 2; 433, I., N. 2; w. force of Eng. adverb, 443, N. 1.
- Propius* w. acc., 437, 1; 433, I., N. 2.
- Proportionals, 173, 2.
- Proprius*, constr., p. 205, foot-notes 1 and 3.
- Propter* w. acc., 433; 433, I.
- Propterea*, 554, IV., 2.
- PROSODY**, 574 ff.; quant., 575 ff.; versification, 596 ff.; figures of pros., 608.
- Prosopopeia, 637, IX.
- Prōsper*, decl., 150, N., 1).
- Prōspiciō*, constr., 385, 1.
- Prōtinus*, p. 145, foot-note 5.
- Prout*, 311, 2.
- Prōvideō*, constr., 385, 1.
- Prōvidus*, compar., 164; w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3.
- Prōximā* w. acc., 433, I., N. 2; 437, 1.
- Proximus*, see *Propior*.
- Prūdēs*, decl., 157; w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3; w. force of Eng. adverb, 443, N. 1, (1).
- pte**, pronouns in, 185, N. 2.
- Pudet*, constr., 409, III.; 410, IV.
- Pudicus*, *ī* in, p. 345, foot-note 4.
- Puer*, decl., 51.
- Pugnō* w. dat., p. 201, foot-note 1.
- Puppis*, decl., 62, III.
- PURPOSE**, dat. of, 384, 1, 3); subj. of, 497 ff.; object clauses, 498; peculiarities, 499. Infin. of purpose, 533, II.; gerund, 542, I., N. 2; 542, III., N. 2; gerundive, 544, 2, N. 2; supine, 546; particip., 549, 3. Position of clauses of purpose, 572, III., N.
- Pus* defect., 133, N.
- pa** compds. in, quant. of increm., 585, I., 5, (3).
- Putā*, *a* in, 581, III., 3.
- Putor*, constr., 534, 1, N. 1, (2).
- Pyrītes*, decl., 50.
- Pyrrhic, 597, N. 1.
- Pythiambic stanza, 681, XVII. and XVIII.

Q

- Q, qu**, dropped, 36, 3. *Qu* changed to *c*, 33, 1, N.
- Quā*, 304, II., 3; 305, V.
- Quaerō*, constr., p. 193, foot-note 1.
- Quālis*, *quālis* cumque, 187, 4. *Cujusmodi*, etc., for *quālis*, 187, 4, N.
- Quālis*, interrog., 188, 4.
- Quālisti*et, 191.
- Quālisti*quālis, 187, 4.
- Quality, abl. of, 419, II., w. N.
- Quam*, p. 75, foot-note 1; 304, I., 4; 305, V.; p. 151, foot-note 1; 311, 2; w. comparat., 417; 444, 2; w. superlat., 170, 2, (2); w. infin., 524, 1, 2). *Quam* for *postquam*, 430, N. 1, 3). *Quam* *prō*, 417, 1, N. 5.
- Quam*, *quam* ut, w. subj., 502, 2.
- Quam* *quā* w. subj., 503, II., 2.

- Quam sē*, 513, II. *Tam—quam*, *nōn minus—quam*, *nōn magis—quam*, 555, II., 1. *Nihil aliud quam*, 555, III., 1.
- Quamdiū*, 311, 1.
- Quamobrem*, 554, IV., 2.
- Quamquam*, p. 75, foot-note 1; 311, 4; in concess., 515, I.; 515, notes 1 and 2; w. infin., 524, 1, 2).
- Quamvis*, 311, 4; in concess., 515, III.; 515, N. 3.
- Quando*, interrog., 305, IV.; relat., 311, 1 and 7; in causal clauses, 516. *Quando* in compds., 594, 8.
- Quandoquidem*, 311, 7; *ō* in, 594, 8.
- QUANTITY, 16; 575 ff.; signs of, 16, N. 3; gen. rules, 576 ff. Quant. in final syllables, 579 ff.; increments, 582 ff.; deriv. endings, 587; stem-syllables, 588 ff.; syllables before two consonants or a double consonant, 651.
- Quantumlibet*, *quantumvis*, 311, 4.
- Quantumvis* in concess., 515, N. 6.
- Quantus*, relat., 187, 4; interrog., 188, 4; correlat., 191. *Quantū*, constr., p. 213, foot-note 2; 405.
- Quantusvis*, indef., 191.
- Quāpropter*, 554, IV., 2.
- Quārē*, 304, II., 1, N.; 554, IV., 2; *ā* in, p. 341, foot-note 2.
- Quasi*, 311, 2; w. *quidam*, 456, 2; in condit., 513, II. *I* in *quasi*, 581, I., 1; *a* in, 594, 10.
- Quāvis*, indef., 305, V.
- Que*, 310, 1; p. 151, foot-note 1; 554, I. *Idem—que*, 451, 5. *Que—que*, *et—que*, *que—et*, *que—atque*, *neque* (nec)—*que*, 554, I., 5. Position of *que*, 569, III., 4. *Que* lengthened in Vergil, 608, V., N. 2.
- Quercus*, decl., 119, 4.
- Queror* w. infin., p. 310, foot-note 2.
- Questioning, constr. w. verbs of, 374, N. 3.
- QUESTIONS, 351; double, 353; deliberat. in indir. disc., 523, II., 1, N.; rhetor., p. 297, foot-note 2; indir., 528, 2; 529, I.
- Quī*, relat. pron., 187; 453; interrog., 188; 454; indef., 189; 190; 455; correlat., 191. *Quī* w. subj. of purpose, 497, I.; of result, 500, I.; 503. *Quī* in condit., 507, 2; concess., 515, III.; 515, N. 4; causal clauses, 517. *Quī dicitur*, *vocatur*, 453, 7. *Quod* as adverb. acc., 453, 6. *Quod* in restrict. clauses, 503, N. 1. *I* in *quī*, 581, I., 1.
- Quī*, adverb., 187, 1; 188, 2.
- Quia*, 311, 7; in causal clauses, 516; w. relat., 517, 3, 2); w. infin., 524, 1, 2). *A* in *quia*, 581, III., 3.
- Quicumque*, gen. relat., 187, 3.
- Quidam*, indef., 190, 2, 1); 191; use, 456.
- Quidem* w. pron., 446, N. 1; position, 569, III.; 569, III., 3.
- Quies*, quant. of increm., 585, III., 3.
- Quilibet*, gen. indef., 190, 2, 2); use, 458.
- Quin*, p. 75, foot-note 2; 311, 6; w. subj., 500, II.; 501, II., 2; 504.
- Quinam*, 188, 3.
- Quinarius, 646.
- Quinquātrūs*, gend., 118, (2).
- Quippe*, p. 75, foot-note 2; w. relat., 517, 3, 1).
- Quirīs*, quant. of increm., 585, IV., 2.
- Quis*, interrog., 188; use, 454; indef., 189; 190; use, 455; correlat., 191. *I* in *quis*, 579, 3. *A* in *qua*, indef., 579, 3. *Quid* redundant, 636, III., 7.
- Quis* for *quibus*, p. 74, foot-note 5.
- Quisnam*, 188, 3.
- Quispiam*, indef., 190, 2, 1); use, 455.
- Quisquam*, indef., 190, 2, 1); use, 457.
- Quisque*, gen. indef., 190, 2, 2); use, 458; w. abl. abs., 431, N. 3; w. plur. verb, 461, 3. Placed next *suus* or *suī*, 569, I., 2.
- Quisquis*, gen. relat., 187, 3. *Quid—quid* used of persons, 453, 1, N.
- Quitum*, *i* in, 590, 1.
- Quirīs*, gen. indef., 190, 2, 2); use, 458; *is* in, 581, VIII., 3, N.
- Quō*, 304, II., 3, N.; 305, II.; 311, 5; w. part. gen., p. 209, foot-note 3; w. subj. of purpose, 497, II.
- Quoad*, 311, 1; w. part. gen., p. 209, foot-note 3; in temp. clauses, 519.
- Quōcircā*, 554, IV., 2.
- Quōcumque*, 305, N. 1.
- Quod*, p. 151, foot-note 1; 311, 7; in causal clauses, 516.
- Quod*-clauses, 540, IV., w. N. *Nisi quod*, 555, III., 1. See also *Qui*.
- Qui* for *cui*, *quōvis* for *cujus*, p. 74, foot-note 5.
- Quolibet*, 305, II.
- Quom*, 305, IV.; p. 151, foot-notes 1 and 4; 311, 1, 4, and 7.
- Quōminus*, 311, 5; w. subj., 497, II.; 499, 3, N. 2.
- Quoniam*, composition, p. 6, foot-note 5; 311, 7; in causal clauses, 516; w. relat., 517, 3, 2).
- Quoque*, 310, 1; 554, I., 4; position, 569, III.; *o* in, 594, 10.

Quōquō, 305, N. 1.
Quōrsum, 305, II.
Quot, relat., 187, 4; interrog., 188, 4; correlat., 191.
Quotannis, 304, II., 1, N.
Quotiens, 305, IV.
Quotus, relat., 187, 4; interrog., 188, 4.
Quōvis, 305, II.
Quum, 305, IV.; see *Cum*.

R

R assimilated to *l*, 34, 2; dropped, 36, 3, N. 3. Noun-stems in *r*, 60; verb-stems in supine, 256, 1. Decl. of nouns in *r*, 77. Quant. of final syllables in *r*, 580, II., w. N. 2.

-ra, -rā, suffixes, 320.

Rādix, decl., 59.

Rāstrum, plur., 143, 2.

Ratiō, circumlocutions w., 636, III., 10.

Ratum, *a* in, 590, 1.

Rāvis, decl., 62, II., 1.

Re, inseparable prep., 308; in compounds, 344, 6; *e* in, 594, 2. *Re* for *re*, 594, 2, N. 3.

-re for *ris*, 237.

Reading, rhythmical, 607.

Reapse, p. 73, foot-note 5.

Reason, clauses expressing, 516.

Recollection, adjs. of, w. gen., 399, I., 2; gen. of ger., p. 315, foot-note 2.

Recordor w. gen., 406, II.; w. acc., 407, N. 1, (1); w. abl. w. *dē*, 407, N. 2.

Recūsō, constr., p. 279, foot-note 2.

Red, inseparable prep., 308; in compounds, 344, 6.

Reduplicated pronouns, 184, 4; perfects, 255, I. Quant. of first two syllables of trisyllabic reduplicated perfects, 591. Increment of reduplicated forms of verbs, 586, 2.

Reduplication in pres., 251, 6; perf., 255, I.; compounds, 255, I., 4.

Refert, constr., 406, III.; 408.

Refertus w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3.

Reflexive pron., 184, 2. Reflex. use of pron., 448; 449.

Refusing, constr. w. verbs of, 505, II.

Regarding, verbs of, w. two accs., 373; w. two dat., 390, N. 1, 2; w. gen., 403.

Regnō w. gen., 410, V., 3.

RELATIVE PRONOUN, 187; correlat., 191; use, 453. Abl. of relat. for *postquam*, 440, N. 2. Relat. attracted, 445, 8. Relat. clause w. subj. of desire, 483, 5; purpose, 497,

I.; result, 500, I.; 503; to characterize indef. or gen. anteced., 503, I.; after *unus*, *sōlus*, etc., 503, II., 1; after *dignus*, *indignus*, *idoneus*, *aptus*, 503, II., 2; after comparat. w. *quam*, 503, II., 3. Relat. clause in condit., 507, 2; concess., 515, III., w. N. 4; causal clause, 517. Relat. clause w. infinit., 524, 1, 1; supplied by particip., 549, 4. Position of relat., 569, III.; before prep., 569, II., 1. Position of relat. clauses, 572, II., N.

Relaxō, *relevō*, w. abl., p. 219, foot-note 1.

Relieving, constr. w. verbs of, 414, 1.

Relinquō w. two dat., 390, N. 1, 2).

Rēliquus, meaning, 440, N. 2. *Rēliqui* *facere*, 401, N. 4.

Remaining, constr. w. verbs of, 501, I., 1.

Remembering, constr. w. verbs of, 407.

Reminding, constr. w. verbs of, 409, I.; 410, I.

Reminiscor w. gen., 406, II.

Repeated action denoted by imperf. indic., 469, II.; plup. indic., 518, N. 2, 2; imperf. or plup. subj., 518, 1.

Repelling, dat. w. verbs of, 385, 2.

Repentinus, *i* in, p. 345, foot-note 5.

Reposcō w. two accs., 374, 2.

Requies, decl., 137, 1; quant. of increment., 585, III., 3.

Rēs, decl., 120; w. adjs., 440, N. 4. Circumlocutions w. *rēs*, 636, III., 10.

Resisting, dat. w. verbs of, 385, I.

Respublica, decl., 126.

Restat w. subj., p. 276, foot-note 2.

Restis, decl., 62, III.

Restrictive clauses w. *quod*, 503, N. 1.

RESULT, subj. of, 500 ff.; substant. clauses of, 501; peculiarities, 502; in relat. clauses, 503; w. *quā*, 504; w. special verbs, 505. Position of clauses of result, 572, III., N.

Rete, decl., 63, 2, (2).

Reticentia, 636, I., 3; 637, XI., 3.

Rav, decl., 59; quant. of increment., 585, III., 3.

Rhēa, *e* in, 577, I., 2, (3).

Rhetoric, figures of, 634, N.; 637.

Rhetorical questions, 523, II., 2.

Rhythm, caesura of, p. 357, foot-note 1.

Rhythmic accent, 599.

Rhythmical reading, 607.

Rideō w. acc., 371, III., N. 1.

Rivers, gen. of names of, 42, I., 2; 43, 1.

-ro, suffix, 320, II.

Rogō w. two accs., 374, 2; w. subj., p. 274, foot-note 1.
Rōma, decl., 48, 4.
 Roman pronunciation of Lat., 5 ff.
 Roman authors, 640. Roman calendar, 641 ff.; money, weights, and measures, 646 ff.; names, 649.
 Roots, 314. Root-stems, 315.
Rōs without gen. plur., 133, 5.
Rōstrum, *rōstra*, 132.
 -**rs**, decl. of nouns in, 65, 3, (1); -90.
Rudis w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3.
 Rules of syntax, 558.
Rūs, decl., 64, N. 3; 133, N.; constr., 380, 2, 1). *Rūre*, 412, 1. *Rūrī*, 426, 2.
 -**rus**, compar. of adjs. in, 163, 3.
Rutum, quant. of pen., 590, 1.

S

S, sound, 7; 13, II.; changed to *r*, 31; dropped, 36, 3, N. 3; 36, 5, 1).
 Stems in *s*, 61. Decl. of nouns in *s*, 64; 65, 3; 79 ff.; quant. of increm., 585, I., 2; 585, II., 2. Final syllables in *s* short before following consonant, 576, 1, N. 2. Final *s* dropped in poetry, 608, I., N. 3.
 -**s**, patronymics in, 322.
 -**sā**, suffix, 320, II.
Sacer, compar., 167, 2; w. gen., p. 205, foot-note 3.
Saepe, compar., 306, 4.
Sāl, decl., 133, 5. *Sāl*, *sāles*, 132. *Ā* in *sāl*, 579, 2; quant. of increm., 585, I., 4, (3).
Salix w. short increm., p. 343, foot-note 2.
Salūber, decl., 153, N. 1, 1).
Salūtāris without superlat., 168, 3; w. dat., p. 205, foot-note 1.
Samnis, quant. of increm., 585, IV., 2.
Sānā quam as adverb. phrase, 305, N. 4.
Sapiō w. acc., 371, III., N. 1.
 Sapphic verse, 604, N. 1; 623, VI. and VII. Sapphic stanza, 631, II. and III.
Satis, compar., 306, 4; w. part. gen., p. 209, foot-note 3; compds. w. dat., 384, 4, N. 1.
Satum, *a* in, 590, 1.
Satur, decl., 150, N., 2).
 Saying, constr. w. verbs of, 584, 1, N. 1, (2).
 Scanning, 607, N.
 Scazon, p. 361, foot-note 1.
Scelus w. supine, 547, 1.
Soidi, *i* in, 590, 1.

Sciēs w. force of Eng. adverb, 443, N. 1, (1).
Scilicet, 304, IV., N. 2.
 -**scō**, inceptives in, 337.
Se, insep. prep., 308; in compds., 344, 6; *e* in, 594, 2.
 Second decl., 51 ff. Sec. conj., 207; 208; 225; 261 ff.; *e* in imperat., 581, IV., 3. Sec. pers. sing. of indef. *you*, 484, IV., N. 2.
 Secondary tenses, 198, II. Secondary stems, 315; 318. Second. suffixes, p. 154, foot-note 4.
Secundum w. acc., 433; 433, I.
Securis, decl., 62, III.
Secus, 'sex,' defect., 134. *Secus*, 'otherwise,' p. 145, foot-note 5.
Sed for *sē*, 184, 5. *Sed*, insep. prep., 308; in compds., 344, 6.
Sed, 310, 3; 554, III., 2. *Nōn solum* (*nōn modo or nōn tantum*)—*sed etiam*, 554, I., 5. *Sed, sed tamen*, resumptive, 554, IV., 3. Position of *sed* in poetry, 569, III., N.
Sedes, gen. plur., p. 36, foot-note 4.
Sed tamen, 554, III., 3.
 Seeming, pred. gen. w. verbs of, 403.
 Selling, gen. w. verbs of, 405.
Semel, p. 145, foot-note 4.
Sementis, decl., 62, III.
 Semi-deponents, 268, 3; 283; 465, N. 2.
Seminex, defect., 159, II.
 Semi-vowels, 3, II., 1.
 Senarius, 603, N. 6; 622.
Senātus, decl., 119, 3.
 Sending, two dats. w. verbs of, 390, N. 1, 2).
 Seneca, metres, 633, II., notes 2 and 3.
Senex, decl., 66; compar., 168, 4.
 SENTENCES, syntax, 345 ff.; classification, 345 ff.; simple, 347; 357; complex, 348; 359; compound, 349; declarat., 350; in indir. disc., 523, I.; imperat., 354. See also *Exclamatory*, *Interrogative*, *Conditional*.
 SEPARATION, dat. w. verbs of, 385, 4, 2). Abl. of separat., 413; 414.
 Separat. producing emphasis, 561, III.
Sepe for *sē*, 184, 5.
 SEQUENCE OF TENSES, 491 ff.; peculiarities, 495.
Sequitur w. subj., p. 276, foot-note 2.
 Series, how begun and continued, 554, I., N. 2.
Serēs, defect., 122, 2.
 Serving, dat. w. verbs of, 385, I.
Servus, decl., 51.
Sescenti used indefinitely, 174, 4.

- Sesē* for *sē*, 184, 4.
Sesterces, 647.
Sēstertium, *sēstertium*, 647, III. and IV.
Sēstertius, 646; 647.
Sētius, *quō sētius* for *quōminus*, 497, 2, N.
Seu, 310, 2.
Ships, *gend.* of names of, 53, 1, (2).
Short syllables, 575.
Shortening of vowels, 21.
Showing, two *accs.* w. verbs of, 373.
Sī, *derivat.* and meaning, p. 73, foot-note 2; 311, 3; p. 281, foot-note 2; in *condit.*, 507 ff.; w. *perf. indic.*, 471, 5; w. *plup. indic.*, 472, 2; w. *subj.* of desire, 483, 1. *Sī* in *concess.*, 515, II. *Sī* = to see whether, 529, 1, N. I. *Sī quidem*, 507, 3, N. 2.
-si, suffix, 320, II. *-Sī* in Greek *dat.*, 68, 5; *i* in, 581, I. 1.
Sic, p. 73, foot-note 2; 304, III., 2; 305, V.; 551, N. 2; redundant, 636, III., 7.
Sicut, *sicuti*, 311, 2.
Siem for *sim*, 204, 2.
-silis, *adjs.* in, 333.
Silver age, 640, II., 2.
Silvester, *decl.*, 153, N. 1, 1).
-sim in *perf. subj.*, 240, 4; in *adverbs*, 304, I., 1.
-simā, suffix, p. 156, foot-note 9.
Simile, 637, I.
Similis, *compar.*, 163, 2; w. *dat.*, p. 205, foot-note 1; w. *gen.*, p. 205, foot-note 3.
-simo, suffix, p. 156, foot-note 9.
Simple sentence, 347; 357. *Simp. elements*, 357, 2; *subject*, 358; *pred.*, 360. *Simple words*, 313, N. 2.
Simul, p. 145, foot-note 4; 311, 1; w. *abl.*, 437, 2. *Simul atque*, *ac* in *temp. clauses*, 518; w. *perf. indic.*, 471, 4.
Simulac, *simulatque*, 311, 1; in *temp. clauses*, 518; w. *perf. indic.*, 471, 4.
Sin, 311, 3; in *condit.*, 507 ff.; p. 282, foot-note 1. *Sin aliter*, 552, 3.
-sin in Greek *dat. plur.*, 68, 5.
Sine w. *abl.*, 434.
Singular, 44; wanting, 131.
Sinistrā, *constr.*, 425, 2.
Sinō, *constr.*, p. 310, foot-note 1. *I in situm*, 590, 1.
Siquidem, 311, 7; 507, 3, N. 2; *quant.* of first *syllab.*, 594, 10.
Sitiō w. *acc.*, 371, III., N. 1.
Sitis, *decl.*, 62, II., 1.
Sive, 310, 2; 554, II., 3.
Size, *gen.* of, 419, 2, 1).
Skill, *gen.* w. *adjs.* of, 399, I., 2; *gen.* of *ger.*, p. 315, foot-note 2.
Smell, *acc.* w. verbs of, 371, III.
-so, suffix, 320, II. *Sō* in *fut. perf.*, 240, 4.
Socer, *decl.*, 51, 4, 3).
Sociō w. *dat.*, p. 201, foot-note 1.
Sol, *decl.*, 60; 133, 5; *ō* in, 579, 2.
Solum, *nōn solum—sed etiam* (*verum etiam*), 554, I., 5.
Solus, *decl.*, 151; for Eng. *adverb*, 443, N. 1, 2. *Gen.* of *solus* w. *possess.*, 398, 3. *Solus quī* w. *subj.*, 503, II., 1.
Solvō, *constr.*, p. 219, foot-note 1.
'Son,' apparent *ellipsis* of, 398, 1, N. 2. Name of adopted son, 649, 3.
Sonants, 3, II., 5, 1; 3, N. 1, II., 1.
Sōns, *defect.*, 159, II.
-sōrius, *ō* in, 587, III., 4.
Sors, *abl.*, 64, N. 3.
Sotadean verse, 626, N. 2.
Source, *abl.* of, 413; 415.
Space, *acc.* of, 379.
Sparing, *dat.* w. verbs of, 385, II.
Special constr. w. *infin.*, 539. *Gen.* in *spec. constr.*, 398.
Species, *decl.*, 122, 2.
Specification, *acc.* of, 378; *abl.*, 424.
Specimen without *plur.*, 130, 1, 4).
Specus, *decl.*, 117, 1, 2); p. 50, foot-note 1; *gend.*, 118, (2).
Speech, *parts* of, 38. *Figures* of *speech*, 634 ff.
Spēs, *decl.*, 122, 2.
Sphinx, *decl.*, p. 38, foot-note 3.
Spirants, 3, II., 4, 2.
Spoliō, *constr.*, p. 219, foot-note 1.
Spondaic line, 610, 3.
Spondees, 597, I.
Square measure, *Rom.*, 643, V.
Stadium, 648, IV., N.
Stanza, 606. *Stanzas* of Horace, 631.
Statuō, *constr.*, 498, I., N.; p. 274, foot-note 1.
STEM in *decl.*, 46. *Stem-characteristic*, *stem-ending*, 46, 3. *Stem* in *Decl. I.*, 48, 1; *Decl. II.*, 51, 1; *Decl. III.*, 57, 1; 58, 1; 59, 1; 60, 1; 61, 1; 62, 1; 64, 1, 1); 66, 1 and 3; 69-98; *Decl. IV.*, 116, 1; *Decl. V.*, 120, 1. *Stems* of verbs, 202, notes 1 and 2; 203, N. 2; *formation* of, 249 ff. *Stems* of words, 315 ff. *Stem-syllables*, *quant.*, 588 ff.; *variation* in, 593, 1. *Primitives* w. *long stem-syllables*, 595.
Sterilis w. *gen.*, p. 219, foot-note 4.
Stirpe, *constr.*, 415, II., N.
Stiti, *i* in, 590, 1.

Stō w. abl., p. 226, foot-note 1. *E* in *steti*, *a* in *statum*, 590, 1.

Strigilis, decl., 62, III.

Striving, constr. w. verbs of, 498, II.

Strix w. short increm., p. 343, foot-note 2.

Strong caesura, p. 356, foot-note 4.

Strues, decl., p. 36, foot-note 4.

Studeō, constr., 498, II., N. 1; p. 274, foot-note 2.

Studiōsus w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3; w. gen. of ger., p. 315, foot-note 2.

Sub in compds., 344, 5; w. dat., 386.

Sub w. acc. or abl., 435; 435, N. 1; 435, I.

SUBJECT, 356, 1; simple, 358; complex, 359; modified, 359, N. 1. Subj. nom., 368. Subj. indef., 518, 2. Subj. acc., 536. Infin. as subj., 538. Subject clauses, 501, I. Subjects compared, 535, 5. Dat. w. adjs. signifying *subject*, 391, I. Position of subj., 560.

Subjective gen., 396, II.

SUBJUNCTIVE, 196, II. Syntax of subj., 477 ff.; tenses, 478 ff.; sequence, 490 ff. Subj. in prin. clauses, 483 ff.; in subord. clauses, 490 ff. Subj. of desire, 483; 484; potent., 485; 486; of purpose, 497 ff.; of result, 500 ff.; in condit., 507 ff.; in concess., 515; in causal clauses, 516; 517; in temp. clauses, 519 ff.; in indir. disc., 523 ff.; in indir. clauses, 529 ff.; in indir. questions, 529, I. Subj. in questions of surprise, 486, II., N. Subj. of desire for imperat., 487, 4. *-Is* in subj., 581, VIII., 4; *-is*, 581, VIII., 5.

SUBORDINATE CLAUSES, 348, N. 2; 490 ff.; in indir. disc., 524. Subord. conjs., 311; 555; elements, 357, 1; position, 572.

Substantive pron., p. 70, foot-note 3. Substant. clauses, 532 ff.; 540; of purpose, 499, 3; of result, 501. Substantives, see *Nouns*.

Subter w. acc. or abl., 435.

Suffixes, 46; case-suffix, 46, 1. Suffixes in format. of words, 318 ff. Primary suffixes, 320.

Sui, decl., 184; use, 448; 449; placed next *quisque*, 569, I., 2. *I* in *sibi*, 581, I., 2.

Suitableness, constr. w. adjs. of, 391, I.; 391, II., 1, 2).

Sum w. dat., 387; two dat., 390, N. 1, 1; pred. gen., 403; 404; abl., 415, III., N. 1; p. 226, foot-note 1.

Summus, meaning, 440, N. 2.

Supellex, decl., 64, N. 3; 130, 1, 4).

Super in compds. w. acc., 372; dat., 386; abl., 434, N. 1. *Super* w. acc. or abl., 435; 435, N. 2; 435, I.

SUPERLATIVE, 160; irreg., 163; wanting, 168; 169; formed by *māxime*, 170. Superlat. w. part. gen., 397, 3; p. 209, foot-note 3. Use of superlat., 444.

Superne, *e* final in, 581, IV., 4.

Superus, compar., 163, 3.

SUPINE, 200, III.; endings, 248. Supine system, 222, III. Supine stem, 256. Supine wanting, 262, notes 1 and 2; 265; 266; 267, 3; 271, 1 and 2; 272, 1; 272, notes 1 and 2; 276; 278; 281; 282; 284; 284, N. 2. Supine in seq. of tenses, 495, IV. Use of sup., 545 ff.; sup. in *um*, 545; 546; w. *eo*, 546, 2; w. *iri*, 546, 3; sup. in *ū*, 545; 547. Quant. of pen. of dissyllabic supines, 590.

Suprā w. acc., 433; 433, I.

Supremus, meaning, 440, N. 2.

Surds, 3, II., 5, 2; 3, N. 1, II., 2.

-surio, desideratives in, 338.

Surname in names of Roman citizens, 649, 2.

Sus, decl., 66.

Suis, 185; 448; 449; placed near *quisque*, 569, I., 2.

Syllabic caesura, p. 356, foot-note 4.

Syllables, 8; 14; 15, 3; quant., 575 ff. Final syl. of verse either long or short, 605.

Syllepsis, 636, II., 2.

Symbols, num., 180.

Synaeresis, 608, III.

Synaloepha, synapheia, 608, I., N. 5.

Syncopated pron., 186, 3.

Syncope, 608, VII.; 635, 2.

Synecdoche, 637, IV.

Synesis, 636, IV., 4; 363, 4; 438, 6; 445, 5; 449, 3; 461.

Synizesis, 608, III., N. 3.

Synopsis of Decl. III., 69-98. Syn. of conj., 223-230.

SYNTAX, 345 ff.; sentences, 345 ff.; nouns, 362 ff.; adjs., 438 ff.; prons., 445 ff.; verbs, 460 ff.; particles, 551 ff. Rules of syntax, 558. Arrang. of words and clauses, 559 ff. Figures of syntax, 634, N.; 636.

Systole, 608, VI.

T

T, sound, 7; 13, II. *T* changed to *d*, 33, 2; assimilated to *n* or *s*, 34, 1; dropped before *s*, 36, 2; when

- final, 36, 5, 2). Stems in *t*, 58.
 Gend. of nouns in *t*, 111. *T* changed to *s* in supine, 256, 1.
 Quant. of final syllables in *t*, 579, 2; 580, II.; 580, III., N. 2, 1).
-ta, -tā, suffixes, 320. Nouns in *-ta*, 325.
Taedet, constr., 409, III.; 410, IV.
 Taking away, dat. w. verbs of, 385, 2.
Tālis, 186, 4; correlat., 191.
Talpa, gend., 48, 5.
Tam, p. 75, foot-note 1; 304, I., 4; 305, V.; meaning and use; 551, N. 2. *Tam—quam*, 555, II., 1.
Tamen, 310, 3; 554, III., 2; compds., 554, III., 3.
Tametsi, 311, 4; in concess., 515, II.
Tandem in questions, 351, 4.
Tanquam, 311, 2. *Tanquam, tanquam si*, in condit., 513, II.
Tantisper, 304, V., N. 2.
Tantopere, meaning and use, 551, N. 2.
Tantum abest ut, 502, 3. *Non tantum—sed etiam* (*vērū etiam*), 554, I., 5.
Tantus, demonstr., 186, 4; correlat., 191; w. interrog., 454, 4. *Tanti*, constr., p. 215, foot-note 2; 405.
Tantum abest ut, 502, 3.
-tar, suffix, 320, I.
-tās, nouns in, 325.
 Taste, acc. w. verbs of, 371, III.
-tāt, suffix, p. 157, foot-note 9.
 Tautology discriminated from pleonasm, p. 371, foot-note 1.
Taxis for *tetigeris*, 240, 4.
 Teaching, two accs. w. verbs of, 374.
Ted for *tē*, 184, 5.
Temperō, constr., 385, 1.
Templum, decl., 51.
 Temporal conjcs., 311, 1; 555, I.
 Temp. clauses, 518 ff.; position, 572, II., N.
Tempus est w. infin., 533, N. 3.
Tener, decl., 150, N., 1).
 TENSES, 197; prin. and histor., 198.
 Tense-signs, 242; 243. Tenses of indic., 466 ff.; subj., 478 ff.; imperat., 487 ff. Seq. of tenses, 490 ff. Tenses in temp. clauses, 518, notes 1 and 2; in indir. disc., 525.
 Tenses of infin., 537; particip., 550.
Tentō, constr., 498, II., N. 1.
Tenus, p. 145, foot-note 5; w. gen., 398, 5; w. abl., 434; after its case, 434, N. 4; 569, II.
Ter, *e* in, 579, 3.
-ter, suffix, 320, II.; p. 155, foot-note 1. Adverbs in *-ter*, 304, IV. Nouns in *-ter*, 326; decl., 60, 3.
 Terence, peculiarities in versification, 578, N. 2; 580, III., notes 3 and 4; metres, 633, III.
 Terminational compar., 161 ff.
Terrā, constr., 425, 2. *Terrae*, locat., p. 229, foot-note 1.
Terrester, decl., 153, N. 1, 1).
Testis sum, constr., 535, I., 3.
Tete for *tē*, 184, 4.
 Tetrameter, 603, N. 2; dactylic, 616.
 Tetrapody, 597, N. 4.
 Tetrastich, 606, N.
Thēbais, *a* in, p. 345, foot-note 1.
 Thematic vowel, p. 94, foot-note 1; 251.
 Thesis, 600.
 Thinking, constr. w. verbs of, 534, 1, N. 1, (2); 535, I., 1.
 Third decl., 55 ff.; adjs., 152 ff.; *-o* in, 581, II., 2. Third conj., 209: 210; 227; 228; 269 ff.
 Threatening, dat. w. verbs of, 385, II.
-ti, suffix, 320; p. 157, foot-notes 7 and 9.
-tiā, suffix, p. 158, foot-note 1.
Tibur, decl., 66, 4.
-ticius, adjs. in, 333, 5.
-tico, suffix, p. 156, foot-note 8.
-ticus, adjs. in, 330, 1.
-tiē, suffix, p. 158, foot-note 1.
-tilis, adjs. in, 333.
-tim, adverbs in, 304, I., 1.
-timā, suffix, p. 156, foot-note 9; *-tima*, p. 157, foot-note 9.
 TIME, adverbs of, 305, N. 2, 2). Acc. of time, 379; abl., 429; 379, 1. Time denoted by preps. w. acc., 379, 1; 429, 2; w. abl., 429, 1. Time since, 430, N. 3. Adjs. of time, 443, N. 2. Time denoted by particip., 549, 1. See also *Temporal clauses*.
 Times or *morae*, 597.
Timeō, constr., 385, 1; p. 274, foot-note 3.
-timo, suffix, p. 156, foot-note 9.
-timus, *a, um*, suffix, p. 157, foot-note 9. Adjs. in *-timus*, 330, 1.
-tio, -tiōn, -tiōni, suffixes, p. 158, foot-note 1. Nouns in *-tiō*, 326.
Tis for *tui*, 184, 5.
 Titles, superlat. as, 444, 1, N.
-tivus, adjs. in, 333, 5.
 Tmesis, 636, V., 3.
 'To,' how translated, 384, 3.
-to, suffix, 320, II.
-tō for *tor* in imperat., 240, 5.
Togitrus, decl., 117, 1, 3).
-tōr, suffix, 320, II.
-tor, suffix, p. 155, foot-note 1. Nouns in *-tor*, 326; as adjs., 441, 3.

tōriā, -**tōrio**, suffixes, p. 158, foot-note 4. *Ō* in *tōria*, 587, III., 4.

tōrium, -**tōrius**, *ō* in, 587, III., 4.

Tot, demon., 186, 4; correlat., 191.

Totiēns, 305, IV.

Totus, demon., 186, 4.

Tōtus, decl., 151, 1; w. loc. abl., 425, 2. *Tōtus* for Eng. adverb, 443, N. 1, (2).

Towns, gen. of names of, 42, II., 2; constr., 428; whither, 380, II.; whence, 412, II.; where, 425, II.

-tra, suffix, 320, I.

Trādor, constr., 534, 1, N. 1, (2).

Trāns in compds., 344, 5; w. acc., 372; w. two accs., 376. *Trāns* w. acc., 433; 433, I.

Transitive verbs, 193, I.

Translation of subjunctive, 196, II.; infin., 200, I.

Trees, gen. of names of, 42, II., 2; names of, in *-us*, decl., 119, 2.

Trēs, decl., 175.

Tribrach, 597, II.

Tribuō w. two dat., 390, N. 1, (2).

Tribus, decl., 117, 1, 1; gen., 118, (1).

-tric, suffix, p. 158, foot-note 4.

Tricolon, p. 352, foot-note 3.

Trihemimeral caesura, p. 356, foot-note 4.

Trihemimeris, 597, N. 4.

Trimeter, 603, N. 2.

Tripody, 597, N. 4.

Tristich, 606, N.

Tristior, *tristis*, decl., 154. *Tristis* w. force of Eng. adverb, 443, N. 1, (1).

Trisyllabic reduplicated perfects, quant. of first two syllables, 591.

-trix, nouns in, 326; as adjs., 441, 3.

-tro, suffix, 320, II.

Trochaic verse, 603, N. 1; 618 ff.; stanza, 681, X.; caesura, p. 356, foot-note 4.

Trochee, 597, II.; irrational, 598, 1, 1).

Tropes, 637, V., N.

-trum, nouns in, 326.

Truths, gen., expressed by pres. indic., 467, II.; in condit., 508, 5; 511, 1.

Tt changed to *st*, *ss*, or *s*, 35, 3.

Tū, decl., 184. *ī* in *tibī*, 581, I., 2.

-tu, -**tū**, suffixes, 320.

-tūā, -**tūdon**, suffixes, p. 158, foot-note 3.

Tuli, *u* in, 590, 1.

Tum, p. 75, foot-note 1; 304, I., 4; 305, IV.; in series, 554, I., N. 2.

Tum—tum, *cum—tum*, 554, I., 5.

-tum, nouns in, 323.

Tumultus, decl., 119, 3.

Tunc, 304, I., 4; 305, IV.

-tuo, suffix, p. 158, foot-note 1.

-tūrā, suffix, p. 158, foot-note 4. Nouns in *-tūra*, 326.

-turiō, desideratives in, 338.

-tūro, suffix, p. 158, foot-note 4.

Turpis w. supine, 547, N., 1.

Turris, decl., 62.

-tūrus, suffix, p. 155, foot-note 1.

Tūs, defect., 133, N.

-tus, adverbs in, 304, IV.; nouns in, 326; adjs. in, 323.

-tūs, nouns in, 324; 325.

Tussis, decl., 62.

-tūt, -**tūti**, suffixes, p. 158, foot-note 3.

Tuus, possess., 185.

Two accs., 373; 374. Two dat., 390.

Two negatives, 553. Two copulatives, 554, I., 5.

U

U, ū, sound, 5; 10; 11. *U* w. sound of *w*, 5, 4; 10, 4, 5). *U* parasitic, p. 4, foot-note 5; interchanged with *v*, 29; dropped, 36, 4. *U*-nouns, 116. Nouns in *ū*, defect., 134. Sup. in *ū*, 545; 547. *Ū* or *u*, final, 580, I.; in increments of decl., 585; 585, V.; conj., 586; 586, IV. *U* as consonant, 608, III., N. 2.

-u, suffix, 320.

Ūber, neut. plur., 158, 1.

Ūbī, 304, III., 2; 305, I.; p. 151, foot-note 1; 311, 1; w. part. gen., p. 209, foot-note 3; in temp. clauses, 518; 471, 4. *ī* in *ubī*, 581, I., 2; quant. of ult. in compds., 594, 9.

Ūbicumque, *ubiubī*, p. 75, foot-note 3; 305, N. 1.

Ūbivis, 305, I.

-ubus for *-ibus*, 117, 1.

-ūceus, *ū* in, 587, III., 1.

-ūcus, adjs. in, 333, 5.

-ūdō, *ū* in, 587, I., 2.

-ūgō, nouns in, 324, N.; *ū* in, 587, I., 2.

Ui, sound, 12, 2.

-uis for *-ūs*, 117, 2.

-ula, nouns in, 321; *u* in, 587, II., 3.

-ulentus, *u* in, 587, IV., 1.

-ūlis, *ū* in, 587, I., 4.

Ūllus, decl., 151, 1; use, 457.

Ūlterior, *ūltimus*, 166. *Ūltimus*, force of, 440, N. 2; 442, N.

Ūltrā w. acc., 433; 433, I.

-ulum, **-ulus**, in nouns, 321; in

adjs., 332; 333, 5; compar., 169, 3.
U in *-ulum*, *-ulus*, 587, II., 3.
-um in gen. plur. of nouns, 57; p. 36, foot-notes 3 and 4; p. 38, foot-note 2; 67; adjs., 158, 2. Nouns in *-us* and *-um*, heteroclites, 139; heterogeneous, 144. Adverbs in *-um*, 304, I., 3, 1); num., 181, N. 2; superlat., 306, 6. Supine in *-um*, 545; 546; w. *eo*, 546, 2; w. *iri*, 546, 3.
-ūm for *ārum*, 49, 3; *ōrum*, 52, 3.
-ūna, *ū* in, 587, I., 5.
Ūncia, 646, 1, N.; 646, 3, 1)—4).
 Unclothing, acc. w. verbs of, 377.
-uncula, **-unculus**, diminutives in, 321, 3.
Unde, *undelibet*, 305, III.
-undus, **-undī**, for *-endus*, *-endi*, 239.
Unquis, decl., 62, IV.
 Union, dat. w. verbs denoting, 385, 4, 3).
 Unlike, gen. w. adjs. meaning, 391, II., 4, (2).
Unquam, 305, IV.
-unt, suffix, 320, II.
Ūnus, decl., 151, 1; 175; followed by abl. w. prep., p. 209, foot-note 1; gen. of, w. possess., 398, 8. *Ūnus* w. force of Eng. adverb, 448, N. 1, (2). *Ūnus qui* w. subj., 503, II., 1.
-ūnus, *ū* in, 587, I., 5.
Ūnusquisque, decl., p. 77, foot-note 1.
-uo, suffix, 320, II. Denom. verbs in *-uō*, 335.
-ur, suffix, 320, II.; decl. of adjs. in, 150, N.; gend. of nouns in, 111; 114.
Urbs, decl., 64.
 Urging, constr. w. verbs of, 499, 2.
-uriō, *u* in, 587, IV., 2.
-us, suffix, 320, II.; adverbs in, 304, I., 3, 1); nouns in, 326, 2; 327. *Us* for *e* in voc., 52, 2. Decl. of nouns in *us*, 51; 85; 116; in *ūs*, 84; quant. of increm., 585, V., 1. Decl. of names of trees in *us*, 119, 2. Neuters in *us*, Decl. II., 51, 7. Gend. of nouns in *us*, *ūs*, Decl. III., 111; 115. Nouns in *us* and *um*, heteroclites, 139; heterogeneous, 144; 145. Compar. of adjs. in *us* preceded by vowel, 169, 2. *Us* or *ūs* final, 580, III., w. N. 2; 581, IX. Useful, dat. w. adjs. signifying, 391, I.; *ad*, 391, II., 1, (2).
Usquam, *usquam*, 305, I.
Usque w. preps., 433, N. 2. *Usque* w. acc., 437, 1.

Ūsus w. abl., 414, IV.

Ut, *utī*, 304, III., 2; 305, V.; 311; p. 151, foot-note 1. *Ut*, *ut primum*, 'as soon as,' 471, 4. *Ut* w. subj. of desire, 483, 1; w. subj. in questions, 486, II., N.; w. subj. of purpose, 497, II.; after verbs of fearing, 498, III., N. 1. *Ut nē*, *ut nōn*, for *nē*, 499, 1. *Ut* omitted, 499, 2; 502, 1. *Ut* w. subj. of result, 500, II. *Ut sī* w. subj. in condit., 513, II. *Ut* in concess., 515, III. *Ut—sic*, *ut—ita*, involving concess., 515, N. 5. *Ut—ita* w. superlat., 555, II., 1. *Ut* w. relat., 517, 3, 1). *Ut* in temp. clauses, 518. *Ut quisque—ita*, 458, 2. Quant. of ult. of *utī* in compds., 594, 9.

-ut, decl. of nouns in, 78.

Ūter, decl., 65, 1, 2).

Ūter, decl., 151, 1; correlat., 191.

Utercunque, *uterlibet*, *uterque*, *utervis*, decl., 151, N. 2. *Uterque*, constr., 397, N. 2; meaning and use, 459, 4; w. plur. verb, 461, 3. *Is* in *utervis*, 581, VIII., 3, N.

Ūti, see *Ūt*.

-ūtim, *ū* in, 587, I., 7.

Ūtinam w. subj. of desire, 483, 1.

Ūtor, constr., 421, I.; 421, N. 4; gerundive, 544, 2, N. 5.

Ūtpote, 311, 7; w. relat., 517, 8, 1).

Ūtrinde, 304, III., N.

Ūtrum, 310, 2, N.; 311, 8; 353.

-ūtus, *ū* in, 587, I., 7.

Uu avoided, p. 15, foot-note 1.

-uus, adjs. in, 333, 5.

-ux, decl. of nouns in, 97; **-āx**, 97, N. 1.

V

V originally not distinguished from *u*, 2, 5. Sound of *v*, 7. *F* interchanged w. *u*, 29; treated as guttural, 80, N. 1; changed to *c*, 33, 1, N.; dropped, 36, 4.

-vā, suffix, 320, I.

Vacuus w. gen., p. 210, foot-note 3.

Vae, 312, 3; w. dat., 381, N. 3, 3).

Vāh, interj., 312, 1.

Valde quam in adverb. phrase, 305, N. 4.

Value, gen. of, 404. Gen. w. verbs of valuing, 404.

Vannus, gend., 53, 1, (2).

Variable rad. vowel, 20, N. 2; 57, 2, 58, 1, 2); 60, 1, 2); 61, 1, 2).

Variation in quant. of stem-syllables 593, 1.

Varieties of verse, 609.

- Vās*, decl., 136, 2.
Vas, *a* in, 579, 3; quant. of increm., 585, I., 4, (2).
Vātes, decl., p. 36, foot-note 4.
Vā, inseparable prep., 308; *ā* in, 594, 2.
Ve, *vel*, 310, 2; 554, II., 2. *Vel—vel*, 554, II., N. Position of *vel* in poetry, 569, III., N.; in prose, 569, III., 4.
Velut, 311, 2; 554, II., 2. *Velut*, *velut sī*, in condit., 513, II.
Venālis w. abl., p. 226, foot-note 1.
Venit in mentem w. gen., 406, N.
Venter, decl., 65, 1, 2).
Vēr without plur., 130, 1, 4); quant. of increm., 585, III., 3.
Verb stems, format. of, 249 ff.
Verbal endings, analysis of, 241 ff.
Verbal roots, 314, I. Verbal nouns in *ū* defect., 134. Verbal nouns w. infin., 533, 3, N. 3.
VERBS, ETYMOLOGY OF, 192 ff.; classes, 193; voice, mood, tense, numb., pers., 194 ff.; infin., ger., sup., partic., 200; conj., 201 ff.; prin. parts, 202; paradigms, 204 ff.; comparat. view, 213 ff.; verbal inflections, 220 ff.; systems, 222; synopsis, 223 ff.; dep. verbs, 231 ff.; periphrast. conj., 233 ff.; peculiarities in conj., 235 ff.; analysis of verbal endings, 241 ff.; tense-signs, 242 ff.; mood-signs, 244 ff.; pers. endings, 247 ff.; format. of stems, 249 ff.; pres. stem, 250; 251; perf. stem, 252 ff.; sup. stem, 256; classification, 257 ff.; Conj. I., 257 ff.; Conj. II., 261 ff.; Conj. III., 269 ff.; Conj. IV., 284 ff.; irreg. verbs, 289 ff.; defect., 297 ff.; impers., 298 ff.; derivation, 335 ff.; denom., 335; frequent., 336; incept., 337; desiderat., 338; dimin., 339; compds., 344.
VERBS, SYNTAX OF, 460 ff.; agreement, 460 ff. Verb omitted, 363, 3; 523, I., N. Voices, 464; 465. Indic. and tenses, 466 ff. Subj. and tenses, 477 ff.; subj. in prin. clauses, 483 ff. Imperat. and tenses, 487 ff. Subord. clauses, 490 ff.; seq. of tenses, 490 ff. Purpose, 497 ff.; result, 500 ff.; condit. sentences, 506 ff.; concess. clauses, 515; causal clauses, 516; 517; temp. clauses, 518 ff.; indir. disc., 522 ff.; indir. clauses, 528 ff. Infin., 532 ff. Substant. clauses, 540. Ger., 541; 542. Gerundive, 543; 544. Supines, 545 ff. Particip., 548 ff. Position of modifiers of verb, 587. -*Ō*, *o*, in verbs, 581, II., 2; -*ā*, 581, III., 3.
Vērē, 304, II., 2.
Vereor, constr., p. 274, foot-note 3.
Vergil, versification, 630.
Vērō, p. 146, foot-note 1; 310, 3; 554, III., 2 and 4; position, 569, III.
Verse, caesura of, p. 357, foot-note 1.
Verses, 601; name, 603; varieties, 609.
VERSIFICATION, 596 ff. Feet, 597. Verses, 601; names of, 603; 604. Figures of pros., 608. Varieties of verse, 609.
Versus, p. 145, foot-note 5; w. acc., 433; as adverb, 433, N. 2; position, 569, II.
Vertō w. two dats., 390, N. 1, 2).
Verū, decl., 117, 1, 2).
Vērūm, 310, 3; 554, III., 2; *nōn solum* (*nōn modo or nōn tantum*)—*vērūm etiam*, 554, I., 5. *Vērūm*, *vērūmtamen*, resumptive, 554, IV., 3.
Vērūmtamen, 554, III., 3.
Vervēx, quant. of increm., 585, III., 3.
Vescor, constr., 421, I.; 421, N. 4.
Vesper, decl., 51, 4. *Vesper* (for *vesperis*), decl., 62, N. 2.
Vespera without plur., 130, 1, 4).
Vespertinus, *i* in, p. 345, foot-note 5.
Vestrās, decl., 185, N. 3.
Vestri, *vestrūm*, 446, N. 3.
Vetō, constr., p. 310, foot-note 1;
vetor, 534, 1, N. 1.
Vetus, decl., 158; compar., 163, 1, N.; 167, 2.
Viciniae, locat., p. 229, foot-note 1.
Vicinus w. dat., p. 205, foot-note 1.
Vicis, defect., 133, 1.
Vidē, *ē* in, 581, IV., 3.
Vidēlicet, 304, IV., N. 2.
Videor, constr., 534, 1, N. 1, (1).
Vir, decl., 51, 4, 1); *i* in, 579, 3.
Virgō, decl., 60.
Virtūs, decl., 58.
Virus, decl., 51, 7; gen., 53, 2.
Vīs, decl., 66; p. 38, foot-note 4;
quant. of increm., 585, IV., 2.
Vixdum, 555, I., 1.
-vo, suffix, 320, II.
VOCATIVE, irreg., 52, 2; 68, 3. Syntax, 369. Voc. in exclamat., 381, N. 3, 1). Position of voc., 569, VI. *I* in Greek voc. sing., 581, I., 2; -*ā* in, 581, III., 2; -*es* in, 581, VI., 3; -*us* in plur., 581, IX., 2.
Voices, 195; 464; 465.
Volō w. eth. dat., 389, N. 2; w. subj., p. 274, foot-note 1; 499, 2; w. infin., p. 310, foot-note 1. *Volens* w.

dat. of possess., 387, N. 3. Increm. of *volō* and compds., 586, 1.
Volucer, decl., 153, N. 1, 1).
Volucris, p. 36, foot-note 3.
-volus, compds. in, 342, 1; compar., 164.
Vōti, constr., 410, III., N. 2.
VOWELS, 3, I.; sounds, 5; 9 ff.; 15, 1. Classification of vowels, 3, I. Phonet. changes, 20 ff. Vowels lengthened, 20; shortened, 21; weakened, 22; contracted, 23; changed, 24; assimilated, 25; dissimilated, 26; dropped, 27; interchanged with consonants, 28; 29. Variable vowel, 20, N. 2; 57, 2; 58, 1, 2); 60, 1, 2); 61, 1, 2). Favorite vowels, 24. Vowels developed by liquids or nasals, 29, N. Order of vowels in strength, 22. Themat. vowel, p. 94, foot-note 1; 251. Vowel-stems, compar. of adjs. in, 162, N. Final vowel elided, 608, I.; shortened in hiatus, 608, II., N. 3. Quant. before two consonants or a double cons., 651.
Vulgus, decl., 51, 7; gend., 53, 2.
Vulpecula, p. 159, foot-note 1.
-vus, adjs. in, 338, 5.

W

Want, gen. w. verbs of, 410, V., 1.
 Watches of night, 645, 1.
 Way, adverbs of, 305, N. 2, 3).
 Weak caesura, p. 356, foot-note 4.

Weakening of vowels, 22; diphthongs, 23, N.
 Weights, Roman, 646; 648.
 'Wife,' apparent ellipsis of, 398, 1, N. 2.
 Winds, gend. of names of, 42, I., 2.
 Wishing, constr. w. verbs of, 535, II.
 Without, constr. w. verbs of being without, 414, I.
 Women, names of, 649, 4.
 Words, formation of, 313 ff.; derivation, 321 ff.; arrang., 559 ff.

X

X, sound, 13, II.; dropped, 36, 3, N. 2. Decl. of nouns in *x*, 64; 65, 3; 91 ff.; gend., 105; 108. *X* lengthens preceding syllable, 576, II.

Y

Y only in foreign words, 2, 6; sound, 5, 2; 10 ff. Decl. of nouns in *y*, 73; gend., 111. *Y* or *ȳ*, final, 580, I.; in increments, 585.
-ys, decl. of nouns in, 68, 2; 86; gend., 107. *Ys* final, 580, III.
-yx, **-ȳx**, decl. of nouns in, 97, N. 2.

Z

Z only in foreign words, 2, 6; lengthens preceding syllable, 576, II.
 Zeugma, 686, II., 1.

TABLE

SHOWING THE CORRESPONDING ARTICLES IN THE
TWO EDITIONS.

OLD.	NEW.	OLD.	NEW.	OLD.	NEW.
1-4.....	1-4	198, 1.....	197, N. 1	258, II., 4.....	29
5, 6.....	9	198, 2.....	198	259.....	257
7.....	10	198, 3.....	197, N. 2	260.....	258
8.....	11	199.....	199	260, 1 and 2.....	257, notes
9.....	12	200.....	201	1 and 2	
10-12.....	13	201.....	202	261.....	259, 1
13.....	14, 1	202.....	203	261, 1 and 2.....	259, notes
14.....	14, 2	203.....	203, 1	1 and 2	
15.....	5	204-212.....	204-212	262.....	259, 2
16.....	6	213.....	220	263.....	260
17.....	7	214.....	221	264.....	261
18.....	8	215.....	222	265.....	262
19.....	15	216, 217, I.....	223	266.....	262, N. 1
20.....	16	217, II.....	224	267.....	262, N. 2
21.....	16, I.	218, I.....	225	268.....	263
22.....	16, II.	218, II.....	226	269, I.....	265
23.....	16, III.	219, I.....	227	269, II.....	264
24.....	17	219, II.....	228	270, I.....	267, 1
25.....	18	220, I.....	229	270, II., 1.....	266
26.....	19	220, II.....	230	270, II., 2.....	267, 2
27.....	20	221.....	217	270, III.....	267, 3
28.....	24	222.....	218	271.....	268
28, 2, 2).....	25, 1	223.....	219	272, I.....	269
29.....	21	224.....	—	272, II.....	270
30.....	22	225.....	231	273, I., 1.....	271, 1
31.....	27	226.....	232	273, I., 2.....	272, 1
32.....	23	227-230.....	—	273, II., 1.....	271, 2
—.....	26, 28	231.....	233	273, II., 2.....	272, 2
33.....	30	232.....	234	273, III.....	272, 3
34.....	36, 5, 1)	233.....	234, N.	274, 275, I.....	273, 274
35.....	31, 1	234.....	235	275, II.....	275
—.....	32, 35	235.....	236	276.....	276
36.....	36, 2	236.....	237	276, 1.....	277, N.
37-120.....	37-120	237.....	238	277-279.....	277-279
120, 3.....	121	238.....	239	280.....	272, N. 1
120, 4.....	122	239.....	240	281.....	272, N. 2
121.....	123	240, I.....	213, 214	282.....	280
122.....	47, note 1	240, II. and III.....	215, 216	282, I.....	281
123.....	—	241-256.....	241-256	282, II.....	282
124-189.....	124-189	257.....	256, 1	283-285.....	283-285
190.....	190, 1	258, I., 1.....	30; 36, 3, 1)	286, I.....	286
191.....	190, 2	258, I., 2.....	36, 2	286, II.....	287
—.....	191	258, I., 3.....	33, 1	287.....	287, N.
192-195.....	192-195	258, I., 4.....	34, 1, N.	288-303.....	288-303
196, I.....	196	258, I., 5.....	36, 3, N. 3	304.....	305, N. 2
196, II.....	200	258, II., 1 and 2.....	33, 1	305.....	306
197.....	197	258, II., 3.....	34, N.	306.....	307

OLD.	NEW.	OLD.	NEW.	OLD.	NEW.
307.....	308	364, 365.....	365	419, II.....	425, 1, N.
308, 309.....	309	366.....	—	419, III..421, II.; 414,	I. and III.
310-312.....	310-312	—.....	366, 367	419, IV..421, III.; 425,	1, N.
313, I.....	313	367, 368.....	368	419, V.....	414, IV.
313, II.....	340	369-371.....	369-371	419, 2..421, notes 1 and 2	
313, 1.....	313, N. 2	371, 4.....	372	419, 3.....	414, notes 2-4
—.....	314-320	371, 5.....	371, IV.	419, 4, 1).....	421, N. 4
314, 315.....	321	371, 6.....	464	419, 4, 3).....	421, N. 3
316.....	322	371, 7.....	371, I., N.	420.....	367; 411
317.....	323	372.....	—	421..425, I. and II.; 412	
318.....	324	373, 374.....	373, 374	422.....	425, 1 and 2
319.....	325	374, 4.....	534	422, 2.....	412, 2
320, 321.....	326, 327	374, 5.....	375	423.....	425, 3
322, 323.....	328	374, 6.....	376	423, 1.....	412, 3
324.....	329	374, 7.....	377	424.....	426
325.....	330	375.....	536	—.....	427, 428
326.....	331	376.....	—	425.....	413-415
327.....	332	377.....	370, II.	426.....	429
328.....	333	378.....	379	427.....	430
329.....	334	379.....	380	428.....	419, II.; 419, 2
330, 331.....	335	380.....	378	429.....	424
332, I.....	336	381.....	381	430, 431.....	431
332, II.....	337	382, 383.....	382, 383	432-440.....	432-440
332, III.....	338	384-396.....	384-396	441, 1 and 2.....	441
332, IV.....	339	396, III.....	397	441, 4.....	440, N. 4
333-337.....	304, 305	397.....	398	441, 5.....	395, N. 2
338, I.-III., 1.....	340	398, 1.....	396, V., N. 3	441, 6.....	440 notes 1-3
338, 2.....	344, 5	398, 2.....	395, N. 2	442-463.....	442-463
338, 3.....	344, 6	398, 3..396, II., N.; 396,	III., N. 2	464.....	195
339.....	341	398, 4..396, III., N. 1;	397, N. 3	465-465, II.....	464
339, 1.....	343, II.	398, 5.....	384, 4, N. 2	465, 1-3.....	465
339, 2.....	341, 1	399, 1-4.....	399	466-474.....	466-474
340.....	342	399, 5.....	400	—.....	475
341.....	344, 1-4	400.....	—	475.....	476
342.....	304, 305	401, 402.....	401, 402	476.....	478
343.....	345	402, 1 and 2.....	404, 405	477.....	479, 480
344.....	346	402, 3.....	401, N. 4	478.....	481, 482
345, I.....	347	403.....	403	479.....	496
345, II.....	348	404, 1.....	401, N. 3	480.....	490, 491
345, III.....	349	405.....	—	481, I.....	492
346, I.....	350	406-408.....	406-408	481, II.....	493
346, II., 1.....	351	409.....	410, V.	481, III.....	494
346, II., 2.....	353	410-410, 2.....	409	481, III., 1 and 2.....	496
346, II., 3.....	352	410, 3-7.....	410	481, IV.....	495, II.
346, III.....	354	411, 1.....	397, 4	481, V.....	495, III.
346, IV.....	355	411, 2.....	398, 5	481, VI.....	495, IV.
347.....	356	412, 413.....	367; 411	482..495, I., VI., and VII.	
348.....	357	414-414, 2.....	413; 416	483, 484.....	477
349.....	357, 1	414, 3.....	419, III.	485, 486.....	485, 486
350.....	357, 2	414, 4.....	418; 420	486, 4 and 6..485, notes	
351.....	358	414, 5 and 6.....	415, I.	486, 5.....	518, 1
352.....	359	414, 7..418; 419, I.; 419, 1		487, 488.....	483, 484
353.....	360	415.....	—	488, 1-5.....	483, 1-5
354.....	361, 1	416.....	422	489.....	497; 500
355.....	361, 2	417.....	417	490.....	497, 1; 500
356.....	361, 3	418.....	423	491.....	497, 1
357-361.....	—	419, I.....	421, I.	492, 493.....	498, 499
362, 363.....	362, 363				
363, 4.....	364				

OLD.	NEW.	OLD.	NEW.	OLD.	NEW.
493, 4.....	483, 3, N.	552, 3 and 4.....	533, II.	607.....	574
494.....	500	553, I.-IV.....	539	608.....	575
495.....	501	553, V.....	533, II.	609.....	575, foot-note 1
495, 2, 2).....	486, II., N.	554.....	540	610.....	576, I.
496.....	502	555.....	540, I.	611.....	576, II.
497.....	497, 2	556, I.....	538, 1; 540, N.	611, 2.....	578
498.....	504	556, I., 1 and 2.....	501, I., 2	612.....	577
499.....	497, 2	556, II. and III.....	501, I., 1	613.....	579
500.....	497; 500	557.....	540, I.	614.....	580, I.
500, 3.....	503, N. 3	558, I., 1.....	535, I.	615.....	581, III.
501.....	503	558, I., 2.....	498, I.	616.....	581, IV.
—.....	505	558, II., 1.....	533, I., 1	617.....	580, I.
502.....	506	558, II., 2.....	498, I., N.	618.....	581, I.
503, I. and II.....	513	558, III.....	498, II.	619.....	580, I.
503, III.....	507	558, IV.....	501, II., 1	620.....	581, II.
504.....	509, 510	558, V.....	535, III.	621.....	580, II.
505.....	513, I.	558, VI.....	498, I.	622.....	580, III.
506.....	513, II.	558, VI., 2 and 3.....	535, II.	623.....	581, V.
507-510.....	507-510	559.....	541	624.....	581, VI.
510, 2.....	511, 2	560, 561.....	542	625.....	581, VII.
511-511, 2.....	511	562.....	543, 544	626.....	581, VIII.
511, 3.....	512	563.....	542, I.; 544, 1	627.....	581, IX.
512.....	511	564.....	542, II.; 544, 2	628.....	580, III.; 576, I.
513.....	507, 2	565.....	542, III.; 544, notes 2 and 5	629.....	582
514.....	514	566.....	542, IV.; 544, 2	630.....	583
515, 516.....	515	567, 568.....	545	631.....	584
517, I.....	517	569.....	546	632.....	585
517, II.....	516	570.....	547	633.....	585, I.
518, I.....	517; 515, III.	571-574.....	550	634.....	585, II.
518, II.....	521	575.....	548	635.....	585, III.
519.....	517	576-578.....	549	636.....	585, IV.
520.....	516	579.....	549, 5	637.....	585, V.
521, I.....	519, 2	580.....	549, N. 2	638.....	585
521, II.....	520	581.....	549, N. 1	639.....	586
522.....	519	582, 583.....	551	640.....	586, I.
523.....	520	584.....	552	641.....	586, II.
524.....	528, 2, N.	585.....	553	642.....	586
525, 526.....	529	586.....	553, N.	643.....	586, III.
527.....	528; 529, II.	587.....	554	644.....	586, IV.
528.....	522	588.....	555	645.....	587, I.
529, 530.....	523	589.....	556	646.....	587, II.
531, 532.....	524, 525	590.....	557	647.....	587, III.
532, 2 and 3.....	527	591.....	558	648.....	587, IV.
532, 4.....	525, 2	592.....	559	—.....	588, 589
533.....	526; 530	593.....	560	649.....	595
534-537.....	487; 489	594.....	561	650.....	592
538, 1.....	488	595.....	562	651.....	590
538, 2.....	489, 1)	596.....	563	652.....	591
—.....	531	597.....	564	653.....	593
539.....	—	598.....	565	654.....	594
540-544.....	537	599.....	566	655.....	596
545-547.....	536	600.....	567	656.....	597
548.....	532	601.....	568	657, 658.....	598
549-549, 3.....	538	602.....	569	659.....	599
549, 4.....	534, 1	603.....	571	660.....	600
550.....	533-535	604.....	572	661.....	601
551.....	535	605.....	573	662.....	602
552, 1.....	533, I.	606.....	570	663.....	603
552, 2.....	534			664.....	604

OLD.	NEW.	OLD.	NEW.	OLD.	NEW.
665.....	605	681.....	619	703.....	635
666.....	606	682.....	621	704.....	636
667.....	601, N. 3	683.....	622	705.....	637
668.....	607, N.	684.....	623	—.....	638, 639
669.....	608	685.....	624	706.....	640
670.....	609	686.....	625	707.....	641
671.....	610	687.....	626	708.....	642
672.....	610, 1-3	688, 689.....	628, II.-V.	709.....	643
673.....	611	690.....	628, VI. and VII.	710.....	644
674.....	611, 4 and 5	691.....	627, 628	711.....	645
—.....	612	691, V.....	629, I.	712.....	646
675.....	613	692.....	628, IX.	713.....	647
676.....	614	693.....	631, XV.	714.....	648, I.
676, 2.....	615	694.....	631, XIV.	715.....	648, II.
677, I.....	616	695.....	629, II.	716.....	648, III.
677, II.....	617	696-699.....	630	717.....	648, IV.
677, III.....	628, I.	700.....	631	718.....	648, V.
678.....	633, II., note 3	701.....	632	719.....	649, 1
679.....	618	—.....	633	720.....	650
680.....	620	702.....	634	—.....	651

THE END.

Harkness's Standard Latin Text-Books

Harkness's Standard Latin Grammar

A new standard text-book for Schools and Colleges.

Cloth, 12mo, 430 pages \$1.12

Harkness's Easy Method for Beginners in Latin

An elementary Grammar for beginners; a book of Latin Exercises and a Latin Reader.

Cloth, 12mo, 348 pages \$1 20

Harkness's First Year in Latin

A complete course, including an outline of Latin Grammar, with progressive exercises in reading Latin, etc.

Cloth, 12mo, 332 pages \$1.12

Harkness's Latin Exercises for the First Year

The same as the First Year in Latin, with the omission of the outline of Latin Grammar.

Cloth, 12mo, 268 pages \$1.00

Harkness's New Latin Reader

A standard Latin Reader designed to accompany Harkness's Latin Grammar, with notes, vocabularies, etc.

Cloth, 12mo, 227 pages 87 cents

Harkness's Introductory Latin Book

An outline of Latin Grammar, with special reference to drill on the inflections and principles of the language.

Cloth, 12mo, 162 pages 87 cents

Harkness's Introduction to Latin Prose Composition

A book containing elementary exercises to accompany the Latin Reader; elements of Latin Syntax, Latin style, etc.

Cloth, 12mo, 306 pages \$1.05

Harkness's Cæsar's Commentaries

New edition, with colored illustrations, maps, notes, vocabulary, etc.

Cloth, 12mo, 377 pages \$1.20

Harkness's Cicero's Orations

Containing ten orations, with explanatory notes, vocabulary, etc.

Cloth, 12mo, 398 pages \$1.22

Harkness's Sallust's Catiline

Adapted to the Standard Latin Grammar, with notes, vocabulary, etc.

Cloth, 12mo, 165 pages 90 cents

Harkness's Course in Cæsar, Sallust and Cicero

A preparatory course in Latin Reading, including four books of Cæsar, Sallust's Catiline, and eight orations of Cicero, with notes, vocabulary, etc.

Cloth, 12mo, 696 pages \$1.40

Copies of any of the books of Harkness's Standard Latin Series will be sent prepaid to any address, on receipt of the price, by the Publishers:

American Book Company

New York

Cincinnati

Chicago

Latin Lessons and Methods

Coy's Latin Lessons

By E. W. COY, A.M., Principal of the Hughes High School, Cincinnati. Cloth, 12mo, 330 pages. Illustrated . \$1.00

This introductory book for beginners is intended to give a thorough drill in the essentials of Latin Grammar and to prepare the student to read different Latin authors in the course with ease and satisfaction. Special features will be found in the methods of presenting inflected forms, the accent of which is marked in all paradigms; in the prominence given to the tense sign of verbs by the use of heavy type; in the practical and suggestive character of the notes on the reading matter; and in the parallel exercises which apply the material furnished by the text.

The latter part of the book contains, in consecutive arrangement, all of the text used in the lessons, and further selections from the Viri Romæ, Nepos and Cæsar. The appendix contains in concise form all the inflected forms and constructions used.

Harkness's Easy Method for Beginners in Latin

By ALBERT HARKNESS, Ph.D., LL.D.

Half leather, 12mo, 348 pages. Illustrated . . . \$1.20

This book is at once a Beginner's Grammar, a Latin Reader, and a Manual of Exercises—making a complete First Year's Course in the study. Its vocabulary is drawn mainly from Cæsar, and thorough drill is afforded in forms and constructions.

Clearness and simplicity are insured by well-worded, accurate rules, explanatory notes and logical arrangement. Attractiveness and interest are secured by the character of the exercises, the colloquia, the frequent anecdote or dialogue, and the illustrations.

Harper and Burgess's Inductive Latin Primer

By W. R. HARPER, Ph.D., D.D., President of the University of Chicago, and ISAAC B. BURGESS, A.M.

Cloth, 12mo, 432 pages. With maps and illustrations . \$1.00

This first book in Latin for beginners follows the rational, modern method of developing the grammar from the language. It is strictly inductive in treatment, and at the same time scientific and accurate in its presentation of facts. The work is based on the connected text of Cæsar. The lessons are short, and the exercises copious and easy. The subject matter is illustrated by maps, plans and pictures. It includes a brief inductive treatment of English Grammar intended for a review course in English preparatory to the study of Latin.

Copies of the above books will be sent prepaid to any address, on receipt of the price, by the Publishers:

American Book Company

New York

Cincinnati

Chicago

